A Modern French Grammar

Philippe de La Rochelle

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation

https://archive.org/details/modernfrenchgram0000phil

A MODERN FRENCH GRAMMAR

FOR SECONDARY SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY

PHILIPPE DE LA ROCHELLE

ROMANCE DEPARTMENT, COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

G. P. PUTNAM'S SONS
NEW YORK AND LONDON
The Knickerbocker Press

COPYRIGHT, 1919
BY
PHILIPPE DE LA ROCHELLE

Printed in the United States of America

PREFACE

THE purpose of the author in the preparation of this book is indicated in the title: *A Modern French Grammar.*

In this Grammar, special attention has been given to the points of contact between the English and the French tongues.

The author believes that his text will be found both comprehensive and practical for the use of instructors in colleges and in higher grade schools. The attention given to the *grammatical nomenclature, to drill in oral and reading exercises, to topics of composition and conversation, and to the presentation of idiomatic expressions and of the equivalent terms in the two languages*, will, the author believes, have value in making clear to the student the nature of the French language, and the relations borne by it to the English language.

The Section of Pronunciation has been placed at the beginning of the book for use in reference, and with this is connected a phonetic transliteration for the use of elementary classes. It is important that the voice of the instructor should be heard in all grades, in each and every lesson, and in Dictation and Oral Drills. Care should be taken to emphasize with the student the fluent cadence or ring of the French language and the method of the blending of words.

Two University Professors, in recent addresses to French high school instructors, on Methods of Improving the Teaching of Modern French in Secondary Schools, have pointed out that in such instruction sufficient emphasis had frequently not been given to the Gender of Nouns. In the present work, this subject has been

very thoroughly cared for, and a long series of examples is presented.

In not a few Grammars, the elimination or the minimizing of introductory work has left the student without the ability to compose correctly even short sentences. To students who desire simply to learn to *read* French, the usual course of grammatical topics, together with an Elementary Reader may properly be recommended; but for the student who is anxious to solve the problem of wording a sentence correctly, and to make further progress towards accurate and graceful expression, it is essential that the two languages be *compared and contrasted.* It is through *comparison and assimilation* that the interest of the pupil is aroused and his mind is sharpened. When a certain mastery has been secured of French composition, the pupil is able to make comparatively rapid progress in the expression of his ideas with a wider choice of phrases and a trustworthy vocabulary.

A method of study of a foreign tongue which aims at simplicity may easily lead to a knowledge that is but superficial. An intelligent study of French calls for a wide range of treatment; and the examples of expression given in this volume have been selected with the purpose of enabling the student to secure a proper form of expression for his ideas.

It has been thought advisable to group together the vital divisions of the Grammar, and for this purpose the presentation of a verb, a tense, a pronoun, or an idiomatic expression is interpreted and illustrated under various relations so as to meet as far as possible varied requirements.

The use of a Modern Reader and the reading of selected stories will bring to a pupil a reading facility, but if he is ambitious to secure familiarity with the intricacies of a living language, it is essential that he shall

obtain a mastery of *Syntax*. The student must observe, compare, analyze, connect, and direct the mechanism of the language so as to secure a fair grasp of its nature and its genius.

The author emphasizes the importance of the mastery of a comprehensive vocabulary, which alone can bring to the student the requisite knowledge of the various interpretations or phases of meaning of words; but in this Grammar it is *the structure of a sentence* that receives special attention. Unless a trustworthy model is kept before the student or a text-book be utilized as a guide or reference, he may easily be led into a pitfall of clumsy expression as a result of the different phases of meaning attaching to the same word when connected with different prepositions or verbs.

Il est bon de limer et de frotter notre cervelle contre celle d'autrui.—MONTAIGNE.

P. DE L.

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Table des Matières)

PAGE

PREFACE iii

INTRODUCTION

PART I

PRONUNCIATION AND PRACTICAL PHONETICS

PAGE

I.—PUNCTUATION 3

II.—FRENCH ALPHABET 6

III.—ORTHOGRAPHIC MARKS 6

IV.—PHONETIC SYMBOLS AND FRENCH SOUNDS 8

V.—PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS . . . 9

VI.—NASAL VOWELS 17

VII.—CONSONANTS AND THEIR PRONUNCIATION 21

VIII.—SYLLABLES 22

IX.—LINKING 35

X.—ELISION 43

XI.—PRACTICAL FRENCH PROSODY . . . 46

XII.—LIST OF *h* (*aspirated*) 49

PART II

ETYMOLOGY OR PARTS OF SPEECH

PAGE

LESSON I 63

§ 1 gender of nouns; parts of speech; the definite article; nouns are either masculine or feminine
§ 2 Latin feminines
§ 3 general rule
§ 4 double gender
§ 5 few change their meaning according to the gender
§ 6 few are either masculine or feminine

LESSON II 70

PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

§ 7 general rule
§ 8 double plurals
§ 9 invariable nouns
§ 10 substantives always in the plural
§ 11 noun with an adverb or a preposition
§ 12 when *de* is understood
§ 13 foreign nouns
§ 14 determinatives of nouns (with *à; de; en; sans; pour*)
§ 15 definite, indefinite and partitive article
§ 16 gender and number
§ 17 general rule; use of the article

LESSON III 77

QUALIFYING ADJECTIVES

§ 18 rule
§ 19 exceptions

LESSON IV 81

§ 20 *avoir* to have; principal parts
§ 21 indicative mood
§ 22 imperfect

PAGE

§ 23 past definite (preterit)
§ 24 past indefinite (perfect)
§ 25 review rules governing nouns and adjectives
§ 26 past anterior
§ 27 pluperfect
§ 28 future
§ 29 future past
§ 30 conditional mood
§ 31 material for review and dictation
§ 32 conditional past (1st Form)
§ 33 conditional past (2d Form)
§ 34 imperative mood
§ 35 subjunctive mood
§ 36 imperfect (subj.) and review of rules with nouns and adjectives
§ 37 past (subj.)
§ 38 pluperfect (subj.)
§ 39 infinitive mood
§ 40 participial mood; material for short compositions and review of adjectives
§ 41 comparison of adjectives (with *plus*, *moins*)
§ 42 " " " (continued)
§ 42 " " " (continued) with *bon* and *mauvais*
§ 43 comparison of adjectives (with *comme*)
§ 44 adverbs: *bien*, *mal*, *peu*, *mieux* followed by review on adverbs and adjectives

LESSON V 98
§ 45 *être* to be (conjugated at p. 291) and its various uses
§ 46 position of certain adverbs
§ 47 *à; de; en; envers* as complement of adjectives with impersonal verbs
§ 48 oral drill with: *à; de* on adjectives, etc.
§ 49 adjectival forms: *certain*, *chaque*, *chacun*, etc
§ 50 " " (with oral drill) etc.
§ 51 " " (" " " continued) and *on*

LESSON VI 116
§ 52 *y avoir* to be (there to be) [conjugated in full]; conversational exercise with: *le; en*

PAGE

§ 53 present indicative and its uses
§ 54 review: rules for using *le; la; les; un(e)*
§ 55 possessive adjectives
§ 56 *il y a* and *voilà*
§ 57 negative and interrogative forms
§ 58 review of interrogative forms
§ 59 *en* and *le; (l'); la; les* as pronouns
§ 60 *avoir faim; avoir soif; avoir chaud*, etc.; various examples on *avoir* and *être*; general review on: there is (are)

LESSON VII 124

§ 61 *de* plus *le* contracted; *de* plus *les; des; de l'; de la; au; à l'; à la; aux* (partitive sense)
§ 62 imperfect (indicative) and its uses
§ 63 rules requiring same
§ 64 *de* (some or any) in partitive constructions after adverbs of quantity; verbs, adjectives or expressions requiring it
§ 65 *de* or *du; de l'; de la; des* in negative interrogations
§ 66 past definite (preterit) and its uses
§ 67 rule; also *de* plus infinitive of narration
§ 68 possessive pronouns
§ 69 past indefinite and its uses
§ 70 rule on same; past indefinite and definite distinguished
§ 71 demonstrative adjectives: *ce (cet); cette; ces*
§ 72 demonstrative pronouns: *celui; celle; ceux; celles; ceci; cela (ça); -ci; -là*
§ 73 future and its uses
§ 74 relative pronouns: *qui; que; ce qui; ce que*
§ 75 important rule on futurity (implied)

LESSON VIII 132

§ 76 *ce* (plus *est*) or: *ce sont;* demonstrative pronouns before a proper noun, pronoun, superlative; general review
§ 77 *ce* as a conclusive statement or as above and general review
§ 78 rule and *si* (if) plus present (indicative) etc.; conversation; time of day, etc.

PAGE

§ 79 conditional present and its uses
§ 80 conditional present answers to the imperfect with *si*
§ 81 *quel; quelle; quels; quelles* as adjectives
§ 82 interrogative pronouns: *lequel; laquelle; lesquels; lesquelles* and *duquel* or *auquel*, etc.
§ 83 *lequel*, etc., in the body of a sentence
§ 84 imperative and its uses and review of above pronouns

LESSON IX 138

§ 85 subjunctive present or future
§ 86 rule; main clause; subordinate clause; after verbs implying *will, order, fear*, etc.
§ 87 subordinate clause with present or past idea; uncertainty or certainty; independent clauses and: *que;* what time is it? etc.; verbs of emotion: *espérer* and *penser;* impersonal verbs; superlatives; after *le seul*, etc.; after *que* preceded by *soit;* after adverbial clauses, substantive, temporal, concessional, hypothetical, final, consecutive clauses and: *que*, subject or object of a verb; adjectival clauses; adverbial clauses; general review; conversation

LESSON X 144

§ 88 moods and tenses reviewed; infinitive mood and its uses; as a noun or subject; as direct (indirect) object; as attribute; in prepositional phrases; infinitive of narration
§ 89 present indicative (reviewed); its uses
§ 90 direct interrogation; examples
§ 91 imperfect (indicative); its uses and fully illustrated
§ 92 imperfect in speaking or quotations; rule; imperfect and past definite distinguished
§ 93 past definite (preterit); its uses
§ 94 past indefinite (perfect); and its uses
§ 95 past anterior or pluperfect
§ 96 compare the pluperfect and perfect
§ 97 pluperfect used with the imperfect
§ 98 future (absolute and simple); its uses
§ 99 future past (anterior); with *quand* (*même*):
§ 100 two future past (anterior) in one sentence

PAGE

§ 101 conditional (present); its uses; fully illustrated
§ 102 *would* and *should* distinguished
§ 103 conditional past; its uses
§ 104 conditional past (2nd Form)
§ 105 imperative; its uses
§ 106 few verbs as interjections

LESSON XI 155
§ 107 personal pronoun; its uses; complex pronouns, etc.
§ 108 two possible pronouns after the verb
§ 109 two possible pronouns before the verb
§ 110 imperative of command (wish)
§ 111 infinitive instead of imperative

LESSON XII 158
§ 112 subjunctive fully explained and illustrated
§ 113 " after verbs of doubt, etc.
§ 114 " " adjectives or various expressions of joy, etc.
§ 115 subjunctive after interrogative or negative verbs, etc.
§ 116 " " other verbs of uncertainty
§ 117 " " impersonal verbs
§ 118 indicative after certain impersonal verbs
§ 119 " or subjunctive in special cases
§ 120 subjunctive always after certain conjunctive clauses
§ 121 *que* may stand for: *sans que*, etc.
§ 122 general review on the above

LESSON XIII 167
§ 123 drill on the indicative with temporal clauses
§ 124 observe *de manière que; de sorte que*, etc.
§ 125 subjunctive (absolute) with or without *que*
§ 126 " with relative pronouns or conjunctive adverbs
§ 127 *ne* after a principal clause (negative), verbs of fearing, etc.
§ 128 general rule and final review: subjunctive *or* indicative
§ 129 few exceptional cases after verbs of saying, etc., and a past subjunctive

PAGE

LESSON XIV 173

§ 130 infinitive reviewed with *à* or *de;* etc., and rules
§ 131 " answering to a present or past idea may replace all tenses of indicative
§ 132 infinitive (perfect) corresponds to what?
§ 133 " as subject; *de* after nouns, etc.
§ 134 " as attribute; *de* in predicate uses
§ 135 " as direct object; *le* or *lui*, etc., with *faire*, etc.
§ 136 infinitive after *de;* illustrative sentences
§ 137 " as indirect object; *à* or *de?*
§ 138 " clause
§ 139 absolute infinitive; independent propositions
§ 140 infinitive in subordinate clause and *que*
§ 141 " used alone; oral drill; seasons; months
§ 142 infinitive *être* omitted; various examples
§ 143 few verbs linked without preposition
§ 144 all prepositions followed by infinitive except *en;* general review

LESSON XV 183

§ 145 participle in general
§ 146 participial clause
§ 147 participle related to subject (object)
§ 148 gerund and *en*
§ 149 specific distinction
§ 150 present participle as adjective
§ 151 " " " preposition
§ 152 " " " substantive
§ 153 prepositional locutions, etc.
§ 154 orthography varying in verbal adjectives
§ 155 *en* plus a verb; its use; further drill on prepositions

LESSON XVI 190

§ 156 past participle
§ 157 " " implying a state of being
§ 158 " " as adjective
§ 159 " " plus *de*
§ 160 " " related to a pronoun
§ 161 " " as a noun; *en* with names of countries
§ 162 " " as preposition

PAGE

§ 163 past participle with *être*
§ 164 " " in passive verbs
§ 165 " " in neuter verbs and *être*
§ 166 " " of passive and neuter verbs
§ 167 " " of impersonal verbs

LESSON XVII 196

§ 168 past participle with *avoir* (or *être* in the reflexive verbs); after *combien de; autant de; que de; la foule de*, etc.; after a few gallicisms; after redundant past
§ 169 remarks on *avoir* plus past participle
§ 170 special rules on past part. plus an infinitive, etc.
§ 171 same rule when followed by another past *or* present participle and exceptions
§ 172 past participle between two *que*
§ 173 past participle preceded by *le* (*l'*); *cela*
§ 174 *en* and the past participle
§ 175 " " " " " (continued)
§ 176 and after *le peu de; la foule de*
§ 177 past participle of a reflexive verb
§ 178 a reflexive verb expresses what?
§ 179 reciprocal, reflexive, pronominal verbs
§ 180 list of verbs essentially pronominal
§ 181 active or neuter (intransitive) may take reflexive form; illustrated

PART III

REGULAR VERBS ENDING IN *-ER* CONJUGATED IN FULL

LESSON XVIII 209

§ 1 *parler* to speak; present indicative, etc.; conversation only
§ 2 *tout* (m.)—*toute* (f.); *tous* (m. pl.)—*toutes* (f. pl.) all, every, whole, any; all, every, whole, any
§ 3 imperfect of *parler* and previous rules applied
§ 4 *je parlai* past definite (preterit)
§ 5 *je parlerai* future; its uses
§ 6 *je parlerais* conditional (present)
§ 7 *parle; parlons; parlez* imperative

PAGE

LESSON XIX 216

§ 8 *que je parle* subjunctive present
§ 9 *que je parlasse* imperfect (subj.)
§ 10 subjunctive past and pluperfect
§ 11 past indefinite *j'ai parlé*
§ 12 pluperfect (indicative) *j'avais parlé*
§ 13 past anterior *j'eus parlé*
§ 14 future past *j'aurai parlé*
§ 15 conditional past (first form) *j'aurais parlé*
§ 16 conditional past (second form) *j'eusse parlé*
§ 17 imperative perfect *aie parlé*
§ 18 subjunctive past *que j'aie parlé*
§ 19 subjunctive pluperfect *que j'eusse parlé*

LESSON XX 223

§ 20 various expressions on: *parler* and verbs of the first group
§ 21 verbs ending in *-ger*
§ 22 " ending in *-cer*
§ 23 " with *é* on the penultimate
§ 24 " with an unaccented *e*
§ 25 " ending in *-ler* or *-ter*
§ 25 " ending in *-ler* or *-ter; éer* or *-ier*
§ 26 " " " *-oyer; -uyer*
§ 27 " " " *-ayer; -eyer*

LESSON XXI 230

REGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND GROUP IN *-IR*

§ 28 present indicative *je finis* with full practice
§ 29 imperfect *je finissais;* its uses
§ 30 past definite (preterit) *je finis*
§ 31 past indefinite (perfect) *j'ai fini* and with *le; la; les; en*
§ 32 redundant past
§ 33 past anterior *j'eus fini*

LESSON XXII 237

§ 34 pluperfect *j'avais fini*
§ 35 future (and near future) *je finirai*

PAGE

§ 36 future past *j'aurai fini*
§ 37 redundant past
§ 38 conditional present *je finirais*
§ 39 " past (first form) *j'aurais fini*
§ 40 " " (second form) *j'eusse fini*
§ 41 *ne* after *si* (unless); *depuis que; il y a* (*voilà*) . . . *que*
§ 42 *ne* in a subordinate clause, etc.
§ 43 *ne* in certain independent clauses
§ 44 *ne* preceded by a negative interrogative
§ 45 *ne* and negation implied
§ 46 imperative *finis; finissons; finissez*
§ 47 imperative perfect *aie fini*
§ 48 subjunctive (present) *que je finisse*
§ 49 imperfect (subj.) *que je finisse*
§ 50 subjunctive past *que j'aie fini*
§ 51 subjunctive pluperfect *que j'eusse fini*

LESSON XXIII 248

§ 52 *recevoir* (to receive) of frequent use; present indicative *je reçois*
§ 53 imperfect indicative *je recevais* with important vocabulary
§ 54 past definite (preterit) *je reçus*
§ 55 past indefinite (perfect) *j'ai reçu*
§ 56 note: *plus; moins; autant; combien*, etc.; *tant; assez; trop; un peu*
§ 57 positive; comparative; superlative
§ 58 and with possessive adjectives
§ 59 pluperfect (indicative) *j'avais reçu*
§ 60 *de* after a negation; before an adjective as *some* (*any*); reviewed:
§ 61 *du; de l'; de la; des*
§ 62 past anterior *j'eus reçu*
§ 63 future *je recevrai;* and near future, etc.
§ 64 future anterior (past) *j'aurai reçu*
§ 65 conditional present *je recevrais;* imperfect with *si;* as review
§ 66 conditional past (first form) *j'aurais reçu*
§ 67 " " (second form) *j'eusse reçu*
§ 68 imperative *reçois; recevons; recevez*

PAGE

§ 69 subjunctive present *que je reçoive*
§ 70 imperfect subj. *que je reçusse*
§ 71 subj. past *que j'aie reçu*
§ 72 pluperfect subj. *que j'eusse reçu*
§ 73 six verbs conjugated likewise

LESSON XXIV 264

§ 74 *devoir* to owe (and which is of frequent use) followed by a verb may mean: *must*, etc.; its compound tenses: *j'ai dû;* etc.
§ 75 *devoir* as auxiliary
§ 76 *dû* as a noun; also *devoir*
§ 77 *reçu* as a noun
§ 78 various examples on: *devoir*, *recevoir*, etc.; material for composition

LESSON XXV 271

THIRD GROUP OF REGULAR VERBS ENDS IN *-RE*

§ 79 *rompre* to break (off, up, etc.): present indicative *je romps;* its uses
§ 79 note other verbs ending in *(d) re*
§ 80 present indicative *je romps;* its uses
§ 81 imperfect *je rompais;* its uses
§ 82 past definite *je rompis;* its uses
§ 83 past indefinite *j'ai rompu;* its uses
§ 84 pluperfect *j'avais rompu;* its uses
§ 85 past anterior *j'eus rompu;* its uses
§ 86 future *je romprai;* its uses
§ 87 future past *j'aurai rompu;* its uses
§ 88 conditional present *je romprais*, etc.
§ 89 " past (first form) *j'aurais rompu*
§ 90 " past (second form) *j'eusse rompu*
§ 91 imperative *romps; rompons; rompez*

LESSON XXVI 280

§ 92 present subjunctive *que je rompe*
§ 93 imperfect subjunctive *que je rompisse*
§ 94 review of above

PAGE

§ 95 hypothetical clause
§ 96 subjunctive past (perfect) *que j'aie rompu*
§ 97 pluperfect subj. *que j'eusse rompu*
§ 98 pluperfect subj. and final review

LESSON XXVII 285

§ 99 all tenses of a passive verb (conjugated) in *-er*
§ 100 present indicative *je suis aimé (e)*
§ 101 imperfect *j'étais aimé (e)*
§ 102 past definite *je fus aimé (e)*
§ 103 past indefinite (perfect) *j'ai été aimé (e)*
§ 104 pluperfect *j'avais été aimé (e)*
§ 105 past anterior *j'eus été aimé (e)*
§ 106 future *je serai aimé (e)*
§ 107 future anterior *j'aurai été aimé (e)*
§ 108 conditional present *je serais aimé (e)*
§ 109 " past *j'aurais été aimé (e)*
§ 110 imperative *sois aimé (e)*
§ 111 " perfect *aie été aimé (e)*
§ 112 present subj. *que je sois aimé (e)*
§ 113 past subj. *que j'aie été aimé (e)*
§ 114 imperfect subj. *que je fusse aimé (e)*
§ 115 pluperfect subj. *que j'eusse été aimé (e)*
§ 116 infinitive present *être aimé (e)*
§ 117 infinitive perfect *avoir été aimé*
§ 118 present part. *étant aimé*
§ 119 perfect part. *ayant été aimé*
§ 120 past (part.) *aimé; aimée*
§ 121 rule governing past part.

LESSON XXVIII 291

§ 122 *être* conjugated
§ 123 present indicative, etc., *je suis*
§ 124 conjugation of a neuter (intransitive) verb; *tomber* to fall; conjugated in full
§ 125 *tomber* and its compound tenses
§ 126 other neuter verbs conjugated with *être*
§ 127 other neuter verbs with *être* and *avoir*
§ 128 other neuter verbs with *avoir* only; few impersonal verbs; material for general conversation

PAGE

LESSON XXIX 298

§ 129 reflexives distinguished; pronominal; reflexive; reciprocal
§ 130 reciprocal action
§ 131 reflexive for the passive voice
§ 132 pronominal verb (conjugated) in *-ir*
§ 133 *s'être repenti* to have repented

LESSON XXX 302

§ 134 conjugation of an impersonal verb: *neiger* to snow
§ 135 cardinal numbers
§ 136 ordinal numbers
§ 137 ages—dimensions
§ 138 time of day—dates—fractions

PART IV

IRREGULAR VERBS 309

(all in alphabetical order)
ending in *-er*
ending in *-ir*
ending in *-oir*
ending in *-re*

GENERAL VOCABULARY 363

INDEX OF VERBS 439

PART I

PRONUNCIATION AND PRACTICAL PHONETICS

I.—Punctuation

Its first use dates 200 years B.C. and is attributed to Aristophanes of Byzantium. But it was not generally used as the pauses replaced it. In French it plays an important part.

§ 1. *Virgule.*—The comma (virgula or little rod used by the Romans) was first used in correcting sentences, then for pauses in sentences.

Le père, la mère, le fils sont bons.
Le français est facile, le travail difficile.
La Lexicologie, ou étude des mots, du vocabulaire.
La Morphologie, ou étude des formes.
La Syntaxe, ou étude des propositions.
L'inspecteur, dit le maire, est un âne.
L'an 1909, le 6 mars, à huit heures du soir, les élèves se sont réunis en assemblée générale, au lieu ordinaire de leurs séances, à X. . , rue Z. . , no. . .

New-York, le 4 janvier 1909.

Monsieur X. . , agriculteur à X. . , 25, rue Saint-Saëns, Aix.
Monsieur,

. . . . . .

«*Je dis toujours la même chose, et, si ce n'était pas toujours la même chose, je ne dirais pas toujours la même chose.*» (*Don Juan*, II, i.)
Le voilà, le chameau.
A votre âge, Napoléon était mort.
La France, amis, sera toujours la France.
Et les Français seront toujours Français.
Petite âme errante, caressante.
Allons, enfants de la patrie,
Le jour de gloire est arrivé!
Et moi aussi, je suis peintre.
La mer est belle, calme, tranquille.
Qui va doucement, va sûrement.
Je suis venu, j'ai vu, j'ai vaincu.
Le temps, c'est de l'argent.
Madame, êtes-vous protectrice de cette école?

Rule: A comma contributes to clearness by indicating small interruptions between subjects, attributes, verbs, and propositions. Words in apposition, explanations, etc., require the comma; in fact any group of words or short clause.

§ 2. *Point-Virgule* (;) or semicolon marks, as in English, the division of sentences somewhat more lengthy although strictly connected by the sense.

Son rhumatisme le fait souffrir; la fièvre l'a repris.
Mon cheval est blanc; celui de mon père est noir.

§ 3. *Point* (period).—In abbreviations or at the end of a complete sentence. See *colon*.

M. ou Mme. Mlle., etc.
L'Amérique, l'Europe, l'Asie, l'Afrique, et l'Océanie.

§ 4. *Point d'Interrogation* (?).—In questions; not in indirect questions.

Quel est cet homme?
But, *je demande quel est cet homme.*

§ 5. *Point d'Exclamation* (!).—In interjections or sentences expressing joy, admiration, terror, etc.

O Liberté! que de crimes on commet en ton nom.
Dieu sauve le roi!

§ 6. *Points de Suspensions* (. . .).—In quotations they mark the omission of superfluous words; in descriptions they mark interruptions, reticence.

Présents: MM. . .
Absents: MM. . .
Sur la première question, M. C. . . demande la parole et . . .
Je l'ai vu, dis-je, vu, de mes propres yeux vu,
Ce qui s'appelle vu. . . . . .
. . . . . Oh! si j'avais des ailes
Vers ce beau ciel si pur je voudrais les ouvrir.
(Musset, *Rolla*)

§ 7. *Parenthèses* ( ), parentheses.—Any special and complete sentence is inserted between ( ).

§ 8. *Crochets* [ ], brackets.

La grammaire nous enseigne à parler et à écrire sans faire de fautes (c'est-à-dire correctement).
Saint-Saëns [sanss].
Bélise. Veux-tu toute ta vie offenser la grammaire?
Martine. Qui parle d'offenser grand'mère ni grand-père?
(Molière, *Les Femmes savantes*, acte II, sc. vi.)
Ouvrez la parenthèse: (; fermez-la:)

§ 9. *Guillemets* (« »).—In French special marks are used which are placed at the beginning and end of a quotation, but on the line, not above it, as in English; sometimes at the beginning of every line and of each stanza quoted.

Madame de Sévigné comparait les fables de La Fontaine à un panier de cerises: «D'abord, disait-elle, on veut ne manger seulement que les plus belles, puis ensuite on finit par ne rien laisser du tout.»

§ 10. *Tiret* (—) or dash.—In a dialogue it serves to note the remarks of a different speaker, also to replace the words: *répondit-il, dit-il.*

.....*«Mon moulin est à moi,*
Tout aussi bien, au moins, que la Prusse est au roi.
—Allons, ton dernier mot, bonhomme, et prends-y garde!
—Faut-il vous parler clair?—Oui.—C'est que je le garde.»
(Andrieux.)

§ 11. * *astérisque.*

§ 12. { *accolade.*

§ 13. † *croix de renvoi.*

§ 14. *Majuscules* or Capital Letters.—Mostly used as in English, except when words are adjectives.

Le poète américain, français, allemand, anglais, etc.

§ 15. *Minuscules* or small letters are used in the days of the weeks, months, names of religions, philosophical schools, etc.

Le mardi, le samedi, le dimanche.
Le catholicisme, le protestantisme.
L'école pythagoricienne, etc.

II.—French Alphabet

Majuscules or Capital Letters:
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

Minuscules or Small Letters:
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z

§ 16. Old Pronunciation:

A as	ah	H as	ash	O as	oh	V as	vay
B	bay	I	ee	P	pay	W	doobl-vay
C	say	J	jhee	Q	kü	X	iks
D	day	K	kah	R	air	Y	ee-grek
E	ay	L	ell	S	ess	Z	zed
F	eff	M	emm	T	tay		
G	zhay	N	enn	U	ü		

Modern Pronunciation of Consonants (see page 21):

B as	be	H as	he	N as	ne	T as	te	CH as	she
C	se	J	zhe	P	pe	V	ve	GN	gne
D	de	K	ke	Q	(que) ke	W	ve		
F	fe	L	le	R	re	X	kse		
G	jhe	M	me	S	se	Z	ze		

(the *e* as in water.)

III.—Orthographic Marks

are: acute, grave, circumflex, cedilla, apostrophe, diæresis and hyphen.

§ 17. The acute accent occurs only on *e* which is sounded as *ay: été, répété,* etc.

§ 18. The grave occurs on *à, là,* voil*à,* déj*à,* o*ù* and mostly on words ending in *ère, ète, ène:* p*è*re, m*è*re, fr*è*re, je répète, je m*è*ne, etc.

§ 19. The circumflex (gráve and acute) shows frequently the loss of *s* in *tête, fête, hôpital, hôte,* etc.

In the old French those words are written *teste, feste,* etc.

In 1680 P. Richelet wrote these words with the circumflex; the *s* being no longer pronounced in those words from the 13th century to 1740 was continued however to be used by some writers.

On certain vowels it is a sign of contraction: mûr = mëur = maturum, sûr = sëur = securum.

§ 20. Cedilla (introduced in 1529)—in Italian *zediglia* or little *z*—was placed under *c* to give it the sound of *s* before *a, o, u.*

Français, leçon, reçu.

§ 21. Apostrophe.—As in English it shows the elision of the vowels *a, e, i,* at the end of a word and before another word beginning with *h* mute or a vowel: thus: *l'ami, l'homme, l'âme, s'il vous plaît.*

§ 22. Diæresis (trema) was introduced in 1540. The two dots over *ï, ë, ü* in Noël, Saül, haïr, ciguë, etc., indicate that the vowels are sounded separately: No-ël, Sa-ül, ha-ïr, etc., etc.

Otherwise the words do not form a diphthong: *ligue, catalogue,* etc.

§ 23. Hyphen.—To-day it has become optional in connecting words or groups of words into one; we may write with or without the hyphen: *chef-lieu* or *chef lieu; moi-même* or *moi même; ai-je* or *ai je; dis-le* or *dis le.*

The hyphen was first used in 1573.

Note.—It may not be advisable to omit it in Verbs of the first conjugation such as *aimé-je, flatté-je* or in *a-t-il,* etc.

Classification of Vowels and Consonants

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y.*—They are either short or long: thus, *à, a* are short; *a* (letter) is long. Moreover, they are divided into tonic, atonic.

In the 16th century the *j* and the *v* (*i* and *u* consonants) were often written *i* or *j*, *u* or *v* by the French. Dubois (1531) first distinguished *i* from *j* and *v* from *u*.

In the following lessons, the vowels will be carefully studied from a practical point of view.

§ 24. Consonants:

7 dental—*d, l, n, r, s, t, z.*
6 labial—*b, f, m, p, v, w.*
3 palatal—*k* (*c*), *g, h.*
2 spirants—*ch, j.*

IV.—Table of French Sounds and Symbols with approximate English Equivalents

VOWELS

SYMBOL	EXAMPLES	ENGLISH APPROXIMATE
a	p*a*tte	r*a*t
ɑ	p*a*s	c*a*lm
â	*an*	w*a*nt
e	*été*	f*a*te
ɛ	f*ai*t, fête	m*e*t
ê	v*in*, p*ain*	c*a*mp
ə	l*e*, m*e*ner	vill*a*
i	s*i*, l*y*re	pol*i*ce
o	rôti, s*o*t	r*o*se
ɔ	*o*péra	r*u*b
ɔ̃	b*on*, p*o*mpe	d*o*n't
ø	p*eu*, M*eu*se	s*ea*rch
œ	s*eu*l, sœur	t*u*b
œ̃	*un*, parf*um*	*u*(r)n
u	s*ou*, b*ou*t	m*oo*d
y	s*u*, sûr	ú(German)

SEMI-VOWELS

j	r*i*en, b*i*en	y*ea*r
ɥ	h*ui*t, t*ua*	s*w*eet
w	*oui*, poêle	s*w*ell

CONSONANTS

SYMBOL	EXAMPLES	ENGLISH APPROXIMATE
b	*b*eau, so*b*re	*b*eau
d	*d*ans, su*d*	see*d*y
f	*f*aux, neu*f*	*f*ool
g	*g*arçon	ri*g*
h	*h*aut, *h*air	w(*h*)ere
k	*c*argo, *c*uré	si*ck*
l	*l*a, seu*l*	*L*ee
m	*m*a, ra*m*e	*m*e
n	*n*on, *n*i	*n*ot
ɲ	ca*ñ*on, sig*n*e	ca*ñ*on
p	*p*apa, ta*p*er	ca*p*er
r	*r*at, *r*ès	*r*oar
s	*s*i, lance	*s*ee
ʃ	ma*ch*ine	ma*ch*ine
t	*t*rop, pa*tt*e	sen*t*ry
v	*v*u, arri*v*er	arri*v*e
z	ro*s*e, *z*est	bree*z*e

ge, gi, gy = *ʒə, ʒi*, or: jə, ji
: sign of length

V.—Simple Vowels

§ 25. *A*.—Its timbre or quality of voice. When long the *a* is uttered fully and deeply in upward direction:

La (note in music), *Jacques*, *a* (letter of the alphabet), *âme*, *âne*, *grâce*, *mât*, *lâche*, *gars*, *Dumas*, *mâtin*, *mâle*, *rage*, *pâte*, *tas*, *bât*, *crâne*, *câble*, *fable*, *etc.*

Short *a*:—*Il a*, *à*, *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, *la*, *là*, *ça*, *sofa*, *il parla*,—in all verbs ending in—er: *nous parlâmes*, *vous parlâtes*, *Versailles*, *paille*, *bague*, *champagne*, *sacre*, *tache*, *place*, *acte*, *pacte*, *pâtisserie*, *lame*, etc.

NOTE.—On the last syllable but one, the vowel is generally short when followed by a double consonant: *salle*, *pelle*, *folle*, *motte*, *butte*, *ville*, etc.

The *a* grave sound under the roof of the mouth; it is louder, larger, fuller than *a* aigu. The latter requires only a slight effort and expires on the lower lip.

In the French language the vowels (short) are always *voyelles aiguës* and the *graves* always long. From the *grave* to the *aigu* there are degrees of sonority or nuances of sound, but they are not as sharply defined as in the case of the vowel *e*.

Some writers maintain that *a* may be uttered in five different ways according to its position in a word. The first *a* in *papa* is shorter than the last; the *a* in *Paris* is shorter than *a* circumflex in Pâris; the *a* in *pâte* reaches the roof of the mouth while the *a* in *patte* is flat; the *a* in *phrase*, *écraser* is deeper than *a* in *race*, *face*; *a* in *car* sounds further back into the mouth than *avoir*; the last *a* in *Canada* more upward than *at* in *avocat*.

E

§ 26. *E naturel* in *le*, *me*, *te*, *ce*, *se*, *que*, *ne*, and *je*.
E fermé in *vérité*, *été*, *répété*, *parler* (verbs of the first conjugation); *léger*, *chez*, *entrez*, *nez*, etc.
E ouvert in *père*, *mère*, *frère*, *hiver*, *fer*, *vert*, *cher*, *hier*, *mer*, etc., sounds as *ai* in *air*.
Also in *les*, *des*, *mes*, *ses*, *tes*, *ces*, *est*, etc.
E ouvert allongé in *bête*, *tête*, *fête*, *même*, *tempête*, etc., sounds as a prolonged *ai* in *air*.

NOTE.—The *é fermé* is called *masculin*, because at the end of an adjective or past participle, it denotes the masculine gender: *aimé*.

E mute without accent is slightly pronounced at the end of a syllable: mond*e*, pell*e*; it is silent in s*oie*, s*oierie*.

The mute *e*, medial or final, seems since the 15th century, to have been either mute or heard as it is to-day in conversation. Ex.: *J' n'en sais rien*, but, we say: *je n'sais pas*. Other examples: *j'vais mettre un' let' à la pos'* for *je vais mettre une lettre à la poste; c'est un' fenêtre*, although we say, *la f'nêtre*.

E mute is also silent in: prier*ai*, jouer*ai*, pri*e*, pri*es*, pri*ent*, oublier*ai*, etc.

Rule: After an unaccented (atonic) vowel, after an accented (tonic) vowel, the *e* is silent; after a consonant it is almost silent: *il criera, il louera, samedi;* in other words, the mute *e* is the weakest of our French sounds generally audible at the end of words like: mond*e*, fidèl*e*, but silent in joli*e*, foli*e*.

E mute is often elided at the end of words immediately followed by a vowel or *h* mute: *une oreille attentive, une heureuse année, la vie est un songe.*

NOTE.—In poetry, a mute syllable does not count at the end of a line, neither in any part of the line when elided.

E mute is called *féminin* because it forms the feminine of adjectives: *pur, pure; cher, chère; saint, sainte; complet, complète;* in poetry, it designates the *rimes féminines.*

Grammarians say: there cannot be two mute *e*'s in succession at the end of a word.

Dieu a créé le monde; in this example both *e*'s are acute. *L'école fut fondée;* the final *e* is silent.

In words of one syllable, the voice hardly attacks the *e;* especially in colloquial utterance: *jĕ nĕ lĕ fĕrai pas; qu'est-cĕ quĕ c'est quĕ ça?*

Pronunciation of the *E*.—Open the mouth (drawing a long breath) expel the breath; the full sound of *e* in water (no *r* sound) is reached in French by advancing the lower lip downwards.

Modern pronunciation of French consonants: *be, ce, de, fe,* etc.

From the preceding remarks pupils may be able to read several words, to spell at least their names in French, to divide words into syllables, etc.

Review

§ 27. For our practical purposes we review briefly: In conversation the *a, e* (simple vowels) are sounded more quickly than in elocution, singing or poetry.

Feminine syllables characterized by the so-called *e* mute are very quickly sounded.

To avoid monotony, articulate the division of syllables.

Dictation from the first lessons will gradually help you to hear and distinguish simple sounds.

Règles Générales

§ 28. Any syllable is short whose last vowel is followed by a final consonant (except *s* or *z*):

Le sac, le bac, crac, trictrac, bal, aval, pal, car, instar, par, parc, arc, cap, combat, avocat, in adjectives: *plat, ingrat.*

Grec, sec, and verbs of the first conjugation: parler, chanter, etc.; *et, il remet, il met,* and its compounds.

All the preceding nouns, any masculine syllable (*i. e.*, not ending in mute *e*), short or not in the singular, is long in the plural: *les sacs, les Grecs, les bals,* etc.

A and *E* are long before two indivisible *RR: bizarre, carreau, arrêt, terre, verre.*

S lengthens the *a* and *e* in the penultimate syllable: *case, phrase, base, table, rase, diocèse, thèse.*

Words of dictation:

Pré, gaz, bas, bras, mal, thé, est, rat, blé, arc, chat, sac, mer, âtre, être, âne, hâte, râle, rêve, rêne, pêche, câpre, pâtre, chêne. Le pré, le gaz, le bras, le mal, le thé, le rat, le blé, l'arc, le chat, le sac, la mer, l'âtre, l'être, l'âne, la hâte, le râle, le rêve, la rêne, la pêche, la câpre, le pâtre, le chêne, etc.

Other examples:

L'été, le café, la pâte, le tréma, le chêne, la serre, la terre, le nectar, la vie, la patte, l'armée, la mer, le général, le lac, la tâche, la tache, le lâche, la vache, l'acre, la cascade, la salade, la carafe, la balafre le mâle, la dalle, César, la trappe, la cabane, la cave, la taxe, la Grèce, la pelle, la scène, Athènes, la gêne, Hélène, la lèpre, je pèse, le mètre, Genève, la sève, l'orfèvre, la lèvre.

I

§ 29. *I* has the sound of *ee* in English: *ami, image timide.*

NOTE.—*aï, ïa, oï* are sounded separately in *Jamaïque, ïambique, égoïste,* etc.

I in the Parisian pronunciation, preceded by two different consonants, is always long: *patriarche,* etc.

Dictation:

L'ami, l'amie, les amis, les amies, le mardi, les mardis, le samedi, les samedis, la biche, les biches, la bible, les bibles, la vie, l'amitié, la maxime, la rime, l'épine, la cire, le Christ, le titre, l'épître, la vitre, le litre, la piste. Haïr, Sinaï, Thaïs, Moïse, etc.

Ici, Daniel, animal, aride, acide, défi, garni, minime, nièce, optique, palmiste, pipe, rapide, rétréci, riche, ride, rire, rive, thébaïque, visite, vice, la vie, vizir.

O

§ 30. Long and closed, generally with the circumflex accent, followed by: *le, me, ne,* at the end of a word: *drôle, pôle, rôle, dôme, fantôme, je chôme, Rhône, cône, prône,* also in *apôtre, le nôtre, le vôtre, la vôtre, les nôtres, les vôtres,* etc.

Short in any syllable when vowel *o* is followed by final consonant (not *s* or *z*).

Roc, bol, Médoc, pot, robe, globe, sobre, broche, étoffe, ode, loge, golfe, volte, philosophe, propre, époque, mot, sot, hôtel, rôti, notre, votre, col, écho, etc.

Medium in homme, comme, somme, pomme, il tonne, je donne, etc.

Dictate *o* long in the following words:

Tôt, hôte, rose, les dominos, le, la poêle, il rôde; a few Greek words: *zone, arome, atome, hippodrome, idiome, axiome, chrome, atone, tome, gnome, Sodome, amazone,* also *corps, porc* (no c), *repos, gros, prévôt, dépôt, table d'hôte, alcôve.*

Dictate *o* short in:

Rosée, rôtir, dévot, orge, orgue, orme, morgue, madone, Rome, économe, école, solde, vogue, loge, dogme, coffre, noble, opéra, hôpital, bloc, docte

O has the same sound in *eau*, *au*, *eaux*, *aux: tableau*, ***tableaux***, ***château***, *châteaux*, *beau*, *beaux*, *chapeau*, *chapeaux*, *peau*, *peaux*, etc.

Endings in *aud*, *auld*, *aut*, *ault*, have same sound as o: cha*ud*, La Rochefouc*auld*, s*aut*, Esc*aut*, Duf*ault*, etc.

Review: *S* lengthens *o* in the penultimate: *prose*, *chose*, etc.

SS shortens it: *brosse*, *bosse*, *brosse*, *Ecosse:* a few exceptions; *fosse*, *grosse*, etc.

O long in *rose*, etc., becomes shorter before masculine syllable: ***arroser***, *oser*, *poser*, etc.

O before *r* or *s* (sounded) is short: *ordre*, *riposte*, *poste*, *postérité*, *postiche*, *porter*, *apporter*, *rosbif*, *sorbet*, *bosquet*, etc.

O final is short in the singular: *zéro*, *duo*, *cacao*, *dynamo*.

§ 31. *U* is difficult to master at first; by placing *s* before it you control your lips without moving them, first hissing slowly *sü* (without parting lips nor rounding them) then more forcibly (always avoiding *oo* sound), you hear gradually *ü* on the tip of the tongue, then produce it suddenly as if beginning to hum.

Constant practice with *s* before *ü* as if striking the notes on a piano or humming may help you greatly.

NOTE.—Once you control the lips, then practice without *s*.

U as *a*, *e*, *i*, *o* is generally short before double consonants: *lutte*, *butte*, *Russe*, *Russie*, *Prusse*, *Hussard*.

U short in past participles: *vu*, *perdu*, *su*, except *cru*, *du*, *mu*, and in *dû*, *crû*.

U short in words ending: *ue*, *u*me, *ul*, *u*lbe, *u*lpe, *u*ble, *u*bre, *uc*, *u*ce, *u*rne; *u* with *s* (sounded) j*u*ste, b*u*ste, etc., or *ux*, *u*xe, *u*ne, trib*u*ne, br*u*me, n*ul*, b*u*lbe, p*u*lpe, chas*u*ble, d*u*c, di*u*rne, l*u*xe, etc.

U long generally with a circumflex: *flûte*, *affût*, *fût*, *piqûre*, *sûr*, *mûre;* also in verbs.

U with plural nouns is long: *les ducs*, *les menus*, etc.

Ue always long; *ciguë*, *morue*, *tortue*, *statue*, *vue*.

Dictation:

Du, tu, lu, su, nu, parvenu, club, il remuera, parfumerie, dune, unanime, unième, Ruth, minute, il fut, il est rusé, elle est rusée, dur, durée, omnibus, sûr, sur, gageure, eu, la jupe, nous eûmes, étude, la bûche de Noël, etc.

Y (ee)

§ 32. *Y* was often used at the end of words instead of *i* and had the same pronunciation.

To-day it is used for an *i* in words derived from the Greek; and for two *i* in words strictly French: *myriade, gymnase, lyre, style,* but *ayant* (as two *i* in a few French verbs), in *pays, paysage, rayon, crayon, aloyau, payer,* etc.

Dictation:

Physique, mystère, Syracuse, Syrie, syllabe, La Fayette, La Haye, Cayenne, Biscaye, Mayence, mayonnaise, analyse, Tyrol, Egypte, gymnastique, cynique, il y a, étymologie, il a payé sa note, Ivry, acolyte, psyché, Babylone, homonymes, Cyrus, Le Puy, Thermopyles, polygone, l'oxygène, les Pyrénées, paronymes, Sylvestre, Bayard, La Bruyère, Sully, Valmy, myope, myosotis, Tyr, Pyrrhus, Yvonne, Yves, Ulysse, Château-Thierry, cyclone, paysan.

Union of Vowels: ae, ao, ea, ai, aie, ey, ei, eai, eau, eo, ie, oeu, eu

§ 33. *AE* in *Caen, Saint-Saëns,* the *a* is silent: kan, sain-sanss.

AO.—O is silent in *Laon, faon, paon, taon: an* in w*an*t (no *t*) as lan, fan, pan, tan.

AO.—A is silent in *août, Saône;* but in the verb *aoûter a* is sounded: *oo,* sone, in l*o*ng (no *g*) and ah-oo-tay.

EA.—e before *a* softens the *g* in verbs: *il songea, mangea,* etc.

§ 34. *AI.*—4 sounds of *ai.*

(1) as *ay* (or *é*) in verbs; *j'ai, je parlai, je chantai, je parlerai,* etc.

(2) as *e* in fa*i*sant, *nous faisons, satisfaisant.*

(3) as *è* in *ais, ait, aie, aies, aient* (verb endings) or nouns *ais, ail, aix, aid, air,* etc. *J'avais, tu avais, il avait, que j'aie, que tu aies, qu'il ait, qu'ils aient.* In *plaie, maison, maître, air, clair, éclair, chaise, paire, palais, Anglais, Français, Ecossais, lait, s'il vous plaît, parfait, parfaite, aile, vrai, vraie,* but not in *gaie* or *je sais.*

(4) as *ă* in *douairière, Montaigne.* Larousse says: Monta-gne or tègne. L'abbé Rousselot says: dwèryèr as Larousse.

AIE.—Is long and open sound of *è* (grave); *raie, futaie,* etc.

EY.—In whiskey has *e* open: *è*, also in bey, Guernesey, Jersey, Brueys (bru-ess), Talleyrand-Périgord: tal-è-ran. In other cases generally *e* acute: Ceylan, asseyez-vous, etc.

EI.—As *è* grave: *reine, Seine, seigle, seize, treize, beige, peigne,* etc.

EAI.—As *é* acute in *je voyageai, mangeai, jugeai,* also in *geai.*

In démange*ai*son and *eais, eait, eai*ent (verbs), has open sound of ɛ: je mange*ais*, tu mange*ais*, il mange*ait*, ils mange*aient.*

EAU.—As *ō* in English: *beau, chapeau,* etc.

NOTE.—*AU* is short in *Paul, aussi, aussitôt, paupière, augmenter, austère, Austerlitz, Haussmann, aurore, sauf,* but long in *sauve,* in other words *au* initial or medial is long before feminine syllable and in endings *aux.*

Combined Vowels

§ 35. *EO.*—In *geôle, geôlier, flageolet, rougeole, Georges,* the *g* is soft and *e* is silent.

IE final, *e* is silent: partie, sortie, also in je prierai, supplierai, etc.

§ 36. *EU, ŒU* has 4 sounds of *eu:* eu, oeu, oe in *œil,* in endings ueil.

Eu as *e* in *jeune.*

EU, ŒU (*i* in *sir*).—To avoid the sounds of *e* as in *le, de, ce,* you advance the lips while rounding them with the help of *s* in *sir* (no *r* sound), you explode the long, upward *eu,* the lower lip slightly downward. Practice first with *s*, then other consonants.

Eu is closed in *peu, feu, chartreuse, berceuse, Meuse, deux,* or plural endings: *yeux, ceux;* œu*fs* and bœu*fs* (*fs* silent), *bleu, bleus, bleue, lieue, lieu, jeûner, déjeuner.*

Eu open in *seul*, fleuve, *œuvre*, fleur, neuf, heure, beurre, plusieurs, *ailleurs*.

Eu medium in heureux, *Europe*, generally before a sonorous syllable.

Eu is *u* in *eu* (*avoir*), *eue* in *gageure, j'eus, tu eus, il eut, nous eûmes, vous eûtes, ils eurent, que j'eusse, que tu eusses, qu'il eût, que nous eussions, que vous eussiez, qu'ils eussent.*

EUR in *monsieur:* me-si-eu, or in the plural.

ŒU as *eu: œuf, nœud, sœur, cœur, chœur*, etc.

OE: eu in *Goethe;* in other cases is *é* acute: *Œdipe, œsophage, œcuménique.*

OU

§ 37. *Ou* as *oo* in English: *tout, sou, boue, atout, loup, ou, où, boule, Louvre, rouge;* advance lips while rounding them.

OU medium in courte, langouste, bourse, source, bouc, croûte, outre, coupe, troupe, mousse, pouce, ouf!, bouche, foule, trouble, oubli.

Diphthongs: oi, ui, oui and oë

§ 38. *OI* was used frequently in the imperfect and conditional: *j'avois, je dirois*, also in *foible, roide, harnois*, etc.

To-day *ai* is used instead of above examples.

OI (o-a, long *o* with short *a*), in *moi, toi, soi, loi, foi, roi, froid, trois, mois, pois*, etc.

OI medium in *voix, choix, une fois, Gaulois, je dois, bourgeois*, etc.

OI open in *poivre, coiffeur, turquoise, bourgeoise, boire, soir, poire, noir;* in endings *oive: que je recoive*, etc.

OI in *oignon, poigne, poignard*, the *i* is silent.

OI in *roide, roideur, roidir*, we write now *raide* (rè-de), etc.

Oă sound in *moelle*; oā long in *poêle.*

UI (u-i)

§ 39. *U* is very long, then part the lips for *ĭ: lui, luisant, luire, fuir, suivre, cuivre, Juif, juive, cuisine, cuir, suisse, suite, suivi, suicide, suie, truite, les Tuileries.*

UI in a few words with *g:* gu-i in *le duc de Guise*, *aiguille* (ay-gu-ee-ye), *aiguiser*, in other cases *ui* is not a diphthong: *qui*, *guitare*, *guide*, *Guy*, *quitte*, etc.

OUI

§ 40. *OUI* (ōō-i) in *Louis*, *Louise*, *jouir*, *réjouir*, *oui*, *joui*, *réjoui*, *éblouir*, *ébloui*, *ouïr*, etc.
-ouille, final in many words: (oo-eĕye) *houille*, *fouille*, *rouille*, *grenouille*, etc.

Dictation on Diphthongs (omitting nasal vowels which will be our next study):

aïe!, *bourgeois*, *la Pléïade*, *je priai*, *le fabliau*, *plie*, *pied*, *prière*, *Dieu*, *violer*, *chiourme*, *piano*, *ionique*, *diurne*, *boa*, *Noailles*, *moelle*, *poêle*, *roi*, *Edouard*, *Douai*, *rastaquouère*, *roué*, *noueux*, *Louise*, *fouine*, *suave*, *Suétone*, *Bossuet*, *ils suèrent*, *Samuel*, *lueur*, *fruit*, *yacht*, *hyène*.

VI.—Voyelles Nasales

Voyelles nasales (nasal vowels) are only four: *an*, en; *in*, ein, ain, en; *on*, om; *un*, eun. Others can be classified under this division.

NOTE.—Diphthongs may become nasal; *viande*, *Vienne*, *lion*, *point*, *Roanne*, *louange*, *Rouen*, *marsouin*, *trouons*, *Juan*, *juin*, *excluons*.

Double *m* or *n* weakens the nasal sounds.

§ 41. *An*, *am*, *en*, *em* generally as *an* in w*an*t.

§ 42. *In*, *im*, *ain*, *aim*, *yn*, *ym*, *ein* as *an* in *an*ger (no *g* sound).

§ 43. *On*, *om* as *on* in l*on*g.

§ 44. *Un*, *um* are more difficult. *Un* like the colloquial nasalized sound *er* often used for "*what?*" between children, when they wish anything repeated.

Nasal vowel: *an*

§ 45. After having reviewed the simple vowels and their union we will study the same vowels when they are nasalized with *n* or *m* in the same syllable.

Nasalized Vowel Sounds: *an*, *am* (aen), *en*, *em*; *in*, *im*, *ain*, *aim*, *ein*, *eim*, *yn*, *ym*; *on*, *om*; *un*, *um*, *eun*; their nasal quality is produced only when those nasal vowels are followed by a different consonant or at the end of a word.

NOTE.—Followed by another *n*, or *m*, the latter destroys the nasal quality.

Few words are exceptions: *en*nui, *en*nuyer, *em*mener, *en*noblir, re*m*mener, *em*magasiner; also in *en*ivrer, *en*orgueillir, where *em* or *en* are nasal.

AN. Open the mouth as if to pronounce *a* broad, then explode a long nasal resonance under the roof of the mouth.

NOTE.—No *g* sound in *an*, etc. Practice first with *san* (*an* in want), then prolong *san*, *san*, repeatedly, till *an* comes naturally.

Fran(c), *ban(c)*, *blan(c)*, *plan*, *danse*, *lance*, *gran(d)*, *savan(t)*, *Alleman(d)*, *an*, *dan(s)*, *ran(g)*, *san(g)*.

An is *ann* in few English words: alderman, policeman, etc.

AN followed by *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y* is not nasal: *âne*, *platane*; or *h* silent, *sanhédrin* (sa-né-drin).

AN is nasal in 20 ways: *aen*, *an*, *anc*, *and*, *ang*, *ans*, *ant*, *ants*, *aon*, *ean*, *em*, *emp*, *emps*, *empt*, *en*, *end*, *ens*, *ent*, *han*, *hen*.

AN is *a-n* in *ann*ée, *ann*eau, *can*ne, Jea*n*ne, Lausa*n*ne.

AN not nasal in *manne* (long *â*): in *ann*oter, *ann*exe, *ann*ales, *ann*uaire, *ann*uité, *ann*uler, *an* is weak.

AEN like *an*, in *Caen*, Saint-Saëns (sanss).

§ 46. EN (as *an*)

EN also *-ent*, *end* like *an* in *en*fant, Roue*n*, ve*n*te, Saint-Oue*n*, scie*n*ce, patie*n*ce, patie*n*t, différe*n*d.

ENT is *an* in adjectives, nouns and adverbs.

Exceptions.—*en* with *n* is not nasal: ne*n*ni, he*n*nir, sole*n*nel, as na-ni, a-nir, so-la-nel.

EN as an open *e* in many words (*en*n or ie*n*n): Arde*n*nes, Etie*n*ne, la mie*n*ne, la tie*n*ne, la sie*n*ne (in the plural also), ils vie*n*nent, ils tie*n*nent, etc.

EN as *in* in Be*n*jamin, age*n*da, exame*n*, se*n*sorium, pe*n*tagone, la Pe*n*tateuque, appe*n*dice, be*n*zine, Me*n*tor, Pe*n*thièvre, Age*n*.

NOTE.—*ien* is *i-in* in bi*en*, ri*en*, mi*en*, ti*en*, si*en*, je vi*en*s, tu vi*en*s, il vi*en*t, je ti*en*s, tu ti*en*s, il ti*en*t, je vi*en*drai, tu vi*en*dras, il vi*en*dra, ti*en*drai, *-as*, *-a*, etc.; also in many French names or foreign names ending in -*ien* or *éen*: *Julien*, *Vendéen*, *Enghien* (an-ghin).

EN as *en*n in am*en*, abdom*en*, hym*en*, poll*en*, spécim*en*, and other foreign words.

NOTE.—Hym*en* as *in* and *en*n; as it is doubtful.

ENT. In verbs (third pers. plural), *n* is silent but *t* may be linked. *Ils aiment à jouer*.

§ 47. AM

AM followed by a vowel is not nasal; *âme*, *A*méricain, *a*mitié, *a*mi, *a*mour, *a*muser.

AM final is sounded in Abrah*am*, Ch*am*, Pri*am*, etc.

Exceptions: Ad*am*, quid*am*, d*am*; a-dan, etc.

AM followed by *n* or *m* is as *m* in *am*nistie, etc., d*am*ner and its derivatives are excepted: da-nay, etc.

AM before *b* or *p* always nasal: *am*bulance, *am*putation, etc.

AM before *me*, *ma*, *mo* is not nasal when medial: épigr*am*me, gr*am*me; also in adverbs, const*am*ment, etc.

MM is heard in gr*amm*aire, gr*amm*aticale, gr*amm*atiste.

§ 48. EM

EM is *a* in f*em*me, and adverbs: prud*em*ment, réc*em*ment, etc.

EM is *e* open in *Em*ma, dil*em*me, ad r*em*.

EM is *an* in *em*magasiner, *em*mener.

EMB or *EMP* initial or medial, the *em* is *an* in most words: *emp*ire, *temp*ête, *temp*s, *emb*lème, Lux*emb*ourg, etc.

EM in a few words is *ain* as in s*emp*iternel, R*emb*randt (Larousse says ran-bran).

EM is *emm* final or medial: it*em*, Jérusal*em*, déc*emv*ir, also in in d*emn*e: in-dem-ne.

EM followed by vowel is heard separately: s*em*er (se-mer), r*em*ords, etc.

§ 49. IN

IN as *an* in anger. Practice first with *s* in avoiding *g* sound, then repeatedly: sin, s-in as if striking the keys on a piano.

NOTE.—The back part of the tongue slightly approaches the soft palate.

For practice pronounce the following words: v*in*, sere*in*, se*ing*, te*int*, pa*in*, sa*int*, fa*im*, je cra*ins*, tu cra*ins*, il cra*int*, je te*ins*, tu

te*in*s, il te*in*t, je va*in*cs, tu va*in*cs, il va*in*c, Re*im*s, th*ym*, s*yn*taxe, il v*in*t, *in*stinct, v*in*gt, or v*in*gts, *cinq* (francs), tu v*in*s, Charles-Qu*in*t.

Je ti*en*s, tu ti*en*s, il ti*en*t, ri*en*, *im*possible, Vendé*en*, Européen, Mentor.

IN is not nasal before vowels or *h* mute: Ch*in*e, cuis*in*e, *in*exact, *in*humain.

IN is nasal followed by any other consonant than *n:* v*in*gt, *in*térêt, *in*-folio.

IN is *i* in *in*nocence and derivatives -ment, -ter, *in*nocent.

INN sounded in *inn*over, -ation, *inn*ombrable.

§ 50. IM

IM is nasal when followed by any other consonant than *m:* s*im*ple, t*im*bre, etc.

IM not nasal between two vowels: *i-m*a-ge, cent*im*e.

IMM is *imm* when initial: *imm*ortel, *imm*euble, etc.

IM (m) is *ain* in a few words: *imm*esurable, *imm* or *ain* in *im-m*anquable, *imm*angeable.

IM is not nasal at the end of a few foreign words: intér*im*, Gr*imm*.

§ 51. AIN, AIM

AIN final is nasal: p*ain*, s*aint*, m*aint*.

AIN is *ène* before vowels: h*aine*, s*aine*.

AIM is nasal in f*aim*, d*aim*, etc.

AIM is *ème* in *aim*ant, j'*aime*.

§ 52. YN, YM

YN, YM are nasal in many words: s*yn*taxe, s*ym*bole, s*yn*dic, s*yn*thèse, s*ym*ptôme, etc.

YN, YM not nasal between vowels: s*y*nagogue, d*y*nastie, homo-n*y*me, or before *n*, g*ym*nase, etc.

§ 53. ON, OM, OMB, OMP

ON, OM long in s*om*bre, p*om*pe, apl*omb*, Colo*m*b (no *b*).

ON, OM short in m*on*, t*on*, s*on*, n*om*, surn*om*, prén*om*.

Note.—*o*ne, *o*me long: Saône, Rhône, z*o*ne, at*o*me, etc.

ON, ONT, OND, ONS, ONC long: br*onz*e, b*onté*, b*ond*, ay*ons*, d*onc*, j*onc*.

ON, OM not nasal before a vowel or *m* or *n*: B*on*aparte, d*on*ner, com*m*ent, R*om*e, aut*om*ne (*m* silent).

§ 54. UN, UM, HUM

UN, *UM*, *UN*(*D*), *UN*(*T*) nasal: *un*, parf*um*, l*und*i, h*um*ble, déf*unt*.

UM is *om* in Latin or English words: h*um*bug, pens*um*, poss*um*, r*um*steck, or r*oms*teck, alb*um*, rh*um*.

NOTE.—*Um* is *on* nasal in H*um*bert; also *un* is *on:* de prof*un*dis, p*unch*, sec*un*do, j*un*gle, etc.

UN, *UM*, before a vowel, not nasal: *une*, parf*um*erie, etc.

UN is *u-n* in t*un*nel (tu-nell).

§ 55. VII.—Consonants and their Pronunciation

B is labial and heard softly: be.

C is explosive before *a*, *o*, *u* and pronounced *k: ka*, *ko*, *ku;* the *c* with cedilla before *a*, *o*, *u* is *s: sa*, *so*, *su*.

C followed by *e*, *i*, *y* is pronounced *s*.

D is lingual and dental: *de*.

F labial: *fe*.

G lingual and palatal is soft before *e* or *i: ge*.

Gue called hard *g* before *a*, *o*, *u* is voiced strongly: *ga*, *go*, *gu*

H slightly audible when aspirate is guttural in a few words: *he*.

J identical with soft *g: je* and before any vowel.

K used only in a few words is explosive and back palatal: *ke*.

You must breathe hard upon the vowel.

L (sonorous, prolonged tongue-point sound): *le*.

M labial and nasal sound with lips pressed together: *me*.

N (nasal dental sound): *ne*.

Any vowel followed by two consonants of which the first is *m* or *n* vibrates in the nose and is called nasal vowel.

P labial and explosive: *pe;* two *p's* are voiced as one *p* and *PH* (classical origin) is heard as *f*.

Que. The *q* is usually followed by *u* and is explosive: *ke*.

R (classical *r*) has a vibration more or less prolonged from the tip of the tongue and upper front teeth: *re*.

In Paris this sound is preferred in singing and elocution.

R (the *re* modern or *grasseyé*) is uttered under the roof of the mouth without any help from the tip of the tongue.

NOTE.—The *L* and *R* are often liquefied because they run smoothly with other consonants such as *b*, *c*, *g*, *p*.

S is sonant or buzzing in ro*s*e, surd or continuable in grati*s*.

This sibilant or hissing sound is frequent in French. As if to whistle we press the tip of the tongue against the teeth: *se*.

T when explosive has a front-lingual or tongue-tip sound: *te.*

V has a fricative or continuous labial sound in: *ve.*

W is not a French letter; in some English words it is pronounced *oo* or *v:* in German words as *v.*

X has no sound by itself: it has the sound of *s* in *Bruxelles, dix, six;* of *z* in *dix-sept, dix-huit, dix-neuf;* of *c* in *exception;* of *gz* in *exact, exode,* etc.; of *ks* in *luxe,* etc.

Z is a sonant sibilant like *s* in rose: *ze.*

Ch is *k* in *Christ, choléra, chrétien,* etc., and *sh* in *machine, cher, chapeau,* etc.; silent in *almanach.*

Gn (lingual and palatal) is heard *g-n* in *stagnant, agnosticisme, Agnus; gn* initial is aspirated in *gnostique, gnome; gn* medial is generally *ni* in union: the tip of the tongue is at rest while the back part of the tongue adheres firmly to the roof of the mouth. The sudden separation produces the sound of *gne* as in *Champagne, signe, Allemagne,* etc.

Few Consonants

B, c, d, g, p, t, called *consonnes momentanées,* are pronounced sharply; in poetry they may be used to express noise or anger:

Dors-tu content, Voltaire, et ton hideux sourire, etc.

§ 56. M and N

like the nasal vowels are lengthened and produce a soft quality: *maman.*

§ 57. L (ll liquid)

is an old appellation now rendered by *ye* short; these liquids, as the name implies, tend to unite with other consonants.

VIII.—Syllables

Spelling: *monsieur* may be spelled: *m*(em) *on* (en) = *mon s* (ess) *i* = si (and) *e* (er) *ü-r* = (*air*) but pronounced: *mə-si-ɸ.*

Division of Syllables: a consonant (or two), *plus* the vowel: *pa-pa; pré-po-si-tion; o-pé-ra; i-nu-ti-le; ta-bleau; in-sen-si-bi-li-té; res-pon-sa-bi-li-té; don-ner* (first *n* not heard); *homme* for *o-m, h* being silent and last *e* unstressed; *ins-tru-ment; per-dre; sug-gé-rer* = (süg-ʒ e-re); *di-gni-té; stag-nant; tra-va-ill-er* = (tra-va-je); *a-che-ter* but heard *ash-te; che-veux* (*shfɸ*); *che-vaux* (*shfo*); *che-val* (*shfal*).

Note.—Double consonants are generally heard as one and the last belongs to the following vowel or sound: *al-ler* = (a-ler), *in-no-cent*

for *i-no-cent;* few exceptions to the rule: *im-mor-tel, gram-maire;* also: *chercher* (cher-cher); an *er* in the body of a French word is never heard: *urr* but *air; servir, per-dre, chère,* etc.

§ 58. F and V (Spirants)

§ 59. S, Z, CH, J (fricative, continuous)

S and *Z* of frequent use in French require as a starting point of articulation a hissing sound capable of expressing strong feelings.

§ 60. B

maintains nearly always its articulation. Few exceptions: *Lefebvre, Colomb, plomb* as *b* is silent.

§ 61. C

C before *a, o, u* is *ka, ko, ku.*
Ç before *a, o, u,* is *sa, so, su.*
C before *e, i, y* is *se, si.*
C is *g* in *second* and *kz* in *Czar;* also *Tsar.*
C at the end of the word is *k:* Languedo*c.*
NOTE.—C silent in cro*c,* accro*c,* mar*c,* por*c.*
C in *ac* like *ak,* except in estoma*c,* taba*c.*
C final is *k:* se*c,* ave*c,* but not in échec*s.*
C final in *ic* (ik): silent in cri*c,* not in cri*c* cra*c.*
C final in *uc* is *uk:* Lu*c.*
C final heard in *-inc, -euc, -ouc,* except in *caoutchouc.*
C preceded by *s, l, r* is heard generally: ar*c,* etc., but not in cler*c,* mar*c,* por*c.*
Ch is *gh in* dra*ch*me, *k* in *ch*œur, but silent in almana*ch.*
Ch like *sh* in most ordinary words: *ch*emise, ma*ch*ine.

§ 62. D

D final is heard in proper names: Davi*d,* not in Gouno*d.*
D silent in endings *-rd:* Edouar*d; -and:* Allemand. Also in *-ond,* Edmon*d; -aud,* Renau*d; -oud,* St. Clou*d.*
In adjectives, verbs or adverbs: secon*d,* froi*d,* sie*d,* quan*d.*
D final is heard as *t* in liaisons: gran*d* ami.

§ 63. F (PH)

F initial as in English: *f*ils (fiss), *f*ête, etc.
F is *v* in liaisons: neu*f* amis (neu-vami), neu*f* hommes, etc. But not before months: neuf/août. Some Parisians say: neuf/amis.

F is silent in chef d'œuvre (shè-deuvr), œufs, bœufs, cerfs, nerfs, cerf-volant, bœufgras.

§ 64. G

G is *j* before *e*, *i*, *y*; gilet, voyage, gymnase.

NOTE.—In some foreign words *g* is hard: Gibbons, etc.

G hard before *a*, *o*, *ou*, *u*: garçon, gondole, goujon, virgule; also before the other consonants except *n*.

NOTE.—In Italian words *gh*etto, etc.; in Eng*h*ien, *ghien* is *ghin*.

GN (liquid) in most words: tip of the tongue inactive while the back part of it adheres closely to the roof of the mouth, and then their sudden separation produces a French *gne*.

Ex. si*gne*, vi*gne*, si*gner*, ré*gner*.

G-N divided in Ag*n*us, diag*n*ostique, cog*n*ition, cog*n*ation, *gn*ome, ig*né*, physiog*n*omie, inexpug*n*able, récog*n*ition, stag*n*ante.

GUE, *GUA*, *GUer*, as *ghe*, *gha*, *ghé* in bla*gue*, bla*gua*, bla*guer*, long*ue*, long*ue*ur, etc.

GUI (ghee) in *gui*, *gui*de, *gui*der, *Guy*, ang*ui*lle, *gui*llotine, *gui*llemet.

NOTE.—In *arguer* (gu-er), *Guise*, *aiguille* and its derivatives, *linguiste*, *g-u* is separated in Vog*üé*; also in ling*ua*l (goo-al), *Gua*deloupe, *Gua*témala, éq*ua*teur, éq*ua*tion, *Qua*ker, *qua*ntum, *qua*rtz, *qua*tuor.

Gueu (gheu) in *gueux*, fou*gueux*, etc.

G silent in vingt, legs, Luxembourg, sang, bourg, long, coing, étang, faubourg, hareng, rang, seing, Regnard, but is linked as *k*: long espoir.

G is hard in second, seconde, secondaire, seconder, instead of *c*.

§ 65. H

H aspirate at page 49. The *h* aspirate is never heard in literary French. It merely prevents elision: la/*h*aine, les/*h*éros, etc.

H medial is generally silent: le r*h*ume, l'arit*h*métique, ist*h*me, Got*h*, Visigot*h*, ast*h*me, also in Macbet*h*, Rut*h*.

NOTE.—In the following cases, the liaison is not possible. *O* is (h) *o* in *le*/*oui*, *le*/*onze*, *la*/*ouate*, *le*, or *la*/*onzième*, also in *le*/*un*, *le*/*yard*, *le*/*yacht*, *le*/*yatagan*.

CH is *sh* in *ch*ose, *ch*irurgie, *ch*at, *ch*asser, A*ch*ille, ar*ch*idiacre, *ch*imère, ar*ch*itecte, s*ch*isme, s*ch*éma; s*ch*ooner [skooner], etc.

CH is *k* in *ch*aos, li*ch*en, *ch*iromancie, ar*ch*iépiscopal, *ch*rétien, *ch*oléra, *Ch*aldéen, *Ch*rist, Bac*ch*us, *Ch*am, *ch*œur, Mi*ch*el-Ange, lo*ch*, Ro*ch*, Muni*ch*.

NOTE.—*CH* is silent in almana*ch*.
PH is *f*: *ph*ilosoph*ie*, Joseph, *ph*tisie, etc.
TH is *t* in *th*é, *th*éâtre, *Th*éodore; silent in as*th*me, is*th*me, Go*th*.

§ 66. J (ge, gi)

J (zh) in *j*adis, *j*amais, *j*e, *j*'irai, *j*'ose, *j*'use, *j*'y vais, etc.
NOTE.—*G* is *j* in *g*eai, and in verbs in -*g*er.

§ 67. K

K is hard in *k*ilo, *k*ilogramme, *k*ermesse, *k*iosque, *k*irsch, etc.
NOTE.—*Qu* is *k* in *qu*i, *qu*alité, *qu*estion, *qu*e, mar*que*, Inq*ui*sition, *qu*asi, *Qu*asimodo, éq*ui*libre, *qu*arante, *qu*inzième, cinq*u*ante: also in cin*q*, co*q*, or in *g* linked, etc., or *c* and *ch* in duc, bloc, loch.

§ 68. L

L initial is *l*: *l*e, *l*'ami, *l*'homme, *l*es, etc.
LL is never a liquid at the beginning of a word: *ll*ustre, etc.
L or *LL* may or may not be liquid.
NOTE.—*Lh* is liquid in Mi*lh*an or Mi*lh*an, etc., or in genti*lh*omme.
L is silent in genti*l*, fusi*l*, outi*l*, sourci*l*, bari*l*, cheni*l*, persi*l*, nombri*l*, coutil, gril, fils, soûl, fourni*l*, pouls, faulx, and in La Rochefoucauld, Belfort, (be-fore), etc.
NOTE.—In avril, babil, gril, grésil, mil, péril, the *l* may or may not be pronounced.
Fils aîné: *s* is linked as *ss* (fi*s*-*s*ai-né).
L final is heard in fil, cil, bal, col, bol, mol, sol, seul, cheval, général, miel, nul, calcul, linceul, vil, filleul, aïeul (a-i-eul).
AIL, or *aille*, is *a*-ye in final words: trav*ail*, Vers*ailles*, r*ail*, etc.
EIL, or *eille* (è-ye): sol*eil*, Mars*eille*, etc.
NOTE.—Also *euil*, *ueil*, as *eu-ye*: rec*ueil*, rec*ueille*, cerc*ueil*, etc.
ILL generally *ye* in: van*ille*, till*eul*, f*ille*, fam*ille*, b*ille*, b*illard*, b*illet*, quadr*ille*, aig*uille*, Cam*ille*, céd*ille*, bou*illon*, etc.
NOTE.—Cam*ille*, scint*iller* may be pronounced with or without liquid sound.
ILL sounded in v*ille*, v*illage*, v*illageois*, m*ille*, m*il* (no.), m*illion*, pup*ille*, Ach*ille*, vaudev*ille*, bac*ille*, dist*iller*, osc*iller*, vac*iller*, tranqu*ille*, codic*ille*, *il*, b*ill*, ex*il*, prof*il*, subt*il*, vir*il*.
NOTE.—*LL* preceded by *a*, *e*, *o*, *u*, not liquids: ba*ll*e, sy*ll*abe, co*ll*e, etc.
Ill initial not liquids: *ill*uminer, etc.

UIL is *u-ye* in *juil*let (zhu-i-é); also *ll* liquid in jonq*uil*le, aig*uil*le, c*uil*ler; ang*uil*le (ghi-ye) and q*uill*e (ki-ye).

LL is *l* in co*ll*ège, co*ll*ation, etc., except in co*ll*ectif, and derivatives, co*ll*iger, co*llo*cation, co*llo*que, co*ll*usion.

§ 69. M

M initial or between vowels is *m:* *m*atin, *m*idi, *m*use, se*m*er, etc.

NOTE.—In foreign words: ite*m*, ide*m*, déce*m*vir, opiu*m*, triu*m*vir, Bethlée*m*, Se*m*, Cha*m*, Potsda*m*, also in ma*m*'selle or ma*m*'zelle (colloquially). Exceptions: Ada*m*, da*m*.

MM is *m* in co*m*me, co*mm*ent, ho*mm*e, fe*mm*e, co*mm*erce, co*mm*is, etc.

Except in E*mm*a, E*mm*anuel, a*mm*oniac, co*mm*entaire, co*mm*otion, co*mm*uable, co*mm*émoratif (derivatives), co*mm*ensal, co*mm*iséra-tion, so*mm*ité, gra*mm*aire, and its derivatives.

IMM initial: *mm* are sounded: *imm*euble, etc.

NOTE.—*Imm*anquable, *imm*angeable, the *im* may or may not be nasal.

M before *n* is sounded: calo*m*nie, inde*m*ne, etc.

NOTE.—*M* in da*m*ner, condа*m*ner, auto*m*ne, is silent.

M before *b*, *p*, *t* is long nasal: so*m*bre, po*m*pe, co*m*te.

Emm initial is *an:* *emm*ener, etc.

Emm is *a-m* in adverbs: prude*mm*ent, etc., and in fe*mm*e.

NOTE.—Not in dile*mm*e, ge*mm*e, le*mm*e, *Emm*a, etc.

M (see nasal vowels) is nasal when final: no*m*, prénо*m*, surno*m*, prono*m*, parfu*m*, etc.

§ 70. N

N (see nasal vowels) initial or between vowels is *n:* *n*euf, C*a*nada, Pa*n*ama.

NOTE.—E*n*ivrer and derivatives are exceptions.

N in *ent*, 3d pers. plural is silent, but *t* may be linked: ils aime*nt* à rire, ils expédie*nt*, etc.

N in nouns, adjectives, adverbs is nasal: ve*n*t, patie*n*t, vraime*n*t, mome*n*t, souve*n*t, expédie*n*t, etc.

N in bie*n* and rie*n* may be linked: bie*n* écrire, ne rie*n* ajouter.

N nasal followed by any other consonant: e*n*cre, éta*n*g, cha*n*t, etc.

NOTE.—See nasal vowels when weak, short, long.

N in *en* is *a:* sole*n*nel and derivatives, he*n*nir, ne*n*ni.

N in *en* is heard in a few words: ame*n*, abdome*n*, Ede*n*, etc.

N nasal is linked with following word beginning with *h* or vowel: e*n* ami, e*n* écrivant, mo*n* ami, to*n* ami, so*n* ami.

NOTE.—In liaisons it is preferable to say: bo-*n*ami instead of bo*n* ami or bo*n* na-mi.

NN may or may not be sounded as double consonants.

NN is *n* in do*nn*er, je do*nn*e, il to*nn*e, etc. The nasal sound is weak.

Enn initial is *an* long: *enn*ui, *enn*oblir and derivatives.

NOTE.—*Enn* is *ĕnn* in *enn*emi.

Remarks on the linking of *n*. It is linked when two words are closely connected in meaning: mo*n* enfant, etc., but not in c'est bo*n* à manger.

Ce livre n'est pas bie*n* écrit, but not in: ce bie*n* est à lui.

J'e*n* ai un, not in donnez-lui e*n* un.

O*n* entend, *en* ont-ils, vous e*n* avez, etc.

L'u*n* et l'autre, not in u*n* et u*n* font deux.

Je n'ai rie*n* acheté, but not in: vous ne devez rie*n* à personne.

NN doubled is *n* in a*nn*ée, i*nn*ocent, e*nn*emi, a*nn*iversaire, a*n*noncer; in other cases it is a*nn:* a*nn*uel, etc.

NOTE.—E*nn*ui, e*nn*oblir, i*nn*ommé: long nasal.

N in verbs 3rd pers. singular is *an* in me*n*t, but *ee-ain* in vie*n*t, tie*n*t, soutie*n*t, etc., le sie*n*, le mie*n*, le tie*n*; except in the feminine singular and plural: la mie*nn*e, les tie*nn*es, and in vie*nn*ent, etc.

N in mo*n*sieur silent: *me-sieu*.

N in -ye*n:* moye*n*, doye*n*, as *i-ien* (see bie*n*, rie*n*).

EN in adjectives, nouns, nasal *an:* adhére*n*t, afflue*n*t, coïncide*n*t, converge*n*t, couve*n*t, conte*n*t, diverge*n*t, équivale*n*t, excelle*n*t, expédie*n*t, néglige*n*t, préside*n*t, pare*n*t, réside*n*t, viole*n*t.

N in compound words is *an:* e*n*ivrer, e*n*nuyer, e*n*orgueillir.

No. is for *n*uméro.

Note that in certain groups of words quickly pronounced as: *je ne sais pas cela*, the *je* and *ne* become united: *j'nsèpahcela*. Also in *renier* (jod) rə$_{\smile}$je; see *gn*, *ign*, *nh* (in words from the South of France) as liquids.

On, *en* as pronouns are linked when preceding the verb, not after it.

Elles *en* ont, *on* est amis, donnez-lui *en* un peu.

§ 71. O (aspirate)

By aspirate *o* we mean that no elision nor linking is permissible in le *o*ui, le *o*nze, or la *o*nzième, le *o*nzième, la *o*uate.

Dites *o*ui ou non; les *o*nze chapitres, etc.

§ 72. P

P is silent at the end of words: tro*p*, beaucou*p*, cam*p*, cham*p*, etc.

P initial and medial is sounded: *p*apa, *p*euple, *p*saume, *p*seudonyme, etc.

P medial before a dental is silent: anaba*p*tisme, -iste, ba*p*tême, -iser, -ismal, -istaire, -iste, -istère, ce*p* de vigne (ce*p* before a vowel), che*p*tel, com*p*tabilité, com*p*table, com*p*tant, com*p*te, -er, -eur, -able, dom*p*ter, -able, -eur, exem*p*t, -er, sculpter, -é, -eur, -ural, -ure, se*p*t, -ième.

NOTE.—acce*p*ter, exce*p*ter and derivatives the *p* is heard; also in ado*p*tif, -ion, ca*p*tieux, rédem*p*teur, -ion, re*p*tile, se*p*tante, -ième, -embre, -emvir, -ennaire, -ennal, -entrion, -al, -uagénaire, -égisme.

Assom*p*tion, corru*p*tion, sce*p*tique, rela*p*s, bice*p*s, sym*p*tôme, présom*p*tif, som*p*tueux, ra*p*sodie, impromptu, the *p* is sounded.

P in tro*p*, beaucou*p* is linked with little stress: beaucou*p* aimé.

P. P. C. means *pour prendre congé.*

NOTE.—*P* is sounded in Ga*p*, jala*p*, jule*p*, ca*p;* *p* in cam*p*, cham*p*, dra*p*, siro*p*, is silent always.

PP is one *p:* j'ai a*pp*ris ma leçon (a-pri).

PH (aspirated in Greek) is heard in French as *f: ph*are, etc.

§ 73. Q

Q is always followed by *u: qu*e, *qu*i, q*uoiqu*e, *qu*el, *qu*elle, *quelqu*e, *quelqu*efois, etc.

NOTE.—*Q* final is sounded in cin*q*, co*q;* *q* in cin*q* is silent before nouns beginning *h* aspirate or a consonant: cin*q* héros, cin*q* livres. Before months the *q* is *k:* le cin*q* décembre or in cin*q* pour cent (5%), etc. Before a vowel or *h* mute *q* in cin*q* is *k:* cin*q* élèves, etc.; also in le cin*q* de trèfle, etc.

The *q* silent in co*q* d'Inde.

QU may be *koo, ke, ki, ku:* a*qu*atiq*u*e (a-koo-ah-tik); *ke* or *ki* in *qu*e, *qu*i; *ku* or *k* in éq*u*estre (é-ku-estr or *ékestr*).

QU is *koo* initial in *qu*adragénaire, -gésimal, -gésime, -ngulaire, -trice, -ture, -ifide, -latéral, -syllabe, -umané, -pède, -ple, -pler, *qu*aker, *qu*antum, *qu*assia, *qu*ater, -ternaire, -erne, *qu*atuor, and a few others.

Qu initial is *ku* in *qu*adrilie, *qu*ai, *qu*alité, and derivatives, *qu*and, *qu*ant, *qu*antième, *qu*antité, *qu*arantaine, *qu*arante, and derivatives, *qu*art, -ier, *qu*asi, -modo, *qu*atorze, -ième, *qu*atre, -ième, -ment.

QU is *ki* in *qu*i, *qu*idam, *qu*iconque, *qu*ille, *qu*inine, *qu*ittance and

derivatives, *qui*-vive? in*qui*sition, in*qui*et, with derivatives, a*qui*lon, li*qui*de, co*qui*lle, mar*qui*s, -e, etc.

QUIN initial is *kain* in *quin*ze, -aine, *quin*tal, *quin*te, *quin*tessence and derivatives; *quin*caille and derivatives; *quin*conce, Charles-*Quin*t, *quin*teux, St. Thomas d'A*quin*.

Quin in other words is *ku-in: quin*tuple, *Quin*quagésime, etc.

Qu in verbs is *k:* fabri*qu*er, mar*qu*er, embar*qu*er, éti*qu*eter, *qu*alifier, *qu*ereller, li*qu*éfier, and in nouns derived from them: fabri*qu*e, mar*qu*e, embar*qu*ement, éti*qu*ette, *qu*alité, *qu*erelle, li*qu*eur, etc.

§ 74. R

R. In elocution and in singing the Parisians require the classical *r* or the *r* trilled very forward on the tip of the tongue near the upper teeth and caused by pressure of air.

R (*re moderne*) tip of the tongue touches roof of the mouth while tongue is inactive and soft palate moves forward.

It is the Parisian *r: grasseyé*.

It is palatal not *throaty*.

Molière explains the classical *r* in *le Bourgeois Gentilhomme:* «*en portant le bout de la langue jusqu'au bout du palais, de sorte qu'étant frôlée par l'air qui sort avec force, elle lui cède et revient toujours au même endroit, faisant une manière de tremblement.*»

R final is heard after *a, i, o, u* and sometimes after *e:* par, finir, trésor, pur, amer, Jupiter, cuiller, etc.

NOTE.—Monsieur (me-si-eu).

R in *-er* (verbs of 1st conj.) is *é* acute: parler, aimer, etc.

R in *-er* final is heard preceded by *ch, f, v, m:* cher, mer, fer, ver; also in hier, hiver, fier (proud), vers, envers, divers, *-ers*, *-ert*; in verbs: je conquiers, Thiers, tiers; in foreign proper names: Luther, rue Auber, Schiller, Quaker, etc.

R or *er(s)* is *é* in French towns: Angers, Poitiers, Alger, Montpellier; also French proper names: Boulanger, Cuvier and generally in common nouns: cocher, boulanger, boucher, rocher, pommier, etc.

NOTE.—In polysyllabic nouns (or adjectives in *-ier*) same rule: officier, teinturier, entier, particulier, etc.

RR medial is as one *r:* interroger, terre, beurre, leurre, etc.

NOTE.—*Rr* is heard in correct, -ion, corroborer, corrosif; in errer, errant, erreur, erroné, horrible, horreur, torrent; in future of verbs: courir, mourir, acquérir; je courrai, etc., also in *irr* initial: *irr*iter, *irr*égulier, etc.

ER initial (never sounded *urr* but *air*) in syllables: *erg*, *erm*, *ert*. -*inter*-, *perc*-, *perd*-, *perf*-, *pers*-, *pert*-, *serg*-, *serp*-, *sert*-, *serv*-, *verm*-, *vert*-, *verv*-.

NOTE.—This simple rule covers many words and should be specially noted.

R in conversation with verbs of 1st conjugation is not linked: aime*r*/à chanter; in reading, poetry, or public speaking the *r* is linked before a vowel or *h* mute; aime*r* à chanter, etc.

RH (*h* is purely etymological) is *r: rh*ume, *rh*éteur, etc.

§ 75. S

S initial before *c*, *ch*, *ci* is not heard in *sc*ène, *sch*isme, *sc*ie, *sch*elling (she-lain), *sch*éma, *sc*eptre, *sc*eau, etc., also in descendre, but is heard in ascendance, ascension, etc.

S is *z* between two vowels: rose, prose, raser, présence, usage, etc.

NOTE.—*S* is *z* in Alsace, -icien, transaction, -iger, transi, -ir, transit, -taire, -itif, -ition, -itoire, -alpin, -atlantique, balsamique.

S is not *z* in: monosyllable, désuétude, parasol, polysyllabe, préséance, présupposer, vraisemblable, tournesol, soubresaut, Lesage, Lasalle.

S is sounded in *sc*orpion, *sc*andale, *sq*uelette, *st*atue, *sc*orbut, etc.

Also in the following words: gratis, bis, atlas, ès, hélas, hiatus, fils, jadis, lis (not in fleur de lis), prospectus, blocus, chorus, typhus, mœurs (or no *s*), oasis, omnibus, Vénus, lapis, gens, os, sens, ours, us, tous (pronoun), Mars, Ruy Blas.

NOTE.—In linking the *s* of foreign words, the *s* (not as *z*) is heard: Vénus est admirable as (Vé-nus sé tad-mi-ra-ble); le fils est aimable. In other words than the above words the *s*, *x*, *z* are linked as *z:*

Ex. Les amis, deux à deux, allez à la banque.

S final heard only in connecting next word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute has the sound of *z:* moins âgé.

S is generally silent in endings of French names: François, Doubs, Duclos, Amiens, St. Denis, Villars; also in common words: trois, vers, pas, pays, plus, alors, dans, sous, gros, gras, jus, bois, buis, dépens, débris, près, cas, cours, mais, tapis, roulis, avis, dès, pis, palais, paradis, précis, procès, tas, tracas, tiers, souris, lors, congrès, colonis, corps, depuis, niais, refus, tamis, mois, jamais, fois, exprès, colis, las, poids, souris, repos, repas, ramas, radis, puis.

S medial is silent in many French names in which the *s* is followed by *b*, *c*, *d*, *g*, *l*, *lm*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *t:* Descartes, les Vosges, Rouget de l'Isle, Du Guesclin, etc.

NOTE.—Exceptions: Bres*t*, Males*h*erbes (mal-zairb), Robes*p*ierre, Gas*t*on, Bois*t*e.

Final *s* sounded in Reim*s* (Anver*s* with or without *s*), Sieyès (si-é-yess), Sen*s*, Saint-Saën*s* (sanss), Mon*s*, Lesseps, Clovis, Brueys (bru-èss); in Latin and Greek words: Fabius, Léonidas; in fact words ending in *-is, -us, -os, -as, -ns, -ms, -rs*, from Greek, Latin, German and Spanish sources.

NOTE.—*S* not sounded in Londres, Athènes, Paris, Orléans, etc.

SS the last is always heard sharply and the first gives usually an open sound: essence (è-sence), confesser, paresse, etc.; in *ass, iss, oss, uss* only the second *s* sounded: assister, lisse, Ecosse, Russie, etc.

NOTE.—Vowels are short then, except in fosse, grosse, lasse (adj. f.).

S medial after or before other consonants is hard *s:* conspirer, conscience, converser, lorsque, puisque, etc.

NOTE.—See exceptions under *S* as *z*. Many prefer *s* sound in transi de froid; as in transe, transept, transférer, Transylvanie, Pensylvanie (pain-seel).

Oss initial the *ss* heard: ossature, osseux, etc.

§ 76. Important Remarks on *s*

In le Christ, l'est, l'ouest, plus-que-parfait, Antéchrist, pst! (interjection), in plus (counting), il y a plus, deux de plus, bien plus, en plus, 5 francs plus dix centimes, vous avez reçu plus que moi, A plus B, tous as a pronoun; venez tous, fils, hélas, bachelier-ès-lettres, le sens, le lis the *s* is sounded.

S not heard in plus petit, plus grand, etc., tous les enfants (adjective), sens commun, sens dessus dessous, sens devant derrière.

Also in œufs (eu), bœufs, nerfs (nair), serfs, Jésus-Christ (kree), les ours, les os, échecs (è or é), les gens maladifs (*s* in gens is heard before vowels or *h* mute) and tandis *que* where *s* is unheard.

OS sounded in the singular: l'*os;* les *os* (o).

Ours (ourss) un *ours* instead of the old pronunciation *oor*.

NOTE.—The latter preferred in reading to avoid cacophony or ambiguity.

Fils is *fiss*, sometimes *fee* in poetry or by aged persons.

Obus is *obu* by the soldiers; often sounded as *z*.

Us as *uss*, les *us* et coutumes.

S in mœurs is more frequently sounded.

S not heard in est: il est.

S is heard in *dix, six* (isolated).

S when final and silent is linked as *z:* dan*s* une heure.

S when final and uttered is linked as *ss:* le fil*s* est aimable. Vénu*s* admirable.

NOTE.—One hears l'our*s*/affamé (loorss af-fa-mé), but, les our*s* affamés (lay zour za-fa-mé).

Plural adjectives followed by a noun the *s* is linked as *z:* les grand*s* hommes; in nouns having the plural form and followed by an adjective, the *s* is usually not linked: un discour*s*/éloquent, un mépri*s*/inutile; in the plural, of course, *s* is *z:* des discour*s* amusants, etc.

Same rule before verbs, adverbs or subjects: son mépri*s*/est ridicule, le paradi*s*/où vous irez, quel secour*s*/on me donne! because the sense does not require it and a pause is made.

But we say naturally: des jour*s* heureux (joor-zeu-reux) in nouns (plural) followed by an adjective or adjectives with nouns: se*s* aimable*s* enfants. In conversation the liaisons are often omitted, specially by children.

Special rules will be given after studying *t, x, z.*

§ 77. T (th)

T and *TH* initial sound as *t: t*emps, *t*erre, *th*é, *th*éâtre; about 70 words begin with *th.*

T final generally silent: tan*t*, autan*t*, nui*t*, minui*t*, tou*t*, gratui*t*, etc.

NOTE.—*Te* final syllable of feminine adjectives is heard: tou*te*, gratui*te*, peti*te*, promp*te*, etc., as in nouns minu*te*, flû*te*, bu*te*, etc.

T is not sounded in Mon*t*réal, Mon*t*martre, Pon*t*martin, Pon*t*-Neuf, etc.

TI or *tie* may or may not sound as *tee.*

NOTE.—When the medial *t* in English is *sh* or *s*, it is soft in French.

EX.—Ac*ti*on, imita*ti*on, fric*ti*on, supposi*ti*on (-see-on).

When medial or final *t* is not *sh*, or *cy* as a sound (English) then the *t* is natural in French: par*ti*, par*tie*, dynas*tie*, ques*tion*; on that principle read *tie* as *s* in the following: aristocra*tie*, autocra*tie*, balbu*tie*, calvi*tie*, démocra*tie*, diploma*tie*, facé*tie*, iner*tie*, inep*tie*, impéri*tie*, minu*tie*, prophé*tie*, prima*tie*, péripé*tie*, supréma*tie*, théocra*tie.*

But *tie* as *tee:* antipa*thie*, garan*tie*, modes*tie*, par*tie*, sor*tie*, sympa*thie*, Clare*tie*, etc.

-TIONS in verbs always *tee-on:* nous por*tions*, nous no*tions*, etc.

NOTE.—In nouns les por*tions*, leś no*tions*, as *s*. The only nouns when *t* is dental (t) are the following exceptions: ques*t*ion, bas*t*ion, combus*t*ion, mix*t*ion, sugges*t*ion, ges*t*ion.

Tial, tiel or *tieux* as *see-al, see-ell:* par*tial*, essen*tiel*, cap*tieux*.

Bes*tial* is an exception.

ITI is as *s* in in*iti*al, except in *iti*néraire, mo*iti*é, p*iti*é, and nouns in *itié*.

TT as *t:* a*tt*entif (a-ten-tif).

T final is not heard in e*t*, cha*t*, ra*t*, alphabe*t*, cen*t*, for*t*, concer*t*, for*t*, effe*t*, cabine*t*, biscui*t*, ar*t*, bille*t*, bouque*t*, bosque*t*, Mahome*t*, tor*t*, quar*t*, po*t*, portrai*t*, aspec*t*, respec*t*, suspec*t*, instinc*t*, succinc*t* (but not in distinc*t*), nor in verb endings: parlan*t*, parlen*t*, il vien*t*, ils viennen*t*, ils on*t*, ils son*t*, ils fon*t*, etc.

TI hard before a consonant: par*ti*r, ac*ti*f, etc.

TI in prefixes hard in an*ti*, cen*ti*, an*ti*pathie, cen*ti*mètre.

Also in *ti* final or *tien:* le par*ti*, il est sor*ti*, le *tien*, chré*tien*.

Exceptions in proper names: Dona*tien*, Dioclé*tien*, or their derivatives: véni*tien*, also sa*ti*été, insa*ti*able, ini*ti*er, balbu*ti*er, différen*ti*er.

T is sounded in *t*act, accessi*t*, abjec*t*, bru*t*, chu*t*, con*t*ac*t*, correc*t*, ce*t*, déficit, do*t*, direc*t*, exac*t*, ma*t*, es*t*, oues*t*, ru*t*, viva*t*, prétéri*t* stric*t*, *t*oas*t*, Chris*t* (no *t* in Jésus-Christ), hui*t*, sep*t*, *t*ransi*t*, and a few others.

TH is *t* in Lu*th*, Ru*th*, Macbe*th*, Se*th*, Elisabe*th*, *th*é, a*th*ée, *th*éâtre, zéni*th*, a*th*lète, apa*th*ie, sympa*th*ie, etc.

Silent in as*th*me, is*th*me, Go*th*, Visigo*th*.

As *s* in Chrestoma*th*ie (or *tee*).

TZ is *ess* in Me*tz*.

T in liaisons: *ET* is never linked: Pierre *et* Ernest.

SEPT the *t* is heard in months, in interest: le *sept* décembre, le *sept* pour cent (7%), or before a vowel or *h* mute: *sept* hommes, *sept* amis. In other cases not sounded or linked: *sept*/femmes (sè), *sept*/héros (sè).

HUIT same rule as *sept:* le *huit* novembre, le *huit* du mois, *huit* enfants, *huit* huîtres.

VINGT from 21 to 30 the *t* is heard: *vingt* et un, and is linked. From 81 to 90 the *t* is silent.

NOTE.—The *t* after *c* and *r* is not heard and the *c* or *r* are linked: Respec*t* humain, un respec*t* absolu, à tor*t* et à travers.

Fort the *t* of for*t* (adverb) is always linked as *t:* for*t* en histoire, for*t* habile, etc.

Avan*t*-hier the *t* is linked.

ENT in plural verbs, although *nt* are silent, the *t* is linked: ils part*ent* ensemble.

D often linked as *t:* quan*d* il est venu.

Cent un no *t* (101). In adding, the *t* is heard.

§ 78. V

V is constant as *v:* *v*euf, *v*euve, *v*ol, a*v*oir, sa*v*oir, etc.

NOTE.—*F* is linked as *v:* neu*f* hommes, neu*f* enfants.

VV may be seen in some old French inscriptions.

VV as *W* are to-day seen only in French words of foreign origin.

W is *v* in *w*agon-lit, *w*agon-poste, -restaurant, *W*esphalie, and in German words.

W is *oo* in *w*hist, *w*iski. *w*attman, *w*arrant, *w*hiskey as in English.

§ 79. X

Sixteen words begin with *x*.

X in the plural of nouns is silent: tableau*x*, beau*x*, etc.

Over one thousand words contain *x* which has no sound of its own: *X* initial is *ks*, *gz*, or *K;* *X* medial is *ks* or *z;* *x* final is either silent, or heard as *Xe*, *S*, *ce* or *z* in liaisons.

As *Gz* in *X*énophon, *X*avier, *X*erxès; as *K* in *X*érès.

Ex or *Hex* (initial) as *gz* before a vowel or *h*: *ex*ercice, *ex*iger, *hex*amètre. Exceptions: *ex*écrer, and its derivatives uttered as *ks*.

EX as *gz* (in 7 words) with the prefix *in:* in*ex*ercé, in*ex*act, in*ex*aucé, in*ex*écuter, in*ex*igible, in*ex*istant, in*ex*orable.

INEX as *ks* in *inex*citable, -*ex*cusable, -périence, -piable, -pié, -plicable, -ploité, -ploré, -pressif, -primable, -pugnable, -tensible, -tricable and derivatives.

X as *ks* in Ai*x*, a*x*e, a*x*iome, Alexandre, bora*x*, excès, exception, excessif, exciter, flexible, luxe, laryn*x*, ma*x*ime, phéni*x*, pharyn*x*, sile*x*, Sty*x*, Luxembourg.

X as *s* in Auxerrois, Bruxelles, Auxerre, di*x*-sept, -ième, soi*x*ante, -ième.

X is *z* in deu*x*ième, -ment, di*x*-huit, -ième, di*x*ième, -ment, di*x*-neuf, -vième, -ment, si*x*ième, -ment, si*x*ain, di*z*ain.

IX as *ess* in Ai*x*-les-Bains, Ai*x*-la-Chapelle; as *iss* in Cad*ix*, Béatr*ix*, except in Fél*ix*, préf*ix* and Vercingétor*ix*.

X silent in endings -ou*x*, -au*x*, -oi*x*, -ni*x*, -eu*x*, -hou*x*, Foi*x*, Lemieu*x*, Chamoni*x*, Bayeu*x*, Clairvau*x*, heureu*x*.

Also in pri*x*, Crucifi*x*, perdri*x*, aflu*x*, flu*x* and reflu*x*.

X is *ss* in di*x*, si*x* and before months: le di*x* septembre; le 10%: le di*x* pour cent.

NOTE.—Before other nouns beginning with consonant or *h* aspirate di*x* and si*x* are as *dee, see:* di*x* livres, si*x* héros.

X is linked as *z:* di*x* enfants; also in 17 and 19.

§ 80. Z

Z initial is *z:* *z*éphir, *z*éro, *z*one, Mazarin, etc.

EZ is *é* in ne*z*, che*z*, asse*z*, re*z*-de-chaussée and in verbs: vous ave*z*, etc.

EZ in few proper names is heard as *èz:* Sue*z*, Alvare*z*, Corte*z*, Fe*z*, Vélasque*z*.

Z in *-az, -oz, -uz* is *azz, oze, uze:* Dia*z*, ga*z*, Dallo*z*, Vera-Cru*z*.

Z is *ts* in *Z*immermann and other German words.

Z in Metz (the *tz* is *èss*).

IX. Liaisons

Or the linking of two or more words

§ 81.

Those ending with *b, bs, c, d, g, l, m, p, r* may or may not be linked.

B and *BS:*

Joa*b* était neveu de David.

Christophe Colom*b*/a découvert l'Amérique.

La ro*b*e est rouge.

Le Dou*bs*/a de nombreuses cascades.

§ 82. C

as *S* in: La for*c*e était un attribut d'Hercule

as *K:* Des ar*c*s-en-ciel

du blan*c* a*u* noir

à fran*c* étrier

C as *k* when final, *c* is heard: un ro*c* escarpé

Silent in *ch:* un almana*ch* intéressant

CT as *t:* le ta*ct* et l'esprit

CT as *k:* le respe*ct* humain

C as *k* in don*c* before vowel or *h* mute:

il est don*c* arrivé; or in conclusions:

je pense, don*c* j'existe

C in DON*C* weakly heard in expressions of advice or surprise:

Soyez don*c* sage

Ils nous a donc trompés
Silent: C'est un escroc/intelligent.

§ 83. D

as *d:* le sud-est, le sud-ouest
le nord-ouest, le nord-est
as *t* (preceded by nasal vowel):
elle prend une leçon
le nid/a été détruit
NOTE.—Except with adjective and its noun or group of words:
un froid accueil
le froid et le chaud
de pied en cap
pied à terre
RD.—We avoid linking *rd* before many words:
un retard/inattendu
un brouillard/épais
il est sourd et muet
NOTE.—In verbs *d* as *t:*
perd-on
répond-il à son frère?

§ 84. F

as *f:* vif amour
sauf-conduit
sauf-erreur
bœuf à la mode
neuf et demi
neuf mars
neuf pour cent
neuf pour Jean, neuf pour moi
du bœuf rôti
j'ai acheté un bœuf gras et un bœuf maigre
le chef de brigade est-il au chef-lieu?
silent in:
chef-d'œuvre, chefs-d'œuvre
la clef
bœuf gras (sing. or plur.) du carnaval à Paris
le nerf de la guerre
un œuf frais ou des œufs frais
NOTE.—Also before plural nouns beginning with consonants or *h* aspirate.

§ 85. G

as *k:*
Le Bour*g* est un chef-lieu
sang et eau
sang humain
un bour*g* anglais
as *g* in un jou*g* écrasant
Silent in endings: -ong, -ing, -ang, -ourg, -eng, or -oing, etc
ce faubourg/extérieur
Cherbourg/est une place forte

§ 86. H

final is silent and never linked:
un almanac*h*/avec indications astronomiques, etc.
as *k* in: un krac*h* épouvantable
See *huit* under *T*

§ 87. J

never ends a French word; but *je* or *j'* often linked.

§ 88. K

naturally carried on as *k* before vowels:
Un copec*k* est une monnaie russe

§ 89. L

is linked in most words:
un fo*l* espoir
un vo*l* affreux
NOTE.—Also in endings -eil (eille), -ail (aille) *l* is as *y* in yes:
un soleil ardent
un travail exceptionnel
also in: gentil*l*homme
Silent in gentil, fusil (see L); but in plural nouns *s* is linked as *z:*
des gentil*s*hommes
fusil*s* à percussion

§ 90. M

s linked mostly in foreign words:
l'opium a une propriété narcotique
silent: nom et prénom
Adam et Eve

§ 91. N (see nasal vowels)

UN, ON, and *EN* are carried on:

on a; *on* entend; *en* ont-ils; vous *en* avez; *en* attendant; *un* ami, *un* homme

Except in *le un* et *le deux.*

BIEN et *RIEN* as adverbs:

bi*en aimable*

je n'ai ri*en* acheté

NOTE.—Not in nouns:

ce bi*en*/est à mon frère

Jea*n* est petit

But in en ple*in* air

le moye*n* âge

N not elided in:

le vi*n* et l'eau

son et *sa* sont des adjectifs possessifs

le bo*n* et le mauvais

c'est bon à manger

un et *un* font deux

chacu*n* un

donnez-lui en u*n* peu

selo*n* eux

il a dit no*n* et oui

elle se plaît bi*en* e*n* Amérique

il se conduit bi*en* e*n* classe

combie*n* y e*n* a-t-il?

l'u*n* ou l'autre

l'u*n* dit oui, l'autre dit no*n*

est-il venu quelqu'u*n* à 5 heures?

arrive-t-o*n* à New-York?

§ 92. O

No elision in:

le *o*nze, le *o*nzième, la *o*nzième

le *o*ui

la *o*uate

and in des *o*uï-dire

§ 93. P

silent in drap, loup, etc.:

un dra*p*/excellent

le cam*p*/est endormi

P in beaucou*p* and tro*p* often linked softly:
beaucou*p* étudié
tro*p* éclatant

§ 94. Q

as *k* in:
le cin*q* mars
cin*q* enfants
cin*q* hommes
le cin*q* pour cent
But not in:
cin*q*/livres, cin*q*/héros, etc.

§ 95. R

(*er*) in verbs generally linked:
aim*er* à chanter
(*er*) in Poetry it is required
(*er*) in adjectives and nouns:
son dern*ier* avis
le prem*ier* enfant
(*r*) when silent in nouns generally not linked:
Monsieu*r*/Ernest
un boulange*r*/intelligent

§ 96. S

as *z* with few exceptions:
pa*s* à pa*s*
depui*s* une heure
je voudrai*s* être riche
le tier*s*-état
les Champs-Elysées
de temp*s* en temp*s*
les mien*s* et les tien*s*
de*s* œuf*s* à la coque
de plu*s* en plu*s*
de moin*s* en moin*s*
S not linked in:
mai*s*/oui
George*s*/est riche
le*s*/onze enfants
Paris/est une belle ville

c'est un avi*s*/important
il est 3 heure*s*/et demie
des ver*s*/à soie
vers le*s*/une heure

NOTE.—Avoid repetitions of linking the *s* or *z* as proper pauses must be made:

la leçon des autre*s* enfant*s*/est trop longue (see *S*).

§ 97. T

as *t* very frequent:

adverbs: for*t* intéressant
verbs: ils on*t* acheté
on*t*-ils vu?
T in *et* never linked:
Paul *et*/un ami
Adjective and noun or object:
prê*t* à sortir
charman*t* homme
Verb and subject and object with or without *et:*
que di*t*-on?
il fau*t* étudier
en allan*t* à la banque
ils allaien*t* *et* venaient
Adverbs with *et* or *ou:*
librement *et* joyeusement
tô*t* *ou* tard

NOTE.—(*t*) final and silent not linked:

un attenta*t*/odieux

(*rt*) *t* generally silent:

il est for*t*/et grand
la Mor*t*/a décimé son armée
Rober*t*/a eu la leçon
un exper*t*/en architecture
la plupar*t*/ont le mal de mer

§ 98. X

as *z:* si*x* ans
di*x* hommes
di*x* sept

NOTE.—Not in di*x*/livres, si*x*/hauteurs, etc. (see § 76).

§ 99. Z

as *z*: ceu*x* et celles
vous avez écrit, etc.
But not in:
nez à nez
portez armes
présentez armes
nez aquilin

Remarks on Liaisons

§ 100. The liaisons affect the final *f*, *q*, *s*, *x* specially in bœu*f*, co*q*, sen*s*, cin*q*, si*x*, sep*t*, hui*t*, neu*f*, di*x* according to the rules set forth previously.

But the normal liaisons in the articles, nouns, adjectives, etc., are sometimes optional, sometimes unpermissible.

In eloquence, elocution, and poetry the liaisons are more required than in conversation; they may be observed but not multiplied. The ear must also be pleased, not shocked.

les huîtres but not in *le/huit, les/huit*
l'ouïe but not in *le/oui et le non*
il est/huit heures
Jean/est sérieux
Jeanne est jolie
J'en ai un
le sud et l'est (as *d*)
le nord et l'ouest
mais/oui
vingt et un, but not in *le chat/et le chien*

When the liaisons are too close we must pause at least after the verb to avoid discordant sounds:

vous nous avez avertis/en allant à l'hôtel

Children often omit the liaisons of *s, t, d, x, z.*

§ 101. (1) Strictly speaking one must use discretion in linking words:

Pierre et/un ami (*et* is never linked)
Pierre est un ami

There is often a reason based on grammar or on the ear:

pot-au-feu (po-to-feu) has not the same meaning as *mettre le pot au feu;* in the latter case the *t* is silent.

We link naturally the article with a noun: *un ami, une amie, l'ami, l'amie, les amis, les amies, les hommes,* except before *h* aspirate or consonants. No liaison in *les héros* nor in les *zéros.*

§ 102. (2) Qualifying adjectives, possessive adjectives with nouns:

d'heureux enfants
les amis de mes amis sont mes amis

§ 103. (3) Nouns in the plural with the adjective:

des discours éloquents
but not in: *un discours/éloquent* (*r* is linked).

§ 104. (4) Pronouns including object, *en, y*:

il a, elle a, on a, j'ai, nous avons, vous avez, ils ont, etc.
on attend, en ont-elles, j'y vais, qu'avez-vous?

NOTE.—Are linked the pronoun before its verb or the verb before its pronoun.

§ 105. (5) The adverb before the adjective or past participle:

trop ardent
fort estimé

(6) Prepositions except *selon*
chez elles
selon/eux

(7) *d* is carried on as *t:*
f as *v*
g as *k*
s and *x* as *z*
grand homme
cinq amis (*q* as *k*)
neuf hommes
NOTE.—The *f* is frequently heard instead of *v.*
un rang honorable
le sang humain

S in *vers, envers, discours, secours*, etc., the *r* is carried except in plural nouns:

vers/une colline

un secours/inattendu

T preceded by *r* is carried on only in *fort* (when adverb).

fort aimable

not in *à tort et à travers*

CT as *k* in *respect:*

respect humain

respect absolu

N in liaisons: you utter the nasal vowel and link the *n* with the next syllable.

en achetant

AIN and *IEN* are weakened before linking:

certain ami

un ancien élève

IN is also weakened in old religious or classical appellations:

il est né le divin Enfant

le divin amour

ON may or may not be weakened in: *mon ami, ton ami, son ami* but in other cases it loses its nasal quality before being carried on:

ce bonhomme or in *ce bon homme*

c'est un bon ami

le bonheur

UN preserves generally its nasal quality: *un ami*

By affectation speakers say *u-n ami*

X. General Rules on Practical French Prosody: Articulation, Aspiration, Elision, Expiration, Liaisons, and Tonic Accent

§ 106. Articulation.—The ear must hear every syllable in French, however vanishing the stress may be: *C'est u-ne Fran-çai-se. J'ai ré-pé-té, pro-non-ci-a-ti-on, é-lec-ti-on, do-mi-ner, ci-té, se-cré-tai-re.*

§ 107. Aspiration (breathing upon).—Certain sounds are uttered with a breath upon the vowel: Ho! Ho! Philippe.

Note.—The *h* is aspirated in French when the following vowel is slightly pronounced from the throat: *le héros.* Then no elision nor linking is permissible, except with a mute *h.*

§ 108. Elision.—In auxiliary words the initials *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u* or *h* (mute) are often preceded by *l'* (for *le*, *la*), *d'* (*de*), *qu'* (*que*), *s'* (*si* or *se*), etc.: *l'ami*, *l'amie*, *l'enfant*, *j'ai*, *jusqu'à*, *s'il vous plaît*.

§ 109. Expiration.—The French Language is articulated principally on the lips. You must breathe out while moving the lips: *ce*, *si*, etc.

§ 110. Liaisons or the linking of words.—The liaisons are frequently used in French and serve to connect principally the article with the noun, the adjective with the noun, the pronoun with the verb, the verb with the pronoun and the adverb before the past participle or adjective: *un ami*, *un grand homme*, *il a*, *elle a*, *a-t-il*, *fort aimé*, etc.

NOTE.—Words must not be linked before *h* (aspirate) or any other word not strictly connected by punctuation or by certain groups of words. Above all the ear must be pleased and proper pauses prevent the linking.

§ 111. Hiatus.—The meeting of the same vowel: one final, the other initial is called hiatus and no linking takes place. Ex. *il alla à Paris*, *coupe-le en deux*.

NOTE.—In Poetry no hiatus is tolerated, except for effect.

§ 112. Mute E

The so-called mute *e*.

Strictly speaking, the *e* is mute only when it is elided: *l'ami*, *l'homme*.

In other cases the final *e* is slightly uttered: *la face*.

In very few words the so-called *e* mute is not pronounced: *soie*, *soierie*. The *e* in old French was weak, but heard. Now, in conversation, it is heard or not according to its position.

Brachet says: «*Dans la phonétique des voyelles, il faut considérer la qualité, l'accentuation, l'entourage.*»

In daily use the same vowel *e* in the same word is uttered or not: *Je n'veux pas, j' n'en sais rien.*

Even in Poetry says M. Maurice Grammont: «En ancien français, sauf à la fin du vers et à la césure, tout *e* comptait pour une syllabe; aujourd'hui il ne compte plus jamais après une voyelle atone; *tu joueras* ne fait que trois syllabes, il en faisait quatre à l'origine.»

This modern usage began in the 14th century.

After a tonic vowel (*prie, pries, prient*) it is also silent, but the word, including it, is not allowed in the body of a verse, except when the *e* is elided. At the end of a verse it is a feminine rime.

§ 113. MASCULINE RIME is a final stressed syllable at the end of a verse.

§ 114. FEMININE RIME ends in *e* mute or *-ent, -es* (as its equivalent).

NOTE.—After a consonant the *e*, either in the body of a verse or at the end of a word, seems to have been silent or uttered in daily use from the 15th century to the present time.

§ 115. QUANTITY is not the basis of French verse and we *count* the syllables whether long or short; hence French verses are syllabic.

All syllables count except mute syllables when final (at the end of a verse) or elided.

§ 116. TONIC ACCENT. In Poetry there are two required stressed syllables: at the end of a verse (masculine rime) and at the cæsura.

From Quitard's *Traité de Versification:*

L'accent tonique, ainsi nommé parce qu'il consiste en une sorie de ton musical, est une modulation simple et légère qui se joint à certaines syllabes. Il se trouve toujours sur la dernière des mots à désinence sonore ou masculine, et sur l'avant-dernière des mots à désinence muette ou féminine. L'accent d'appui consiste dans une prononciation plus forte et plus ressentie de la syllabe sur laquelle la voix insiste, mais sans modulation.

As to the other accents (stress) in Poetry they may vary.

For emphasis or expressive reading the accent (stress) is maintained on first syllables beginning with consonants or on the medial: Ça ira, *c*'est épouvantable.

XI.—Practical French Prosody (see sects. 106–116)

§ 117. Briefly French verse is based on the number of syllables and on the rime. In French the stress or accentuation falls:

§ 118. (1) On the last syllables of words (of two syllables) ending with a masculine rime or the penultimate syllable when the word ends with a feminine rime.

§ 119. (2) The antepenultimate in words (with masculine rimes) of three or more syllables.

Let us examine briefly the modes of uttering French in Elocution, Reading, and Conversation.

§ 120. French character—being quick and mild, says d'Olivet—reveals brevity and suavity. Latin words as well as vowels have often been shortened in French, and to make the language more flowing the mute *e* has been multiplied, the hiatus often removed, and the article and the pronoun frequently used.

Although the long and short French vowels or syllables do not fulfill the same purpose as in Greek or Latin they may describe by their place or union different objects, various shades of meaning.

Some poets have succeeded in establishing a certain connection between sounds and ideas. From physical phenomena to abstract ideas they associate serious thoughts with long sounds, pleasant ideas with soft sounds.

In other words the poet may suggest such ideas or images to the mind by faithfully interpreting an intellectual impression or rendering it true to our senses.

Music has also given us long notes, deep sounds, etc., but their timbre and quality form the basis and the mode of articulating the French vowels.

§ 121. The rules of French Prosody are based—according to needs—on vivacity or lack of animation.

§ 122. Prosody

Listen to a prolonged whistling:

«*Pour qui sont ces serpents qui sifflent sur vos têtes?*»
(Racine, *Andromaque*)

To Indolence:

. . . . . «*La mollesse oppressée,*
Dans sa bouche, à ce mot, sent sa langue glacée:
Et, lasse de parler, succombant sous l'effort.
Soupire, étend les bras, . . . ferme l'œil et s'endort.»
(*Le Lutrin*, Boileau)

On a rocky road:

«*Où, ô Hugo, huchera-t-on ton nom?*
Justice, enfin rendue, que ne t'a-t-on?
Quand donc, au corps qu'Académie qu'on nomme
Grimperas-tu de roc en roc, rare homme.»
(P. Grandmaison)

Sonorous vowels:

«*La victoire aux cent voix sonnera sa fanfare.*»
(Hugo, *A l'Arc de Triomphe*)

Rapidity:

. . . . . «*Oh ! si j'avais des ailes*
Vers ce beau ciel si pur je voudrais les ouvrir.»
(Musset, *Rolla*)

Briefly, the slower the pronunciation, the more important Prosody is in Reading, specially at the bar, in the theater, or pulpit.

Granting that diction is a sort of singing, each long syllable must be more pronounced. The timbre and the quality of vowels do not affect the stress (accent) because the pause is the same.

Alone the intonation varies in accordance with ideas or sentiments.

When the nasals are more frequent than the vowels the timbre seems to yield to the dominant quality of indolence or indifference.

Certain consonants (*b*, *d*, *g*, *p*, or *c*) are often used to express irony or sudden emotions; *R* to express dissatisfaction or rumbling sounds.

In Reading the pronunciation is somewhat slower; each syllable has its proper value, each sentiment its intonation. There should be more repose in Reading than in Elocution.

In Conversation the vowels seem to be all short, but are not so when properly sounded.

Good usage may be the best rule in Conversation, but many hiatus often add to its charm.

For further information on the rules of Versification you are requested to read:

Quitard's *Dictionnaire des Rimes.*

Grammont's *Petit Traité de Versification française.*

XII.—§ 123. H (aspirated) in

ha
hâbler
hâblerie
hâbleur
hachage
hachard
hache
haché
hache-écorce
hache-légumes
hache-paille
hacher
hachereau
hachette
hache-viande
hachis
hachisch
ou haschisch
hachischin
hachoir
hachot
hachotte
hachure
hack
hadji
hagard
hagardement
haha
hai
haie
haïe
haillon
haillonneux
haine
haineusement
haineux
haïr
haire
haïssable
haje
halage
halbi
halbran
halbrené
hâle
hâlé
hâler
haler
haletant
halètement
haleter
haleur
hall
hallebarde
hallebardier
hallier
hallier
halo
haloir
halot
halotechnie
halte
hamac
hameau
hamélia
hammam
hampe
hamster
han
hanap
hanapier
hanche
handicap
handicaper
handicapeur
hanebane
hangar
hanneton
hannetonnage
hannetonner
hannuyer
or hainuier
Hanovrien
hansart
hanse
hanséatique
hanter
hantise
happe
happeau
happelourde
happement
happer
haquebute
ou hacquebute
haquenée
haquet
haquetier
harangue
haranguer
harangueur
haras
harasse
harassement
harasser
harcèlement
harceler
harceleur
harde
harde
hardées
harder
hardes
hardi
hardiesse
hardiment
harem
hareng
harengaison
harengère

harengerie
harenguet
harfang
hargnerie
hargneux
haridelle
harle
harmattan
harnachement
harnacher
harnacheur
harnais
haro
harpail
harpaille
harpe
harpe
harpeau
harper
harpie
harpin
harpiste
harpoise
harpon
harponnage
harponnement
harponner
harponneur
hart
hasard
hasardé
hasardément
hasarder
hasardeusement
hasardeux
hasardise
haschisch
hase
hastaire
haste
hasté
hâte
hâtelet
hâtelle
ou hâtelette
hâter
hâtereau
hâteur
hâtier
hâtif
hâtille
hâtiveau
hâtivement
hâtiveté
hatti-chérif
hâture
hauban
haubaner
haubergeon
haubert
hausse
hausse-col
haussement
hausse-pied
hausse-queue
hausser
haussier
haussière
haut
haut à bas
hautain
hautainement
hautbois
hautboïste
haut-de-chausse
haute-contre
hautement
hautesse
haute-taille
hauteur
haut-fond
haut-le-cœur
haut-le-corps
haut-pendu
haut-relief
hauturier
havane
hâve
haveneau
ou havenet
havir
havre
havresac
hé
heaume
heaumerie
hein
héler
henné
hennin
hennir
hennissement
héraut
herd-book
hère
hérissé
hérissement
hérisser
hérisson
hérissonne
hernhute
ou hernute
hernhutisme
herniaire
hernie
hernié
hernieux
héron
héronneau
héronnier
héronnière
héros
herpe
hersage
herse
herser

herseur
hersillon
hêtraie
hêtre
heu
heurt
heurté
heurtement
heurter
heurtoir
heuse
hévée
hexandre
hexandrie
hi
hibou
hic
hideur
hideusement
hideux
hie
hiement
ou hîment
hiérarchie
hiérarchique
hiérarchiquement
hiérarchisation
hiérarchiser
highlander
hisser
ho
hoat-chi
hoazin
hobereau
hoc
hoca
hocco
hoche
hochement
hochepot
hochequeue
hocher
hochet
hockey
hogner
holà
Hollandais
Hollande
hollander
hom
homard
hom
hon
hongre
hongrer
hongreur
hongroierie
Hongrois
hongroyage
hongroyer
hongroyeur
honnir
honte
honteusement
honteux
hop
hoquet
hoqueter
hoqueton
horde
horion
hors
hors-d'œuvre
horse-guard
horse-pox
hors-ligne
hotte
hottée
Hottentot
hottereau
hotteur
hou
houache
ou houaiche
houari
houblon
houblonner
houblonnier
houblonnière
houe
houement
houer
houette
houeur
houillag.
houille
houiller
houillère
houilleur
houilleux
houle
houlette
houleux
houlque
houp!
houper
houppe
houppelande
houpper
houppette
houraillis
hourd
hourdage
ou hourdis
hourder
houret
houri
houri
hourque
hourra
hourvari
housard
houseaux
houspiller
houssage
houssaie

housse
housser
houssine
houssiner
houssoir
housson
houx
hoyau
huard
hublot
huch ou hucho
huche
hucher
huchet
huel
huée
huer
huette
huguenot
huguenotisme
huhau
hulan
hulot
hulotte
hululer
hum!
humage
humbug
hune
hunier
hunter
huppe
huppé
hure
hurlant
hurlement
hurler
hurleur
huron
hurrah
hussard
hussarde
hussite
hutin
hutinet
hutte
hutter
hyacinthe

ARRÊTÉ

RELATIF A LA SIMPLIFICATION DE L'ENSEIGNEMENT DE LA SYNTAXE FRANÇAISE

(26 février 1901)

Le Ministre de l'Instruction publique et des Beaux-Arts, vu l'article 5 de la loi du 27 février 1880;

Vu l'arrêté du 31 juillet 1900;

Le Conseil supérieur de l'Instruction publique entendu,

Arrête:

ARTICLE 1.—Dans les examens ou concours dépendant du ministère de l'Instruction publique, qui comportent des épreuves spéciales d'orthographe, il ne sera pas compté de fautes aux candidats pour avoir usé des tolérances indiquées dans la liste annexée au présent arrêté.

La même disposition est applicable au jugement des diverses compositions rédigées en langue française, dans les examens ou concours dépendant du ministère de l'Instruction publique qui ne comportent pas une épreuve spéciale d'orthographe.

ARTICLE 2.—L'arrêté du 31 juillet 1900 est rapporté.

LISTE ANNEXÉE A L'ARRÊTÉ DU 26 FÉVRIER 1901

Substantifs

PLURIEL OU SINGULIER.—Dans toutes les constructions où le sens permet de comprendre le substantif complément aussi bien au singulier qu'au pluriel, on tolérera l'emploi de l'un ou l'autre nombre. Ex.: *des habits de femme* ou *de femmes;—des confitures de groseille* ou *de groseilles;—des prêtres en bonnet carré* ou *en bonnets carrés;—ils ont ôté leur chapeau* ou *leurs chapeaux*. . . .

Substantifs des deux genres

1. AIGLE.—L'usage actuel donne à ce substantif le genre masculin, sauf dans le cas où il désigne des enseignes. Ex.: *les aigles romaines*.

2. AMOUR, ORGUE.—L'usage actuel donne à ces deux mots le genre masculin au singulier. Au pluriel, on tolérera indifféremment

le genre masculin ou le genre féminin. Ex.: *les grandes orgues; —un des plus beaux orgues;—de folles amours, des amours tardifs.*

3. DÉLICE ET DÉLICES sont, en réalité, deux mots différents. Le premier est d'un usage rare et un peu recherché. Il est inutile de s'en occuper dans l'enseignement élémentaire et dans les exercices.

4. AUTOMNE, ENFANT.—Ces deux mots étant des deux genres, il est inutile de s'en occuper particulièrement. Il en est de même de tous les substantifs qui sont indifféremment des deux genres.

5. GENS, ORGE.—On tolérera dans toutes les constructions l'accord de l'adjectif au féminin avec le mot *gens*. Ex.: *instruits* ou *instruites par l'expérience, les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux* ou *soupçonneuses.*

On tolérera l'emploi du mot *orge* au féminin sans exception: *orge carrée, orge mondée, orge perlée.*

6. HYMNE.—Il n'y a pas de raison suffisante pour donner à ce mot deux sens différents suivant qu'il est employé au masculin ou au féminin. On tolérera les deux genres aussi bien pour les chants nationaux que pour les chants religieux. Ex.: *un bel hymne* ou *une belle hymne.*

7. PAQUES.—On tolérera l'emploi de ce mot au féminin aussi bien pour désigner une date que la fête religieuse. Ex.: *A Pâques prochain,* ou *à Pâques prochaines.*

Pluriel des substantifs

PLURIEL DES NOMS PROPRES.—La plus grande obscurité régnant dans les règles et les exceptions enseignées dans les grammaires, on tolérera dans tous les cas que les noms propres précédés de l'article pluriel prennent la marque du pluriel: *les Corneilles* comme *les Gracques;—des Virgiles* (exemplaires) comme *des Virgiles* (éditions).

Il en sera de même pour les noms propres de personne désignant les œuvres de ces personnes. Ex.: *des Meissoniers.*

PLURIEL DES NOMS EMPRUNTÉS A D'AUTRES LANGUES.—Lorsque ces mots sont tout à fait entrés dans la langue française, on tolérera que le pluriel soit formé suivant la règle générale. Ex.: *des exéats* comme *des déficits.*

Noms composés

NOMS COMPOSÉS.—Les mêmes noms composés se rencontrent aujourd'hui tantôt avec le trait d'union, tantôt sans trait d'union. Il est inutile de fatiguer les enfants à apprendre des contradictions que rien ne justifie. L'absence de trait d'union dans l'expression

pomme de terre n'empêche pas cette expression de former un véritable mot composé aussi bien que *chef-d'œuvre*, par exemple. Ces mots pourront toujours s'écrire sans trait d'union.

Article

ARTICLE DEVANT LES NOMS PROPRES DE PERSONNES.—L'usage existe d'employer l'article devant certains noms de famille italiens: *le Tasse*, *le Corrège*, et quelquefois à tort devant les prénoms: (*le*) *Dante*, (*le*) *Guide*. On ne comptera pas comme une faute l'ignorance de cet usage.

Il règne aussi une grande incertitude dans la manière d'écrire l'article qui fait partie de certains noms français: *la Fontaine*, *la Fayette* ou *Lafayette*. Il convient d'indiquer, dans les textes dictés, si, dans les noms propres qui contiennent un article, l'article doit être séparé du nom.

ARTICLE SUPPRIMÉ.—Lorsque deux adjectifs unis par *et* se rapportent au même substantif de manière à désigner en réalité deux choses différentes, on tolérera la suppression de l'article devant le second adjectif. Ex.: *l'histoire ancienne et moderne*, comme *l'histoire ancienne et la moderne*.

ARTICLE PARTITIF.—On tolérera *du*, *de la*, *des* au lieu de *de* partitif devant un substantif précédé d'un adjectif. Ex.: *de* ou *du bon pain*, *de bonne viande* ou *de la bonne viande*, *de* ou *des bons fruits*.

ARTICLE DEVANT PLUS, MOINS, ETC.—La règle qui veut qu'on emploie *le plus*, *le moins*, *le mieux* comme un neutre invariable devant un adjectif indiquant le degré le plus élevé de la qualité possédée par le substantif qualifié sans comparaison avec d'autres objets est très subtile et de peu d'utilité. Il est superflu de s'en occuper dans l'enseignement élémentaire et dans les exercices. On tolérera *le plus*, *la plus*, *les plus*, *les moins*, *les mieux*, etc., dans des constructions telles que: *on a abattu les arbres le plus* ou *les plus exposés à la tempête*.

Adjectif

ACCORD DE L'ADJECTIF.—Dans la locution, *se faire fort de*, on tolérera l'accord de l'adjectif. Ex.: *se faire fort*, *forte*, *forts*, *fortes de* . . .

ADJECTIF CONSTRUIT AVEC PLUSIEURS SUBSTANTIFS.—Lorsqu'un adjectif qualificatif suit plusieurs substantifs de genres différents,

on tolérera toujours que l'adjectif soit construit au masculin pluriel, quel que soit le genre du substantif le plus voisin. Ex.: *appartements et chambres meublés.*

NU, DEMI, FEU.—On tolérera l'accord de ces adjectifs avec le substantif qu'ils précèdent. Ex.: *nu* ou *nus pieds; une demi* ou *demie heure* sans trait d'union entre les mots, *feu* ou *feue reine.*

ADJECTIFS COMPOSÉS.—On tolérera la réunion des deux mots constitutifs en un seul mot qui formera son féminin et son pluriel d'après la règle générale. Ex.: *nouveauné, nouveaunée, nouveaunés, nouveaunées;—courtvêtu, courtvêtue, courtvêtus, courtvêtues,* etc.

Mais les adjectifs composés qui désignent des nuances étant devenus, par suite d'une ellipse, de véritables substantifs invariables, on les traitera comme des mots invariables. Ex.: *des robes bleu clair, vert d'eau,* etc., de même qu'on dit des *habits marron.*

PARTICIPES PASSÉS INVARIABLES.—Actuellement les participes *approuvé, attendu, ci-inclus, ci-joint, excepté, non compris, y compris, ôté, passé, supposé, vu,* placés avant le substantif auquel ils sont joints, restent invariables. *Excepté* est même déjà classé parmi les prépositions. On tolérera l'accord facultatif pour ces participes, sans exiger l'application de règles différentes suivant que ces mots sont placés au commencement ou dans le corps de la proposition, suivant que le substantif est ou n'est pas déterminé. Ex.: *ci joint* ou *ci jointes les pièces demandées* (sans trait d'union entre *ci* et le participe);—*je vous envoie ci joint* ou *ci jointe copie de la pièce.*

On tolérera la même liberté pour l'adjectif *franc.* Ex.: *envoyer franc de port* ou *franche de port une lettre.*

AVOIR L'AIR.—On permettra d'écrire indifféremment: *elle a l'air doux* ou *douce, spirituel* ou *spirituelle.* On n'exigera pas la connaissance d'une différence de sens subtile suivant l'accord de l'adjectif avec le mot *air* ou avec le mot désignant la personne dont on indique l'air.

ADJECTIFS NUMÉRAUX.—*Vingt, cent.* La prononciation justifie dans certains cas la règle actuelle qui donne un pluriel à ces deux mots quand ils sont multipliés par un autre nombre. On tolérera le pluriel de *vingt* et *cent* même lorsque ces deux mots sont suivis d'un autre adjectif numéral. Ex.: *quatre vingt* ou *quatre vingts dix hommes;—quatre cent* ou *quatre cents trente hommes.*

Le trait d'union ne sera pas exigé entre le mot désignant les unités et le mot désignant les dizaines. Ex.: *dix sept.*

Dans la désignation du millésime, on tolérera *mille* au lieu de *mil,* comme dans l'expression d'un nombre. Ex.: *l'an mil huit cent quatre vingt dix* ou *l'an mille huit cents quatre vingts dix.*

Adjectifs démonstratifs, indéfinis et pronoms

CE.—On tolérera la réunion des particules *ci* et *là* avec le pronom qui les précède, sans exiger qu'on distingue *qu'est ceci, qu'est cela* de *qu'est ce ci, qu'est ce là*.—On tolérera la suppression du trait d'union dans ces constructions.

MÊME.—Après un substantif ou un pronom au pluriel, on tolérera l'accord de *même* au pluriel et on n'exigera pas de trait d'union entre *même* et le pronom. Ex.: *nous mêmes, les dieux mêmes*.

TOUT.—Devant un nom de ville on tolérera l'accord du mot *tout* avec le nom propre sans chercher à établir une différence un peu subtile entre des constructions comme *toute Rome* ou *tout Rome*.

On ne comptera pas de faute non plus à ceux qui écriront indifféremment, en faisant parler une femme, *je suis tout à vous*, ou *je suis toute à vous*.

Lorsque *tout* est employé avec le sens indéfini de *chaque*, on tolérera indifféremment la construction au singulier ou au pluriel du mot *tout* et du substantif qu'il accompagne. Ex.: *des marchandises de toute sorte* ou *de toutes sortes;—la sottise est de tout (tous) temps et de tout (tous) pays*.

AUCUN.—Avec une négation, on tolérera l'emploi de ce mot aussi bien au pluriel qu'au singulier. Ex.: *ne faire aucun projet* ou *aucuns projets*.

CHACUN.—Lorsque ce pronom est construit après le verbe et se rapporte à un mot pluriel sujet ou complément, on tolérera indifféremment, après *chacun*, le possessif *son, sa, ses*, ou le possessif *leur, leurs*. Ex.: *ils sont sortis chacun de son côté* ou *de leur côté;—remettre des livres chacun à sa place* ou *à leur place*.

Verbe

VERBES COMPOSÉS.—On tolérera la suppression de l'apostrophe et du trait d'union dans les verbes composés. Ex.: *entrouvrir, entrecroiser*.

TRAIT D'UNION.—On tolérera l'absence de trait d'union entre le verbe et le pronom sujet placé après le verbe. Ex.: *est il*.

DIFFÉRENCE DU SUJET APPARENT ET DU SUJET RÉEL.—Ex.: *sa maladie sont des vapeurs*. Il n'y a pas lieu d'enseigner de règles pour des constructions semblables dont l'emploi ne peut être étudié utilement que dans la lecture et l'explication des textes. C'est une

question de style et non de grammaire qui ne saurait figurer ni dans les exercices élémentaires ni dans les examens.

ACCORD DU VERBE PRÉCÉDÉ DE PLUSIEURS SUJETS NON UNIS PAR LA CONJONCTION *et*.—Si les sujets ne sont pas résumés par un mot indéfini tel que *tout, rien, chacun*, on tolérera toujours la construction du verbe au pluriel. Ex.: *sa bonté, sa douceur le font admirer.*

ACCORD DU VERBE PRÉCÉDÉ DE PLUSIEURS SUJETS AU SINGULIER UNIS PAR *ni, comme, ainsi que* ET AUTRES LOCUTIONS ÉQUIVALENTES.—On tolérera toujours le verbe au pluriel. Ex.: *ni la douceur ni la force n'y peuvent rien* ou *n'y peut rien;—la santé comme la fortune demandent à être ménagées* ou *demande à être ménagée;—le général avec quelques officiers sont sortis* ou *est sorti du camp;—le chat ainsi que le tigre sont des carnivores* ou *est un carnivore.*

ACCORD DU VERBE QUAND LE SUJET EST UN MOT COLLECTIF.—Toutes les fois que le collectif est accompagné d'un complément au pluriel, on tolérera l'accord du verbe avec le complément. Ex.: *un peu de connaissance suffit* ou *suffisent.*

ACCORD DU VERBE QUAND LE SUJET EST *plus d'un*.—L'usage actuel étant de construire le verbe au singulier avec le sujet *plus d'un*, on tolérera la construction du verbe au singulier, même lorsque *plus d'un* est suivi d'un complément au pluriel. Ex.: *plus d'un de ces hommes était* ou *étaient à plaindre.*

ACCORD DU VERBE PRÉCÉDÉ DE *un de ceux (une de celles) qui*.—Dans quels cas le verbe de la proposition relative doit-il être construit au pluriel, et dans quels cas au singulier? C'est une délicatesse de langage qu'on n'essaiera pas d'introduire dans les exercices élémentaires ni dans les examens.

C'EST, CE SONT.—Comme il règne une grande diversité d'usage relativement à l'emploi régulier de *c'est* et de *ce sont*, et que les meilleurs auteurs ont employé *c'est* pour annoncer un substantif au pluriel ou un pronom de la troisième personne au pluriel, on tolérera dans tous les cas l'emploi de *c'est* au lieu de *ce sont*. Ex.: *c'est* ou *ce sont des montagnes et des précipices.*

CONCORDANCE OU CORRESPONDANCE DES TEMPS.—On tolérera le présent du subjonctif au lieu de l'imparfait dans les propositions subordonnées dépendant de propositions dont le verbe est au conditionnel présent. Ex.: *il faudrait qu'il vienne* ou *qu'il vînt.*

Participe

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT ET ADJECTIF VERBAL.—Il convient de s'en tenir à la règle générale d'après laquelle on distingue le participe

de l'adjectif en ce que le premier indique l'action et le second l'état. Il suffit que les élèves et les candidats fassent preuve de bon sens dans les cas douteux. On devra éviter avec soin les subtilités dans les exercices. Ex.: *des sauvages vivent errant* ou *errants dans les bois.*

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.—Il n'y a rien à changer à la règle d'après laquelle le participe passé construit comme épithète doit s'accorder avec le mot qualifié, et construit comme attribut avec le verbe *être* ou un verbe intransitif, doit s'accorder avec le sujet. Ex.: *des fruits gâtés;—ils sont tombés;—elles sont tombées.*

Pour le participe passé construit avec l'auxiliaire *avoir*, lorsque le participe passé est suivi soit d'un infinitif, soit d'un participe présent ou passé, on tolérera qu'il reste invariable, quels que soient le genre et le nombre des compléments qui précèdent. Ex.: *les fruits que je me suis laissé* ou *laissés prendre;—les sauvages que l'on a trouvé* ou *trouvés errant dans le bois.* Dans le cas où le participe passé est précédé d'une expression collective, on pourra à volonté le faire accorder avec le collectif ou avec son complément. Ex.: *la foule d'hommes que j'ai vue* ou *vus.*

Adverbe

Ne DANS LES PROPOSITIONS SUBORDONNÉES.—L'emploi de cette négation dans un très grand nombre de propositions subordonnées donne lieu à des règles compliquées, difficiles, abusives, souvent en contradiction avec l'usage des écrivains les plus classiques.

Sans faire de règles différentes suivant que les propositions dont elles dépendent sont affirmatives ou négatives ou interrogatives, on tolérera la suppression de la négation *ne* dans les proportions subordonnées dépendant de verbes ou de locutions signifiant:

Empêcher, défendre, éviter que, etc. Ex.: *défendre qu'on vienne* ou *qu'on ne vienne;*

Craindre, désespérer, avoir peur, de peur que, etc. Ex.: *de peur qu'il aille* ou *qu'il n'aille;*

Douter, contester, nier que, etc. Ex.: *je ne doute pas que la chose soit vraie* ou *ne soit vraie;*

Il tient à peu, il ne tient pas à, il s'en faut que, etc. Ex.: *il ne tient pas à moi que cela se fasse* ou *ne se fasse.*

On tolérera de même la suppression de cette négation après les comparatifs et les mots indiquant une comparaison: *autre, autrement que*, etc. Ex.: *l'année a été meilleure qu'on l'espérait* ou *qu'on ne l'espérait;—les résultats sont autres qu'on le croyait* ou *qu'on ne le croyait.*

De même après les locutions *à moins que, avant que.* Ex.: *à moins qu'on accorde le pardon* ou *qu'on n'accorde le pardon.*

Observation

Il conviendra dans les examens, de ne pas compter comme fautes graves celles qui ne prouvent rien contre l'intelligence et le véritable savoir des candidats, mais qui prouvent seulement l'ignorance de quelque finesse ou de quelque subtilité grammaticale.

Vu pour être annexé à l'arrêté du 26 février 1901.

Le ministre de l'Instruction publique et des Beaux-Arts,

Paris. GEORGES LEYGUES.

PART II

ETYMOLOGY OR PARTS OF SPEECH

LESSON I

ETYMOLOGY OR PARTS OF SPEECH

1. *l'article*
2. *le substantif*
3. *l'adjectif qualificatif*
4. " *déterminatif*
5. *le pronom*
6. *le verbe*
7. *l'adverbe*
8. *la préposition*
9. *la conjonction*
10. *l'interjection*

NOTE.—The latter four are invariable.

The Definite Article (*l'article défini*)

Singular (*singulier*)		plural (*pluriel*)
le	(the) before a masculine noun beginning a consonant	
la	" " " feminine noun " "	
l'	" " any noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute	
les	" " all nouns in the plural; *l'* stands for *le, la*	

NOTE.—*le* from the Latin (*il*) lum; *la* (*il*) lam.

le père the father; *la mère* the mother; *l'ami* (m.) the friend; *l'amie* (f.) the friend; *l'homme* the man; *le héros* (*h* aspirate) the hero; *l'héroïne* (*h* mute) the heroine; *l'oncle* the uncle; *la tante* the aunt.

§ 1. NOUNS are either masculine or feminine: inanimate objects being either masculine or feminine.

masc. *le livre* the book; *le crayon* the pencil; *le couteau* the knife.
fem. *la plume* the pen; *la table* the table.

1. **Latin masculines continue masculine in French:**

le port the harbor; *le cheval* the horse; *le livre* the book; few exceptions.

2. Latin neuters are masculine in French:

le frein the rein (check); *le froid* the cold; *le fer* iron; *le miel* honey.

3. endings with masculine *-acle; -age; -asme; -ège; -ème; -isme; -tère*

l'oracle the oracle; *le partage* the share (division); *le pléonasme* pleonasm; *le manège* riding-school; *le baptême* the christening (baptism); *le christianisme* christianity; *le mystère* mystery.

4. All nouns not ending in are generally masculine.

-ale	*-ie*	*-fe*
-be	*-ié*	*-oie*
-ace	*-ole*	*-ne*
-ade	*-ule*	*-pe*
-eur	*-ure*	*-aison*
-ée	*-ue*	*-rre*
-ère	*-ion*	*-se*
-te	*-ière*	*-té*
-oire	*-ance*	*-ence*
-ude	*-uve*	and
-ion in general		

NOTE.—Nouns denoting males are masculine always; and feminine those denoting females.

le mal evil; *le nord* the north; *le sud* the south; *l'est* the east; *l'ouest* the west; *le printemps* spring; *l'été* summer; *l'automne* autumn; *l'hiver* winter; and are masculine also: the days of the week, months of the year; *le Mexique* Mexico, and all countries not ending in -e: *le Portugal*, etc.; and the names of trees: *le pin* pine-tree, with few exceptions; and the letters of the alphabet: *un l*, an l, etc.

Words for Practice:

l'intervalle (m.) the interval; *la cathédrale* (f.) the cathedral; *la bourbe* (f.) the mire; *la place* the place (room, seat, square); *la parade* the parade; *la chaleur* the heat; *la rosée* the dew; la *chimère* chimera; *la sortie* exit; *la pitié* pity; *l'obole* mite; *la pilule* the pill; *la parure* ornament; *la rue* the street; *la vision* vision; *l'action* act (action); *la pétition* petition; *la carafe* the decanter; *le carafon* (small) decanter; *la soie* silk.

5. Final *e* **preceded by a vowel or double consonant denotes feminine:**

l'alarme (f.) the alarm; *la journée* the (whole) day; *la boue* mud; *la présence* the presence; *le silence* silence (an exception); *une once* an ounce; *la défense* defence; *la dépense* expenditure; *l'urne*

arn; *la pipe* pipe; *la comparaison* comparison; *la terre* earth; *la rose* rose; *la botte* boot (bundle); *la bonté* kindness; *la rivière* river; *l'histoire* history; *la constance* constancy; *la façon* the make (style, look); *l'habitude* habit (custom); *la verve* warmth (spirit).

6. Other feminines:

la porte door; *la louve* she-wolf; *la ville* the city; *la voix* voice; *la clé* (*clef*) key; *la cuiller* spoon; *la chaux* lime; *la chair* flesh; *la brebis* sheep; *la dot* dowry; *la dent* tooth; *la faim* hunger; *la forêt* forest; *la fois* time; *la faux* scythe; *la fin* end; *la nuit* night; *la noix* walnut; *la croix* cross; *la paix* peace; *la nef* nave; *la main* hand; *la mort* death; *la soif* thirst; *la mer* the sea; *la tour* tower; *l'argile* clay; *l'armoire* closet; *l'idole* idol; *les arrhes* (earnest-money); *l'artère* artery; *une épigramme* epigram; *une écritoire* (formerly) a writing-desk; *la scène* scene; *la paroi* wall (partition); *l'oasis* oasis; *l'épigraphe* epigraph; *une équivoque* ambiguity; *une réglisse* licorice; *la nacre* mother-of-pearl; *l'horloge* clock; *l'orbite* orbit; *l'image* image; *l'extase* ecstacy.

§ 2. LATIN feminines are used likewise in French: *la rose* the rose, etc.; *cf.* few neuter plurals have become in French feminine singular:

l'étude study; *l'œuvre* the work; *l'huile* oil; *l'arme* arm (weapon); *la feuille* the leaf; *la lèvre* the lip; and a few others.

§ 3. GENERAL RULE. *e* is usually added to the masculine to denote the feminine; likewise with adjectives:

le marquis the marquis; *la marquise* the marchioness; *le petit garçon* the small boy; *la petite fille* the little girl.

1. Nouns (and adjectives) ending in *-er* and *-ier* take *è* (accent grave: *grave accent*) on the penultimate:

le berger the shepherd; *la bergère* the shepherdess; *le premier prix* the first prize; *la première leçon* the first lesson; for the feminine.

2. Nouns (few adjectives) ending in *n* or *t* double that consonant:

le baron the baron; *la baronne* the baroness; *le bon patriote* the good patriot; *la bonne dame* the good lady; also for the feminine.

3. **Few exceptions:**

le Romain the Roman; *la Romaine* the Roman lady; *le cousin* the cousin; *la cousine* the (lady) cousin; *le voisin* the neighbor; *la voisine* the (lady) neighbor; *l'orphelin* the orphan; *l'orpheline* the orphan (f.); *le Persan* the Persian; *la Persane* the Persian lady; *le faisan* the pheasant; *la faisane* the pheasant (female).

4. *esse* **is added to the masculine in nearly 20 nouns:**

l'abbé the abbe (priest); *l'abbesse* the abbess; *le prince* the prince; *la princesse* the princess; *le Suisse* the Swiss; *la Suissesse* the Swiss lady; *le nègre* the negro; *la négresse* the negress; *l'hôte* the host; *l'hôtesse* the hostess; *le maître* master; *la maîtresse* mistress.

5. **Those ending in** *-e* **(mute) remain the same for both genders:**

l'artiste (m.) the artist; *l'artiste* (f.) the artist; (also singer).

6. **Nouns (derived from a present participle) ending in** *-eur* **change** *-eur* **into** *-euse:*

le chanteur the singer; *la chanteuse* the (lady) singer; *le danseur* the dancer; *la danseuse* the dancer (f.); *le buveur* the drinker; *la buveuse* the drinker (f.).

7. **Some in** *-rice:*

l'acteur the actor; *l'actrice* the actress; *l'instituteur* the teacher; *l'institutrice* the (lady) teacher; *l'accusateur, l'accusatrice* the accuser; *la cantatrice* (eminent) singer (f.); *procureur* proxy *procuratrice; ambassadeur* ambassador *ambassadrice.*

8. **Seven in** *-eresse:*

chasseur huntsman; *chasseresse* huntress; *défendeur* defendant; *demandeur, demanderesse* plaintiff; *enchanteur, enchanteresse* enchanter, enchantress; *pécheur, pécheresse* sinner; *vendeur* vendor *venderesse* (law); *vengeur, vengeresse* avenger; and add: *devineur* guesser; *devineresse* (obsolete) diviner; *vendeur* (*vendeuse*) seller; *chasseur* (*chasseuse*) hunter (huntress); *empereur* emperor; *impératrice* empress; *voleur* (*voleuse*) thief; *trompeur* (*trompeuse*) deceiver; *cf. heureux* happy; *heureuse* happy; *serviteur* servant (m.); *servante* (f.) servant; *dieu* god; *déesse* goddess; *duc* duke; *duchesse* duchess; *bailleur* lessor *bailleresse; prophète* prophet; *prophétesse* prophetess; *doge* doge; *dogaresse* wife of a doge; *gouverneur* governor (tutor); *gouvernante* governess; *compagnon* companion; *compagne* (f.).

§ 4. Double Gender:

auteur author (authoress); *écrivain* writer; *professeur* professor; *peintre* painter; *une femme peintre* a woman painter; *le guide* guide; *le juge* judge; *le poète* poet, etc.

1. Others shorter in the feminine form than in the masculine:

le canard drake; *la cane* duck; *le mulet* mule; *la mule* mule (she-ass); *le vieillard* the old man; *la vieille* the old lady; *le dindon* turkey-cock; *la dinde* turkey-hen.

2. Others by a different word:

homme man; *femme* wife; *père* father; *mère* mother; *frère* brother; *sœur* sister; *oncle* uncle; *tante* aunt; *gendre* son-in-law; *bru* daughter-in-law; *parrain* godfather; *marraine* godmother; *cheval* horse; *jument* mare; *coq* cock (rooster); *poule* hen; *taureau* bull; *vache* cow; *brebis* sheep; *bélier* ram; *bouc* (he-) goat; *chèvre* (she-) goat; *cerf* stag; *biche* roe; *le singe* monkey; *la guenon* (she-) monkey; *le chat* cat; *la chatte* (she-) cat; *le loup* wolf; *la louve* she-wolf; *jars* gander; *oie* goose; *veau* calf; *génisse* heifer; *sanglier* wild boar; *la laie* wild sow, etc.; *le rat* rat; *la souris* mouse; (*les souris* mice), etc.

3. Some (originally feminine) are always feminine and for both sexes:

la victime the victim; *la sentinelle* sentry; *la personne* person; *la connaissance* the acquaintance; *la ganache* blockhead, etc.

4. Always feminine:

la giraffe giraffe; *la panthère* panther; *l'hyène* hyena; or: *la panthère mâle* the male panther; *la panthère femelle* female panther, etc.

5. Also:

la baleine whale; *la tortue* tortoise; *la pie* magpie; *l'hirondelle* the swallow; *l'alouette* the lark.

6. Always masculine:

le merle blackbird; *le cygne* swan; *le hibou* owl; *l'écureuil* the squirrel; *le vautour* vulture; *le castor* beaver; *le léopard* the leopard; *l'éléphant* the elephant; *le chameau* camel; *le saumon* salmon.

§ 5. Few change their meaning according to the gender:

Masculine	Feminine
le page page	*la page*
le poêle stove	*la poêle* frying-pan
le voile (long veil) veil	*la voile* sail
le guide guide	*la guide* the rein
le critique critic	*la critique* criticism
le manche handle	*la manche* sleeve
le tour turn (trick)	*la tour* tower
le mousse cabin-boy	*la mousse* moss
le vase vase	*la vase* mud (slime)
le somme nap (sleep)	*la somme* sum
le livre book	*la livre* pound
le politique politician	*la politique* politics
le crêpe crape	*la crêpe* pancake
le mémoire memorandum	*la mémoire* memory, etc.

cf.: la Manche the English Channel; *la voilette* (face) veil

Practice:

Paris est gai Paris is merry; *Versailles est toujours attrayant* Versailles is ever attractive; *Londres est grand* London is big; *un enfant, une enfant* a child; *le mode* the mode (mood); *la mode* the fashion; *un élève, une élève* a pupil; *un malade, une malade* a patient; *la (fête de) Noël* Christmas; *la librairie* bookstore; *la boulangerie* bakeshop; and many others ending in *-ie: parfumerie,* etc. (f.); *la chimie* chemistry; *le Maine* Maine; *le blanc, le noir,* white, black; *le beau* the beautiful; and words and phrases used as nouns; *le mètre* yard (metre); *le centimètre* centimeter, etc.

§ 6. The following are either masculine or feminine (and are almost identical in meaning):

aigle eagle: *l'aigle* (m.) *est un oiseau de proie* the eagle is a bird of prey; *cet homme est un aigle* that man is a noted person (a star); *les aigles romaines* (f.) Roman Eagles; *l'aigle de Meaux* Bossuet; *un regard d'aigle* eagle-eyed; *l'aigle noir de Prusse* the Black Prussian Eagle.

amour and *orgue* are masculine when singular; *amour filial* filial love; *un grand orgue* a large organ; also masculine or feminine in the plural; *de beaux amours* or *de belles amours* beautiful

love; *mes premières amours* my first love; *de petits amours* little Cupids; *de grandes* (*de grands orgues*) *orgues* great organs (music).

automne autumn (generally masculine): *un bel automne* a beautiful autumn.

gent (formerly: nation, people) is feminine when singular: *la gent marécageuse* the frogs (*les grenouilles*); *gens* (formerly plural of: *gent*) people, persons; and either masculine or feminine in the plural. Note that the adjectives which do not immediately precede or those that follow *gens* are in the masculine: *tous ces gens honnêtes sont heureux* all those honest people are happy; *de vieilles gens* old people; *toutes les vieilles gens sont parfois à plaindre* old people are at times to be pitied. But: *tous ces braves gens* all those good people; *les vieilles gens sont souvent malheureux* old people (folks) are often unhappy; *cf.: enfans* and *enfants* children. See French Reviews.

période (f.) fixed number of years: *les grandes périodes de l'histoire* the great periods of History; *l'éloquence à son plus haut période* eloquence at its highest stage; *maladie* (f.) *à son dernier période* (m.) illness at its turning point (*le plus haut point* crisis).

hymne (m. or f.); *un bel hymne, une belle hymne* beautiful hymn; when implying church music *hymne* is generally feminine.

merci is feminine in: *être à la merci de* to be at the mercy of; masculine when it means: thanks; *un grand merci* much obliged; *Dieu merci* thank God; *cf.: je vous remercie* I thank you; *remercîments* thanks.

pâques Easter (f.); *pâques fleuries* (*le dimanche des rameaux*) Palm Sunday; *la pâque* Jewish Passover; *faire de bonnes pâques* to receive Communion (at Easter time).

foudre (f.) thunderbolt; sometimes masculine in Poetry; but: *un foudre de guerre* a great warrior; *un foudre d'éloquence* a great orator; *les foudres* (f.) *de l'Eglise* excommunication.

orge (f.) barley; but: *orge perlé* pearled barley; *orge mondé* hulled (husked) barley.

après-midi (formerly masculine *or* feminine) is now masculine.

œuvre (f.) work (-s): *mettez-vous à l'œuvre* go to work; *le mérite des bonnes œuvres* (*de charité*) the merit of good works; *il a toutes les œuvres* (*toute l'œuvre*) *de Racine* he has (owns) all Racine's works; but: *le grand œuvre* the philosopher's stone; *le gros œuvre* the heavy stone-work, or *les fondements d'un bâtiment* foundation of a building; *cf.: derniers ouvrages parus* latest publications; *le dernier exemplaire* the last copy (of a book).

chose (f.) the thing; *une (affaire) chose importante* an important matter; and always followed by a masculine (adjective): *quelque chose de nouveau* something new; *cf.: rien de nouveau* nothing new; *le Petit Chose* (Daudet's) the Little What's your name? *quelque chose que je lui aie dite*, for: *quelle que soit la chose que je* etc., whatever I may have said to him (her).
délices (f.) delight; *un délice* joy; *un vrai délice* a real joy.

LESSON II

PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

§ 7. General Rule: Most nouns and adjectives form their plural by adding *s* to the singular:

le mur the wall; *les murs* the walls; *le petit garçon* the little boy (the small boy); *les petits garçons* the little boys.

Exceptions:

1. **Invariable words take no** *s*:
les oui the ayes; *les non* the nays.

2. **Nouns and adjectives ending in** *-s;-x;-z* **remain unchanged:**
le fils, les fils the son, the sons; *la voix, les voix* the voice, the voices; *le nez, les nez* the nose, the noses; *l'omnibus* the omnibus, *les omnibus* the omnibuses; *heureux père* happy father; *heureux pères* happy fathers.

3. **Nouns and adjectives ending in** *-au;-eu* **take** *x* **in the plural; likewise** *seven* **nouns in** *-ou :*
un bateau a boat; *des bateaux* boats; *le cheveu* the hair; *les cheveux* the hair; *de beaux cheveux* beautiful hair; exception: *bleu, bleus* (pl.) blue; *landaus* landaus; *bijou* (*x*) jewel (s); *cailloux* pebbles; *choux* cabbages; *genoux* knees; *hiboux* owls; *joujoux* toys; *poux* lice; *les sous* pennies, etc.

4. **Most nouns and adjectives ending in** *-al* **change** *-al* **to** *aux :*
le cheval the horse; *les chevaux* the horses; *égal, égaux* equal; *l'animal* the animal; *les animaux* the animals; *le journal* the newspaper; *les journaux* the newspapers; exceptions: (*s* being added to the singular) *bal* ball; *carnaval* carnival; *chacal* jackal; *aval* endorsement; few adjectives: *amical* amicable; *fatal* fatal;

final final; *glacial* glacial (icy); *initial* initial; *matinal* early-riser; *naval* naval (nautical); *pénal* penal; *théâtral* theatrical, take *s* in the plural; *cf.: les pals* or *les paux* stakes (punishment)· *les cals* calli; and a few others seldom used.

5. **The following in *-ail* change *-ail* to *-aux:***

le bail the lease	*les baux* the leases
le corail coral	*les coraux* corals
l'émail enamel	*les émaux* enamels
le soupirail air-hole	*les soupiraux* air-holes
le travail the work (labor)	*les travaux* works
le vitrail (stained) glass window	*les vitraux* glass, etc.

NOTE.—*bétail* cattle; *les bestiaux* cattle; others take *s* in the plural.

§ 8. DOUBLE PLURALS:

aïeul (*aïeux*) ancestor (s); *aïeul* (*aïeuls*) grandsire (s); *ail* (*s*) garlic; *ail* (*aulx*) garlic; and more colloquial; *ciel* (*cieux*) sky (skies), Heaven; *ciel* (*s*) sky (painting); *œil* (*yeux*) eye (eyes); *les œils-de-bœuf* oval windows; *travail* (*travaux*) work, labor (works); *le travail* the brake (horse-shoeing); *les travails* the brakes; *les travails de ce ministre* the official reports of that minister.

§ 9. INVARIABLE NOUNS: (and generally singular):

1. **Those of metals:**

l'or gold; *l'argent* silver.

2. **Abstract nouns:**

l'innocence innocence; *la justice* justice.

3. **Nouns for Arts and Sciences:**

la chimie Chemistry, etc.

4. **Words used as substantives:**

le beau the beautiful; *cf.*: *témoin* (witness) always singular at the beginning of a sentence and in: *à témoin* as witness (es); *témoin ses blessures* witness his wounds (as evidence his wounds); *on vous prend tous à témoin* you are all called to witness; *citer comme témoin* (*appeler devant la justice*) to be called (in Court) as a witness; *cf.: rendre témoignage à* to bear witness (to testify to).

§ 10. SUBSTANTIVES always in the plural:

accordailles (better: *accords*); *accords* (colloq.) preliminary understanding before signing the marriage stipulations; *affres* (f.) the agony of death; *aguets* (m.) watch (-ing); *alentours* the neighboring grounds; *armoiries* (f.) coat of arms; *arrérages* arrears; *besicles* (formerly large spectacles) (barnacles) used only in: *prenez donc vos besicles!* you had better wear glasses! (irony); *broussailles* bushes (brushwood); *confins* confines (borders); *décombres* ruins (débris); *dépens* (m.) cost of a lawsuit; *aux dépens de* at the expense of; *doléances* complaints (f.); *entrailles* bowels; *les épousailles* (obsolete) (f.) betrothal ceremony; *fiançailles* (f.) engagement (betrothal); *frais* (m.) expense, cost, outlay; *funérailles* (f.) funeral; *assister aux funérailles; hardes* (f.) (daily, and common) wearing apparel, clothes; *mânes* (f.) manes (shades); *matériaux* materials; *mœurs* ways (customs); *mouchettes* (f.) snuffers or scissors to snuff (*ciseaux pour moucher*); *nippes* (f.) (old) clothes; *linge usé* worn-out linen; *obsèques* obsequies (funeral); *prémices* early fruit (first production); *ténèbres* darkness (gloom); *vêpres* (f.) Vespers; *vivres* (f.) food (provisions, victuals).

Singular and invariable:

les si the ifs; *les pourquoi* the whys; *les car* the fors, etc.

Likewise the compounds (verb, preposition, adverb, etc.):

les bric-à-brac; les cache-cache hide and seek; *les gagne-petit* (or *rémouleur ambulant*) scissors (knife) grinder; *les laisser-passer* permit; pass; *des on dit* vague reports; *des ouï-dire* hearsay; *des passe-partout* pass-key; passe-partout; *des passe-passe* leger-demain (a trick of sleight of hand); *des pince-sans-rire* dry joker; *des quant-à-soi* (*moi*) (colloq.) an assumed reserve;— *qu'en dira-t-on* gossip (tittle-tattle);— *réveille-matin* alarm clocks;— *sauve-qui-peut* rout, stampede;— *soi-disant* self-styled (would-be;— so-called); — *songe-creux* (living on visions) visionary;— *va-et-vient* (*des balanciers*) pendulum, oscillations; small ferryboats; pass-ropes.

Singular sense:

un abat-jour (lamp shade) for: *qui abat le jour* which throws down the light; *des abat-jour* shades.

Plural sense:

un chasse-mouches (*un éventail* fan) fly-trap: *qui chasse les mouches* which drives the flies away; and because there is a plural idea even in the singular form of the article.

Exceptions: with *garde* if it refers to persons or things *s* is added to *garde* when speaking of persons:

un garde-malade; une garde-malade attendant; sick-nurse; *des gardes-malades* attendants; *cf.: des garde-manger* buttery (pantry).

§ 11. NOUN with an ADVERB or a PREPOSITION takes *s* or *x:*

des arrière-boutiques (rear) backshops; *des entr'actes* intermedes (between the acts); *des contre-amiraux* rear-admirals, etc.

1. **Compounds with *or* without hyphen (composed of a noun and an adjective (*or* participle) take *s* (*x*):**

les bas-reliefs bas-reliefs; *les grands-pères* grandfathers; *les chefs-lieux* country-towns (— precincts); *les portemanteaux* the valises; *les grand' mères* grandmothers; *les anglo-saxons* the Anglo-Saxons and a few others excepted; *cf.: bonhomme* (*bonshommes*) good (-natured) man (men); *petits bonshommes* little fellows; *madame* (*mesdames*) Madam (Mrs.) *or:* ladies; *mademoiselle* miss; *monsieur* Sir (Mr.); *messieurs* Messieurs; *gentilhomme* nobleman; *gentils-hommes* noblemen.

2. **Joined by a preposition the first noun takes *s:***

un chef d'œuvre masterpiece; *des chefs d'œuvre* (*s*); *un coq-à-l'âne* cock-and-bull story (stories); *un tête-à-tête* private interview (s); and *pied-à-terre* (m.) temporary lodging, are invariable.

§ 12. WHEN *de* is understood *s* is added to the first noun only:

des Hôtels-Dieu hospitals; *cf.: hôpital; hospice* (m.); *des reine-claude* greengages; *des timbres-poste* postage-stamps; *des bains-marie* (water baths) boiling water in which is immersed a cooking (heating) utensil; double-boiler.

§ 13. FOREIGN nouns incorporated into the language generally take *s:*

un accessit; des accessits honorable mention; *des zéros* zeros; *des alléluias* Hallelujah or alleluia; *des biftecks* beefsteaks; *des soli* solos; *des pianos* pianos; *des duos* duets; *des toasts* toasts; *des tramways* etc., etc. But *des errata; des pater; des quatuor* quartet (-tes) etc.; some Italian names (see Dictionary) *dilettante* (*-i*).

Practice:

ce sont des perce-neige those are snowdrops; *voilà des tire-bouchons* there are corkscrews; *faites voir ces albums* show these albums; *les pot-au-feu* boiled meat (stew); *des demi-heures* half-hours; *les deux Racine* the two Racines; *cf.: les Racines sont rares* Racines are scarce; *les Bourbons, les Guises, les Condés, les Horaces, les Curiaces, les Stuarts, les Pharaons, les Tudors* (historical names of families, dynasties); *il a deux Virgiles* he owns two copies of Vergil; *ce musée possède deux Raphaëls* this Museum possesses two Raphaels; *les deux Corneilles étaient frères* the two Corneilles were brothers; *les Alpes* the Alps; *les Pyrénées* the Pyrenees; *les Indes* Indies; *les deux Guinées* the two Guineas; *les Vosges* the Vosges; *les Cévennes; les deux Amériques* the two Americas; *les Pays-Bas* the Netherlands.

§ 14. DETERMINATIVES of NOUNS with *à; de* of (from); *en* in (into); *sans* without; etc.

un homme d'expédition a man quick in his work; *le chapeau de Jeanne* Jane's hat; *un verre à vin* one (a) wineglass; *un verre de vin* a glass of wine.

1. *à* (like *de*) **may denote possession:**

le chapeau à Jean John's hat (belonging to).

2. *à* **may refer to a thing possessed:**

la dame aux cheveux noirs the lady with dark hair (*à* is then equivalent to: *avec* with).

3. *à* **and** *de* **may again show the relation between the cause and effect:**

prince du sang prince of royal blood; *du blanc au noir* from white to black; *un chapeau de paille* a straw hat; *une montre d'or* (*en or*) a gold watch; *une épée en acier* a steel sword; *vêtement d'homme* man's clothing; *vêtements pour hommes* men's clothing; *Faculté de Droit* Law School; *vers la fin de l'après-midi* towards the end of the afternoon.

4. **Other examples:**

en gage d'amitié as a token of friendship; *pour l'amour de Dieu* for the love of God; *en un quart d'heure* in a quarter of an hour; *dans un quart d'heure* in (after) a quarter of an hour; *un voyage autour de ma chambre* a trip around my room; *un homme sans volonté* a man without will.

5. **Even infinitives may serve as determinatives to nouns:**

le don de parler (*de la parole*) the gift of eloquence; *le temps de manger* (just) time to eat; *l'art de bien dire* the art of speaking well.

6. ***du* and *de* to be distinguished in:**

une maison de prince a princely house; *le palais du prince* the prince's palace. The former means a house (like that of a prince) richly appointed; the latter simply denotes possession.

NOTE.—Nouns may be followed by *à;* others may require *pour*, etc.; such nouns must not be joined by *et* (and); same rule applies to verbs:

son assiduité et sa persévérance au travail his (her) assiduity and perseverance in work; *son obéissance à* his (her) obedience to; *son affection pour son maître* his affection for his master; *son obéissance à son maître et son affection pour lui* (for him).

§ 15. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE: *le; l'; la; les* (p. 117).
THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE: *un* (m.); *une* (f.); a, an, one.
THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE (§§ 61, 64); *du; de l'* (m.); *de l'; de la* (f.); *des* (some or any).

§ 16. GENDER AND NUMBER: The article agrees in number and gender with its noun: *le* before a masculine noun or adjective beginning with a consonant or *h aspirate; l'* (for *le*) before a masculine beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; *l'* (for *la*) before a feminine beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; *la* before a feminine beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate; *les* before all plural nouns.

le père the father; *l'ami* the (male) friend; *le héros* the hero; *l'amie* (f.) the friend; *l'homme* the man; *la dame* the lady; *l'huile* (f.) the oil; *les messieurs* the gentlemen. See page 3; also Numeral Adjective *un:*

un is used before masculine; *une* before feminine nouns; *des* is the plural:

un homme a man; *une femme* a woman;
des hommes men; *des femmes* women.

§ 17. GENERAL RULE. 1. The article (and also *à* to, in; *de*, of, from) must be repeated before each noun and adjective:

le père et la mère the father and mother;
à Paris et à New-York in Paris and New York;
de Jean et de Pierre of John and Peter.

2. If the article does not denote a distinctive object we do not use it:

une leçon de conversation lesson on conversation.

3. Also in set expressions:

les ponts et chaussées bridges and roads.

4. Nouns in apposition:

le Grand Océan ou *océan Pacifique* Pacific Ocean;

5. Few other cases:

les lundi et mardi Mondays and Tuesdays; *l'histoire ancienne et moderne* or *l'histoire ancienne et la moderne* Ancient and Modern History; *les père et mère* parents; *un brave et gentil garçon* good and amiable boy; *le brave et illustre Joffre* the brave and illustrious Joffre. But: *le brave, l'illustre Joffre.*

6. Large number of expressions (verb *plus* a noun):

avoir faim to be hungry; *avoir soif* to be thirsty; *avoir chaud* to be warm; *avoir besoin* (*de*) to need; to have need of; *donner ordre* to give orders; *donner avis* to notify; *faire place* to make room; etc.

7. In proverbs; general statements:

expérience passe science experience surpasses etc; *plus fait douceur que violence* gentleness is more effective than violence.

8. In enumerations:

vieillards, femmes et enfants old people, women and children; and in vocatives: *Seigneur* O Lord.

Practice:

le bien et le mal good and evil; *le vrai, le faible, le beau* the true, the weak, the beautiful; *le souvenir* the remembrance; and a few other adjectives, verbs, adverbs, etc., used as nouns: *on lui tiendra tête* they will cope with him (resist him); *tenez-lui la tête* hold his head; change of meaning; *il se lave les mains* he is washing his

hands; English use possessive: *il est entré le chapeau sur la tête* he came in, his hat on his head; *cinq sous la douzaine* five cents a dozen; *dix sous le mètre* ten cents a yard; *un franc la livre* one franc a (per) pound; *le lundi est le premier jour de la semaine* Monday is the first day of the week; *le maréchal Foch* Marshal Foch; *le président Wilson* President Wilson; *parle-t-il anglais* does he speak English? *parle-t-elle bien l'anglais* does she speak English well? *venez samedi* (le samedi) come (on) Saturday; *samedi dernier* last Saturday; *il est Français* (*c'est un Français*) he is a Frenchman (that is a, etc.); *la semaine dernière était la dernière semaine de l'année* last week was the last week of the year; *il est artiste* he is an artist; *Louis quatorze* Louis the Fourteenth; *tous les hommes* all men; *la plupart des soldats* most soldiers; *cent grammaires* one hundred grammars.

LESSON III

§ 18. Qualifying Adjectives (*adjectifs qualificatifs*).

Rule.—As previously studied an adjective agrees in number and gender with the noun and pronoun it qualifies; *e* is added to the masculine singular, unless the adjective ends in *-e; s* in the plural.

m.	f.	m. pl.	f. pl.	
grand	*grande*	*grands*	*grandes*	tall, great, large
haut	*haute*	*hauts*	*hautes*	high (tall), lofty
petit	*petite*	*petits*	*petites*	small, little
riche	*riche*	*riches*	*riches*	rich
pauvre	*pauvre*	*pauvres*	*pauvres*	poor
facile	*facile*	*faciles*	*faciles*	easy
jeune	*jeune*	*jeunes*	*jeunes*	young
joli	*jolie*	*jolis*	*jolies*	pretty
blessé	*blessée*	*blessés*	*blessées*	wounded

Note.—Two or more nouns masculine with adjective masculine plural; two or more nouns feminine with adjective feminine plural; and with nouns *or* pronouns of different gender the attributive and predicative adjectives are masculine plural:

le crayon et le canif sont bons the pencil and penknife are good; *le père et la mère sont âgés* the father and mother are old; *la tante*

et la cousine sont petites the aunt and cousin are short; *lui et moi sommes contents* he and I are pleased; *elle et toi, vous êtes contents* (or: *contentes*) you and she are pleased. Observe: *aigu* sharp; *aiguë* in the feminine; also *dû* (*devoir* to owe) owed; and *mû* (*mouvoir* to move) moved; prompted; very few adjectives are invariable: *capot* (in *rester capot* to stand speechless) a single round (cards); *grogron* growling (grouchy); *ambigu, ambiguë;* ambiguous.

§ 19. Exceptions to the formation of the feminine of adjectives; the plural of adjectives is formed in the same way as that of nouns.

1. **Adjectives ending in *-el; -eil; -ol; -ul; -en; -on; -et; -ot* and those in *-s* generally double their last consonant in the feminine and before adding *e* (mute):**

bon	good	*bonne*	*bons*	*bonnes*
bas	low	*basse*	*bas*	*basses*
cruel	cruel	*cruelle*	*cruels*	*cruelles*
pareil	like (similar)	*pareille*	*pareils*	*pareilles*
ancien	ancient (former)	*ancienne*	*anciens*	*anciennes*

nul	no one	*nulle; nulles gens* no people
muet	mute	*muette; muets; muettes* or: dumb
épais	thick	*épaisse; épais; épaisses*
gras	fat	*grasse; gras; grasses* (fleshy, plump)
sot	fool, silly	*sotte; sots; sottes* (stupid)

But: *hébreu* (m.) *hébraïque* (f.); *mou* (*mol*); *mous; molle; molles* soft, mellow; *fat* fop (coxcomb) and *dispos* (active, nimble) have no feminine; *dévot* (*-e*) devout; *idiot* (*-e*) idiot, foolish; *falot* (*-e*) droll (queer); *manchot* (*-e*) one-armed; *niais* (*-e*) ninny, simpleton; *ras* (*-e*) close-shaved; flat; *français* (*-e*) French; *anglais* (*-e*) English; *danois* (*-e*) Danish; *écossais* (*-e*) Scotch. Or nouns: *Français* (*-e*) French (Frenchwoman).

2. **Others forming their feminine irregularly:**

Masculine	Feminine	
blanc	*blanche*	white
bénin	*bénigne*	benign
bref	*brève*	brief, short, concise
causeur (see rule for nouns)	*causeuse*	talkative (chatty)

doux	*douce*	sweet, smooth, gentle
favori	*favorite*	favorite
faux	*fausse*	false, erroneous, insincere
frais	*fraîche*	cool, fresh, recent, florid
flatteur (see rule for nouns)	*flatteuse*	flattering, gratifying
franc	*franche*	frank, free, complete, full
grec	*grecque*	Greek
long	*longue*	long
malin	*maligne*	malignant, malicious, sly
public	*publique*	public
roux	*rousse*	reddish, sandy
sec	*sèche*	dry, lean; dried, spare (thin)
tiers	*tierce*	third (music, time, party)
turc	*turque*	Turkish
gentil	*gentille*	nice
beau (*bel* before a vowel or *h* mute)	*belle*	beautiful, handsome, fair
nouveau (*nouvel* before a vowel or *h* mute)	*nouvelle*	new, recent, modern
fou (*fol* before a vowel or *h* mute)	*folle*	mad, wild, foolish, distracting
mou (*mol* before a vowel or *h* mute)	*molle*	soft, slack, effeminate
jumeau	*jumelle*	twin
vieux (*vieil* before a vowel or *h* mute)	*vieille*	old, aged, venerable
neuf	*neuve*	new (brand new)
actif	*active*	active, quick, energetic
vif (fiery)	*vive*	lively, quick, keen, alive
attentif	*attentive*	attentive, etc.

3. **Adjectives ending in** *-er; -ier;* **and six in** *-et* **do not double the final:** *r* **or** *t,* **but take** *è* (*grave*) **preceding same:**

étranger	*étrangère*	foreign, strange, irrelevant
altier	*altière*	haughty, arrogant, stately
cher	*chère*	dear, costly, expensive
premier	*première*	first, chief, primitive
dernier	*dernière*	last; youngest; closing
fier	*fière*	proud, stout (bold)
complet	*complète*	complete, full, whole

secret	*secrète*	secret, private, hidden
inquiet	*inquiète*	unquiet, anxious, restless
replet	*replète*	bulky, corpulent, lusty
concret	*concrète*	concrete
discret	*discrète*	considerate, prudent, discreet, reserved, close

léger thoughtless, fickle; *légère* light, nimble, unsteady, feeble

4. Adjectives in *-x* change *x* into *-se:*

jaloux	*jalouse*	jealous, desirous, anxious
heureux	*heureuse*	happy, fortunate, lucky
nombreux	*nombreuse*	numerous, large
malheureux	*malheureuse*	unhappy, unlucky, unfortunate
généreux	*généreuse*	generous, liberal, bountiful
affreux	*affreuse*	frightful, horrible, atrocious, horrid, ghastly
studieux	*studieuse*	studious
pluvieux	*pluvieuse*	pluvious (wet), rainy, showery
orageux	*orageuse*	stormy, tempestuous, agitated
nerveux	*nerveuse*	nervous, sinewy, wiry

5. Eleven in *-eur* add *e*:

antérieur	*antérieure*	anterior, prior, previous
citérieur	*citérieure*	citerior, hither
extérieur	*extérieure*	exterior, external, foreign; outside, outward
inférieur	*inférieure*	inferior, subordinate, lower
intérieur	*intérieure*	interior, internal, inner, inland
majeur (of age, of full age)	*majeure*	major, greater, paramount
mineur (under age; minor)	*mineure*	minor; less (-er)
meilleur	*meilleure*	better, preferable; the best
postérieur	*postérieure*	posterior, subsequent, later
supérieur	*supérieure*	superior, upper, higher
ultérieur	*ultérieure*	ulterior, further

NOTE.—All add *s* to their plural; same rules pertaining to nouns; adverbs generally formed by adding *-ment* to the feminine of adjectives and follow closely the verb.

LESSON IV

§ 20. AVOIR to have; ETRE to be (at page 98)

Les temps primitifs (principal parts):

avoir (l'infinitif); ayant (le participe présent); eu (le participe passé); j'ai (le présent de l'indicatif); et j'eus (le passé défini)

y avoir to be (fully conjugated at § 52)

§ 21. INDICATIVE MOOD

Present. (§ 53.)

j'ai, I have, am having, do have	***ai-je***, have I, am I having, do I have?
tu as, you have (thou hast, ye have)	***as-tu***, have you, etc.?
il a, he has, is having, does have	***a-t-il***, has he, is he having, etc.?
elle a, she has, is having, does have	***a-t-elle***, has she, is she having?
on a, one has (we, they, people have)	***a-t-on***, has one (any one), etc.?
nous avons, we have, are having, do have	***avons-nous***, have we, do we have?
vous avez, you have, are having, do have	***avez-vous***, have you, do you have?
ils ont, they have, are having, do have	***ont-ils***, have they, do they have?
elles ont, they have, are having, do have	***ont-elles*** have they, do they have?

NOTE.—*J'ai*, etc., may mean also: I have been having. Tenses, etc., fully explained and illustrated, § 53.

§ 22. Imperfect (§ 62.)

j'avais, I had, used to have, was having	***avais-je***, had I, did I have?
tu avais (thou hadst) you had, used to have	***avais-tu***, had you, etc.?
il avait, he had, used to have, did have	***avait-il***, had he, was he having?

elle avait, she had, used to have, did have — *avait-elle*, had she, was she having?
on avait, one had, used to have, did have — *avait-on*, had one (any one)?
nous avions, we had, were having, did have — *avions-nous*, had we, did we have?
vous aviez, you had, were having, did have — *aviez-vous*, had you, did you have?
ils avaient, they had, were having, did have — *avaient-ils*, had they, did they have?
elles avaient, they had, were having, did have — *avaient-elles*, had they, etc.?

§ 23. Past Definite (Preterit) (§ 66)

j'eus, I had — *eus-je*, had I?
tu eus, you had (thou hadst) — *eus-tu*, had you? (hadst thou?)
il eut, he had — *eut-il*, had he?
nous eûmes, we had — *eûmes-nous*, had we?
vous eûtes, you had — *eûtes-vous*, had you?
ils eurent, they had — *eurent-ils*, had they?

§ 24. Past Indefinite (§ 69)

j'ai eu, I (have had) had — *ai-je eu*, have I had, did I have?
tu as eu, you (have had) had — *as-tu eu*, did you have, etc.?
il a eu, he had (has had), did, etc. — *a-t-il eu*, did he have, etc.?
nous avons eu, we had (have had, did, etc.) — *avons-nous eu*, did we have, etc.?
vous avez eu, you had (have had, did, etc.) — *avez-vous eu*, did you have?
ils ont eu, they have had, etc. — *ont-ils eu*, did they have, etc.?

§ 25. REVIEW rules governing Nouns and Adjectives: and the latter usually follow their nouns and generally denote *nationality*, *religion*, *office*, or *color*, *shape*, *taste*, etc., or a physical quality:

une table carrée a square table; *une table ronde* a round etc.; *la langue française* (*allemande*) the French (German) language; *il a de bonne encre rouge* (*bleue*) he has good red (blue) ink; *elle a les yeux bleus* (*noirs*, *gris*) she has blue (dark, gray) eyes; *la main droite* (*gauche*) right (left) hand; *la langue italienne* (*espagnole*, *portugaise*) Italian (Spanish, Portuguese) language; *feu*

la reine ou *la feue reine* the late queen; *feu les rois* or *les feus rois* the late kings.

Literal sense	Figurative sense
une vraie histoire regular story	*une histoire vraie* a true story
les noirs soucis the black cares	*le crayon rouge* red pencil
le chat noir the black cat	

§ 26. Past Anterior (Lesson X, § 95)

j'eus eu, I had had	*eus-je eu*, had I had?
tu eus eu, you had had (thou hadst etc.)	*eus-tu eu*, hadst thou had?
il eut eu, he had had	*eut-il eu*, had he had?
nous eûmes eu, we had had	*eûmes-nous eu*, had we had?
vous eûtes eu, you had had	*eûtes-vous eu*, had you had?
ils eurent eu, they had had	*eurent-ils eu*, had they had?

§ 27. Pluperfect (Lesson X, § 96)

j'avais eu, I had had	*avais-je eu*, had I had?
tu avais eu, you had had	*avais-tu eu*, had you had?
il avait eu, he had had	*avait-il eu*, had he had?
nous avions eu, we had had	*avions-nous eu*, had we had?
vous aviez eu, you had had	*aviez-vous eu*, had you had?
ils avaient eu, they had had	*avaient-ils eu*, had they had?

§ 28. Future (§ 98)

j'aurai, I (will) shall have	*aurai-je*, will (shall) I have?
tu auras, thou wilt (shalt) have	*auras-tu*, shalt (wilt) thou have?
il aura, he will (shall) have	*aura-t-il*, shall (will) he have?
nous aurons, we shall (will) have	*aurons-nous*, shall (will) we have?
vous aurez, you will (shall) have	*aurez-vous*, shall (will) you have?
ils auront, they will (shall) have	*auront-ils*, will (shall) they have?

§ 29. Future Past (Lesson X, § 99)

j'aurai eu, I will (shall) have had	*aurai-je eu*, shall I etc.?
tu auras eu, thou shalt " "	*auras-tu eu*, wilt thou etc.?
il aura eu, he will (shall) " "	*aura-t-il eu*, shall he etc.?
nous aurons eu, we will " "	*aurons-nous eu*, shall we etc.?
vous aurez eu, you will " "	*aurez-vous eu*, shall you etc.?
ils auront eu, they will " "	*auront-ils eu*, shall they etc.?

§ 30. CONDITIONAL MOOD (§ 101)

Present or Future

j'aurais, I would or should have	*aurais-je*, would I or should etc.?
tu aurais, thou wouldst (-st) "	*aurais-tu*, wouldst, or shouldst etc.?
il aurait, he would have, etc.	*aurait-il*, would he or should etc.?
nous aurions, we would have, etc.	*aurions-nous*, should we etc.?
vous auriez, you would have, etc.	*auriez-vous*, should you etc.?
ils auraient, they would have, etc.	*auraient-ils*, should they etc.?

§ 31. MATERIAL FOR REVIEW AND DICTATION

une étoffe chère an expensive material; *son cher oncle* his (her) dear uncle; *cher* as adverb is invariable: *ces étoffes coûtent cher* those materials are expensive; *un homme charmant* a charming man; *une personne charmante* a charming person; *peine perdue* labor lost (in vain).

1. **Past and present participle follow the noun as above:**

à vos heures perdues in your moments of leisure; *objets perdus* lost articles; *c'est du temps perdu* it is time lost; *cf.: un charmant homme* (emphatic).

2. **Agreement according to the meaning:**

trois cordes de bois blanc three cords of white wood; *trois pouces de bois carrés* three square inches of wood (or, wood three inches square); *le premier et le dernier rang* the first and last rank; *les premier et dernier rangs* or: *le premier rang et le dernier* the first and last rank.

3. **After** *plus . . . plus* **the more . . . etc., and in certain exclamations, the adjective follows the verb:**

plus il est riche, plus il est avare the richer he is, the more avaricious he is; *qu'elle est heureuse!* how happy she is!

4. **as adverbs:**

elle vise plus haut she aims higher; *ces fleurs sentent bon* these flowers smell sweet; *on l'a fait exprès* it was done purposely.

5. *-ment* (-ly) **added to a feminine adjective denotes generally an adverb:**

heureux (m.); *heureuse* (f.); happy; *heureusement* happily; *poliment* politely; *publiquement* publicly.

§ 32. Conditional Past (1st Form) § 103.

j'aurais eu, I would (should) have had — *aurais-je eu*, should etc.?
tu aurais eu, thou wouldst have had — *aurais-tu eu*, wouldst etc.?
il aurait eu, he would have had — *aurait-il eu*, would etc.?
nous aurions eu, we would have had — *aurions-nous eu*, would etc.?
vous auriez eu, you would have had — *auriez-vous eu*, would etc.?
ils auraient eu, they would have had — *auraient-ils eu*, would they have had?

§ 33. Conditional Past (2nd Form) Lesson X, § 104.

j'eusse eu, I would (should) have had — *eussé-je eu*, should I have had?
tu eusses eu, thou wouldst have had — *eusses-tu eu*, shouldst thou have had?
il eût eu, he would (should) have had — *eût-il eu*, would (should) he have had?
nous eussions eu, we would (should) have had — *eussions-nous eu*, would (should) we have had?
vous eussiez eu, you would (should) have had — *eussiez-vous eu*, would (should) you have had?
ils eussent eu, they would (should) have had — *eussent-ils eu*, would (should) they have had?

§ 34. Imperative Mood (§ 105) present *or* future

aie, have (thou) — *ayez*, have (you *or* ye)
ayons, let us have

§ 35. Subjunctive Mood (§ 112) present *or* future

que j'aie, (that) I may (can) have
que tu aies, that thou mayest (canst) have (or: you may, etc.)
qu'il ait, that he may *or* can have
que nous ayons, that we may *or* can have
que vous ayez, that you may *or* can have
qu'ils aient, that they may *or* can have

NOTE.—Other forms in English, § 85

§ 36. Imperfect (Subjunctive) Lesson XXVI, § 93.

que j'eusse, that I might have (or: other forms in English)
que tu eusses, that thou mightest have *or* that you (ye) etc.
qu'il eût, that he might have
que nous eussions, that we might have
que vous eussiez, that you might have
qu'ils eussent, that they might have

Review always the rules pertaining to Nouns and Adjectives; write short sentences based on Dictation as follows:

une chère amie a dear (beloved) friend; *de chères amies* dear friends; *qu'il fait beau* (*que le temps est beau*) how beautiful the weather is! *sage* wise; *sagement* wisely; *une chambre propre* a clean room; *sa propre fille* his (her) own daughter; *qu'il fasse le moins de fautes possible* (replacing: *qu'il soit possible de faire*) let him make as few mistakes as possible; *elle a les pieds nus* or *elle est nu-pied* she is barefooted; *elle a l'air bon* she looks good; *elle a l'air bonne* she seems good; *une demi-heure* half hour; *il a travaillé une demi-heure* he worked half an hour; *une heure et demie* half-past one; an hour and a half; *un petit homme* a little man; *un homme petit* a mean (close) man; *petit esprit* a narrow-minded man; *elle se disait malade* she said she was ill; *on les croit sincères* we believe them to be sincere; *les jeunes gens* young men (people); *ma grand'mère* my grandmother; *ce n'est pas grand'chose: la grand' messe* High Mass; *deux livres sterling* two pounds sterling; *une maîtresse femme* superior woman; *la maîtrise de soi-même* the control of one's self; *des souvenirs glorieux* glorious remembrances.

§ 37. Past (Subjunctive) § 95, Lesson XXVI and Past Subj.

que j'aie eu, that I may (can) have had
que tu aies eu, that thou mayest (canst) have had (*or*: you, ye)
qu'il ait eu, that he may (can) etc.; may have had
que nous ayons eu, that we may (can) have had
que vous ayez eu, that you may (can) have had
qu'ils aient eu, that they may (can) have had.
(Other forms in English)

§ 38. Pluperfect (Subjunctive) § 94, Lesson XXVI and Past Subj.

que j'eusse eu, that I might have had
que tu eusses eu, that thou mightest have had *or*: you might have had
qu'il eût eu, that he might have, etc.
que nous eussions eu, that we might have had
que vous eussiez eu, that you might have had
qu'ils eussent eu, that they might have had

§ 39. Infinitive Mood (present *or* future)

avoir, to have. Also: to own, to possess. § 130.

Past

avoir eu, to have had. See §§ 132, 156.

§ 40. Participial Mood

Present

ayant, having

Past

eu, eue, had (Lesson XVII, § 168

ayant eu, having had

Material for Short Compositions with *Avoir*

I

celui qui a est celui à qui Dieu a prêté (Dumas) he (any one) who possesses is one to whom God has lent; *celle qui a:* she who etc.; *ceux qui ont* those who etc.; *celles qui ont* (f. pl.) those who (that); *il a droit à cela* he is entitled to it (that); *elle a de bonnes références* she is well recommended; *on n'a pas de temps à perdre* we have no time to lose (spare); *il est dans l'aisance* he is in easy circumstances; *ils ont le droit d'accepter ou de refuser* they may accept or refuse; *si j'ai bonne mémoire* if I remember rightly; *nous avions un franc à nous deux* we had a franc between us (about 20 cents); *cf.: maintenant à nous deux* (before contest) now I am ready for you; or: we will have it out together; *la maladie l'a décharné* or: *il n'a que les os et la peau* he is just skin and bone; *les absents ont toujours tort* the absent are always in the wrong; *cf.: loin des yeux, loin du cœur* out of sight out of mind; *contre qui en a-t-il* to whom does he owe a grudge?

II

elle a l'air hautain she assumes a haughty air; *elle a les yeux pleins de larmes* her eyes are full of tears; *Jean a de l'argent plein ses poches* John's pockets are full of silver (money); *des sous* pennies; *l'or et l'argent* gold and silver; *madame, vous êtes bien bonne* you are very kind, Madam; *il a la langue liée* he is tongue-tied; *pied fourchu* cloven foot; *avoir le filet coupé* to have a glib tongue; *les mains liées* his (her) hands tied; *ils ont faim* they are hungry; *une balafre* a cut (gash, scar); *elle a la fièvre* she is feverish; *recettes* (f.) receipts; *dépenses* (f.) expenses; *voilà son compte par doit et avoir* there is his account of Dr. and Cr. (*un équilibre entre le débit et le crédit*) or: *actif, passif du négociant*; *tels sont les livres que vous aurez à lire* such are the books you have to read; *sans originalité* (f.); *inspirer de l'intérêt* (m.); *intéressant* (*-e*); *qu'est-ce que c'est que cela* (*ça*)*?* what is that? *c'est un* (*une*) . . . it is a; *comment appelle-t-on* how does one call (how do you call)?

on l'appelle it is called; *si nous avions eu fini plus tôt* if we had finished our work sooner; *il a un talent particulier pour* he has an extraordinary talent for; *un particulier* a private individual; *chambre particulière* private room; *quel homme particulier* what a queer fellow! *il est bizarre* he is odd; *avez-vous horreur du travail* do you abhor work? *quelle horreur!* how terrible! *que veut dire: à demain* what does until to-morrow mean? *que signifie le mot* what does the word mean? *comment dit-on en* how do we say in . . ? *a-t-il de quoi payer* has he the wherewithal to pay? *il n'y a pas de quoi vous fâcher* you have no reason to get angry; *il y avait de quoi* there was ground (cause); *il a lieu de* (*des raisons pour*) he has reasons to; *il n'y a pas de quoi* don't mention it; *sans quoi* (*sinon*) if not; *quoi* what! *une balustrade* (*une rangée de balustres*) baluster; *a-t-il deux poids et deux mesures* are his weights and measures alike for all? *le vulgaire* the common people; *expression vulgaire* common expression.

III

ce qui est banal and that is common; *c'est commun* it is vulgar; *il a un gros rhume* he has a heavy cold; *ont-ils bien envie de sortir* are they very anxious to go out? *pourquoi avez-vous honte de votre conduite* why are you ashamed of your conduct? *ordinairement ils en ont assez* usually they have enough (of it, I assure you); *contre qui en avez-vous* with whom are you angry? *il a l'air emprunté* he has an awkward look; *de qui avez-vous cette nouvelle? voilà du nouveau* that's something new! *combien de prix ont-ils eus* how many prizes did they win? *elle a un grain de folie* she has a bee in her bonnet; *de l'esprit* wit; *qu'avaient-ils en tête* (*concevoir un projet* to conceive of a project) what projects did they have? *cet* (*cette*) *élève a tous les livres sous la main* (*à sa portée*) that pupil has all books for reference; *un étudiant* a student; *à consulter* to look up (consult); *il y en a qui le disent* there are some who say so; *on dit qu'elle a de quoi* they say she is well off; *on le dit* so it is said; *il n'a pas de quoi vivre* he has not enough to live on; *ils ont beau dire et beau faire* in vain they say and do; *qu'est-ce qu'il a* (*qu'a-t-il à la main*) what has he in his hand? *qu'avez-vous donc* what is the matter now? *il a la langue bien pendue* he has a well-oiled tongue; *il avait la tête nue* he was bare-headed; *elle était nu-tête ; il ne prononce pas bien* his accent is not good; *comment écrivez-vous* how do you write? *il écrit assez bien* his writing is fairly good; *le mot s'écrit ainsi* the word is spelled thus; *épelez* spell.

Review Adjectives:

nu-pieds barefooted; *vêtu, vêtue* dressed (in); *des étoffes bleu clair* light blue material; adjectives of *color* generally invariable (*rose, cramoisi, pourpre* are exceptions):
des étoffes rose clair light pink etc.; *des robes roses* pink gowns; *des robes cramoisies* crimson gowns; *elle aime le rose* (*la couleur rose*) she likes rose-color; *d'un rose foncé* (of a) dark pink; *manteau* (m.) *de pourpre* cloak of purple; *d'un rouge foncé* (of a) dark red; *robe lilas* lilac gown; *citron* lemon; *la chevelure blonde* blond hair; *cheveux d'un beau blond* beautiful blond hair.

IV

une colère bleue purple with rage; *l'Ecole des Sourds-Muets* the School for Deaf and Dumb;—— *sourdes-muettes* (f. pl.) deaf and dumb etc.; *d'un ton aigre* sharply (sharp tone of voice); *des femmes aigres* ill-natured women; *des paroles aigres-douces* words both bitter and sweet; *architecture gréco-romaine* greco (græco)-Roman etc.; *des fleurs fraîches cueillies* freshly gathered flowers (*fraîches* varies by euphony); *francs-tireurs* sharpshooters (volunteers); *une fille nouveau-née* new-born child; *un* (*e*) *enfant nouvellement né* (*e*) a child just born; *nouveaux venus* new-comers; *nouveaux mariés* newly married couple; *nouvelles converties* newly converted; *une nouvelle venue* a new-comer (lady); *de nouveaux visages* new faces; *ce sont des habits nouveaux* latest style of coats; *une cicatrice* a scar; *une blessure au visage* a wound on the face; *se précautionner contre* (*la maladie*) to take precautions against (illness); *vous avez l'air malade* you look ill; *qu'elle a de beaux yeux* how beautiful her eyes are! *un œil* an eye; *avez-vous mal aux yeux* have you sore eyes? *avoir la vie sauve* to have one's life saved; *sain et sauf* (safe and sound) uninjured; *avez-vous eu quelqu'un à dîner* did you have any one to dinner? *quelle oreille fine il a* what a sharp ear he has! *le poids* the weight; *il a la tête près du bonnet* he is hot-headed; *ont-ils une discussion* are they arguing? *dans quel but* for what purpose (what for)? *elles ont une leçon de conversation* they are having a lesson in conversation; *les amis ont des entretiens familiers* friends have intimate conversations; *certains animaux ont une tache blanche aux pieds* some animals have white spots on their feet; *le cheval noir; vaguement la forme de* vaguely the shape of; *qui a des nouvelles de l'incendie* who has news from the fire? *hôtel incendié* (burnt); *ouvrez* (*fermez*) open (close); *à quelle page* what page? *au bas* (*au haut, au milieu*) *de*

cette page at the bottom (at the top; in the middle) of that etc.; *il a l'oreille un peu dure* he is rather dull of hearing; *il entend difficilement* he hears with difficulty; *elle a de l'oreille* she has an ear for music; *on n'entend pas de cette oreille-là* one is deaf on that side; *il est sourd comme un pot* he is as deaf as a post.

V

il y en a bien assez there is plenty (of it etc.); *il a l'intention de se marier* (or: *il songe à se marier*) he is contemplating marriage; *il a l'esprit prompt* he is very sharp; *pénétrant* keen; *du tact, de l'amour-propre* tact, self-respect; *elle a du crédit* she has influence; *il a bon crédit* his credit is good; *il y a du froid entre eux* there is coolness between them; *nous avons le frisson* we have the shivers; *on n'a pas dix minutes à soi* we have not ten minutes to spare; *on en a plein le dos* one is tired (sick) of it; *être à charge à quelqu'un* to be a burden upon anyone; *causer de la peine* to cause grief; *cécité complète* totally blind; *elle a de quoi se plaindre* she has cause to complain; *mon cher monsieur, vous en avez pour la vie* my dear Sir, it will last you a lifetime; *durer* to last; *j'ai un duel et voilà mes témoins* I am to fight a duel and there are my seconds; *témoin oculaire* eye-witness; *offenser l'honneur* to offend the honor; *elle a à cœur de faire le bien* she has a heart to do good; *il a le courage d'un lion* he has the courage of a lion; *il a la bosse du commerce* he has a natural bent for business; *il n'y a pas remède à cela* there is no remedy for that; *c'est un horaire; tout est indiqué* time-table; everything is indicated; *elle a souvent des attaques de nerfs* she often has hysterics; *vous avez la main* it is your deal; *qu'a-t-il donc!* what is the matter, etc.; *quand il n'y en a plus, il y en a encore* there is always some left; *un homme de cœur* a brave man; *il a qu'il s'ennuie* well, he is lonely; *voulez-vous bien aller au tableau* please go to the blackboard; *écrivez la première phrase* write the first sentence; *lisez* read; *traduisez* translate; *lentement* slowly.

Review Nouns and Adjectives; study the following :

de l'eau chaude (*froide*) warm (cold) water; *des prêtres catholiques* Catholic priests; *des pasteurs protestants* Protestant ministers; *ils tiennent bon* (*ferme*) they are holding fast; *doux* (*douce*) sweet, mild, gentle; *doucement* gently, slowly; *des oranges douces* sweet oranges; *deux hommes boîteux* two lame men; *une femme boiteuse* lame woman.

VI

elle chante juste (*faux*) she sings in tune (out of tune); *de l'eau fraîche* fresh (cool) water; *un voleur* (*une voleuse*) a thief; *asseyez-vous* sit down; *s'il vous plaît* if you please; *quittez la salle* (*de classe*) leave the room; *levez-vous* rise (get up); *ne vous levez pas* do not rise; *commençons à la page* let us begin at page . . .; *aujourd'hui* to-day; *demain* to-morrow; *la leçon pour lundi* Monday's etc.

§ 41. **Comparison of Adjectives: with** *plus* **(more) and** *moins* **(less) and** *que* **(than):**

positive (degree)	comparative	superlative
noir	*plus noir*	*le plus noir, etc.*
black	blacker (more black)	the blackest
noir	*moins noir*	*le moins noir*
black	less black	the least black

(as): comparisons of equality; *aussi . . que ; si* (*aussi*) . . **(so . . as);**

son cheval est plus noir que le mien his horse is darker than mine; *a-t-il des droits à cette fortune?* is he entitled to inherit? *en certaines occasions* on certain etc.; *il n'y a que le nom qui vaille quelque chose* the name is all that is worth anything; *un escalier* a staircase; *qui avez-vous pour protecteur* who acts as your protector? *à ma droite, j'ai mon ami* (*amie*) on my right is my friend; *qui a la parole* who is speaking (addressing) now? *auront-ils un procès* will they have a lawsuit? *vous n'avez plus qu'à vous taire* now! be silent; *l'avez-vous en grande estime* do you esteem him highly? *il en aura pour son argent* he will have his money's worth; *elle a le truc* she has the hang of it (colloq.); *il a eu une carrière pleine de vicissitudes* he had a checkered career; *il n'a ni feu ni lieu* homeless; *elle a bon courage* she is of good cheer; *c'est un petit pilier façonné* that is a small turned baluster; *la rampe* the rail; *un mètre carré* square yard; *un cabriolet découvert* an open buggy; *la mesure* measure; *à deux roues* with two wheels; *la marche* the stair (step); *il fut l'objet de la conversation* he was the subject of etc.; *l'emballage et la confection du matelas* the packing and the making of the mattress.

VII

l'avez-vous eu à bon marché did you buy it cheaply? *ils ont des affaires par-dessus la tête* they are overworked in business; *une belle plume* a good handwriting; *il a une belle main* his penmanship is

good; *il n'a point de possession en propre* he has nothing in his own right; *en être rassasié* to have had enough of it; *on a souvent l'intention de faire une chose* we often intend to do a thing; *ils auront du monde* (company); *j'ai eu de la peine à le reconnaître* I hardly knew him; *il s'enrhume* (*contracte un rhume*) he is catching cold; *vous avez un rhume de cerveau* you have a cold in the head; *il sait à peine lire* he can hardly read; *être en peine de quelqu'un* to be worrying over some one; *elles n'ont plus rien* they have nothing left; *en cela il a raison* there he is right; *il est sûr du fait* he is sure of the fact; *toute médaille a son revers* everything has its bright and its dark side; *répondez* answer; *expliquez* explain; *ayez la complaisance de le lui dire* be so kind as to tell it to him; *a-t-il de ses nouvelles* has he heard from him? *n'a-t-elle pas l'oreille juste* has she not a good ear? *ils ont affaire à un ingrat* they have to deal with an ingrate; *vous n'aurez qu'à recommencer* just begin once more; *conjuguez* conjugate; *avez-vous la main heureuse* do you ever lose (also: in dealings)? *a-t-on jamais vu* well! I never! *qu'a-t-il à dire à cela* what reply has he? *chacun a sa manière* each has his own way; *ce qu'il y a de certain, c'est que* one thing is certain *or:* certain it is that.

§ 42. Comparison of Adjectives (Continued)

son cheval n'est pas si noir que le mien his (her) horse is not so (as) dark as mine; *sa jument est moins noire que la mienne* his (her) mare is less dark than mine (is not as dark as mine); *ils sont plus grands que leurs amis* they are taller than their friends.

irregular:

bon (*bonne*)	*meilleur* (*e*)	*le meilleur* (*la . . -e*)
good	better	the best

VIII

petit	*plus petit*	*le plus petit* (*la . . -e*)
small	smaller	the smallest
	moindre less	*le moindre* the least
mauvais	*plus mauvais*	*le plus mauvais*
bad	worse (poorer)	the worst (poorest)
	pire worse (more wicked)	*le pire* the worst (the most wicked)

plus **and** *moins* **used affirmatively with:** *que . . ne* **and finite verb:**

il est plus instruit que vous ne pensez (or: *vous ne le pensez*) he is more learned than you think; *est-ce un tableau dans le genre champêtre* is it a picture of country life? *écrits* (m.) *populaires* popular writings; *être de droit à* to belong to; *c'est à moi* it's mine; *ce petit enfant a des contrariétés* that little child has his tribulations; *quelle contrariété* how disappointing! *quelle animosité contre eux* what violent hatred against them! *avoir des embêtements* (*ennuis*) to have annoyances; *il n'y a pas de milieu* there are no two ways about it (no other way); *une injustice en résultera* an injustice would be the result; *il a du naturel* he is free from pose; *n'y aura-t-il pas de passe-droit* will there not be any unfairness? *une famille qui a de quoi* a family of means; *il n'est pire eau que l'eau qui dort* beware of silent people; *il y a vingt minutes de marche* 20 minutes' walk from here; *qui ne risque rien n'a rien* nothing venture nothing have; *elle n'a en tête que d'apprendre* her sole ambition is to learn; *le balcon* the balcony; *le plancher* the floor; *le quai* the wharf (railway platform); *l'estrade* (f.) stand; platform; *la plateforme* flat roof; *la terrasse* the terrace, flat roof (Spanish style); *le perroquet est bavard* (*ou silencieux ou muet*) the parrot is talkative (talks little or remains silent); *il a eu la chair de poule* (gooseflesh) he shuddered; *il n'y a pas une âme vivante* there isn't a living creature there; *il frissonne* he shivers.

IX

il y a de cela vingt ans (well) that was twenty years ago; *quoi! il n'a pas un sou vaillant* what! he isn't worth a penny? *quelle âme noble* (*faible*) what a noble (weak) soul! *qu'y a-t-il encore* (*quoi encore*) what else? *Pardon* pardon! *chacun a sa marotte* every one has his hobby; *ce que vous avez de mieux à faire, c'est de le faire* the best thing for you to do is to do it; *elle a de l'esprit* she is witty; *l'esprit humain* human mind; *c'est son dada* it is his favorite pursuit; *elle a l'air rébarbatif* she has a gruff look; *vous en aurez pour cinq ans* it will last you five years; *nous avons l'habitude de lire* we usually read; *on passe son temps à jouer* we spend our time at play; *il a de qui tenir* he is from good stock; *il n'y a pas de mal à rire* there is no harm in laughing; *elle a cinq enfants sur les bras* she has five children to support; *c'est assez* that's enough (that will do); *ils n'ont rien de mieux à faire* they have nothing better to do; *chaque chose a son temps* every dog has his day; *a-t-elle des chambres de libre* has she any vacant rooms? *au-dessus duquel* (*de laquelle*) above which (below which); (*au-dessous*) *desquels* (*desquelles*) *ils ont trop de mal ici* they have too

much to do here; *n'avoir pas l'air d'y toucher* to look unconcerned (uninterested); *elle a bonne poitrine* she has good lungs; *il a les pommettes saillantes* he has high cheek bones; *ils ont le diable au corps* they are very troublesome (they act like devils); *franches coudées* free scope; *il a une liberté entière d'agir* he is unhampered; *c'est une célébrité* he is a celebrity; *tousser* to cough; *une toux convulsive* a convulsive cough; *la voix* voice; *il a la goutte aux pieds* he has gout in the feet; *une voix de baryton, de ténor, de basse, d'alto, de contralto* a barytone, tenor, bass, alto, contralto voice; *la voix du peuple* public opinion; *elle a un chat dans la gorge* she has a frog in her throat; *elle est enrouée* she is hoarse; *la voix nette* a clear etc.; *la garde-malade* (*l'infirmière*) *aura soin de lui* the nurse will attend to him (take care of him).

X

§ 43. Review Adjectives; and with *comme* instead of *aussi* (*si*): *hardi comme un lion* (*aussi hardi qu'un lion*) bold as a lion; *un avare comme lui* a miser such as he; cf.: *comme il était malade* as he was ill; *comme il est joli* how pretty he is (for: *qu'il est joli* how etc.)! *il est plus joli que lorsqu'il était jeune* he is better looking than when he was young; *il parle autrement qu'il ne pense* he speaks differently from what he thinks; *il n'agit pas autrement qu'il pense* he does not act otherwise than he thinks; *plus il étudie, plus il réussit* the more he studies, the more he succeeds; *elle a une maison à elle* (*en propre*) she has a house of her own; *il en aura raison* he will demand satisfaction from him; *il a du chagrin* he is in sorrow; *qui a des vues sur ce bien* who has designs upon that property? *il l'a échappé belle* he had a narrow escape; *cet enfant a déjà des volontés* that child has already a will of his own; *ils ont de la bonne volonté* they are willing; *vous avez le compas dans l'œil* you measured it just right; *quel toupet* how impudent! *avoir l'humeur belliqueuse* to have a bellicose nature; *qui a pour mission de protéger* whose mission is to protect; *il en a du toupet* (cheek) how impudent he is! *elle a le cœur gros* she is ready to cry; *il n'y a rien d'étonnant* no wonder; *partager le gâteau* to divide the cake; participate in the profits; *tous ont part au gâteau* all have a share; *quand on a de la bonne volonté* when there is good will; *il n'y a pas moyen de faire cela* there is no way of doing that; *pendant ce temps-là* during that time; *ils ont fort à faire* they have a great task before them; *il n'y avait rien qui pressait* it was nothing urgent; *il a l'air comme il faut* he looks like a gentleman; *ça en a l'air* (*tout l'air*) that looks

very much like it; *c'est un homme comme il y en a peu* few men like him (one in a thousand); *un estomac* a stomach; *un estomac d'autruche* a stomach of an ostrich; *il a part au délit* he took part in the offense.

XI

vous avez beaucoup d'influence sur eux you exert much influence over them; *honnêtement* honestly; *quoi de nouveau* (*de neuf*) what's new? *elle n'a rien d'écrit* she has nothing written; *il n'a rien écrit* he has not written anything; *elle a de la coquetterie* she is coquettish in her dress; *un poisson à grosse tête* a fish with a large head; *elle a des chances d'arriver* she has chances of arriving; *ce cheval a quelque valeur* this horse is of some value; *auront-ils bonne opinion d'elles?* will they think well of them? *il y a pas mal de poussière* great deal of dust; *avez-vous du mal* are you hurt? *avez-vous l'intention d'y aller* do you contemplate going there? *il a mal partout* he is sore all over; *mon ami a toujours le mot pour rire* my friend is always ready for a joke; *vous avez trop de bontés pour moi* you are too kind to me; *estime* (f.) *publique* public esteem; *la faute* mistake; *d'une manière sensible* perceptibly; *un honnête homme* an honest man; *la consolation* solace (comfort); *ayez l'obligeance de me le faire savoir* be so kind as to let me know; *un saltimbanque* a mountebank; *en voilà pour un an* that will do for a year; *a-t-il les coudes appuyés sur la nappe* has he his elbows on the tablecloth? *il est pressé* he is pressed for time; *elle a le mot sur le bout de la langue* she has the word on the tip of her tongue; *il n'a pas le temps* he can't spare the time; *des manières câlines* cajoling ways; *elles ont une grande pénétration d'esprit* they have great acuteness of mind; *le teint pâle* pale complexion; *il n'a des yeux que pour elle* he sees nothing but her; *un honnête homme n'a que sa parole* an honest man is as good as his word; *d'un ton bourru* snappishly; *le salut du jour* the greeting of the day; *salut!* hail!

XII

§ 44. ADVERBS:

bien	well	*mal*	badly, ill	*peu*	little
mieux	better	*pis*	worse	*moins*	less
le mieux	the best	*le pis*	the worst	*le moins*	the least

cf.: de plus en plus more and more; *de moins en moins* less and less; *d'autant plus* the more (so); *à bon marché* cheap; *à meilleur*

marché cheaper; *au plus* at most (at the most): *tout au plus; il y a plus* what is more; *il s'enrichît de plus en plus* he is becoming richer and richer; *plus tard* later; *plus loin* farther (further); *plus près* nearer; *de plus près* closer; *trois fois plus* three times as much (as many); *la plupart (de ses amis) le quittèrent* most of his friends (the majority of them) left him; *plus tôt* sooner; *de meilleure heure* earlier; *plus ou moins*; *plus de dix* more than ten; *tant mieux* so much the better; *tant pis pour lui* so much (all) the worse for him; *le plus qu'il aura* the most (maximum) he will have; *souvent; plus souvent; le plus souvent* often; oftener; most frequently; *ventre affamé n'a point d'oreilles* a hungry man will not listen to reason; *sont-ce des bancs (écueils) de coraux* are those coral reefs? *peu de hauteur* little height; *à chacun son tour* there is time for everything; *il a la certitude (l'assurance) que* he has the certainty that; *il a bon pied, bon œil* he is hale and hearty; *elle a un menton à double étage* she has a double chin; *il a mieux que ça* he has some even better than that; *il n'y a rien de mieux* there is nothing better; *un combustible de qualité inférieure* a combustible of inferior quality; *cette boîte a six pouces de longueur sur quatre de largeur* this box is six inches long by four wide; or: *elle est longue de six pouces et large de quatre; son épaisseur est de trois pouces* it is three inches thick; *d'un blanc terne* it is dead white; *de long* in length; *de haut* in height; *de profond* in depth; *d'épais* in thickness; *d'égale longueur* of equal length.

XIII

Review on Adverbs and Adjectives:

constant (e); constamment; constant; constantly; *prudent (e); prudemment;* prudent; prudently; *il fait un peu froid* it is rather cold; *leurs plus chers amis* their dearest etc.; *pas le moindre doute* not the least doubt; *le moindre d'entre nous* the least among (st) us; *de* follows the superlative: *l'homme le plus riche de la ville* the richest man in town (in the city); *la leçon la plus difficile (facile)* the most difficult (the easiest) lesson; *ses amis les plus fidèles* his (her) most faithful friends; *il en a deux de plus que moi, n'est-ce pas?* he has two more than I, has he not? *Marie est la fille la plus intelligente du village* Mary is the brightest girl in the village; *la meilleure femme du monde* the best woman in the world; *la plus haute maison de la rue* the highest house in the street; *pas le moindre souvenir* not the slightest remembrance; *Jean est le plus fort des deux* John is the stronger of the two; *le*

plus fort des trois the strongest of the three; *son petit poney blanc est le plus joli de tous les poneys* his little pony is the prettiest of all ponies; *c'est le cadet de mes soucis* (*le moindre de* etc.) what troubles me the least (the least of my cares); *c'est tout ce qu'il y a de plus cher* it is most expensive; *son pire ennemi* his worst enemy. NOTE. —*le plus* before an absolute (superlative) and (there is) no comparison: (and: *le plus; le moins* are *or* may be replaced by: *très; bien; fort; extrêmement,* etc.); *elle a été le plus adroite* she was most clever; *a-t-elle du goût pour la musique?* has she any taste for music? (is she musical?); *quel air bête il a* how stupid he looks! *il en veut* (*avoir*) *à quelque prix que ce soit* he desires some at any cost; *il faut ajouter* one must add; *un tabouret à trois pieds* a three-foot stool; *cette banque a son siège à X. et ses succursales à* this bank has its headquarters at X. and its branches at; *si vous avez bonne mémoire* if your memory serves you; *elle en a plus qu'il ne lui en faut* she has more than she needs; *elle en a de reste* she has some to spare; *il a du plomb dans l'aile* there is shot in the wing; *il a le pied contrefait* he has a deformed foot; *il n'y a pas lieu de croire* there is no reason to suppose; *vous avez une minute d'avance sur lui* you have the start of him by one minute.

XIV

vous avez plusieurs cordes à votre arc you have several strings to your bow; *le diamètre* the diameter; *il n'y en a pas mal* there is quite an amount; *y a-t-il réunion tous les soirs* is there a meeting every night? *ayez soin de vos habits* take care of (look after) your clothes; *avoir le loisir* to be at leisure; *vous avez bonne mine* you look well; *il a meilleure mine* he looks better; *la circonférence* the circumference; *chacun a sa croix à porter* every one has his cross to bear or his own troubles; *visage hâlé* tanned face; *c'est ce que j'ai de mieux à faire* that's the best thing for me to do; *avoir lieu* to take place; *le lieu de débarquement* the landing-place; *la cale d'un quai* the slip (of a landing-place); *il a de rares talents* he is exceptionally talented; *chacun a son goût* every one to his taste; *un demi-cercle bleuâtre* a bluish half circle; *visage basané* sunburned; *il a les yeux fatigués* he has tired eyes; *il y a de la verve dans ses pièces* there is animation in his plays; *dans l'incertitude* in suspense; *plus il en a de chagrin* the more his sorrow; *il n'y a pas de fumée sans feu* no smoke without fire; *il n'y a pas à balancer* there is no wavering; *nous avons de la peine à croire cela* we can hardly believe that; *il n'y a pas de règle sans exception*

no rule without exception; *en suspens* in doubt; *un calembour* a pun; *une devinette* a riddle.

jaunâtre yellowish; *grisâtre* grayish; *bleuâtre* bluish; *blanchâtre* whitish; *noirâtre* blackish; *verdâtre* greenish; *rougeâtre* reddish or: sandy; *brunâtre* brownish; *roussâtre* reddish.

LESSON V

§ 45. *être* to be (*verbe auxiliaire* auxiliary verb) and its various uses—(conjugated Lesson XXVIII).

Paris est le cœur de la France Paris is the heart of France; *ce qui n'est pas clair, n'est pas français* what is not clear is not French; *voilà tout* that's all; *être ou n'être pas, voilà la question* to be or not to be, that's the question; *épreuve salie* (f.) soiled proof; *c'est facile comme tout* it is easy (or: child's play); *quelle est sa position* what is his position? *il a une position de mille francs* he has a one thousand franc position; *une épreuve* a test, an ordeal; *entre l'enclume et le marteau* between the devil and the deep sea; *qui plus est* what is more; *la preuve* proof; *à quoi bon* what is the good of that? *je suis bien ici* I am comfortable here; *preuve* evidence; *c'est une autre paire de manches* it is quite another thing; *il n'est rien moins que crédule* he is anything but credulous; *d'une façon peu nette* in a somewhat ambiguous manner; *d'une façon nette* unmistakably; *l'activité des usines est fébrile* activity in manufactories is feverish; *c'est trop cher de moitié* it is too dear by half; *c'est à peu près la même chose* it is nearly the same thing; *c'est un garçon manqué* she is a tom-boy; *il est dans son droit* he is within his right; *où en sont les choses* where matters stand; *qui pis est* what is worse; *taché; non net* spotted: not clean; *c'est bon en soi* it is good in itself.

le 11 *novembre*, 1918, *l'Allemagne rendit les armes* Germany surrendered the 11th of November, 1918; *un ordre (qui est) fondé par* an order founded by; *à bon jour, bonne œuvre* the better the day, the better the deed; *il est obstiné* he is stubborn; *la nuit tous les chats sont gris* when candles are wanting all cats are gray; *être de planton* to be on duty (mil.); *c'est une mauvaise tête* he is light-headed (unruly); *il est à l'aise dans ce fauteuil* he is comfortable in that chair; *de petite taille* of small stature (size); *c'est jus vert et vert jus* it is six of one and half a dozen of the other; *un petit pavillon* a small pavilion; *à qui est ce livre* whose book is that?

c'est à moi (*à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles*; *c'est le mien, le sien, le sien, le leur*), it is mine (his, hers, theirs, theirs); *étiez-vous chez vous hier soir* were you at home last night? *j'y étais*; *je n'y étais pas* I was; I was not; *un homme blasé* man weary of everything; *de l'étoffe blanche en coton* white cotton material.

XV

Oral Drill:

un ordre exprès a precise order; *une défense expresse* a positive (explicit, plain, etc.) warning; *elle est très aimable* she is very kind; most kind; *qu'il est gentil* how nice he is! *extrêmement heureux* most happy; *il est des plus affables* he is most cordial; *rassemblez le plus de livres possible* collect the largest number of books possible; *elle a éprouvé tous les malheurs possibles* (*imaginables*) she experienced every misfortune imaginable; *la mi-janvier* the middle part of January; *cette lettre est franc* (or: *franche*) *de port* post-paid letter; *il est beaucoup plus âgé* he is much older; *il est de beaucoup le plus fort des trois* he is by far the strongest of the three; *il fait de son mieux* (*il fait son possible*) he does his utmost; *des robes noisette* hazelnut colored gowns; *haut la main* or *la main haute* with a high hand; *plein la maison* or *la maison pleine* full house; *ils sont proches parents* they are near relatives; *des maisons proches* (or: *proche*) *de la rivière* houses near (close to) the river; *les yeux demi-fermés* with eyes half closed; *sauf ma mère* except my mother; *ma mère sauve* my mother was saved; *la vie sauve* her life saved; *semi-hebdomadaire* bi-weekly; *il est méchant et elle est pire* he is bad and she is worse; *plus ou moins réussi* more or less successful; *cela laisse à désirer* it could be better (improved upon); *n'en avoir que deux ne suffirait pas* to have but two would not suffice; *je sais le contraire* I know better; *le maréchal Foch, généralissime* (*général en chef*).

§ 46. *jamais; bien; mal; mieux; pas; plus; trop; toujours* (generally precede the verb); *il s'agit de bien travailler;* it is a question of working well; *il travaille trop* he works too much;

1. *hier* **yesterday**; *aujourd'hui* **to-day**; *demain* **to-morrow**; *ici* **here**; *là* **there (are placed after a past participle)**: *il est parti hier* **he left etc.**

2. *tout* **all (everything); *rien* nothing (not anything) precede the past participle: *il a tout vu* he saw everything; *il n'a rien vu* he didn't see anything;**

3. *personne* **(nobody) follows it: *il n'a vu personne* he saw no one; *cf. : personne n'est venu* nobody came.**

XVI

j'y serai lundi en huit I shall be there a week from Monday; *comment est-il aujourd'hui* how is he to-day? *il est beaucoup mieux* he is much better; *un établissement de charité* a charitable institution; *le timbre d'une voix douce et sonore* the tone of a sweet and sonorous voice; *immédiatement* immediately; *les figures sont exécutées sur un fond auquel elles adhèrent* the figures are carved in relief on a background; *il était pied bot* he was club-footed; *tôt ou tard* sooner or later; *le sommet d'un édifice* the top of an edifice; *il est riche, n'est-ce pas* he is rich, is he not? *il l'est* he is; *cela n'est pas vrai* that is not so (true); *il est toujours en retard* he is always late; *il ne l'est pas* he is not; *il arrive tard ce matin* he is late this morning; *il est tard ou tôt* it is late or early; *bientôt* soon; *le plus tôt possible* as early as possible; *le train retarde* the train is late; *sa montre retarde* his watch is slow; *on n'a vu personne* no one has been seen; *il est sorti tout à l'heure* he went out just a little while; *n'a-t-il rien perdu* has he lost nothing? *rien* nothing; *il est difficile de ne pas rire* it is difficult not to laugh; *il voudrait ne rien faire* he wouldn't like to do anything; *c'est facile à comprendre* it is easy to understand (to be understood): it is easily understood; *il est propre à ne rien faire* he is not fit for anything; *on est curieux de le voir à l'œuvre* we (they) are anxious to see him at work; *un discours de longue haleine* (extremely long) an extremely long speech (long-winded speech); *près de* near; *un boniment* claptrap; *est-elle la dame du 1er. (étage)* is she the lady of the first floor? *elle l'est; elle ne l'est pas* she is; she is not; *cela ne sera pas* it will not occur; *êtes-vous la dame dont je parle* are you the lady of whom I speak? *ses amis ne sont plus* his friends are dead; *sont-ils fatigués* are they tired? *ils ne le sont pas* they are not; *sont-ils frères* are they brothers? *ils le sont* they are; *sont-ils cousins* are they cousins? *ils le sont* they are; *sont-ils les frères de Jean* are they John's brothers? *ils les sont; ils ne les sont pas;* they are; they are not; *il ne l'a dit à qui que ce soit* he mentioned it to nobody; *plus de mérite que les autres* more merit than others.

XVII

toucher près to receive almost; *au contact de* in contact with; *au-devant de* in front of; *en face de* opposite; *devant* before (in the presence of); *avant* before (time); *êtes-vous sa sœur* are you her sister? *je la suis* I am; *est-ce un de vos amis* is he a friend of yours? *c'en est un* he is (one); *inculte* uncultivated; *terres incultes* (f.) uncultivated lands; *il est de son opinion* he is of the same opinion; *peuples non-civilisés* non-civilized people (s); *son livre était à l'index* his book was prohibited; *il n'est pas toujours dans son assiette* he is not always even-tempered; *elle est bavarde* (*babillarde*) a gossip; *monsieur, je suis charmé de vous voir* I am glad to see you, sir; *peu civilisé* little civilized; *ils ne sont pour rien dans cette affaire* they have nothing to do with the case; *cruel* (*cruelle*) cruel; *inhumain* (*e*) inhuman; *d'une cruauté inouïe* so cruel! *êtes-vous sûr de votre fait* do you know what you are about? *elle est fort attachée à sa sœur* she is greatly attached to her sister; *il est poitrinaire* he is in consumption; *exempt de préoccupations* free from anxiety; *je m'en lave les mains* I wash my hands of it; *d'une grossièreté*; *d'une férocité* so uncouth, so ferocious! *un poison violent* a deadly poison; *la paix* peace; *la chair en est très estimée* its flesh (meat) is very much liked; *une circonstance spéciale* a special occasion; *une annonce pompeuse* a flaring announcement; *c'est un médecin manqué* he is a would-be doctor; *il est de mauvaise humeur* he is cross (out of sorts); *elle reste fille* she is still unmarried; *il est en récréation* he is at play (recess); *il est bien le fils de son père* he is truly the son of his father; *c'est la veille de Noël* Christmas eve; *les veillées passées chez des amis* evenings spent with friends; *il est très fort* he is very strong; *il a du biceps* he has well-developed muscles; *c'est un grand homme sec* he is a tall, spare man; *il est dans l'erreur* he labors under an error.

XVIII

où il y a de la gêne, il n'y a pas de plaisir when one is under restraint, there is no pleasure; *c'est un esprit positif* he is of a practical mind; *elle est la bonté même* she is kindness itself; *il est vif comme la poudre* he is as quick as lightning; *ils sont à bonne école* they are under competent masters; *des gens capables, intelligents, habiles* efficient, intelligent, clever people; *elle est en vie* she is alive; *ce n'est ni plus ni moins* neither more nor less; *imbu* (*rempli; pénétré*) imbued (filled; saturated); *imprenable* impreg-

nable; *brûlé vif* burnt alive; *la fabrication du beurre* the making of butter; *imbu de préjugés* imbued with prejudices; *ce sont des amis intimes* they are close friends; *il est très bien ce jeune homme* he is a suitable young man; *c'est un jeune homme comme il faut* he is a good-mannered young man; *la couleur d'azur* sky-color; *elle est en été* she is dressed for summer; *êtes-vous en train de lire* are you busy reading? *c'est un mauvais sujet* he is a bad boy (or character); *un méchant garnement* a wicked good-for-nothing (fellow); *M. X. est-il toujours garçon* is Mr. B. still a bachelor? *elle est sortie; elle rentrera à* she is out; she will come home at; *le bel âge* (*la jeunesse*) youth; *filou, fripon, fourbe, escroc* clever thief, knave, treacherous imposter, swindler; *tout en fleur* all in bloom (flower); *elle a les yeux bleus* her eyes are blue; *n'est-ce pas qu'ils sont malades* isn't it true that they are ill? *ils sont malades, n'est-ce pas* they are ill, are they not? *elle est rentrée, n'est-ce pas* she is in (is at home) is she not? *elle est fâchée contre elles* she is angry with them; *j'en suis fâché* I am sorry (for it); *est-il fort en algèbre* (*ferré sur l'algèbre*) is he strong in Algebra? *il est calé en histoire* he is well grounded in History; *dans le temps présent* (:*de nos jours*) nowadays; *elle est en âge de travailler* she is at an age to work; *sont-ils inquiets sur son sort* are they anxious about him?

XIX

est-ce qu'il n'est pas en bas isn't he downstairs? *il occupe un vaste terrain* it occupies a spacious ground; *il fut une plume hardie* he was a bold writer; *il était au lit* (*alité*) he was confined to his bed; *ils étaient hors d'eux* they were beside themselves; *le homard est-il difficile à digérer* is lobster difficult to digest? *un espace vide* an empty space; *qui frappe?—C'est eux* who knocks?—It is they; *il est en haut, montez* he is upstairs, go up; *c'est un importun* he is troublesome (an intruder); *être en reste* to have further payments to make (to be in arrears); *soyez assez bon pour le lui dire* be kind enough to tell it to him (her); *sur son terrain* within his sphere; *vous êtes trop bon* you are too kind (it's too good of you); *à quelque chose malheur est bon* it's an ill wind that blows nobody good; *la crête d'un coq* the comb of a cock; *il est rouge comme un coq* he is as red as a beet; *ils sont faibles, eux* they are weak, they are; *l'instruction est obligatoire* instruction is compulsory; *une variété de raisin blanc* a variety of white grape; *une grappe de raisin* a bunch of grapes; *le vin mousseux du Midi* the sparkling wine from the South of France; *il est libre comme l'air* he is as free as a bird; *à*

la bonne heure! voilà ce qu'il y a de bon good! that's one comfort; *il était nu-tête* he was bareheaded; *le coq gaulois est un des emblèmes nationaux de la France* the gallic rooster is one of the national emblems of France; *l'impériale d'un tramway, d'un wagon, d'une diligence* the top of a tramway, of a car, of a coach (stage); *la queue* the tail; *faites la queue* stand in line; *il est encore de bonne heure* it is early yet; *c'est à prendre ou à laisser* take it or leave it; *croyez bien que je suis tout à lui* rest assured I have his interest at heart; *un bipède* a biped; *est-elle curieuse de le savoir* is she anxious to know (about it?); *dégoûté de tout* disgusted with everything; *on est curieux de tableaux* we are fond of pictures; *sont-ils pressés?—Ils le sont;* are they in a hurry?—they are; *un porte-plume* a penholder; *quoiqu'il en soit, il y est* be that as it may, he hit (got) it.

XX

§ 47. *à* and *de* as complement of adjectives:
à: after adjectives denoting *tendency, purpose, use, fitness, etc.*, and their opposites;
de: after those denoting source, various sentiments of joy, grief, desire, anger, etc.; abundance, scarcity, distance;
en and *envers; en* after a few implying skill, abundance;
envers with those denoting good will *or* ill-will towards;

accoutumé au froid accustomed to the cold; *appliqué à l'étude* applied to study; *utile à savoir* useful to know (to be known); *bon à quelque chose* good for something (serviceable).

NOTE.—*de:* impersonal forms with *de; il est utile d'apprendre* it is useful to learn; *cf.: c'est facile à faire* that's easy to do (for: easy to be done).

il fut élevé dans la profession de son père he was raised in his father's profession; *le lit de mort* death-bed; *il en est pour ce qu'il a dit* he maintains what he said; *voilà près d'un mois* it is now nearly a month; *il n'a vu qui que ce soit* he saw no one; *passe* let it be so (: let it pass); *c'est plein comme un œuf* it is chock full; *un jeu de hasard prohibé* games of chance prohibited; *une poire à peau blanche* a pear with white skin; *ne fût-ce qu'une construc-*

tion en planches, une hutte, une baraque were it only (though it were only) a board construction, a hut, a shanty; *une attaque brusque* a sudden attack; *le caquetage des jeunes filles* the chattering of young girls; *quel est le prix des œufs la douzaine* how does the price of eggs stand per dozen? *brusquement* bluntly; *c'est un manque d'égards* it is a lack of respect; *eu égard aux services* (*en considération des*) considering the services; *à son égard* in respect to him (her); *sous un fâcheux aspect* under an unfavorable aspect; *une boisson fermentée faite de* a fermented beverage made of; *un mets accommodé à la sauce blanche* a dish prepared with white sauce; *vin ordinaire* ordinary wine.

XXI

il n'y a que le premier pas qui coûte the beginning is the only difficulty; *c'est ma vie* it is my very life; *il est des vôtres* he is on your side; *c'est une nullité* (*c'est tout simplement une nullité que celui-là*) a mere cipher; *il est de trop* he is in the way; *sans vous* (*ne fût-ce vous?*) if it were not for you; *n'eût été* had it not been for; *en toute liberté d'agir* (to act) in full liberty; *cette obligation lui sera à charge* this obligation will be a burden to him; *un bleu* (*conscrit*) a raw soldier; *je serai à vos ordres* I shall be at your service; *elle sera à vous dans cinq minutes* she will attend to you within five minutes; *les cheveux blonds* light hair, *une dame aux cheveux blonds* a lady with blond hair; *fermé par les deux bouts* clasped at both ends; *ouvert par le milieu* opened from the center; *nous serions sans argent* (*sans le sou*) we would be without money; *à votre aise* (*par ironie*) suit yourself (with irony); *elle sera à l'aise* she will be comfortable; *seraient-ils bien dans leurs affaires* are they (really) in good circumstances? *ses propres tactiques* his own tactics; *on serait moins que rien* we would be mere ciphers; *ce serait dur pour nous* that would be hard for us; *nous serions tout seuls* we would be all by ourselves; *ces enfants sont à ma charge* I have to take care of those children; *un sac de voyage* a suit-case; *il est âgé de huit ans* he is eight years of age; *il le veut, soit!* he desires it, very well! *c'est un pauvre diable; il est réduit à la besace* he is a poor devil; he is reduced to beggary; *un blond* fair man; *que cela soit* (*dit*) *entre nous* be it said between ourselves; *soit fait comme vous avez dit* let it be done as you said; *eh bien* (*hé bien*), *soit* well, let it be so (be it so); *soit que vous l'ayez* whether you have it; *fût-il plus rusé* even if he were more cunning; *qu'est-ce que c'est que ça* what is that? *il est des hommes qui* there are men who; *ainsi soit-il* amen; *qu'est-ce que c'est* what is it?

XXII

voilà ce que c'est que de trop parler that is due to too much talking; *il est à la ville* he is in town; *N. M. est de famille anglaise* N. M. is of English stock; *une peau de mouton tannée avec soin* a sheep's skin carefully tanned; *un appui en pierre* a stone foundation; *profondément* deeply; *directement* directly; *à droite; à gauche;* to the right; to the left; *en ligne droite* in a straight line; *de but en blanc* point blank.

§ 48. **Oral Drill:**

il est fidèle au rendez-vous he keeps his appointment (he is faithful to, etc.); *égale à la somme de* equal to the sum of; *vous êtes libre de le faire* you are at liberty to do it; *il est privé de leur soutien* he is deprived of their support; *on est charmé de l'entendre* we (they) are pleased (glad) to hear him (her); *natif de New-York* born in New York; *aimé de tout le monde* esteemed by everybody; (and the past participle of most passive verbs); *l'heure incertaine de la mort* the uncertain hour of death; *impropre au service* unfit for service; *sûr de cela; inférieur à tous;* sure of that; inferior to all *il est chéri de tous* he is beloved by all; *contrarié de cet échec* vexed at that failure; *contraste d'ombre et de lumière* contrast between light and shade; *qu'il est lent à répondre* how slow he is in answering! *honteux de sa conduite* ashamed of his conduct; *fier de son titre* proud of his title; *près de* on the point of; *prêt à partir; acharné à sa proie;* ready to go; bent on his prey; *cher au cœur; hardi au combat;* dear to the heart; bold in attack; *ardent à la lutte* prompt in attack; *dénué de tout* destitute (deprived) of everything; *avide de gloire; jaloux de lui;* greedy for honors; jealous of him; *jaloux de plaire* anxious to please; *fort triste de cette nouvelle* very sad at that news; *envieux de ses camarades* envious of his comrades; *éloigné des siens* far (distant) from his (own) relatives; *c'est à qui sera ici le plus tôt* it is a question of who shall be here first; *une fausse nouvelle* false news; *la première fois; la dernière fois;* the first time; the last time; *il est avare de son temps* he is sparing of his time.

XXIII

ce n'est pas que je sois pressé I am in no hurry (you understand); *une pièce de dix francs* one ten-franc piece; *on sonne; M. X. est-il chez lui?* some one rings; is Mr. B. at home? *il n'y est pas* he is not in; *concierge, je n'y suis pas* concierge, I can't understand

(his absence); *une absence prolongée* a prolonged absence; *est-ce que le temps est à la pluie* shall we have rain? *elle n'est pas sans le savoir* she (surely) must have heard of it; *il agit comme si de rien n'était* he acts as if (he were) totally indifferent; *s'il agit* if he acts; *il est maître de sa voix* he has control of his voice; *maître d'école; maîtresse d'école;* school-master; school-mistress; *un appartement de cinq pièces* a five-room apartment; *un morceau de musique; de viande;* a piece of music; of meat; *cinq sous la pièce* five cents a piece; *les bras dans l'air* (with) uplifted arms; *une pièce d'artillerie* a piece of artillery; *la chaîne est de fil et la trame de coton* the warp is of wool and the woof of cotton; *un bouche-trou* a stop-gap; *il n'est point lâche; quelle lâcheté !* he is no coward; what cowardice! *est-ce tout* is that all? *c'est mon affaire* that concerns me (only); *voilà mon affaire* just what I want! *ils ne sont pas en force* they are in no position to make an attack nor to defend themselves; *sérieusement* in earnest; *pour de bon, c'est tout comme* in earnest, it is all the same, no difference; *pour tout de bon* seriously; *cela ne fait aucun doute* there is no doubt (whatsoever); *c'est tout un* it is all one (the same) to me; *il est propre à tout* he is fit for anything; *ces règles sont de rigueur* those rules are indispensable; *l'habitude est une seconde nature* habit is second nature; *pauvreté n'est pas vice* poverty is no crime; *nécessité est mère d'industrie* necessity is the mother of invention; *nécessité n'a pas de loi* necessity knows no law; *ce n'est pas un mot latin, mais c'est tout comme* it is not a Latin word, but it is all the same; *une double rangée de canons* a double row of cannons.

XXIV

du blanc d'œuf; du blanc d'Espagne; white of an egg; whiting; *c'est une bague au doigt* it is a feather in his cap; *c'est leur affaire* it's their lookout; *il est sobre de paroles* he is chary of words; *la Sûreté est à ses trousses, à sa poursuite* detectives are after him, on his trail; *c'est un régal* it is a treat; *il est tout raide froid* he is quite stiff with cold; *le mieux est l'ennemi du bien* let well enough alone; *il est têtu comme un âne* he is as stubborn as a mule; *il est d'une intrépidité* he is so intrepid! *un sou, c'est toujours cela,* a penny, it is something; *s'il en est ainsi* if so; *elle n'est pas gaie* she is not in a cheerful mood; *ils sont nés sous une mauvaise étoile* they were born under an evil star; *un bel âge* (*un âge avancé*) a beautiful old age; *est-ce de votre goût* does it suit your taste? *quelle bravoure* what bravery! *la robe de ce cheval est rougeâtre,*

avec crins et extrémités noirs this horse's coat is reddish with black mane and tail; *il est fâché de vous faire mal* he is sorry to hurt you; *il est toujours sur le pavé* (*sans emploi, sans domicile*) still homeless and out of work; *l'heure du dîner* dinner-time; *cette région est remplie de cousins* this section (region) swarms with mosquitoes; *il est toujours sur les épines* (thorns) he is always on pins and needles; *il était tout à son ouvrage* he was all absorbed in his work; *elle est toujours de bonne heure* she is always early; *quelle heure est-il? —Il est midi;* what time is it?—Noon; *minuit; une heure;* midnight (twelve); one o'clock; *onze heures et quart; et demie;* quarter past eleven; half-past eleven; *neuf heures moins dix* ten minutes to nine; *précis; précise;* precise (sharp); *trop tard* too late; *un banc rembourré et sans dossier* an upholstered bench (seat) without back; *un pont* (*de navire*) a deck (of a ship); *noir comme un corbeau* black as a raven; *comme du jais* as jet; *êtes-vous sur les rangs* are you one of the candidates? *je suis parmi les prétendants à cette fonction* I am among the aspirants for this office; *à cet emploi* for this post; *à ce titre* for this title; *ils sont le jouet* (*la risée*) *de leurs camarades* they are the sport of their comrades; *si on le demande, dites qu'il n'y est pas* if anyone inquires for him, say: he is not in; *véritablement* in truth.

XXV

c'est à qui l'achètera every one wishes to buy it; *c'est tout de même bien embarrassant* just the same it is very perplexing; *un entrepont* steerage; between decks; *tu étais sans le sou* you were without a penny; *elle est morte à la fleur de l'âge* she died in the prime of life; *il est bien bas* (*près de mourir*) he is very low (at the point of death); *sous le poids des fruits* under the weight of fruit; *il est toujours courbé sur son bureau* always bent over his desk; *poudré* (*e*) *de blanc* powdered white; *il est mal vu de tout le monde* everybody dislikes him; *est-elle amoureuse de lui* is she in love with him? *c'est un imbécile* he is a fool; *il sera en état de lui faire tête* he will be his match; *il serait en mesure de vous le rendre* he would be able to repay you (for it); *la boîte aux lettres* letter-box; *au-dessus des forces ordinaires* more than ordinary strength; *elle n'en est pas moins avancée* she is none the wiser (for it); *il est moins avancé* he is worse off; *il est dans la peine* he is in trouble; *cet enfant est en dessous* he is deceitful, that child; *ce n'est pas étonnant qu'il soit absent* no wonder he is away; *êtes-vous bien en voix* are you in good voice? *c'est un homme de parole* he keeps his word; *ce n'est plus d'usage* (*c'est hors d'usage*) it is out of use (fashion).

il est cloué à son bureau he sticks to his desk; *ils ne sont nullement parents* they are no relation whatever; *sa belle-sœur, son beau-frère;* sister-in-law (step-sister); brother-in-law; *n'est-ce pas plutôt* is it not rather? *il ne m'est de rien* he is no relation of mine: *c'est un de mes cousins* (*un mien cousin*) he is a cousin of mine; *il faut être circonspect* one must be circumspect; *ni l'un ni l'autre ne valent rien* both are good for nothing; *il y a quelque chose qui cloche* there is a hitch somewhere; *c'est ce qui lui semble* precisely as he thought; *il est perdu de dettes* (*grevé de*) he is overhead and ears in debt; encumbered with; *confondu dans* mingled with; *l'enfant est perdu dans la foule* the child is lost in the crowd; *dont le cas est désespéré* whose case is hopeless.

XXVI

Oral Drill:

une dame aux cheveux blancs a lady with white hair; *une machine à coudre* a sewing-machine; *du papier à lettres* letter-paper; *fort en algèbre* strong (good) in Algebra; *à l'égard de* towards; *calé en histoire* well-versed in History; *reconnaissant envers vous* grateful to you; *inconnu de tous* unknown to all; *à l'égard de* in regard to; *grossier envers vous* rude towards you; *miséricordieux envers les malheureux* merciful to the unfortunate; *cruel envers son prochain* cruel to (towards) his neighbor; *fatigué de ses sollicitations* tired of his entreaties; *ennuyé de tout* wearied of everything; *fâché de ne pas le voir* sorry not to see him; *fâché contre lui* angry with him; *souillé de crimes* defiled with crimes; *soucieux de sa liberté* thoughtful of his liberty; *être anéanti* to be annihilated (dumfounded); prostrated; *rocher à fleur d'eau* rock level with the water; *c'est un Roger Bontemps* (*il jouit du présent*) he is a jovial and indifferent fellow; unmindful of the future; *en perce* tapped; *un trou* a hole; *il n'est pas mal* he is not bad looking; *il est d'humeur acariâtre* (*bilieux, irascible*) he is peevish, ill-tempered, irascible; *c'est mal à eux de* it is wrong of them; *il en a le cœur net* his mind is clear about it; *tout est hors de prix* everything is extravagantly dear; *tout lui est égal* it is all one to him; *cela lui est égal* it is all the same to him; *sont-ils logés â même enseigne* (sign) are they in the same predicament? *à telle enseigne* (*telles enseignes*) *que* so much so that; as a proof; *hors de pair* beyond comparison; *placé sous le contrôle de l'Etat* placed under the control of the State; government; *nez à nez* face to face; *les Etats-Unis d'Amérique* the United States of North America; *il est devant le comptoir* (*la caisse*) he stands in front of the counter;

pay-desk; *le comptoir* the counting-house; *quel nez busqué* (*arqué*) what an arched (curved) nose! *camard; retroussé; aquilin;* flat-nosed; snub nose; Roman nose; *entre la bouche et le front* between the mouth and forehead.

XXVII

ce n'est pas son livre de chevet (head of a bed) it is not his favorite book; *il n'y a pas de place* no room; *un effort sans résultat* (result) a fruitless effort; *il est encore à jeun* on an empty stomach; he has not breakfasted yet; *à l'heure qu'il est* at this time of day; *ils sont manche à manche* they are even (at a game); *les voilà dans de beaux draps* they are in a fine pickle; *c'est avoir de la chance* that is being lucky; *elle est très collet monté* (collar of a gown) she is stuck up (straight-laced); *un cabinet de débarras* a lumber-room; *l'exil* exile (m.); *le cabinet noir* lumber-room; *la salle était bondée d'élèves* the hall was quite full of pupils; *elle est comble* it is full; *la mesure est comble* the measure is full; *c'est une chose connue* it is a known fact; *il est de son avis* (*il abonde dans son sens*) he shares his views; (he is wedded to his opinion); *après l'addition* after adding; *il est le coq du village* the most important personage (there); *un personnage des plus importants* a very important person.

Oral Drill:

ce fils est cher et utile à sa mère that son is dear and useful to his mother; *chapitre cinq* chapter five; *il lui est utile et en est chéri* he is useful to him (her) and beloved by him (her); *dix milles de New-York* ten miles; *région fertile en blé* a region fertile in wheat; *une figure pleine d'expression* a face full of expression; *riche en expressions* rich in locutions; *instruit de ce fait* aware of this fact (apprised, cognizant); *versé dans les sciences* well-versed in sciences; *ignorant en matière civile* ignorant in Civil Court procedure; *on vous l'a répété vingt fois* you have been told many times; *mille remercîments* many thanks; thousand thanks; *le trois juin* the third of June (on June the third); *le premier juillet* July first, etc.; *être à l'affût des modes* to be on the lookout for fashions; *guetter une occasion* to watch for an opportunity; *il épie; c'est un espion;* he watches like a spy; he is a spy; *un établissement public de crédit autorisé par* a public trust institution authorized by; *très riche* (*fort riche*) very rich; *voilà un coffret de métal, de carton;* there is a metal chest; a pasteboard box; *un coffre-fort,* a safe.

XXVIII

ce piano n'est pas d'accord this piano is out of tune; *tout cela est bel et bien, mais* it is all very well, but; *il est l'ombre de lui-même* he is a total wreck; *ils sont déterminés à tout* they are ready for anything; *c'est une pierre d'achoppement* it is a stumbling-block; *un obstacle imprévu* an unforeseen difficulty; *légèrement indisposé* (*mal à l'aise*) slightly indisposed; *c'est une fenêtre à hauteur d'appui* breast-high window; *il est en état d'arrestation* (*est arrêté*) he is in custody; has been arrested; *incarcéré* in jail; *emprisonnement de longue durée* imprisonment of long duration; *il avait l'oreille basse* (*être humilié*) he was humbled; *une proclamation; une publication* a proclamation, etc.; *quel en est le sujet* what is its subject (-matter)? *et à quel titre* and of what import? *c'est sa bête noire* it is his pet aversion; *bien plus, c'est le bras droit du patron* what is more, he is the right-hand man of the proprietor; *de plus* (*en outre*) *il n'y est pour rien* besides (moreover) he has nothing to do with it; *il n'en est rien* it is not so; *est-ce un piano à queue* is it a grand piano? *il n'est pas en odeur de sainteté auprès d'eux* he is not in their good graces; *écoutez* listen; *c'est la mouche du coche* he is a busy-body; *les hommes sont des atomes dans l'univers* men are atoms in the universe; *fort étourdi* very thoughtless; *c'est un homme au-dessus de l'ordinaire* he is above the common run; *au-dessus de ses affaires* prosperous; *l'un est le pendant de l'autre* one is the pendant of the other, one matches the other; *attendez-moi* wait for me; *il est au-dessous de ses affaires* his business is far from good; *blanc comme neige* white as snow; *elle est docile envers ses maîtres* she is docile towards her teachers; *est-ce du linge sale* is it soiled linen? *elle est très malade* she is very ill (sick); *son mal n'est rien auprès du vôtre* his (her) affliction is nothing to yours; *par désœuvrement* through idleness; *après de longues épreuves* after long ordeals; *homme de caractère, d'esprit* man of character, of wit; *il est encore sur les bancs* he is still at school (college); *il est détenu pour dettes* he is in jail for debt.

XXIX

§ 49. Adjectival Forms:

certain auteur a certain author; (as a pronoun) *certains:* (*quelques-uns*) *le soutiennent* some maintain (assert) it; (as adjective:) and (as noun:) *un fait certain* a positive fact; *le certain de l'incertain* certainty to uncertainty; *chaque matin* each morning;

il donne à chacun une pomme he gives an apple to each (distributively); *chacun le dit* (*tout le monde*) every one says so; *chacun pour soi* each (one) for himself; *cinq francs chacun* five francs each; *chacun son tour* each one in turn; *divers écrivains* various writers; *différentes personnes nous l'ont assuré* several persons affirmed it to us; *figures différentes* (*dissemblables*) different forms (shapes); *plusieurs le disent* several (people) say so; *faits divers* miscellaneous news; *l'homme est divers* man is inconstant; *maintes* (*maint, mainte*) *fois* many a time; *quelque* (some; a few) *imbécile l'eût fait* some idiot would have done it; *en mainte et mainte occasion* on many an occasion; *à plusieurs reprises* several times (repeatedly); *quelques personnes pensent qu'il a bien agi* few (some) persons think he acted rightly; *aucune difficulté* no trouble; *il y eut quelque embarras* there was a little (some) difficulty; *sans aucun motif* without any ground (whatever); *aucun n'est content d'eux* no one is pleased with them; *aucuns frais; aucunes funérailles;* no expense; no funeral; *pas un sou ne lui reste* he hasn't a penny left.

il est la coqueluche de la ville he is a great favorite in town; *tout le monde le recherche* he is in great demand; *il fut le point de mire* he was the target; *dans l'assemblée où l'on danse, chacun a son tour* in the gathering where we dance, each has his turn; *le siècle* the century; *il est bègue* he is a stutterer; *c'est une boutade* it is a sally (a flight of fancy; a witticism); *il est gai comme un pinson* (finch): (he is as gay as a lark) *une alouette; est-ce bien* is it right? *sera-ce à moi à jouer* will it be my turn to play? *quand il était jeune* in his younger days.

XXX

il est bien avec lui; il est mal avec lui; he chums with him; he is on bad terms with him; *chapeau en vogue* hat in vogue; *être bien mal; en danger de mort;* to be very low; in danger of death; *elle est dans une bonne position* she is well off; *dans une situation brillante* in a splendid position; *un emploi lucratif*; *un poste élevé;* lucrative position; a prominent place (office); *une nuance bleue* a shade of blue; *il n'y est pas propre* he is not fit for it; *est-ce bien* is it right? (*après l'addition* after adding); *c'est bien le compte* it is right; *il n'est tel que balai neuf* a new broom sweeps clean; *le bâton au bout duquel est fixé le balai* the stick to which the broom is adjusted; *le manche* the handle; *la manche* the sleeve; *la Manche* the English Channel; *il y avait salle comble* the hall was filled to over-

flowing; *point de nouvelles, bonnes nouvelles* no news is good news; *il n'est rien arrivé de fâcheux* nothing unpleasant has occurred; *il est sur ses gardes* he has his wits about him; *il en est pour son argent* he lost his money through it; *c'est un chevalier d'industrie* he lives by his wits; *elle est au bout de son latin* she is at her wits' end; *ils sont désorientés* (*déconcertés*) they have lost their way, are disconcerted; *un siècle plus tard* a century later; *serait-il occupé à lire* would he be busy reading? *il est de son devoir d'obéir* it is his duty to obey; *est-ce un exilé, un proscrit* is he an exile, an outlaw? *la ville basse; la haute ville;* the lower town; the upper town; *la roche; un bossu;* the stone; a hunchback; *ils sont de la vieille roche* they are of the old school; *qu'est-ce que cela me fait* what do I care? *vous n'y êtes pas* that is not it; *vous n'y avez pas été, n'est-ce pas?* you have not been there, have you? *si* yes (indeed); *que c'est bête, honteux!* how stupid, shameful that is! *il est honteux* he is bashful; *une heure est sonnée* it has struck one; *ce sont des amis de vieille date* they are very dear old friends; *il n'y a pas de roses sans épines* there is no rose without thorns; *s'il en est ainsi* if it's so; *chaque chose à sa place* everything in its proper place; *une place pour chaque chose* a place for everything.

XXXI

Place (f.) *Vendôme à Paris* Vendome Square in Paris; *sur la Place d'armes* on the parade-ground (place of arms; stronghold); *la place de Paris* body of Parisian merchants and bankers; *les sept couleurs de l'arc-en-ciel sont:* the seven colors of the rainbow are: *bleu, vert, violet, indigo, rouge, jaune, orangé* blue, green, violet, indigo, red, yellow, orange; *il est de son siècle* he is of his century (age); *vous y êtes; vous n'y êtes pas;* you've got it; you haven't got it; *il n'en est pas besoin* there is no necessity for it; *une puissance maritime de premier ordre* a first-class naval power; *cela n'importe* (*c'est égal*) no matter; *révolte ouverte contre l'autorité* open revolt against authority; *il est grossier* he is coarse (rude); *il en fut de même pour tout le monde* it was so with everybody; *peu intelligent* not very intelligent; *qu'il soit à la hauteur* let him be equal to the emergency; *il est juste qu'il soit quitte avec vous* it is fair he should be even with you; *en deuil* in mourning; *il importe que les dames soient à la mode* it matters to ladies to be in fashion; *il est en ribote* he is boozy; *il faut qu'ils soient rendus* they must be worn out; *ce fut un piocheur* he was a hard worker; *ce serait à vous de le lui dire* it would be your duty to tell it to him;

s'il était gêné if he were hard up; *serait-il levé* would he be up? *contentement passe richesse* contentment is beyond riches; *appréciation suivie de commentaires* an appreciation followed by comments; *d'explications* (by) explanations; *de développements, d'interprétations* elucidations, interpretations; *un vers mal interprété* a line (of poetry) wrongly etc.; *plus fin que lui n'est point bête* he who can take him in is no fool; *facile en affaires* courteous in business; *ils sont coulants en affaires* they are accommodating in etc.; *ce serait une fête de les voir* it would be a treat to see them; *affable, accommodant* of easy manners, obliging; *les bons, les méchants sont légion* the good, the bad are legion; *Atlantic City est une station balnéaire* (—a watering place); *est-ce que c'est comme ça* is it right so? *il n'est pas libre* he is not at liberty (can't spare the time); *qu'y a-t-il de nouveau* what's the news? *c'est beaucoup dire* that is saying much.

XXXII

§ 50. **Oral Drill:**

un homme nul he is a mere cipher; (as pronoun:) *nul n'oserait l'attaquer* no one (nobody) would venture to attack him; *nulle part; quelque part;* nowhere; somewhere; *nullement* (*aucunement*) by no means (not at all); *à autrui; une autre fois;* unto others; another time; *encore un* (*livre*) one more (another book); *de temps à autre* at times (from time to time); *d'autre part* (*de plus*) moreover; *cela ne fait rien* it little matters; *rien n'y fait* of no avail; *personne ne travaille* no one is working; *une seule personne se trouvait là* only one person was there; *il ne voit personne* he sees no one; *personne* nobody! *rien pour aujourd'hui* nothing for to-day; *une raison quelconque* any reason (at all); *une base quelconque* a basis (of some sort, any basis whatever); *cela n'est pas encore prouvé* it has not been ascertained or *cela n'est pas certain* it is not certain; *c'est avec la bonne foi qu'on va le plus loin* honesty is the best policy; *un cabinet* (*une salle*) *de lecture* reading room; *il en est pour ses frais* (*sa peine*) he has his labor for his pains; *indécis, en balance* undecided, irresolute; *une affaire d'opinion* a mere matter of opinion; *ouvrage rédigé par divers auteurs* work edited by several authors; *ce titre fut porté depuis par* that title has been borne since by; *tout malades qu'ils sont* ill as they are; *toutes vieilles qu'elles sont* old as they are; *la justice est aveugle* justice is blindfolded; *les personnes présentes sont toujours exceptées* the present company is always

excepted; *un livre quelconque* an ordinary book; *leur interprétation est erronée* their interpretation is erroneous; *organisation qui aurait besoin d'être sévèrement réformée* organization needing a thorough reform; *à tout oiseau son nid est beau: il n'y a pas de petit chez soi* there is no place like home; *c'est un égoïste fieffé* he is downright selfish; *elle est encore à jeun* she has not yet breakfasted; *ne prenez pas cela à jeun* do not take that on an empty stomach; *une recommandation quelconque* any recommendation.

XXXIII

§ 51. Oral Drill:

un livre quelconque a book of little merit; *l'un l'autre* each other; one another; *l'un l'autre* both; *l'un ou l'autre* one *or* the other (either); *l'un dit: oui; l'autre: non* one says yes; and the other no; *il est si (tellement) affairé* he is so busy; *de part et d'autre* reciprocally; *choses et autres* one thing or another (this and that); *à d'autres* tell it to others! (colloq.); *on* one (some one; people; we; they; you etc.) *or* followed by the passive voice in English: *ici on parle français* French is spoken here; *on vous croit* I (or we) believe you! *on vous appelle* you are called; *on ne passera pas!* they shall not pass! *une cité où fleurissent les lettres, les arts* a city where letters and arts are flourishing; *linge blanc* white linen; *c'est un pays de cocagne* it is the land of plenty; *son compte sera bientôt réglé* his account will soon be settled; *un mouvement perpétuel* a perpetual motion; *tout flux a son reflux* a flow will have an ebb; *les débuts (commencements) sont toujours difficiles* the beginnings are always difficult; *un misérable* a wretch; *ce que c'est que de nous* such is our fate; *il y a beaucoup de mouvement animé dans les rues* much traffic in the streets; *un engin de guerre* an engine of war; *être coutumier d'un fait* not to be the first time one does it; *droit coutumier* common law; *elle est comme l'oiseau sur la branche* she is unsettled; *est-ce un ban, une promesse de mariage publiée à* is it a ban, a promise of marriage published at; *la patience* patience; *un vaste local; une répétition générale;* (in) spacious (quarters; general rehearsal; *un bouton de rose* a rosebud; *un bas de laine* a wool (-en) stocking; *un vaste plateau en grande partie désert à l'intérieur* an immense plateau, mostly wilderness, inland; *le coq* the rooster; *il est comme un coq en pâte* (paste) he is in clover.

XXXIV

le séjour favori de littérateurs célèbres the favorite retreat of prominent men of letters; *penser (à)* to think of; *elles sont sur le*

retour they are past middle age; *il n'en est rien* nothing of the sort; *il est d'aplomb* (*en équilibre*) it is perpendicular (in equilibrium); *il est tantôt nuit* it will soon be night; *ce chapeau est un peu juste* this hat is rather tight; *le baromètre est au beau temps* the barometer indicates fair weather; *il est question de vous* it is about you; *il n'est pas de retour; il est sorti;* he has not returned; he is out; *elle en est dégoûtée* she is sick of it; *avant qu'il soit une heure* before an hour is over; *il n'est vins que de France* French wines excel; *puis-je vous être utile* may I be of any service to you? *la couleur de la neige est très belle* the color of the snow is very beautiful; *solidement* solidly; *les êtres vivants* the living souls; *une femme laide; pusillanime;* an ugly woman; weak (mean in spirit); *un ornement de son pays* an honor (a glory) to his country; *c'est un homme de lettres* he is a man of letters; *Philadelphie est à quatre-vingt-dix milles de New-York* Philadelphia is ninety miles from New York; *il excelle* he is superior (he excels); *ah ! non, c'est trop fort* oh! no, that is going too far; *est-ce loin d'ici* is it far from here? *nous sommes au cœur de l'hiver* we are in the heart of winter; *ces pendules sont en mauvais état* these pendulums are out of condition; *c'est un des nôtres* he is one of us; *il est possible qu'il soit furieux* probably he is furious; *il se peut qu'il ne soit pas visible* he may be engaged; *soyez à même de le voir* be enabled to see him; *le berceau de la liberté américaine* the cradle of American liberty; *une bonne occasion* a good opportunity; *favorable; avantageux* (*se*); favorable; advantageous; *êtes-vous de notre avis* are you of our opinion? *c'est passable* it is passable (so-so); *ils sont en sûreté* they are safe; *il est rentré, n'est-ce pas?* he is in (has come home) has he not? *c'est l'époque de l'artillerie lourde* it is the period of heavy artillery; *le gaz; les gaz;* the gas, gases.

XXXV

il en a été de même à diverses périodes it has been so at various times; *des gaz asphyxiants* asphyxiating gases; *après une jeunesse orageuse* after a tempestuous youth; *livres souvent consultés* books often consulted; *l'université a le droit d'enseigner toutes les branches* a university has the right to teach all subjects; *sa jurisdiction particulière* its special jurisdiction (authority); *le bonheur n'est pas chose aisée* happiness is (elusive) not always within reach; *le verbe auxiliaire* auxiliary verb; *tant d'autres hommes de génie ou de talent* so many other men of genius or talent; *dans la purée* hard up (slang); *c'est une espèce de serment* it is a sort of oath; *doué de quelque talent militaire* endowed with some military talent;

possessing some, etc.; *en grande toilette* in full dress; *ils sont conséquents* they are consistent; *il ne me sera pas possible de venir* it will not be possible for me to come; *un marchand en gros* (*un négociant*) a wholesale merchant; *cette lettre serait datée du 1er* that letter would be dated the 1st; *être d'un grand secours* to be of great help.

LESSON VI

§ 52. *les verbes auxiliaires aident à conjuguer les autres verbes* auxiliary verbs help the conjugation of other verbs.

VERBE IMPERSONNEL: *y avoir* Impersonal Verb *servant à indiquer le nombre, la quantité ou le temps* referring to number, quantity or time:

Infinitif Présent	**Participe Passé**
y avoir to be (there to be)	*eu* been
Participe Présent	**Participe Passé (composé)**
y ayant there being	*y ayant eu* there having been

Indicatif présent	*il y a* there is (are). See § 60.
Imparfait	*il y avait* there was (were)
Passé défini	*il y eut* " was (were)
Futur	*il y aura* " will be
Passé indéfini	*il y a eu* " has (have) been
Plus-que-parfait	*il y avait eu* there had been
Passé antérieur	*il y eut eu* there had been
Futur antérieur	*il y aura eu* there will have been
Conditionnel (présent)	*il y aurait* there would be
" *(passé)*	*il y aurait eu* there would have been
Subjonctif (présent)	*qu'il y ait* that there may be
Imparfait du Subj.	*qu'il y eût* that there might be
Passé du Subjonctif	*qu'il y ait eu* that there may have been
Plus-que-parfait	*qu'il y eût eu* that there might have been

Exercice de Conversation:

1. *Il l'a* he has it. 2. *Il ne l'a pas* he does not have it. 3. *Je l'ai* I have (got) it. 4. *Je ne l'ai pas* I do not have it. 5. *L'ai-je?*

do I have it? 6. *Ne l'ai-je pas?* do I not have it? 7. *Nous l'avons* we have it. 8. *Nous ne l'avons pas* we do not have it. 9. *J'en ai* I have (some). 10. *Il n'en a pas* he hasn't any. 11. *En avez-vous?* have you any? 12. *N'en avez-vous pas?* have you not any?

1. *Il les a* he has (got) them. 2. *Il ne les a pas* he does not have them (he hasn't them). 3. *S'il l'a* if he has it. 4. *Si elle l'a* if she has it. 5. *Elle en a un* (*e*) she has one (of them). 6. *Elle en a* she has; she has some. 7. *En a-t-elle?* has she any? 8. *Il y en a* there is (are); there is (are) some. 9. *Il n'y en a pas* there isn't any; there are not any (there aren't any). 10. *Il y en a un* (*e*) there is one.

1. *Avez-vous votre leçon?* are you having your lesson? 2. *Je l'ai* I am having it. 3. *Est-ce qu'il l'a le soir ou le matin?* does he have it in the evening or in the morning? 4. *Est-ce qu'il l'avait?* did he have it? 5. *Y a-t-il eu une réunion?* was there a meeting? 6. *Il y en a eu une* there was (one).

§ 53. PRESENT INDICATIVE AND ITS USE.—Only *one* form of the Present is used in French as the act is done or continuous at the very moment one speaks; it refers not only to an act purely present, habitual or true but replaces the Past *or* Future in lively narratives.

il a souvent des maux de tête he often has headaches.

NOTE.—*Tu* instead of *vous* is used among relatives and friends.

§ 54. **Review:**

the **for** *le, l', la, les:*

L'Article Défini

le before a masculine noun beginning with a consonant
l' " any noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute
la " a feminine noun beginning with a consonant

EX.: *le père, le héros, l'oncle, l'homme, l'ami, la tante* the father, the hero, the uncle, the man, the friend, the aunt.

les before all plural nouns

L'Article Indéfini

un a, an, one (m.); *une* a, an, one (f.)

§ 55. **The Possessive Adjectives** (*Les Adjectifs Possessifs*)

Masculine		Feminine		Plural	
mon	my	*ma*	my	*mes*	my
ton	your (thy)	*ta*	your (thy)	*tes*	your (thy)
son	his, her, its	*sa*	his, her, its	*ses*	his, her, its
notre	our	*notre*	our	*nos*	our
votre	your	*votre*	your	*vos*	your
leur	their	*leur*	their	*leurs*	their

NOTE.—It is repeated before each noun to which it refers; *mon*, *ton*, *son* used instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa* before feminines beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

EX.: *j'ai ma leçon; tu as ta leçon; il a sa leçon; elle a sa leçon; on a sa leçon; nous avons notre leçon; vous avez votre leçon; ils ont leur leçon.* Oral Drill: *j'ai mon crayon*, etc.

1. *Mon ami; mon amie*; my friend; my (lady) friend. 2. *Il a son livre* he has his (her) book. 3. *Elle a ses plumes* she has her (his) pens. 4. *Paris a ses charmes* Paris has its attractions. 5. *Il a son crayon et sa règle* he has his pencil and ruler. 6. *Il en admire les beautés* he admires its beauties.

(*a*) after *depuis quand* since when: *y a-t-il longtemps que* how long is it since; *voilà* there is (are); *depuis quand a-t-il le médecin?* how long has he been having the doctor? *y a-t-il longtemps qu'il est faible?* has he been weak long? *or* how long has he been, etc.; *voilà une heure qu'il a sa leçon* he is having his lesson an hour; literally: there is an hour since he is having his lesson.

(*b*) after *si* (if); and an idea of futurity often implied: *si j'ai de l'argent aujourd'hui, demain;* if I have the money to-day, to-morrow.

(*c*) after *c'est . . . que; c'est que* and *c'est . . . qui* (forms often omitted in English): *c'est Joseph qui l'a* Joseph has it (of course).

§ 56

il y a and *voilà* to be distinguished; *il y a* refers to quantity, number and time; *voilà* (there is *or* are) is derived from *vois* see and *là* there, both contracted into *voilà* and used in emphatic statements:

voilà le voleur! there is the thief! *il y a un monsieur dans la salle d'attente* there is a gentleman in the waiting-room; *il y a deux dames* there are two ladies; *il y a une heure* an hour ago.

§ 57. Negative and Interrogative Forms:

ne pas not	*ne point* not at all
ne rien nothing (not anything)	*ne plus* no more (longer)
ne que only; but	*ne guère* hardly (scarcely)
ne jamais never	*ne personne* no one (nobody)
ne nullement not in the least	*ne aucun* none; no
ne aucunement no	*ni ni* neither nor
ne nul no (one)	

Note.—*Pas, point, rien, jamais, nul, personne* when beginning the sentence, precede the *ne; ne* is used only with a verb expressed.

Oral Drill:

1. *Je n'ai pas; tu n'as pas; il n'a pas; elle n'a pas; on n'a pas; nous n'avons pas; vous n'avez pas; ils n'ont pas; elles n'ont pas.* 2. *Je n'ai rien; tu n'as rien*, etc. 3. *Il n'a point* he has not at all. 4. *Elle n'a plus* she has no more (no longer); she has not any more. 5. *Je n'ai qu'une minute* I have only one minute (but a, etc.). 6. *On n'a guère* one has scarcely (hardly). 7. *Nous n'avons jamais vu* we never saw (we have never seen). 8. *Il n'y a personne* there is no one (nobody): there is not any one (not anybody). 9. *Il n'a ni or ni argent* he has neither gold nor silver. 10. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* neither one; neither the one nor the other. 11. *Sans argent* without money (change). 12. *Il n'a aucun intérêt* he has no interest (whatever). 13. *Nul n'est prophète en son pays* no one is a prophet in his own country. 14. *Sans nul doute* without any doubt (whatsoever). 15. *Personne* no one. 16. *Naguère(s)* not so long ago; lately. 17. *Il n'a plus aucune ambition* he has no more ambition. 18. *Il y a; il n'y a pas;* there is (are); there is not (there are not). 19. *Y a-t-il* is (are) there?; *n'y a-t-il pas?* is (are) there not? *or: est-ce qu'il n'y a pas?*

§ 58. Review:

ai-je?	do I have?	*est-ce que j'ai*	(conversational form)	do I have?
as-tu	or	*est-ce que tu as*		do you have?
a-t-il	"	"	*qu'il a*	does he have?
a-t-elle	"	"	*qu'elle a*	does she have?
avons-nous	"	"	*que nous avons*	do we have?
avez-vous	"	"	*que vous avez*	do you have?
ont-ils	"	"	*qu'ils ont*	do they have?
ont-elles	"	"	*qu'elles ont*	do they have?

est-ce que je n'ai pas (*n'ai-je pas*) do I not have?
" *que tu n'as pas* (*n'as-tu pas*) have you not? etc.
" *qu'il n'a pas* (*n'a-t-il pas*) has he not; does he not have?
" *qu'elle n'a pas* (*n'a-t-elle pas*) has she not; does she not have?

NOTE.—*Est-ce que* is rather inquisitive.

n'avons-nous pas (*est-ce que nous n'avons pas*) have we not? (do we not have?)
n'avez-vous pas (*est-ce que vous n'avez pas*) have you not?
est-ce qu'il y a (*y a-t-il?*) is (are) there?
cf.: *qu'avez-vous?* what ails you *or:* what is the matter with you? (in reference to health, temper).

§ 59. *en* and *le* (*l'*); *la; les;* as Pronouns:

en may mean: some (any); of it; of him; of her; of them; it; *le* it (him); *l'* it (him); *la* it (her); *les* them:

EX.: *J'en ai* I have or I have some; *je n'en ai pas* I have not any; I have none; *j'en ai un* (*une*) I have (one); *j'en ai seulement deux* I have only two; *il en a besoin* he needs it (them); (need of, etc.); *il en parle* he speaks of it (him, her, them).

NOTE.—No neuter gender in French; *le; l'; la; les; en; y;* are placed before the verb (simple tense) and before the auxiliary in the Compound Tenses: *je l'ai vu* I saw it (him); I have seen it (him).

(*a*) **The two above pronouns come after the Imperative when not used negatively:**

donne-le; ne le donne pas give it; do not give it
donne-la; ne la donne pas give it; do not give it

(*b*) *le* (*l'*) **may replace an adjective:**

il l'est he is (so he is)

Exercice de Conversation:

1. *Etes-vous fatigué? Je le suis* are you tired? I am; so I am. 2. *Je ne le suis pas* I am not. 3. *L'êtes-vous?* Are you? 4. *Ne l'êtes-vous pas?* are you not? 5. *Si, je le suis* yes, I am; *malade* ill (sick); *pressé* (*e*) in a hurry; *occupé* (*e*) busy; *en retard* late; *de retour* back (returned); *est-il en retard? Il l'est;* is he late? he is; *est-il de retour?* is he back? etc.

Practice and Oral Drill:

je ne suis pas; tu n'es pas; il n'est pas; elle n'est pas; on n'est pas; nous ne sommes pas; ils ne sont pas; elles ne sont pas; also: *ne suis-je pas? n'es-tu pas? n'est-il pas? n'est-elle pas? n'est-on pas? ne sommes-nous pas? n'êtes-vous pas? ne sont-ils pas? ne sont-elles pas?* Also: *est-ce que je ne suis pas?* am I not? etc.; *n'est-ce pas que je suis?* (calls more for an affirmative) am I not (really)? etc.

Various Examples:

1. *Il ne s'en soucie guère* he hardly cares (cares little about it; for it). 2. *Point de service sans rétribution* no work (attendance) without reward; the laborer is worthy of his hire. 3. *On est tous égaux devant la loi* we are all equal in the eyes of the law. 4. *Il n'a plus rien à espérer* he has no more hope. 5. *Pour modifier, s'il y a lieu* to be modified, if need be (there is occasion, necessity). 6. *C'est une chose dont il ne se met guère en peine* he hardly troubles himself about that (thing). 7. *Ce ne fut qu'au bout d'un certain temps* it was only after a certain time. 8. *Le bon de l'histoire, c'est que* the point of the story is (was). 9. *En aucun temps* in no time. 10. *En moins de rien* (*en un rien de temps*) in no time (in a twinkling of an eye). 11. *En très peu de temps* in a short time. 12. *Rien que d'y songer* the very thought of it. 13. *Il y a six mois* this time six months ago. 14. *Le livre de son frère* the book of his (her) brother *or* her brother's book. 15. *C'est un vice dans la prononciation* it is a defect in pronunciation. 16. *Ce qu'il y a d'extraordinaire, c'est que* one extraordinary thing was. 17. *Une bonne action a sa récompense* a good act brings its reward. 18. *D'un pas mesuré* (*réglé*) with a measured (regulated) step.

§ 60. **avoir faim** **avoir soif** **avoir chaud**

j'ai faim I am hungry; *tu as soif* you are thirsty
il a chaud he is warm; *on a chaud* we (they) are warm, etc.

avoir froid	**avoir peur**	**avoir honte**
elle a froid	*nous avons peur*	*vous avez honte*
she is cold	we are afraid	you are ashamed, etc.
ils ont sommeil	*elles ont raison*	*ils ont tort*
they are sleepy	they are right	they are wrong, etc.

ils en ont besoin they need it: they have need of it, etc.

Exercice de Conversation:

1. *Vous avez bonne mine* you look well. 2. *Quel âge a-t-il?* how old is he? 3. *Il a dix ans* he is ten years of age; he is ten years

old. 4. *Il a du sang-froid* he is self-possessed. 5. *Il en a quelques-uns* (*unes*) he has some (*or* a few). 6. *Il n'en a pas besoin* he has no occasion for it. 7. *Elle a coutume de se lever* she is accustomed to rise (get up). 8. *Elle a froid* she feels cold. 9. *Il a bonne envie d'y aller* he has a good mind (has half a mind) to go there. 10. *Il désire de* he desires to. 11. *Il a mal au pied* he has a sore foot. 12. *Elle a mal aux dents* she has a toothache. 13. *Il a affaire* he has to go (he is busy). 14. *Il a peine à se soutenir* he can hardly keep himself up. *Cf.:* the coffee is hot. *Le café est chaud.*

Oral Drill:

le malade; la malade; la maladie; être malade; the patient; the patient; the illness; to be ill (sick); *chez moi; chez toi; chez lui; chez soi; chez elle; chez nous;* at (my) home; at (your) house (home); at his house; at one's home; at her house; at (our) home; *or:* to my house, etc.; *chez vous; chez eux; chez elles;* at your house; at their house (home); at their house (*fem. pl.*); *le foyer* the hearth (home); *il a les mains dans ses poches* his hands are in his pockets: he has his hands in, etc.; *un homme nul* a man of no merit; *elle est méchante, aussi* (*c'est pourquoi*) *chacun la fuit* she is wicked, and so every one shuns her; *à la tête d'une petite troupe armée* at the head of a small armed troop; *une carte de visite* visiting card; *aucun des tireurs n'avaient pu tendre l'arc* none of the shooters had been able to bend the bow.

Various Examples on *avoir* and *être*, etc.

il est des hommes qui there are men who; *il n'a plus qu'à agir* it only remains for him to act; *on n'a jamais rien vu de pareil* (alike) the like was never seen before; *il n'y a pas un chat* (*il n'y a personne*) there is not a soul; *il n'y a rien de mieux* nothing better; *voici autre chose de plus singulier* now is another thing more singular; *le bruit est si grand que* there is so much noise that; *jamais, au grand jamais!* never, no never! *chez les Français* (*Américains*) among the French (Americans); *chez le négociant; chez le marchand;* at the wholesale dealer's; at the merchant's; *pas davantage* nothing more; *on a un chez soi* we have a (house) home of our own; *est-ce une habitude chez elle* is it a habit with her? *il n'a aucun succès* he has no success whatever; *il est toujours en mouvement* he never rests; *cela ne s'est jamais vu* that has never occurred; *à jamais: pour jamais* for ever (more); *pour toujours* for ever; *est-il toujours à New-York* is he still in New York? *on n'est pas toujours de bonne humeur* one is not always in a happy mood; *plus longtemps*

longer; *un sou, c'est toujours ça* (*cela*) a penny, it's something (to be sure); *en sait-on davantage* does any one know more about it? *ne travaillez pas davantage* stop working; *il se trouve; il se trouva que* (*il arriva que*) there is (are); it happened that; *il se trouva mal* (*il eut une syncope*) he had a fainting spell; *ces animaux se trouvent partout* those animals are (found) everywhere; *ne jamais le payer !* I (we) would never pay him! *il n'y entend pas malice* there is no harm in him; *rien ne presse* there is no hurry; *on est pressé de faim, de soif* we are tormented by hunger and thirst; *c'est une affaire qui ne presse guère* it is hardly an urgent case; *pressez ces citrons* squeeze those lemons; *il en reste cent* there are a hundred left; *cela laisse à désirer* there is room for improvement; *il n'y a plus un fiacre disponible* there is not one cab at liberty; *ah ! les voilà !* oh! there they are! *il y a quelque cinquante ans* some fifty years ago; *il y a bien des mois* months and months ago; *il y a de cela vingt ans* that was twenty years ago; *il y a plus* what is more; *pas d'argent, pas de Suisse* (*: rien pour rien*) no money, no piper (nothing for nothing),

General Review:

monsieur, c'est trop de bontés que vous avez you are too kind, Sir; *le voilà ! la voilà !* there he (she) is! *il existe* (*il est; on trouve*) *des gens qui* there are people who; *il y en a qui* (*il règne des* etc.) there are people who; *il est,* etc., implies more a general idea; *ce n'est que pure imagination* it is mere fancy; *on ne les voit guère* we hardly ever see them; *il n'a aucun avenir* he has no prospects; *quel mal y a-t-il à rire* what harm is there in laughing? *il ne voit guère* (*il voit à peine*) he hardly sees (he sees with difficulty); *m'y voilà* (*j'y suis !*) now! I have it! *il ne voit goutte* (drop) he does not see at all; *il n'entend goutte* he can't understand; *il est sourd; elle est sourde*; he is deaf; she is deaf; *on a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que soi* we often need the services of (an assistant) a person of lower rank; *il est question* (*il s'agit*) *de vous* it is about you; *de quoi s'agit-il?* what is it about? *il ne s'agit pas de cela* that is not the point; *il s'agit de deviner où il se trouve* it is a question of guessing where he is; *des pigeons* pigeons; *il n'y a plus que le nid* only the nest has been left (is left); *on n'a plus trouvé que le nid* the birds have flown; *il ne veut que les voir* or *il veut seulement les voir* he only wishes to see them; *c'est toujours à recommencer* one must begin over again; no end to it; *je n'aurais pas voulu manquer ce rendez-vous pour tout au monde* (for nothing in the world) I should not have cared to miss that appointment; *c'est bel et bien un*

commencement it is assuredly a start; *plus on a de biens, plus on en veut avoir* the more one has, the more one wants; *dépenser* to spend; to waste; *il n'en reste pas moins confus* he is disconcerted nevertheless.

LESSON VII

§ 61. Contractions of: *de le* = *du* of the; from the
de l' = *de l'* (no contraction)
de la = *de la* " "
de les = *des* (before plural nouns)
(partitive sense): all may mean *some; any.*

Note.—Same rule applies to both *du* and *au:*
à le = *au* to the (at the)
à l' = *à l'* " "
à la = *à la* " "
à les = *aux* " "

du before a masc. noun beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate

de l' before a masc. or fem. noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute

de la before a fem. noun beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate

For Practice:

de New-York of (from) New York; *du village* of (from) the village; *du héros* of (from) the hero; *de la mère* of the mother, etc.; *des élèves* of the pupils; some pupils; *à New-York* to (at, in) New York; *au village* to the (at the) village; *au héros* to the hero; *à la mère* to the mother; *aux élèves* to the pupils; *à la hauteur de* to (at) the height of; *avez-vous du pain, de l'eau, de l'huile, de la viande, des pommes?* Have you any bread, water, oil, meat, apples? *J'en ai* I have.

§ 62. Imperfect of the Indicative and its Uses (so-called descriptive tense):

j'avais; tu avais; il avait; nous avions; vous aviez; ils avaient
I had; you had; he had; we had; you had; they had

NOTE.—This tense has the same endings in all verbs: *-ais, -ais; -ait;* etc.; and may mean also: *used to have; was having; kept having; had been having; did have; would have* (as a past of habit); conditional endings which are the same.

§ 63. RULES.—This tense implies a past idea,—interpreted as habitual, lasting condition, situation; frequently used in relative clauses, in or after such expressions as:

je croyais (*j'ai cru*) *que* I thought

(*a*) *j'avais des leçons le lundi, le mardi, le mercredi, le jeudi, le vendredi et le dimanche; et le samedi;* I had (used to have) lessons on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Sunday; and on Saturday

je croyais que vous aviez une plume d'acier I thought you had a steel pen; *j'ai cru que tu avais mon canif* I thought (for a moment) you had my penknife; *elle avait les cheveux blonds ou roux* she had light or reddish hair; *sa maison avait de grandes fenêtres* his (her) house had large windows.

§ 64. NOTE.—*de* (some *or* any)—whether expressed or understood in English stands before an adjective or the direct object of a negative verb; in partitive constructions; in expressions denoting measure, quantity, material (adjectival phrases); after adverbs of quantity; after verbs, adjectives or expressions requiring it:

elle a de bon sucre, de bon papier blanc, de jolis enfants she has (some) good sugar, good white paper, pretty children; *du fil noir; des gants blancs;* black thread; white gloves; but: *des petits-fils* grandchildren; indivisible in sense; *il n'a pas d'or* he has no gold; he hasn't any gold; *il en a; il n'en a pas;* he has (some); he has none (not any); *il est sans argent* he is without (any) money; *peu d'argent* little (not much) money; *ils n'ont pas de quoi payer* they haven't anything to pay with; *une robe de soie* a silk dress; *un mètre de longueur* a yard long; *avoir besoin de* to need; to have need of; *il manque d'argent* he lacks money; *il vit d'air pur* he lives on fresh air.

§ 65. NOTE.—In negative interrogations; after general negations implying an affirmative answer:

n'avez-vous pas des amis? Si, monsieur; have you not (any) friends (haven't you some, etc.)? yes, Sir; *mais si; mais si;* why, yes; yes indeed; *je n'ai pas des gants de soie, mais j'ai des gants de coton* I haven't silk gloves, but I have cotton gloves.

(*b*) **after** *c'est . . que* **often omitted in English and meaning** *because:*

il a prodigué son or; c'est qu'il avait de l'argent; he was lavish of his gold; (because) he had money; cf.: *parce que* because (and reason given).

(*c*) **after** *depuis que* (*quand*)*; voici* (*voilà*) *que:*

depuis quand avait-il cet hôtel? how long had he that hotel? (had he been having?); *voilà que dans ma poche il y avait un dollar* (*5 frs.*) (why) in my pocket there was one dollar (5 francs); *depuis qu'il avait le cheval, elle allait souvent en voiture* after (the time) he got the horse, she often went riding.

(*d*) **after** *si* **if;** *que* **why;** *comme* **as, because;** *que* **how;** *combien* **how much; how many? and the** *i* **in** *si* **omitted only before** *il:*

s'il l'avait; si elle les avait; if he had it; if she had them; *s'il ne les avait pas* if he did not have them; *il en avait; insensé qu'il était! un sot* (*fou*) he had some; how stupid he was! a fool.

Exercice de Conversation:

1. *Donnez-lui de meilleur thé* give him (her) better tea. 2. *Il en a besoin; il n'en a pas besoin;* he needs it (them); he does not. 3. *Combien de paires de souliers aviez-vous* how many pair of shoes did you have? 4. *Voilà du papier, de l'encre, des plumes; en voulez-vous?* there are paper, ink and pens; will you have some? 5. *Il y avait une fois* once upon a time. 6. *Il y avait autrefois* there was formerly. 7. *On mangeait du pain noir* we (they) ate black bread. 8. *Si je l'avais, je n'aurais pas froid* if I had it, I would not be cold. 9. *Qu'il avait froid aux mains* how cold his hands were! 10. *Comme il avait froid* (*au moment où il avait froid*) as he was cold. 11. *Au moment où* (*lorsque*) when; just as; *du moment que* since; as soon as. 12. *Elle n'aurait pas froid, si elle avait son manchon, ses gants* she would not feel cold, if she had her muff, her gloves.

Observe.—*Si* followed by the Imperfect answers to the Conditional or vice-versa.

qu'il avait de beaux cheveux frisés how beautiful his curly hair was! *les cheveux bouclés* curly hair; *combien en aviez-vous* how much (many) did you have? *avait-il assez de beurre* did he have butter enough? *il en avait assez* he had enough; *des soldats français se trouvaient sur la place* French soldiers were in the square; *des jeunes gens* young men; *n'en avait-il pas trop* didn't he have too much (many)? *elle est dégoûtée de ce livre* she is disgusted with that book; *il avait du bon sens* he had common sense; *donnez-lui de ce gâteau* give him (her) some of that cake; *ce sont des jeunes gens* they are young men; *qu'il avait de jolis cheveux bouclés* what pretty curly hair he had!

(*e*) **simultaneity (simultaneousness) or actions taking place together in point of time:**

quand il avait sa leçon, j'avais la mienne when (whenever) he had his lesson, I had mine; *il sortait, lorsque je suis entré* he was leaving when I entered (came in); *elle avait de vos chansons* she had some of your songs; *quand* when; also used in questions.

il y en avait de bonnes et de mauvaises there were good and bad ones; *plusieurs* several; *il y avait une foule de curieux* there was a crowd of lookers-on; *bien du monde* much (large) company; *le meilleur homme du monde* the best man in the world; *bien des personnes* many persons (people); *bien du mal* much trouble.

Observe.—*De* plus *le* (the article), etc., after *bien* or the French superlative; *plusieurs* (several) as adjective requires no *de* after it.

(*f*) **surprise, strong statements:**

voilà le monsieur qui avait ma montre there is the gentleman who had my watch; *après sa chute, il marchait* after his fall he walked; *il faisait un mille tous les jours* he walked a mile every day; *tous les deux jours* every other day.

(*g*) **instead of the Conditional Past** *or* **Conditional to enliven a narrative:**

rien n'y faisait nothing would do; *s'il avait approché, on le tuait* if he had approached, they would have killed him; *vains efforts* vain efforts; *en vain* in vain; *inutilement* uselessly; *sans effet* without (any) effect *or* impression; *le résultat* the result (consequence); *s'approcher de lui* to come (go) near him.

(*h*) **after *plus* . . *plus*; the more . . the more, etc.:**

plus on chantait, plus on riait the louder they sang, the louder they laughed: *il vous en coûtait plus qu'à moi* it cost you more than it did me (to mention it); *le plus qu'il avait était cent sous* the most he had was a hundred cents (pennies); *deux de plus; plus de deux;* two more; more than two; *il n'avait plus que vingt dollars de loyer* he had only twenty dollars' rent; *il en avait plus de cent* he had more than a hundred.

§ 66. Past Definite (Preterit): also called *historical, narrative, literary tense:*

j'eus;	*tu eus;*	*il eut;*	*nous eûmes;*	*vous eûtes;*	*ils eurent*
I had;	you had;	he had;	we had;	you had;	they had

Note.—Tense mostly used in books; time entirely elapsed.

§ 67. Rule.—As the name implies the Past Definite refers to a single act accomplished at a specific time mentioned in the sentence; the action or state denoted by it, is not viewed as being in progress (as in the Present Indicative *or* the Imperfect) but more as a (whole) result:

il n'eut point non plus le plaisir de les voir he had not the pleasure of seeing them either; or *lui non plus n'eut point le* etc.

aussi n'eut-il aucune peine à faire approuver ces règles so he had no difficulty (whatever) in having those rules approved; *j'eus ma leçon hier; hier matin;* I had my lesson yesterday; yesterday morning; *do* not say: *j'eus ma leçon aujourd'hui* I had my lesson to-day.

The present tendency is to use in French conversation the Past Indefinite instead of the Past Definite. In narrations authors often prefer the Present Indicative,—and also the Infinitive preceded by *de* to the Past Definite, so as to enliven a narrative or relieve the monotony.

le tambour bat;	*le clairon sonne;*	*et d'aller;*
the drum beats;	the bugle calls;	and indeed we went.

§ 68. Possessive Pronouns:

singular			plural	
masculine		feminine	masculine	feminine
le mien	mine	*la mienne*	*les miens*	*les miennes*
le tien	yours	*la tienne* (thine)	*les tiens*	*les tiennes*
le sien	his (hers, its)	*la sienne*	*les siens*	*les siennes*
le nôtre	ours	*la nôtre*	*les nôtres*	*les nôtres*
le vôtre	yours	*la vôtre*	*les vôtres*	*les vôtres*
le leur	theirs	*la leur*	*les leurs*	*les leurs*

§ 69. Past Indefinite *or* Conversational Tense:

j'ai eu for: I had (have had); *tu as eu* you had (have had)
il a eu he had (has had); *nous avons eu* we had, etc.
vous avez eu you had (have had); *or:* did have

§ 70. Rule.—This tense may refer or not to an action accomplished *to-day, yesterday, etc.;* in fact to all moments of the past; to express a truth one may sometimes use either the Past Definite or Indefinite:

Dieu créa le monde or *Dieu a créé le monde* God created the world; *avez-vous tout dit* have you had your say (have you told all)? *que n'ai-je été toute ma vie plus prévoyant?* why have I not been all my life more foreseeing? *les enfants qu'elle a eus du premier mariage sont:* the children she had by her first marriage are; *un de ses enfants* one of her (his) children; one child of hers (his); *une de mes amies* a (lady) friend of mine; one of my friends.

§ 71. *Adjectifs Démonstratifs* (Demonstrative Adjectives):

ce (*cet*) m.; this, that; *cette* f.; this, that; *ces* these, those;

cet before a masculine noun or adjective beginning with vowel or *h* mute:

ce garçon;	*cet ami;*	*cet homme;*	*cette femme;*
this boy;	this friend;	this man;	this woman (wife)

ce héros; *ces garçons;* *ces filles;*
this hero; these boys; these (those) girls;

Observe: demonstrative adjectives always repeated:

a-t-il acheté ces crayons et ces plumes?
did he buy those pencils and pens?

§ 72. *Pronoms Démonstratifs* (Demonstrative Pronouns):

	singular	plural
celui (m.)	this (one); that (one)	*ceux* (m.) these
celle (f.)	the one (that of)	*celles* (f.) those

Note.—*celui* plus *de*, etc., may replace: 's
mon crayon et celui de Jean my pencil and John's; *ma plume et celle de Jeanne* my pen and Jane's; *mes devoirs sont meilleurs que ceux de Pierre* my exercises are better than those of Peter (Peter's).

ceci this; *cela* that; *-ci* and *-là* are added to above nouns and pronouns to better distinguish; for emphasis:

j'ai deux livres; voulez-vous celui-ci ou celui-là? I have two books; will you have this one or that one? *voulez-vous ce livre-là?* Do you wish that book? *voulez-vous ce livre-ci?* Do you wish this book? *cela* (*ça*) *est vrai* that is true; *ceci* (*cette chose-ci*) *est pour vous* this (this thing here) is for you.

Observe: *cela* refers to ideas, objects indicated, not yet named: *cela est pour lui* that is for him; *retenez bien ceci* do not forget this.

§ 73. Future and its Uses:

j'aurai	*tu auras*	*il aura*
I will (shall) have	you shall (will) have	he shall (will) have
nous aurons	*vous aurez*	*ils auront*
we will (shall) have	you shall (will) have	they shall (will) have

and correspond generally to the same English tense;

ils n'auront rien du tout they shall have nothing at all *or:* they will have nothing at all
il en aura le démenti he will get the worst of it
" " he will be worsted
il en aura le dessous he will have the worst of it

§ 74. Relative Pronouns (*Pronoms Relatifs*):

qui (who, that, which) as subject (nominative case)
que (which, that) as object (in the objective case)
ce qui (what *or* that which; which, that) as subject
ce que (what) as object; the *e* may be elided; not *i* in *qui*
qui est là who is there?

l'homme qui est malade, est âgé the man who is ill is old; *la dame que vous avez vue* the lady (whom) you have seen; *que dit-il* (*qu'est-ce qu'il dit*) what does he say? *que cherche-t-il* what is he looking for? *on le cherche* some one is looking for him; *cf.: quel est ce jeune homme* who is that young man? for: what sort of a young man is he? *à qui est-ce?* whose is it?

(*a*) **future instead of the Imperative in the Ten Commandments:**

un seul Dieu tu adoreras thou shalt have no other gods before me (adore but one God).

(*b*) **in mild command:**

vous l'aurez dans cinq minutes, n'est-ce pas? Have it in five minutes, please.

(*c*) **in regulations, edicts, supposition (probability); with *si* whether:**

je ne sais s'il l'aura ou non I do not know whether he will have it or not; *s'il ne l'a pas, c'est qu'il l'aura perdu* if he has it not, he must have lost it; *vous aurez la salle à six heures* have the room at six o'clock; *cf.: c'est à qui l'aura* every one wishes to have it; *il l'aura dans sa malle* he may have it in his trunk; *Jean l'aura alors* John has it then.

(*d*) **in absolute affirmation:**

il m'a assuré qu'il l'aura he assured me that he will have it; *voilà qui vous plaira* just what you want; *elle a prédit qu'il aura le prix* she predicted that he will win the prize; *ce qui n'arrivera pas* and that may not happen; *ce qui est fâcheux* (*dommage*) and that is a pity *or:* which is unfortunate.

Notice the use of the present (indicative) in reference to a near future:

je vais sortir I am going out (I will go out); *encore une minute, et je l'ai* one more minute and I shall have it; *il le veut ainsi* he will have it so; *c'est un parti pris chez elle* she *will* do it; *à eux deux maintenant* and now both will have it out; *cela suffit* that will do;

that suffices; *c'est là que je les attends* I shall get (await) them there;

Distinguish: *voulez-vous?* will you have (do you wish *or* desire?) and *aurez-vous?*

§ 75. IMPORTANT RULE IN FRENCH.—If futurity is implied after:

quand; lorsque (when); *aussitôt que* (*sitôt que*) as soon as
dès que from the very moment that;
tant que as long as; USE the Future in French:
aussitôt qu'il l'aura, vous l'aurez as soon as he has it (*or:* will have it) you will have it
and Future also in the following:
comme vous l'entendrez as you think proper; *faites ce que vous pourrez* do what you can; *faites ce que vous voudrez* do what you wish; *advienne que pourra* come what may; *vienne qui voudra* come who will; *comme il vous plaira* as you like; *rira bien qui rira le dernier* laughs well who laughs last; *qui vivra verra* or *celui qui* etc.; he who lives longest will see most; time will tell; *tant qu'il vivra* as long as he lives; *le plus tôt que vous pourrez* as early as you can; *à votre aise: comme vous voudrez* as you please.

LESSON VIII

§ 76. *ce* (plus *est*) or: *sont: c'est; ce sont* as demonstrative pronoun: *c'est Charles* it is Charles; *c'est moi* it is I; *c'est le plus joli* it is the prettiest:

c'est toi	*c'est lui*	*c'est elle*
it is you	it is he	it is she
c'est nous	*c'est vous*	*c'est eux* (*elles* f.)
it is we	it is you	it is they (they)

c'est le meilleur (*la meilleure*) it is the best; *ce sont les meilleurs* (*les meilleures*) they are best; *c'est celui qu'il a* it is the one he has; *c'est celle qu'il a* it is the one (that one) he has; *c'est son ami qui est là* it is his (her) friend, etc.; *n'est-ce pas* is it or is it not? etc.; *qui est-ce* who is he? *c'est mon ami* (*e*) he (she) is my friend; *ce sont eux; ce sont elles;* it is they; *est-ce eux?* is it they?

§ 77. *ce :* **as a conclusive statement, remark or for emphasis:**

c'est juste quite right; *c'est une belle ville que Paris* Paris is a beautiful city (indeed); *c'est un Anglais* he is an Englishman; *cf.:*

il est Anglais he is English; *c'est midi* it is twelve (noon); *c'est ma sœur* she is my sister; it is etc.;
ce sont (*c'est*): used before a proper noun, a pronoun, a superlative as: it; this; that; he; she; these; those.

General Review:

il fume, ce qui m'étonne he smokes, which astonishes me; *ce qui m'étonne, c'est son savoir* what surprises me is his knowledge; *il est une heure* it is one o'clock; *c'est un homme qui sait tout* a man who knows everything; *c'est ce à quoi je songeais* precisely what I was thinking; *ce que vous dites est vrai* what you say is true; *tant petits que grands* both great and small; *tant pour eux que pour vous* as much (many) for them as for you; *que c'est joli!* how pretty that is! *dès qu'il se présente, on lui obéit* as soon as he makes an appearance, he is obeyed; *obéir* (*à*) to obey; *s'il vient* (*arrive*) *ce soir, je le verrai* if he comes (will come, should he come) to-night, I shall see him.

§ 78. RULE.—*si* (if) being a condition answers to the Future *or* vice-versa: *je le verrai ce soir, s'il vient, etc.*, and independently of the English form.

Exercice de Conversation:

c'est mes sœurs it is *or* those are my sisters; *sont-ce les vôtres* is it (are those) yours? *ce ne sont pas ceux* (*celles*) *que j'ai achetés* (*-ées*) those are not the ones I bought (*or:* these etc.); *ce ne sont pas celles-ci; ce sont celles-là* these are not the ones; those are; *où sera-ce* where will that (it) be? *vous l'aurez, n'est-ce pas* or: *n'est-ce pas que vous l'aurez?* you will have it, will you not? *minuit sonne* (*c'est minuit*) it is midnight (on the stroke of twelve); *quelle heure est-il? Il est minuit* what time is it? it is midnight; *de ces deux écrivains, je préfère celui-ci; celui-là;* of these two writers I prefer the latter; the former; (slang): *en voilà une bonne blague* or: *c'est une bonne blague* (*que*) *celle-là* that's a good hoax (joke); *ce que je crains, c'est de le froisser* (*blesser*) what I fear is to wound his feelings; *un homme de la sorte* a man of that kind; *de la sorte* in that way; *c'est un grand chef que Foch* Foch is a great leader; *c'est aujourd'hui le 1er; le 2 mai;* to-day is the 1st; the second of May; *il a tout ce qu'il désire* he has all he wishes; *c'est une heure qui sonne* (*une heure sonne*) it strikes one; *une demi-heure, une heure et demie* half an hour, an hour and a half.

§ 79. Conditional Present (*le Présent du Conditionnel*)

j'aurais			*tu aurais*
I would *or* should have			(thou wouldst *or* shouldst have) you would *or* should have
il aurait	*nous aurions*	*vous auriez*	*ils auraient*
he would have	we would have	you would, etc.	they would have

§ 80

Observe: It answers to the imperfect with *si* (if), expressed or understood:

would and *should* may be distinguished while studying *devoir*; *pouvoir*; *vouloir* and the Imperfect of habit (or Past or habit):

vous devriez le faire you should do it; *il pourrait le faire s'il avait le temps* he would be able to do it, if he had the time; *il ne voudrait pas y aller* he wouldn't care to go; *elle y allait souvent* she would often go there; *si je l'avais, il serait content* or *il serait content, si* etc., if I had it (should I have it; were I to have it; should I happen to have it) he would be glad; *je voudrais être riche* I should like to be rich *or* I wish I were etc.; (*si* if being understood); *mentir serait honteux* (*il serait honteux de mentir*) to lie would be shameful.

(*a*) **also in statements of indignation, surprise, supposition, concession, contingency and reports:**

je croyais qu'il l'aurait I thought he would have it; *il l'aurait, qu'il n'en serait pas content* he might have it, yet not be satisfied with it; *serait-ce possible* can that be! *lui, il les aurait* he would have them! *comme qui dirait* somewhere about; *je ne savais s'il l'aurait* I did not know whether he would have it; *cela serait-il vrai* were it (if it were) true? *on le dirait* it looks like it; one would say so; *quant à moi, quand même elle les aurait; quand bien même;* as for me, even if she had them; even if; *quand* (*alors qu'*) *il serait malade* even if he should be ill; *alors qu'il était malade* when he was ill; *comme si l'on disait* as if one would say; *par un décret de la Providence* as God would have it; *on remarquera peut-être alors qu'il y a eu un malentendu* perhaps it may be noticed then there was a misunderstanding.

(*b*) **with verbs of** *wishing;* **also** *oser* **(to dare);** *pouvoir* **and in a few exclamations or questions:**

je vous serais obligé I would be obliged to you; *oserais-je lui parler* could I dare to speak to him? *pourrais-je ne pas l'avoir* could I not have him (it)!

(*c*) **in mild statement, favor or threat;**

je ne saurais vous le dire I hardly know *or* I couldn't tell you; *auriez-vous la bonté de passer chez moi?* will you kindly call on me? *cf.: appeler* to call; *je voudrais bien l'acheter* I should like well to buy it; *qui (quiconque) l'aurait, serait puni* whoever might have it would be punished; *on m'a dit qu'il l'aurait* I was told he would have it; *on m'a dit qu'il l'aura* I was told he will get it.

(Future implies strong affirmation)

§ 81

quel (masculine singular)	*quelle* (feminine singular)
quels (masculine plural)	*quelles* (feminine plural)

Practice:

quelle maison a été incendiée? what house (whose house) was burnt?
which *or* what (a):

quel crayon a-t-il? what (which) pencil has he?
quelle plume a-t-il? what (which) pen has he?
quelle plume! what a pen!
quel beau jour! what a beautiful day! *Adjectives only.*

§ 82. Interrogative Pronouns (*Pronoms Interrogatifs*)

lequel	*lesquels*	*laquelle*	*lesquelles*
which (one)	which (ones)	which (one)	which (ones)
duquel	*desquels*	*de laquelle*	*desquelles*
of which (one)	of which (ones)	of which (one)	of which (ones)
auquel	*à laquelle*	*auxquels*	*auxquelles*
to which (one)	to which (one)	to which (ones)	to which (ones)

Note.—Compare *de qui* (of whom) used of persons and of *duquel*, etc., with prepositions; *dont* of whom; of which (*whose*) is most frequently employed; *dont* (from where, whence) replaces

d'où: from which; *or* whence; *où* (where) often means: to; in at which and the like.

voilà le pupitre sur lequel il a mis ses livres there is the desk upon which he put his books; *lequel?* which one? *lequel des deux est le plus studieux?* which one of the two is more studious? *l'homme dont il parle est son cousin* the man of whom he speaks is his cousin; *l'écureuil auquel il donne à manger* the squirrel to which he gives (something) or which he is feeding; *l'appartement où il demeure est petit* the apartment in which he lives is small; *l'hôtel où il va* the hotel to which he goes; *l'heure où* (*que*) *il expira* the hour at which (when) he expired; *les parents dont il est issu* the parents from whom he sprung (he was born); *l'hôtel dont le patron est M. X.* the hotel whose head is Mr. B.; *de qui est-il fils?* whose son is he? *parmi lesquels* among whom.

§ 83. **in the body of a sentence and in order to distinguish the number and gender of the person *or* thing spoken of, use:**

lequel, laquelle, etc.

les amies de ma femme, lesquelles sont Américaines the friends of my wife, who are American; *les enfants dont il a trouvé le père* the children whose father he found; *donnez-lui ce dont il a besoin* give him (her) what he needs (that of which he has need); *tout ce qui* (*que*) all that; everything that; *quoi* what; used alone or with prepositions, and refers to things only: *quoi de nouveau* what's new? *de quoi parlez-vous* what are you speaking of? *à quoi songez-vous* what are you dreaming of *or* about?

§ 84. Imperative Present *or* Future (*l'Impératif*)

aie have (thou) *ayons* let us have *ayez* have (you)
qu'il ait let him have *qu'ils aient* let them have

Forms borrowed from the Subjunctive:

aie patience be patient; *aie courage* be courageous; *ayez soin de lui* take care of him.

(*a*) **instead of the Present Indicative:**

ayez de la patience, il se moque de vous have patience (be patient) with him, he laughs at you, *or:* if you are patient with him, he laughs at you.

(*b*) **instead of the Subjunctive:**

ayez du chagrin ou non, cela lui est égal be sorrowful or not, it matters not to him (her); for: whether you may be in sorrow or not, it matters little (whether you are in sorrow, etc.).

(*c*) **the Imperative has no first person singular; the speaker in addressing himself may use the second or the first person plural:**

aie courage, Charles (*ayons courage, Charles*)*!* have courage, Charles.

(*d*) **supposition:**

ayez de l'envie, tout le monde en parle be envious, everybody speaks of it.

Exercice de Conversation:

les dames aux fils desquelles il donne des leçons the ladies to whose sons he gives lessons; *Dieu en qui je crois* God in whom I believe; *moi qui suis son frère* I who am his brother; *voilà qui est bizarre!* now that is strange! *lui qui est riche* he who is rich; *elle qui est pauvre* she who is poor; *celui qui est riche, n'est pas toujours heureux* he (any one; one) who is rich, is not always happy; *c'est vous qui l'avez* you have it (it is you who); *le lion qui rugit* the lion that (which) roars; *c'est ce dont il se plaint* that's what he complains of; *à qui est cette maison* whose house is this, whose house is that? *c'est celle de mon oncle* it is my uncle's (that of); *c'est la dame dont le fils est malade* she is (it is) the lady whose son is ill; *celle dont j'ai connu le fils à* the one whose son I knew at; *une somme, en vertu de laquelle* a sum in virtue of which *or* by which; *un acte par lequel il s'engage à* an act by which he binds himself to; *à l'heure qu'il est* at the present time; *rien de ce qu'il dit est vrai* nothing that he says is true; *le printemps prochain* (*qui viendra*) the next Spring (the coming Spring); *celle qu'il aime* the one he loves (she whom he loves); *le couteau dont je me sers* the knife I use; of which I make use; *se servir de* to use; *d'où venez-vous* where do you come from? *ce à quoi je songeais* something I thought of; *ce à quoi je ne songeais guère* something I hardly thought of; *à quoi passe-t-il ses soirées* how does he spend his evenings? *ce dont* (*ce de quoi*) *nous parlions* what we were speaking of; *à propos de quoi* in reference (with respect) to what? *ce en quoi il se trompe* he is mistaken in that *or* therein he is mistaken; *au nombre desquels* among etc.; *sur quoi il se tut* whereupon he kept silent; *sur ce, il sortit* thereupon he went out.

LESSON IX

§ 85. SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT *or* FUTURE (*Le Présent du Subjonctif*):

que j'aie	*que tu aies*, etc.
(that) I may have	(that) you may have, etc.
qu'il ait	*que nous ayons*
(that) he may have	(that) we may have, etc.
que vous ayez	*qu'ils aient*
(that) you may have	(that) they may have, etc.

NOTE.—These forms are variously translated into English. Study carefully:

§ 86. RULE.—As the name implies this tense is used in subordinate, depending clauses; hence subjected to a principal (main) clause:

1. **After principal clauses implying** *will, order, fear, desire, request, approval, doubt, strong wish, expectation;*

il veut (*ordonne*) *que je l'aie* he commands that I should have it *or* he wishes me to have it; *maintenant ou à l'avenir* now or in the future.

§ 87. Also in the subordinate clause there is an idea of the present or the future when the first verb is in the present or the future (tense); the following example implies an idea of the past,—in the subordinate clause:

il doute que nous l'ayons eu he doubts that we have had it; he doubts that we ever had it; *il doutera que nous l'ayons eu* he will doubt that we had it; *cf.: je commande mon dîner* I am ordering my dinner; *je commande à Jean d'apporter le café* I am ordering John to bring the coffee; *je ne demande qu'une chose* I ask but one thing; *c'est de réfléchir à ce que vous dites* to think over what you say; *j'y réfléchirai* I shall think about it; *ça* (*cela*) *demande de la réflexion* that requires reflection; *on fait de sérieuses réflexions* we (they, etc.) are seriously thinking (about it); *ça:* is colloquial: *ça demande tout* that (thing) fellow asks for everything; *quels sont ces gens-là* who are those people (men)? *or:* what kind of people are those (over there)? *voyez donc ça!* just look at that! *comme ça dévore!* how ravenously they eat! How they devour! *quels gloutons* (gluttons)!

2. **Idea of uncertainty with Subjunctive; idea of certainty with Indicative:**

on doute que cela soit one doubts if it is so; *je doute qu'il veuille le faire* I doubt whether he will do it (: he may be willing to do that); *je ne crois pas qu'il l'ait* I do not believe (that) he has it; but: *il ne croit pas qu'elle l'a* (Indicative) he does not believe she has it; *elle crut qu'un glaive la transperçait* she thought a blade (sword) was piercing her body; *je ne crois pas qu'il sorte ce matin* I do not believe he is going out this morning; *je ne crois pas qu'il sorte ce soir* I do not believe he will go out this evening.

3. **In independent clauses with or without** *que* **(elliptical clauses):**

vive l'Amérique! long live America! (for: I hope that America may live long); *Dieu vous protège* (*garde*) God speed (protect) you; *qu'il l'ait ou non, peu m'importe* whether he has it or not, little matters to me; *puissé-je le revoir!* may I see him again!

Exercice de Conversation:

dites-moi quelle heure il est tell me what time it is; *une heure vient de sonner* it has just struck one; *je vais régler ma montre* (*mon chronomètre* I will set my watch (my chronometer); *une montre de précision* a timepiece; *une montre à répétition* a repeating-watch; (a repeater); *je recule l'aiguille* I move back the hand; *une horloge* a clock; *une pendule* a pendulum; *le cadran* face; *la chaîne de montre* the watch-chain; *il met sa montre à l'heure* he is setting his watch on time; *il est deux heures et quart* it is quarter past (after) two; *il est trois heures moins vingt* it is 20 minutes of three; *il est six heures et demie* half-past six; *une demi-heure* half an hour (and *demi* is invariable before the noun); for brevity we say: *1:30* one thirty; or: *une heure trente; à trois heures de l'après-midi, du soir* at three o'clock in the afternoon (evening); *du matin; de l'avant-midi;* in the morning (forenoon); *vers midi; vers les une heure;* about noon; about one; *il y a environ une heure de marche d'ici à* (*jusqu'à*) there is (it's) about an hour's walk from here to; *demander l'heure* to ask the time; *j'ai travaillé trois heures* I worked three hours.

1 *un*	7 *sept*	one two three four five six
2 *deux*	8 *huit*	seven eight nine ten eleven
3 *trois*	9 *neuf*	twelve (which is *midi* or *minuit*
4 *quatre*	10 *dix*	noon midnight)
5 *cinq*	11 *onze*	
6 *six*	12 *douze*	

douze heures means: 12 hours' duration *or* twelve long hours;

il est sorti vers les deux heures he went out about two o'clock; *c'est l'heure juste* it is the correct time; *l'heure précise* the correct time; *il vient à l'heure précise* he comes on the hour sharp; *ponctuel (-le)*; *retardataire*; punctual; tardy; *attardé; être en retard;* belated; to be late; *arriver tard* to arrive (come) late.

4. After verbs of emotion:

penser to think; *espérer* to hope being excepted unless the latter are used negatively, interrogatively; *craindre* to fear; *trembler* to tremble; *empêcher (de)* to prevent; *appréhender* to apprehend; *avoir peur* to be afraid; *redouter* to dread, usually take: *ne;* unless used negatively or interrogatively; *ne penses-tu pas qu'il y ait là-dessous une histoire?* don't you think that there is (a story) something behind it? *elle empêchera qu'il ne sorte* she will prevent him from going out; *il craint qu'il ne soit malade* he fears he is ill *or* may be ill; *une boîte de montre* a watch-case; *vous êtes loin de vous douter de ce qu'il a eu à souffrir (à endurer)* you are far from having a suspicion of what he had to suffer (endure); *horloger* watchmaker; *je ne pense pas qu'il soit à Paris* I do not think he is in Paris; *une breloque* a charm (trinket); *je pense qu'il est à New-York* I think he is in New York; *elle ne doute pas qu'il ne le fasse* she does not doubt but he will do it; *réparer* to repair; *il ne craint pas qu'ils entrent* he does not fear they will enter; *il remonte sa montre* he winds his watch; *il attache une breloque à sa chaîne d'argent* he fastens a charm to his silver watch-chain; *on fait, répare, vend des montres, des horloges, des pendules* we (they etc.) make, repair, sell watches, clocks, etc. *craignez-vous qu'il sorte* do you fear he will go out?

NOTE.—*Ne* may or may not be used (in a subordinate clause): *ne craignez-vous pas qu'il ne sorte (qu'il sorte)?* do you not fear he will go out (he may go out)?

In poetry *ne* is optional.

5. After most Impersonal Verbs: and with *que:*

il faut que it is necessary; *il est juste* it is fair; *il est bon* it is well; *il importe* it matters; *il est possible (impossible)* it is possible (impossible); *il est temps* it is time (that, for); *il convient (il est convenable)* it is suitable; *peu s'en faut* little is wanting; *il suffit* it suffices; *c'est dommage* it is a pity; *il vaut mieux* better, it is better, etc.

Also with (if) (*si . . . et que* (if):
il faut que nous ayons notre billet; il est nécessaire que; we must have our ticket; *il est important que* etc.: it is important that we should have our ticket; *si vous êtes à Paris et que votre cousin n'y soit pas* if you are in Paris and your cousin is not there; *que ferez-vous?* what will you do? *il n'y a rien qui tienne* nothing can hinder him; *résister à la tentation* to resist temptation; *il vaut mieux* or *vaut mieux que vous l'achetiez* you had better buy it; *il faut que ces imprimés soient affranchis* that printed matter must be pre-paid (post-paid); *un timbre-poste* a postage-stamp; *il lui semblait n'avoir jamais éprouvé cela de sa vie* it seemed to him that he had never experienced that before in his life; *de sorte que l'objet réparé soit comme neuf* so that the article repaired looks like a new one; *de sorte qu'il soit (réparé) à neuf* so that it will seem like new; *la réparation des enduits contre les murs (de plâtre)* repairing the walls with a coat of plaster.

6. **After Superlatives —except when *certainty* is implied:**

c'est le meilleur cigare que j'aie jamais fumé it is the best cigar I have ever smoked. But: *c'est la plus belle des fleurs qu'il a (il a la plus,* etc.) it is the most beautiful flower that he has (he has the most beautiful, etc.); *c est la meilleure preuve que je dis la vérité* that's the best testimony that I spoke the truth.

Same rule after:

le seul, la seule, les seuls, les seules, etc.
c'est le seul qui soit coupable he is the only one that is guilty
c'est la seule qui soit coupable she may be the only guilty one

7. **After *que* preceded by *soit:***

soit que vous l'ayez whether you have it; whether you may have it; *cf.: que vous l'ayez ou non* whether you may have it or not; *qu'il l'ait* let him have it; *qu'il les ait* let them have them.

Exercice de Conversation:

il est facile de faire cela to do that is easy; *c'est facile (c'est chose facile à faire)* it's easy (an easy thing to do; to be done); *il ne faut pas jurer qu'on ne le fera pas* we must not affirm that we will not do that; *il jure d'être là (d'y être)* he swears to be there *or:* that he will be there; *un des plus grands exploits qui soit (soient)* one of the greatest feats that have been; *on espère y aller* we (they, etc.) hope to go there: *on espère qu'il va mieux* we hope he is

better; *qu'il soit venu, je l'avoue* that he has come, I admit; *elle défend qu'on sorte* she forbids any one to go out; *on s'étonne qu'il ne soit pas ici* we are astonished that he isn't here (: that he should not be here); *le premier qui soit mort* the first who died; *c'est la seule personne à laquelle je me fie* he (she) is the only person that I trust; *je ne suis pas le premier qui l'ai dit* I am not the first person (one) who said so; *nous sommes tous présents; il n'y a personne qui ne soit venu;* we are all here; there is no one absent; *or:* there is no one who has not come; *il n'y a que lui pour les critiquer* (*qui puisse les critiquer*) he is the only one who criticizes them *or* able to criticize: who may criticize them; *s'il y avait un homme qui pût les trahir* if there were a man who might betray them.

8. **After adverbial clauses,—substantive, temporal, concessive, hypothetical, final, consecutive clauses and** *que;* **substantive clauses are those used as subject or object of a verb; adjectival clauses are used to qualify a noun; adverbial clauses used to qualify a verb either to limit or qualify the action whenever anticipation, contingency, time, purpose, result is implied:**

afin que in order that (so that); *à condition que* provided; on condition; *de peur que* lest (with *ne*); *de crainte que* for fear that (with *ne*); *en cas que* in case; *non que* not that; *bien que* although; *loin que* far from; *pour peu que* (*si peu que*) if ever so little that; *au cas que* (*en cas que*) in case; *sans que* unless; *supposé que* granting that (suppose); *encore que* (*bien que*) altho; *à moins que* unless (with *ne*) in strong affirmation; *malgré que* (*nonobstant*) notwithstanding; *pour peu que* however little; *si . . . que* (or: *quelque . . . que*) however . . . that; *tout . . . que* however; *pourvu que* provided; *quoique* although; *jusqu'à ce que* (or: *que* only) until; till; *qui que* whoever; *où qu'il ait* wherever he may have; *quoi que* whatever; *en attendant que* while; *quelque* (with an adjective) however.

NOTE.—*que* is often used alone for: *afin que; sans que; à moins que . . . ne; jusqu'à ce que.*

General Review for Conversation:

avant qu'il soit trop tard before it is too late; *avant de partir* before leaving (*avant que je parte*) etc.; *jusqu'à ce qu'il le trouve* until he finds him (it); *attendez qu'elle soit prête* (for: *jusqu'à ce qu'elle soit*) wait until she is ready; *jusqu'à ce qu'il arrive quelqu'un* until some one comes; *il tient à ce qu'il vienne* he is desirous to have

him come; *il ne tient pas à moi qu'elle ne vienne pas* her coming does not depend on me; *jusqu'à ce qu'arrivent les neveux* until the nephews arrive; *il fallait attendre que la patrouille eût passé* it was necessary to wait until the patrol had passed; *en attendant qu'une occasion se présente* while waiting for an opportunity (to come); *qui que vous soyez* whoever you may be; *où qu'il soit* or *en quelque lieu qu'il soit* wherever he may be (in whatever place he may be); *non qu'il soit orgueilleux* not that he is proud; *malgré qu'il travaille, il ne réussit pas* notwithstanding that he works, he does not succeed; *loin d'être généreux, il est porté (enclin) à économiser de plus en plus* far from being generous he is inclined to economize more and more; *libéral* liberal; *cf.: dans le cas où il viendrait (au cas où,* etc.) in case he comes (in case he should come); *sans que je le leur dise* without my telling it to them; *à moins que je ne sois malade* unless I am ill; *au cas qu'il soit occupé* in case he is busy; *quelque riche (tout riche que; si riche que) qu'il soit* however rich he may be; but: *tout riche qu'il est, il est avare* rich as he is, he is a miser.

Exercice de Conversation:

approchez que (pour que) je vous voie come near, that I may see you; *il travaille dur afin de réussir* he works hard so as to succeed; *elle peine (se donne du mal) afin que son fils réussisse* she toils that her son may succeed; *de peur que cela ne vous incommode* for fear it may trouble you; *déranger* to disturb; *quel que soit son pouvoir* whatever his power may be; *quelle que soit leur influence* however influential they are (may be); *pour peu que vous vous appliquiez* if only you apply yourself; yourselves; *pour peu qu'on leur donne* however little one may give them; *donnez-lui en tant soit peu* give (him) her ever so little; *supposé que cela soit* granting that that is so; *en supposant que (dans la supposition que)* supposing (it is so); *quelles que soient ses remontrances* whatever his remonstrance may be; *une réprimande* a rebuke; *on resta jusqu'à ce qu'il partît* we (they) stayed (remained) until he left; *c'est la seule nouvelle qu'on a reçue jusqu'à ce jour* the only news received to date; *qu'ils sortent sans délai (tout de suite)* let them go out without delay (at once); *faites-les entrer* let them come in; *quoique je doute qu'ils entrent* though I doubt they will come in.

Cinq voyelles, une consonne
En français composent mon nom;
Et je porte sur ma personne
De quoi l'écrire sans crayon. (Oiseau)

LESSON X

REVIEW CAREFULLY *pages* 116 to 143 and the following to page 173.

In French there are six *Moods* or manners of expressing an action, of implying a state of existence, viz.:

l'infinitif; l'indicatif; le conditionnel; l'impératif; le subjonctif et le participe.

§ 88. The Infinitive or Impersonal Mood may be used as a noun: (*a*) as subject; (*b*) as direct or indirect object; (*c*) as attribute; (*d*) in prepositional phrases. There is another Infinitive—an infinitive of narration, which is preceded by *de* to emphasize an idea translated in English by the Preterit: Past of immediate action.

§ 89. PRESENT INDICATIVE (*le Présent de l'Indicatif*). As previously stated there is in French only one form of expressing or indicating an action: *being done now;* of implying a state of being—*at the very moment one speaks.*

1. **Hence:** *j'ai* **or any other verb may mean** *a present action or feeling:*

il a sa leçon he has (is having) his lesson, etc.
elle a faim she is hungry
il est malade he is ill (has been ill, etc.)
depuis une heure since one o'clock; also:
depuis une heure for an hour (he is still ill)

2. **An undeniable fact:**

la lumière existe light exists

3. **a doubt—or positive meaning implied with:** *si* **(if) when followed or preceded by a principal clause in the Future tense:**

si j'ai le temps, je travaillerai or: *je travaillerai, si,* etc. if I have the time, I shall work; I shall work if, etc.; cf.: *s'il est malade, laissez-le seul* or: *puisque* since, as he is ill (if he is ill) leave him alone; *si* (whether) may imply doubt: *je ne sais s'il parle le français ou l'allemand* I do not know whether he speaks French or German; *s'il est gai, c'est qu'il a de l'argent* if he is cheerful,

it is because he has money; *le temps, c'est de l'argent* time is money; *il a si peu d'argent* he has so little money; *vous n'êtes point malade; mais si, mais si: je le suis* or: *si, je le suis;* you are not ill; why yes, indeed; yes, I am; *la maladie* illness; *le malade* patient.

4. **In narratives to enliven descriptions:**

le père, la mère, les enfants, tous prennent la fuite the father, the mother, the children, all take to flight; *à l'approche du bandit* at the approach of the bandit; *si je te propose ces démarches, c'est pour te procurer une satisfaction personnelle* if I suggest to you this step, it is to afford you personal satisfaction; *menacé de mort prochaine, on se précipite à la portière* threatened with imminent death, we (they) rush to the carriage-door; *un coupé s'arrête devant la porte latérale de* a brougham stops at the side door; cf.: *je viens de les voir* I just saw them; I have just seen them; *c'est elle que je viens de rencontrer* it was she whom I just met (immediate Past).

§ 90. Direct Interrogation: It requires the personal pronoun (subject) after the verb with hyphen; if the subject is a noun, the latter usually stands before the verb and is repeated as a pronoun after the verb: *ai-je? a-t-il? etc.*

l'homme est-il mortel? is man mortal? but: *est-ce que l'homme est mortel?* is man mortal?

A form required in the present indicative of:

partir to leave (depart); *parler* to speak;

and all monosyllabic verbs (in the first person singular) except:

avoir and *être; aller* to go; *devoir* to owe; *dire* to say (tell); *faire* to do (make); *pouvoir* to be able; *savoir* to know (how); *voir* to see.

§ 91. Imperfect of the Indicative (*l'Imparfait de l'Indicatif (descriptive tense)*.

1. **It describes a past not completed when something happened; as being in progress:**

il avait sa leçon, lorsque je suis entré he had his lesson (was having his, etc.), when I entered.

2. **A state of being; habit** *or* **permanent action:**

il était si triste à cette époque-là he was so sad then; *se trouver* to be (there); *nous avions nos leçons le lundi* we had (used to have; would have) our lessons on Mondays; *Napoléon avait du courage* Napoleon had courage; *on en avait souvent* we would often have some; *oh! cette nuit, Jean, que ne te trouvais-tu pas là* oh! John, why were you not there last night?

3. **Simultaneity—or two actions taking place together:**

quand nous avions notre leçon de français, vous aviez la vôtre when (whenever) we had our French lesson, you had yours

4. **After** *si* **(if)—with conditional meaning, and followed** *or* **preceded by the principal clause in the conditional:**

si vous aviez de l'argent, vous auriez ce violon or: *vous auriez ce violon, si vous* etc. if you had (should have; happened to have) any money, the money, etc.; you would have this violin, *or:* you would have, etc.

cf.: *si j'y allais!* suppose I go there! *or:* I had better go (a sudden decision); *si je l'achetais!* I had better buy it; suppose I buy it; *si je les voyais!* if I should see them! if I were to see them!

si **(whether) implying doubt may be used in all the tenses of the Indicative and Conditional:**

il ne sait si son frère parle, a parlé, parlera, aura parlé, avait parlé he does not know whether his brother speaks, spoke (has spoken), will speak, will have spoken, had spoken; *il ne savait si son frère parlait, parlerait,* etc. he did not know whether his brother was speaking, would speak, etc.

si **(if) implying a condition is not to be used with the Future** *or* **the Conditional:**

si j'étais de vous (*si j'étais que de vous*) if I were you; *s'il parle, elle parlera* if he speaks, she will; *or:* so will she; *s'il parlait, elle parlerait* if he should speak, should he speak, she would too; if he were to speak, she would also; (should he happen to, if he were to speak, she would also); *si elle avait parlé, il aurait parlé* had she spoken, so would he (have). Note that in the last example we may use sometimes the Conditional Past (2nd form).

Exercice de Conversation:

on parlait souvent de lui we often spoke (would speak) of him; we used to speak of him (meaning what used to happen); *on se levait de bonne heure* we used to rise early; *de meilleure heure* earlier; *son père était médecin* his (her) father was a doctor; *il*

y avait une heure que j'attendais, lorsqu'il se présenta I had been waiting an hour, when he made an appearance; *attendre* to wait for; «*où sont les enfants?*» *fit* (*s'écria*) *le professeur* where are the children? said (exclaimed) the professor; (Past in narrative, indirect discourse): *on demanda au concierge où se trouvait M. X.* we inquired of the janitor where Mr. B. was; *on te le disait bien et cela depuis longtemps* we (they) kept telling it to you, and for a long time; *or:* we did tell you, and for a long while; *depuis quand l'aviez-vous, lorsqu'il le réclama* how long had you had it, when he claimed it; *depuis qu'il était maire de la ville, tout le monde l'admirait davantage* after he became mayor of the city, everybody admired him more; *voilà plus d'un an qu'on se le disait* we had been repeating it to one another for more than a year; *comme il se levait de table et qu'il s'avançait vers la fenêtre* as he rose from the table and advanced towards the window; *voilà, s'écria-t-il* (*s'écriait-il*) *la voiture qui m'attend!* "there," exclaimed he, "is the carriage waiting for me"; *voilà ce qu'il disait* that's what he was saying.

§ 92. Imperfect used sometimes in verbs of speaking or in quotations:

il entrait, dînait, se reposait he would enter, dine, rest; *les uns disaient: oui; les autres disaient: non* some would say: yes; others: no; *tous répondirent: oui* all answered: yes!

Note again: the Past (when used) is determined by an act viewed as in progress (Imperfect): habitual, lasting condition; in the way it is interpreted, in its relation to some other action (going on at the time another occurs); the Past Definite (Preterit) refers briefly and simply to an action in the past and in a general way (without further implication), while the Imperfect is (in our mind) a Present as if continuous and descriptive for what had been and still was (or Pluperfect in English): *ils y étaient depuis deux jours* they had been there for two days.

§ 93. PAST DEFINITE (*preterit, historical, narrative tense*) — *le passé défini*—expresses what happened in a definite period of time: or Past Absolute:

il eut alors une récompense he had then a reward; *il mourut, le 1er mai,* 1900; he died on the 1st of May, 1900.

NOTE.—In books it is used with: *hier* (yesterday); *la semaine passée* (*dernière*) last week; *le mois passé* the past month; *l'année dernière* last year; but *not* in conversation.

§ 94. Past Indefinite (*or*: Perfect; Conversational Tense) refers to a past action at a definite or indefinite period:

il a eu sa leçon à dix heures he had his lesson at ten; *elle a eu sa leçon* she had her lesson.

Note.—This tense is used instead of the (near) Future Past tense:

attendez-le; il a fini dans cinq minutes wait for him; he (will be through) will have finished within five minutes.

In few other cases: if you do not wish to be assertive, the Future Past is used: *il l'aura perdu* he may have lost it; perhaps he did lose it.

Various Examples:

il est arrivé ce matin he arrived this morning; *on s'est couché de bonne heure hier soir* we (they) went to bed early last night; *il a été aimé de tout le monde* everybody esteemed him; *il a été malade deux semaines* he was (has been) ill two weeks (he is no longer ill); *l'avez-vous acheté* did you buy it? *je l'ai acheté* I did.

Note.—Tense considered rather formal in letter and conversation in English, while the French prefer it to the Past Definite, either in speaking of general facts, or of recent events:

il y a eu deux personnes de tuées two persons were killed (there have been two persons killed); *Richelieu a fondé l'Académie française* Richelieu founded the French Academy: the French Academy was founded by Richelieu (Passive Voice often avoided in French).

A. Thierry a dit de lui: «Tout ce qui était possible en fait d'amélioration sociale au temps de Richelieu fut exécuté par cet homme, dont l'intelligence comprenait tout, dont le génie pratique n'omettait rien, qui allait de l'ensemble aux détails, de l'idée à l'action avec une merveilleuse habileté; il eut à un degré unique l'universalité et la liberté d'esprit.»

§ 95. Past Anterior refers to an act accomplished *immediately* before another:

quand (*après que*) *il eut lu le journal, il sortit* after he had read the paper, he went out; *à peine eut-il reçu la lettre qu'il y répondit* scarcely had he received the letter than he answered it; *répondre* (*à*) to answer; to reply to; *la réponse* (answer).

§ 96. COMPARE the Pluperfect (both answer to the English Pluperfect):

il était sorti quand vous êtes venu he was out (he had gone out) when you came, *or* vice-versa; *lorsque j'avais eu ma leçon, je sortais* (whenever I had had) when I had my lesson, I used to go out (would go out) etc.

Observe: In some cases this tense is replaced by the Past Indefinite:

j'ai lu avec plaisir que vous n'avez pas été longtemps malade I read with pleasure you had not been ill long.

§ 97. PLUPERFECT generally used with the Imperfect: *quand il avait eu sa leçon, il sortait* when he had had his lesson, he would go out.

si (if) **with the Pluperfect instead of the Conditional Past:**

si vous aviez fait cette question, je vous aurais répondu if you had asked that question, I would have replied to you; for: *si vous eussiez fait*, etc.; it was customary to end (our task): *on avait toujours terminé nos devoirs avant le dîner* our exercises were always over before dinner (-time).

§ 98. FUTURE (absolute and simple):

ils ont des yeux et ne verront pas; ils ont des oreilles, ils n'entendront pas they have eyes and see not; they have ears and hear not.

Exercice de Conversation:

elle avait grandi depuis qu'on ne l'avait vue she had grown since we saw her; *elle disait que oui* she said: yes; *il parla les yeux baissés* he spoke with downcast eyes; *on ne le fera pas; ni moi non plus;* they will not do it; neither shall I (nor I either); *ni lui non plus* neither he; *qu'était devenu son frère?* what had become of his brother? *il est à souhaiter que la guerre d'Europe se termine (finisse) le plus tôt possible* it is desirable that the European war will soon end; *vous sortirez, n'est-ce pas? n'est-ce pas que vous sortirez?* you will go out, will you not? *ceux qui riront pleureront* those who laugh will weep; *peut-être un jour même ces souvenirs auront pour vous des charmes* perhaps some day these remembrances may delight you.

Observe: This tense denotes simply an act to be done; use *will* or *shall* with verb expressed or understood.

j'aurai ma leçon demain, n'est-ce pas? I shall have my lesson to-morrow; shall I not? *or: n'est-ce pas que j'aurai ma leçon demain? si* yes; *jusqu'où ne monterai-je* to what height may I not ascend? *monter* to go up; *comme vous voudrez* as you please; *fais ce que tu pourras* do what you can; *voulez-vous?* is to be distinguished from *aurez-vous? vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas?* you will come, will you not? *je viendrai* I shall (*for:* I shall come).

Instead of the Imperative:

(*ne tue point* do not kill; *for:*) *tu ne tueras point* thou shalt not kill; *que ne dira-t-on pas?* what may we not say? cf.: *elle ne veut point y aller* she *will* not go there; *elle n'ira pas demain, mais après-demain* she will not go to-morrow, but after to-morrow; the day after; *ce gamin passe souvent ses soirées dans les rues* this street-urchin often spends his evenings in the streets; *voulez-vous m'accompagner chez moi?* will you accompany me to my house (home)? *il veut que je vous le dise* he wishes me to tell it to you (that I should tell it to you); *savez-vous s'il ira* do you know whether he will go? *toutes les personnes présentes voudront bien s'asseoir* all present will kindly be seated; *il aura agi sans doute d'après les formalités requises* he has no doubt acted according to the required formalities.

§ 99. FUTURE PAST (ANTERIOR) corresponds to the same English tense and refers to what will have happened; also to denote possibility, conjecture, etc.:

il aura fini à six heures he will have finished at six o'clock; *quand il sera parti, on partira* after he has left, we shall leave (we shall leave after he does); *il aura bientôt terminé* (*fini*) he will soon have finished; *il l'aura perdu* (in simple conjecture) he may have lost it; perhaps he did lose it; *elle aura écrit sa lettre, quand vous terminerez la vôtre* she will have written her letter when you end yours; *il espère que vous n'aurez pas travaillé trop dur* he hopes you have not worked too hard.

§ 100. TWO FUTURE ANTERIORS in one sentence, one of which has a subordinate clause with *si*:

quand (*même*) *vous aurez gagné des millions, vous n'aurez point mérité de confiance, si vous n'êtes pas honnête* even if you have earned millions, you will deserve no confidence, if you are dishonest. Cf.: § 101, 1.

Exercice de Conversation:

recueillir le fruit de son travail to reap the fruit of one's labor; *vous recueillerez ce que vous aurez semé* you will reap what you have sown; *il aura dissipé son bien* he may have squandered his property (fortune); *on espère qu'il viendra* we hope he may come (it is to be hoped etc.); *qui le volera sera puni* whoever steals it (him) will be punished; *ce sera demain le trois mai* to-morrow will be the third of May; *il sera devenu plus riche que Jean* he must have become richer than John; *il se sera levé avant nous* he must have risen before us; *il aura été estimé de tout le monde* he must have been esteemed by all; *il se sera trompé de rue* he must have taken the wrong street (he must have made a mistake); *si je ne me trompe pas* if I mistake not; if I am not mistaken; *dès qu'il m'aura payé, je vous le ferai savoir* as soon as he has paid me, I shall inform you (let you know); *personne ne saura si elle sera venue* no one will know whether she has come.

§ 101. CONDITIONAL (PRESENT) (*le présent du conditionnel*) depends on a condition implied or stated (with *would* or *should* as auxiliaries) and answers to a past as the Future to a present; it is translated into English by *would* or *should* expressed or understood; *cf.: should* with *devoir* implies duty; *would* with *vouloir* implies volition; *would* (in the Imperfect of past habit) to be distinguished from *would* and *should* in the Conditional tense.

j'aurais, etc. I would *or* should have, etc.; *il voudrait être riche (s'il le pouvait)* he wished he were rich (if he could); *elle aurait sa leçon, si elle n'était pas malade* she would have her lesson, if she were not ill; or: *si elle n'était pas malade, elle*, etc.; *le feriez-vous* would you do that (it)? *je le ferais* I would; *si j'avais le temps* if I had the time; *on serait heureux, s'il se rétablissait* we shall be glad if he recovers; *il pourrait vous le dire* he could tell it to you; *je voudrais être riche* I wish I were rich; *si je le pouvais* if I could; *il vint comme on pensait qu'il le ferait* he came as it was anticipated that he would; *il lisait du matin au soir* he would read from morning till night (Past of habit).

1. after *si* (if); *quand* (*bien*) *même* (even if); also in subordinate clauses when a verb of the principal clause in one of the Past tenses and there is no doubt:

quand même il me le dirait, je ne le croirais pas even if he should tell it to me, I would not believe him; *on croyait qu'il viendrait* we (they; people) thought he would come; *elle voulait voir s'il irait* she wished to see if (whether) he would go.

2. **in advice, supposition, astonishment, indignation, hearsay:**

il vaudrait mieux que vous l'ayez better for you to have it; *on dirait qu'il est mort* one would think he is dead; *lui! trahir son serment! (lui, il trahirait son,* etc.!) he would betray his oath! *porter du bois à une forêt ne serait pas plus insensé* it is carrying coals to Newcastle; *on m'a dit qu'il se rétablirait* I was told (they told me) he would recover; *on m'a dit d'entrer* I was told I could enter; or: *on m'a dit que je pouvais entrer; on m'a défendu d'entrer* I was forbidden to enter; *c'est à ne pas y croire* one would not believe it; *autant dire* you might as well say; *je me demande ce que j'aimerais mieux qu'il soit (murmura la mère)* I wonder what is the best thing for him to be.

Exercice de Conversation:

comme il achevait sa lettre, il s'aperçut que sa cigarette est éteinte as he was finishing his letter, he noticed that his cigarette was out; *il part dans un instant* he will leave in a moment; *il était nuit noire quand il arriva chez lui* it was pitch dark when he reached home; *rien ne l'ébranlera, je vous en avertis* nothing will move him, I warn you (tell you beforehand); *elle sera sortie dès qu'elle aura achevé sa lettre* she must have gone out as soon as she had finished her letter; *il ne me répond pas; me serais-je trompé?* he does not answer me; is it possible that I may be mistaken? *il venait d'être élu président* he had just been elected president; *à quoi lui auraient servi ses conseils? ils ne les auraient pas suivis* of what avail would have been his advice? he would not have followed it; *c'est là que, après sa mort (après qu'il sera mort) il reposera en terre* it is there where, after his death, he will be buried; *il les connaissait bien, et en parlait souvent* he knew them well, and would often speak of them; *si tu avais été témoin de son courage, tu ne parlerais pas comme ça* if you had witnessed his courage, you would not speak in that way; *cela ne sera jamais approuvé* that will never be approved; *cela ne serait jamais approuvé* that can (could) never be approved; *à ce que dit le journal du matin, le traité de paix serait conclu (selon le journal,* etc.) (by what) the morning paper says, a treaty of peace is concluded (according to the paper, etc.); cf.: *il serait en ville* he is in town; *quand je l'avais connu, il n'était*

pas ce qu'il est aujourd'hui when I knew him, he was not what he is to-day; *plus on le cherchait à travers les bois (la forêt), plus on se perdait* the more we looked for him through the woods (forest), the more we wandered (lost our way); *quand le voleur entrera, et qu'il sera temps de l'empoigner, je tirerai un coup de pistolet* when the thief enters, and the moment is favorable to arrest (grab) him, I shall fire a shot (fire off a pistol); *après qu'il fut sorti on consola la mère qui fondait en larmes* after he had left (gone), we (they) consoled the mother who burst into tears.

3. **to express a wish, an opinion reservedly; also in certain exclamations or questions:**

je vous en serais bien reconnaissant I should be very grateful to you (for it); *il vaudrait mieux le faire* better do it; *on ne saurait partager votre opinion* one could (cannot) not share your opinion; *il l'aurait qu'il n'en serait pas content* he would have it and yet not be satisfied with it; *serait-ce possible* could it be possible? can that be! *je ne saurais le lui dire* I could not tell it to him; *oserais-je lui parler!* how could I dare speak to him! *pourrais-je ne pas lui parler!* See § 80, (*b*).

§ 102

NOTE.—*would* and *should* more fully explained with: *vouloir, devoir, pouvoir* and *savoir* at §§ 128, 131, 113, 117, 80.

auriez-vous l'obligeance de me laisser passer? would you kindly allow me to pass? *il serait honteux de mentir (mentir serait honteux)* it would be shameful to lie! *en pareil cas* in such a case; *on s'étonne qu'il ne nous voie point* we are astonished that he should not (does not) see us; *si vous en goûtez (quand* or *après que vous en aurez goûté) vous ne voudrez plus manger d'autre chose* if you taste (try) it, you will never wish to eat any other kind; *quiconque (celui qui) en mangerait, en mourrait* whoever would eat of it, would die.

§ 103. CONDITIONAL PAST:

si j'avais eu la lettre, je l'aurais lue if I had had the letter, I would have read it; *s'il était venu, je serais venu* if he had come, I would have come; *s'il était aimé, il serait estimé* if he were liked, he would be esteemed; *si je m'étais levé à temps, je me serais habillé* if I had gotten up in time, I would have dressed myself; *o Fabricius! qui eût dit votre grande âme* O Fabricius! who could have imagined

your great soul? *il se serait donc fâché* he lost his temper (no doubt); *elle aurait perdu la tête* she lost her head (then!); *si vous eussiez parlé plus tôt!* if you had spoken sooner! *je comptais que vous seriez venu lundi* I expected you to come (on) Monday; *cela fût-il vrai, ce n'est pas bon à dire* or: *cela serait-il vrai, ce n'est pas, etc.* granting that it is true *or* even if that were true, it is not well to say it.

§ 104. NOTE.—The Second Form of the Conditional Past, cannot replace the First Form when there is no condition expressed; the Conditional Anterior has the same use as that of the Conditional: something would have happened, if, etc.; and is related to the simple Conditional just as the Future Perfect (Anterior) to the Future.

Exercice de Conversation:

avait-il de l'argent, il le dépensait (for *s'il avait*, etc.) if he had money he spent it; *il dépensait tout ce qu'il gagnait* he would spend all his earnings (all he earned); *un panier percé* a spendthrift; *de folles dépenses* extravagant expense; *il est dépensier* he is extravagant (he likes spending money); *il dépense plus qu'il ne gagne* he spends more than he earns; *elle n'oserait vivre aux dépens d'autrui* she wouldn't dare to live at the expense of others (at other people's expense); *voulait-elle de l'argent, sa mère lui en donnait fréquemment* if she wished for money, her mother often gave her some; *quel gaspillage!* what a waste! *elle est économe* she is saving (thrifty); *il faudrait faire des économies* we (you, etc.) ought to put by money (we should save); *plus il perdait son temps, plus il gaspillait* (*dissipait follement*) the more he wasted his time, the more he squandered away (spent extravagantly); *sans discernement* without discrimination; *sans réflexion* thoughtlessly; *sans réfléchir* without considering (seriously); *son bien, sa fortune* his wealth, his fortune; *les richesses du pays* the riches of the country; *le temps, c'est de l'argent* time is money; *on ne saurait trop profiter d'une occasion;* one cannot (could not) make too much of an opportunity; *on se moquait* (*on se riait*) *de ses largesses* they paid no heed to his liberality; *ce serait se moquer que de ne pas en tenir compte* it would be treating it slightingly not to take account of it; *il en revenait toujours là* he always persisted (harped on that same string).

§ 105. IMPERATIVE (*l'Impératif*) used in general as in English; in the 2nd person singular and in the 1st and 2nd persons in the plural:

parle speak (thou); *fais-le* do it (thou)

Observe: Verbs of the first conjugation take no *s* in *parle*, etc.; also in: *cueille; ouvre; offre; tressaille;* but the *s* is added to *parle; cueille*, etc., before *en* and *y:*

cueilles-en gather some; and *avoir, être, savoir, vouloir* borrow in the Imperative the forms of the Subjunctive: *aie; sois; sache; veuille* for: have; be; know; please.

1. **in a command this tense may imply present or future:**

parlez maintenant speak now; *partez demain* leave to-morrow.

2. **for want of the first person singular, the speaker may address himself by using the second person singular or first person plural:**

soyons sage, me dis-je (let us) be good, said I to myself; *rentre en toi-même, Jean* collect thy (your) thoughts, John.

3. **in suppositions:**

faites-le, on se moque de vous do it and people will laugh at you.

4. **Perfect Imperative seldom used:**

ayez fini votre travail quand je serai de retour have your work done when I am back (return); cf.: *finissez de parler* have done speaking.

§ 106. Few verbs as Interjections,—and as if to express a sudden surprise or turn of mind; as if to encourage, to incite:

allons, j'accepte very well, I accept; *allons donc!* nonsense! *tiens (tenez)! il est là* there! (why! hold!) look! he is here! *voyons, soyez sage* come! be good. See § 84.

LESSON XI

§ 107. PRACTICE with the personal pronouns when the Imperative is used *affirmatively:*

apporte-le-moi; apportez-la-moi bring it to me
apportez-les-nous bring (fetch) them to us
apportez-les-moi; apporte-les-moi bring them to me
apporte-le-lui; apporte-la-lui bring it to him (her)

apportez-le-lui; apportez-la-lui bring it to him (her)
apporte-les-lui; apportez-les-lui bring them to him (her)
apportez-le-leur; apporte-le-leur bring it to them
apportez-la-leur; apporte-la-leur bring it to them;
apportez-les-leur; apporte-les-leur bring them to them

moi becomes *m'* before: *en; lui* does not change; *y* precedes *en*

me le	*te le*	*nous le*	*vous le*
me la	*te la*	*nous la*	*vous la*
me les	*te les*	*nous les*	*vous les*
m'en	*m'y*	*nous en*	*lui en*
t'en	*t'y*	*vous en*	*leur en*
s'en	*s'y*	*lui en*	*y en*

Drill:

apporte-m'en; apportez-m'en bring me some; *ne m'en apporte(z) pas* do not bring me any; *apporte-lui-en* bring him (her) some; *ne lui en apportez pas* do not! *il s'en va* he is going (away); *apportez-leur-en* bring (fetch) them some; *portes-y-en* (*portes-en-là*) carry some there; *portez-y-en* (*portez-en-là*) carry some there; *n'y en portez pas* do not carry any; *portez-y-moi* (*portes-y-moi*): *portez-moi là* carry me; *portes-y-le* (*la*); *portez-y-la* (*le*) carry it (him); *portez-le là*; *portez-y là* take it (him) there; *portes-y-la* carry her (it) there; *portez-y nous* carry us there; or *portez-nous là*.

Reflexive verbs:

lève-toi; levez-vous get up
levons-nous let us rise (get up)
qu'il se lève let him rise (get up)
asseyez-vous sit down; *assieds-toi* sit down

§ 108. FINAL REVIEW of two possible pronouns after the verb:

le moi
la moi
les moi

with hyphens as above, although some prefer to omit the second hyphen.

la moi	*le nous*	*la nous*	*les nous*
les moi	*le lui*	*la lui*	*les lui*
	le leur	*la leur*	*les leur*
m'en	*nous en*	*nous y*	
t'en	*vous en*	*vous y*	
lui en	*leur en*		

Observe. Combinations of three forms like:
donnez-m'y en are to be avoided, and also in *conduisez-y moi* for: *conduisez-moi là.*

songez-y think of it; *fiez-vous y* trust him (confide in him); *va-t-en; allez-vous-en* go away; *je m'y fierai* for: *je me fierai à lui* I shall trust him; *l'y; t'y; m'y* are to be avoided.

§ 109. Two possible pronouns before the verb: *me le (l'); me la (l'); me les; te le (l'); te la (l'); te les;*

le lui; la lui; les lui	*se le(l'); se la(l'); se les*
m'en; t'en; s'en; l'en	*lui en; nous en; vous en*
m'y; t'y; s'y	*leur en*
nous y; vous y; leur y	*y en; les y*

je les ai vus, lui et elle I have seen him and her; *on en a parlé à lui, à vous et à moi* they spoke of it to him, to you and to me; *je lui ai parlé* I spoke to him (her).

§ 110. A few observations on the Imperative. The tone of voice differentiates command from simple wish:

tiens, écoute now, listen; *va pour un franc* I accept (at that rate): colloq.; let it go for a franc; *tiens! qu'il est drôle!* how funny he acts! *il est brutal, allez* he is a brute, I assure you; *qu'il ait; qu'il soit;* let him have; let him be; etc.; (in the Subjunctive Present) replace the third person lacking in the Imperative.

also in such expressions as:

riez, moquez-vous, approuvez, critiquez-moi, cela m'est égal laugh, make fun, approve, criticize, it is all the same to me; or: *que vous riiez, que vous vous moquiez,* etc. (in the Subjunctive), whether you laugh, make fun, etc.; *que vous sondiez le terrain ou non* whether you examine the ground or not; whether you see how matters stand.

but not in reference to threats (Subjunctive only):

que tu casses ce verre et que je le sache break that glass and should I be informed of it.

§ 111. Infinitives used instead of the Imperative at the end of circulars, letters or even in the body of a sentence as a request for the reader:

voir à la page dix (also: *voyez page dix*) see page 10; *s'adresser à* apply to; *prendre une cuillerée à thé* take a teaspoonful; for: *je vous prie de vous adresser à* or: *je vous engage à vous adresser à* I request you to: I beg of you to apply to.

Exercice de Conversation:

je vous en prie I beg of you; *implorer* to beseech; *l'enfant dit sa prière* the child is saying his prayer; *on fait la prière du soir* they (etc.) are having their evening prayer; *prière de faire parvenir cette lettre à* will you kindly see that this letter reaches M.; *on prie Dieu avec ferveur* we pray God fervently; *on les pria à dîner* we (they) invited them to dinner; *avec instance* earnestly; *de la part de M. X.* at the request of Mr. B.; *une demande indiscrète* an indiscreet question (request); *prière de ne pas cracher dans les tramways* please do not expectorate in the tramways; *une demande instante* urgent request; *instamment* urgently; *instamment* earnestly (urgently); *un tribunal de première instance qui siège au chef-lieu du 10e (dixième) arrondissement* Civil (Inferior) Court sitting at the headquarters of the 10th (tenth) precinct (district); *Paris a vingt (20) arrondissements* (precincts).

dis-moi (dites-moi) ce qu'il fait tell (do tell me) me what he is doing (what he does); *dites-lui ce que font ces amis* tell him (her) what his (her) friends are doing; *dis-moi où se trouve ton ami* (where your friend is); *ils se donnent la main* they shake hands; *elle donne la main à* she shakes hands with; *je vous serre la main* I shake your hand; *à l'instant même* at this very moment; *on me dérange à chaque instant* I am disturbed every moment; *je suis à vous dans un instant* I will be with you in a moment; *qu'il attende un instant* let him wait a minute; *on les attend d'un instant à l'autre* we expect them any minute; they are expected, etc.

LESSON XII

§ 112. SUBJUNCTIVE Present *or* Future: *le présent du subjonctif* fully illustrated and reviewed from § 121 on. Thus called: subjoined (subordinate, depending) because this tense is generally dependent upon another; it implies probability or uncer-

tainty; desirability or undesirability; in other words it is the mode of expectation, contingency, requirement and is introduced by *que:*

je ne crois pas (je doute) qu'il soit malade I do not believe he is ill (: that he is ill); *il est possible qu'il l'ait* he may have it (it is possible that he may have it); *il aura soin que vous ayez votre argent* he will see that you get (secure) your money.

Observe: The verb in the principal clause,—being in the Present or Future, is followed in the subordinate clause by a verb in the Subjunctive Present or Past, if one wishes to express a past action: *il est possible que vous ayez payé trop cher* you may have paid too much; *payer cher sa victoire* to pay dearly for one's victory; *il a payé sa visite cinq francs* he paid him five francs for his visit; colloq.: *il me le payera* I shall have my revenge; *payer d'ingratitude* to repay (reward) with ingratitude; *il agit personnellement* he acted in person; *continuellement* unceasingly; *il paya de sa personne* he took a risk (he was in the thick of the fray or battle); *on ne se paye pas de mots* words are insufficient (do not satisfy us); *il se paiera un complet* (full suit); he will treat himself to a suit; *un vêtement dont toutes les pièces sont de la même étoffe* a (full) suit composed of the same material.

§ 113

1. **after verbs implying doubt, will, supposition, mild affirmation, concession, preference, wish, forbidding and emotions** (fear, joy, sorrow, etc.):

j'entends que vous restiez ici I expect you to stay here; *il doute que cela soit* he doubts whether it be so; *je ne doute pas qu'il ne le fasse* I do not doubt that he will do that (it); *il n'y a pas le moindre doute* there isn't the least doubt; *le moindre d'entre nous* the lowest in rank among us; *le moindre bruit les effraie* the least noise frightens them (it takes little to etc.); *assurément; sans doute;* assuredly; no doubt; without doubt; *j'entends que l'on m'obéisse* I expect to be obeyed; *c'est mon intention que l'on m'obéisse* it is my intention that I shall be obeyed; *on entendait qu'aucune avance ne pût être consentie (autorisée)* it was intended that no preliminary steps should be allowed; *autoriser* to authorize; *autorisation,* authorization.

Note sequence of tense in the foregoing examples.

sérieusement seriously; *cette chose mérite qu'on y réfléchisse* this matter deserves that one should think it over; *que vouliez-vous qu'il fît contre trois?* what would you have had him do against three? *qu'il mourût* (Corneille) I should have had him die; *il est heureux (c'est un bonheur) qu'il l'ait rencontré* it is fortunate he should have met him; *il ne viendra jamais à l'idée de personne de croire que ce soient des bêtes* no one would ever imagine that they are animals; *il est douteux qu'on le fasse* it is doubtful whether it will be done; or: *il n'est pas certain que cela se fasse; il s'attend à ce qu'elle vienne* he expects that she will come; *il veut que je parte* he wants me to go; cf.: *il veut partir* he wants to go; *je veux bien qu'il parte* I am willing he should go; *il se peut qu'il soit malade* perhaps he is ill; he may be ill. But: *on ordonna que l'année commencerait le 1er Janvier* it was decreed that the year should begin on the first of January; *il est juste qu'il soit puni* it is fair he should be punished; *il désire qu'elle lise* he desires her to read; *on préfère que vous y alliez* one prefers that you should go there; *elle souhaite que vous réussissiez* she (strongly) wishes you to succeed; *il demande qu'un sauf-conduit lui soit obtenu à l'avenir* he asks that safe-conduct be accorded him in the future; *il demande ses passeports et les reçoit* he asks for his passport and receives it; *en cas de difficultés diplomatiques* in case of diplomatic difficulties; *un certificat délivré par* a certificate issued by; *la libre circulation des ambassadeurs accrédités auprès de* the free passage of accredited ambassadors; *on sollicite son départ* they request his departure; they enforce, etc.; *on a imposé son départ* his departure was enforced; *c'est un permis de voyager donné par* it is a permit to travel granted by; *on vous prie instamment de quitter le pays* you are urgently requested to leave the country; *tant à l'intérieur qu'à l'extérieur* in both countries; both in and outside of the country; *dans l'intérieur (du pays)* inland; in the interior. *il défendra que vous passiez* he will forbid you to pass; *on défendra que vous passiez* you will be forbidden to pass; cf.: *on vous défendra de passer* you will be prevented from passing; *on défend une attaque, un enfant, un accusé* we (they, people) defend an attack, a child, an accused person; *il se défend bien* he defends himself well; *la défense du faible* the defense of the weak; *défense de fumer* no smoking allowed; *le défenseur* the defender; the advocate; *il se tient sur la défensive (l'offensive)* he stands on the defensive (offensive); *le défendeur* the defendant; *le demandeur* the plaintiff; *défendable, indéfendable* defensible, not defensible; indefensible; *on admet que* it is admitted that; *il vous défie de*

trouver un journal qui puisse le défendre he defies you to find a newspaper that may defend him; *on défendra la France jusqu'à la dernière goutte* France will be defended to the last; *une goutte de sang* a drop of blood.

approuvez (*agréez que* or *souffrez que*) approve of (permit) or forbear; *j'exige que* I require that; *on permet qu'il entre* (*on lui permet d'entrer*) he is allowed to enter (go in); *on trouve naturel que; on consent que* we find it natural that; we consent that; *on s'oppose à ce qu'il entre* we oppose his entering; *dites-leur qu'ils s'apprêtent* tell them to make themselves ready.

§ 114

2. **after adjectives or various expressions (with: *être ; avoir*) referring to joy, sorrow, indignation, wonder, doubt and the like (with different subjects):**

je suis fâché qu'il se soit dérangé I am sorry that he should have disturbed himself; *il est content que vous ayez gagné le prix* he is glad that you should have won the prize; *on s'étonne que; on se réjouit que* we are astonished; we are glad that; *on craint que; on a peur que; on a honte que;* one fears; one fears; one is ashamed that.

§ 115

3. **after interrogative or negative verbs implying doubt, uncertainty, etc.:**

croyez-vous qu'il soit ici? do you believe he is here? *je ne pense pas qu'il soit arrivé* (*jusqu'à présent*) I do not think he has come (till now) *or* I do not think he has arrived; *je crois qu'il est ici* I believe he is here; *il ne croit pas que je l'ai* (certainty implied) he does not believe that I have it; *il n'y avait pas jusqu'au dentiste qui n'arrachât* the dentist was not the only one to pull, etc.; *si l'on soutient* (*affirme*) *que la chose soit vraie* if it is affirmed that it is so; *espérez-vous qu'il vienne?* do you hope he will come?

§ 116. and in fact after all verbs signifying: viewing, stating, perceiving, resulting, declaring, knowing, like *s'apercevoir* to perceive; *voir* to see:

être sûr (*certain*) negation
to be sure (certain)

s'imaginer
to imagine

se douter (de)
to suspect
se rappeler
to recall
déclarer
to declare
se souvenir (de)
to remember

§ 117

4. after the following verbs:—and *que:*

il faut (il est nécessaire: il est important) qu'il soit auprès du malade he must be near (beside) the patient *or* it is necessary (it is important) that he should be, etc.

il est bon — it is well
il est facile — it is easy
il est possible — it is possible

il est impossible
it is impossible
il semble (with doubt)
it seems
il convient
it is suitable
il est singulier
it is rare
il importe
it imports
il est à souhaiter (désirer)
it is desirable
or
il est naturel
it is natural
il n'est pas possible
it is not possible (impossible)
il est temps
it is time
il vaut mieux
it is better (: better)
il est singulier
it is singular
il se peut
it can be
à propos
fitting
il est indispensable
it is indispensable

and many others of similar or dissimilar import: all based on probability, doubt or uncertainty.

il n'est personne qui n'ait quelque qualité there is no one that may not have some merit; *comment se fait-il que personne n'y pense?* how is it that no one thinks of it? *il est bon de défendre sa religion* it is well to defend one's religion.

§ 118

But: the Indicative is used in the following:

il me (te; lui; leur) semble it seems to me (to you; to him; to her; to them)

il résulte
it ensues
il est certain
it is certain
il s'ensuit
it follows
il est évident
it is evident

toujours est-il que it is nevertheless true that
il m'est avis — *il lui est avis, etc.*
my opinion is — his (her) opinion is, etc.
il est vrai, sûr, incontestable it is sure, true
il est clair — *il est incontestable*
it is clear — it is demonstrated
il paraît d'ailleurs que c'est lui qui est coupable
it seems however that it is he who is guilty

Observe: Those same verbs used negatively would require the subordinate clause in the Subjunctive:
il ne lui semble pas que leur désir soit susceptible de it does not seem to him (her) that their desire is apt to (*or:* capable of) *or:* may assume.

§ 119

5. **in reference to verbs of** *will, supposition,* **use the Indicative in a subordinate clause if the matter questioned is very likely true:**

on suppose qu'il a fait son devoir they suppose (assume) that he has done his duty; *on prétend qu'il est vivant* they presume he is alive.

same remark applies to interrogative or negative verbs:

croyez-vous vraiment que j'ai cassé cette fenêtre? do you really believe I broke that window? *il ne croit pas que je suis là* he does not believe I am here.

§ 120

6. **always the Subjunctive after the following conjunctive clauses:**

à condition que provided; *avant que* before; *à moins que* (with *ne*) unless; *afin que* in order that; *bien que* although; *en cas que* in case; *de peur que* (with *ne*) and *de crainte que* (*ne*) for fear; *jusqu'à ce que* until; *encore que* although; *hors que* without; *loin que* far from its being the case; *malgré que* notwithstanding; *non que* not that; *pour que* so that; *pourvu que* provided; *quoique* although; *sans que* without; *quelque . . . que* however; *soit que* (*ou que*) whether; *si peu que* (*si . . . que*) or *pour peu que* however little; *supposé que* suppose (supposing).

NOTE.—*avant de; afin de; sans; de peur de;* are followed by the Infinitive; Subjunctive also after the following:

qui que whosoever; *quoi que* whatever; *quelque . . . que* whatever; *tout . . . que* however; *ce n'est pas que* but it is not.

§ 121

que may stand for: *sans que; bien que; jusqu'à ce que;* etc.; or *si* when followed by Subjunctive: *attendez qu'il vienne* (*jusqu'à ce qu'il*, etc.) wait till he comes; *si vous êtes absent et qu'il se présente, que dirais-je?* if you are away and he comes, what shall I say? *et que* is then equivalent to: *and if he*, etc., with the Subjunctive.

For Practice and General Review:

voulez-vous qu'il reste ou qu'il parte? do you wish him to stay or leave? *je préfère qu'elle s'en aille* I prefer to have her go away; *or* I prefer that she should go away; *pourquoi avoir honte qu'il le sache?* why be ashamed of his knowing it (to have him know it?); *il a honte de ne pas avoir réussi* (*d'avoir échoué*) he is ashamed of not having succeeded (of having failed); *de ce qu'il a échoué* that he failed; *évitez qu'il ne leur parle* avoid having him speak to them; *épargnez-leur cette peine* save them that trouble; *éviter un danger* to avoid a peril; *prenez garde que cela ne lui arrive* take care lest that happen to him; *cela empêchera qu'on n'aille avec eux* that will prevent our going with them; *empêcher de* to prevent from; *empêcher de sortir* to prevent from going out; *élever aucune objection* to raise no objection; *y donner son adhésion* to give one's consent; *s'il consent que cela se fasse, j'y donne mon adhésion* if he consents to that being done, I too consent; *on juge bon* (*louable; on approuve*) *qu'il s'abstienne de vin* we think his abstaining from wine is praiseworthy and we approve of it.

on se félicite (*on se réjouit, on se glorifie*) *d'avoir pris une telle résolution* we congratulate ourselves upon (we rejoice at; we take pride in) such a resolution; *on se félicite que vous nous honoriez de votre présence* we are pleased that you should honor us with, etc.; *pour que nous le complimentions sur son succès* so that we may compliment him upon his success; *juger à propos* to think fit; *désapprouver* to disapprove (of); *trouver juste, injuste, mauvais* to think it just (fair); unjust (unfair); to disapprove; *loin qu'il puisse être une question de vengeance* far from being any question of vengeance; *votre exercice est bon, ce n'est pas qu'il soit le meilleur* your exercise is good, but it is not the best.

quel que soit votre mérite, vous ne réussirez guère whatever your merit may be, you will hardly succeed; *qui que vous soyez* whoever you may be; *à quelque prix que ce soit* at any cost; *sans que l'on sache pourquoi* without knowing why; *sans que rien n'y manque*

everything being provided; *pour peu qu'il hésite* if he hesitates ever so little; *pour que les lettres puissent circuler à prix réduits* so that letters may circulate at reduced rates; *bien qu'il ne dise rien* although he says nothing; *loin que les meurtres diminuent, ils augmentent* far from decreasing, murders increase; *sans que cela change le sens* without changing its meaning; *changer de linge* to change linen; *des habits de rechange* spare clothes; *il en tient en réserve pour que d'autres articles semblables les remplacent au besoin* he keeps in store other similar articles to replace them when needed; *vous criez avant qu'on vous fasse mal* you shout before you are hurt; *tirer vengeance de* (*se venger de*) to avenge one's self (to wreak vengeance); *crier vengeance* to cry out vengeance; *ne respirer que* to breathe out but (to thirst after); *par vengeance* out of vengeance; *il tient à ce qu'ils se défendent* he insists that they should defend themselves; *vigoureusement* vigorously; *furieusement* with fury; *avec acharnement* desperately (unmercifully).

Exercice de Conversation:

ce n'est pas qu'elle le haïsse not that she hates him; *si lourde que soit la tâche, elle ne va pas jusqu'à les paralyser* however arduous the task may be, it does not make them powerless; *attaquer de paralysie* to have a paralytic stroke; *frappé de paralysie* stricken with paralysis; *son esprit est inerte* his mind is inactive; *il manque de force* it lacks strength; *sans ressort* without activity; *pas de force de caractère* no backbone; *pour réussir il faut qu'il fasse jouer tous les ressorts de son esprit* to succeed he has to employ every means at his disposal; his mental powers; *jusqu'à ce que cela soit fini* until that is over; *il n'a qu'à parler pour qu'on lui obéisse* to be obeyed he has but to say the word; *s'il est vrai* (*si tant est que*) *qu'il l'ait offensé* even suppose he did offend him (if it is true, etc.); *on n'ignore pas que vous avez menti* it is well known that you lied; *si vous niez que cela soit vrai* if you deny that that is true; *je ne nie pas que cela ne le soit* I do not deny that it is (so); *elle ne connaît qui que ce soit* she knows nobody at all; *qui que vous soyez* whoever you may be; *quel que soit votre mérite* whatever your merit; *quoi qu'on fasse, il trouve à redire* whatever we do, he finds fault; *soit qu'il fût présent, soit qu'il fût absent* whether he was present or absent; *quel dommage que le voleur se soit enfui* what a pity that the thief should have escaped! *or:* that he has escaped! *il ne paraît pas qu'il ait raison* it does not appear that he is right; *tout le monde se plaint de ce qu'il se trouve*

ici everybody laments his presence here; *l'ennemi eût bien mieux aimé que les Français eussent rendu les armes* the enemy would have much preferred to have the French surrender; *s'avouer vaincu* to confess one's defeat; *il s'avoue vaincu* he admits he is vanquished; *il est vrai que son ami flotte sans cesse d'une opinion à une autre* it is true that his friend wavers constantly from one opinion to another; *qu'un personnage aussi distingué qu'est M. X. soit méconnu, cela est incompréhensible* that a person so distinguished as Mr. B. should be unrecognized, is unexplainable; *un esprit flottant* he is inconstant; *on ne croirait pas qu'il eût agi ainsi* one would not believe that he would act in such a manner; *soit qu'on se reporte à tel ou tel document* whether we refer to this or that, etc.; *le vieillard se reporte aux jours de son enfance* the old gentleman looks back upon his days of childhood; *reporter une somme à* to bring (carry) a sum forward.

§ 122

General Review:

si peu que ce soit however little it may be; *sans que l'on s'en doute* without (any one) suspecting it; *on se doutait qu'il viendrait* we (they) suspected he would come; *pour que les bateaux n'en soient pas chargés* so that the boats may not be laden with them; *supposé que cela soit* granted it be so; *si tant est qu'il le puisse* supposing he can; if he can; *tant il y a que* (*tant y a que*) colloq.: for: *quoiqu'il en soit* at all events; *malgré tout cela* (*quoiqu'il en soit de tout cela*) in spite of all that (it's all very well, but); *quoique en dehors de la règle commune* although not within the ordinary rule.

NOTE.—*quoique* is apostrophized only before: *un* (*e*), *on; il; elle; quoique pas très gaie cette perspective l enchante* although not very inviting this perspective charms him; *quoique* or *quelle que soit la chose que* whatever the thing may be that; *quelque chose que je lui aie dite* whatever I may have said to him (her); *elle attend que son fils revienne* (*elle attend le retour de son fils*) she expects her son's return; *se rendre à* to go to; to repair to; *quoi que vous fassiez* (*vous avez beau faire*) whatever you (may) do *or* in vain you do; *si riche que l'on soit, il est bon de* however rich one may be, it is well to; *quoi que ce soit* or: *quelque chose que vous ayez promise* whatever you may have promised; *sans qu'il soit nécessaire de se donner beaucoup de peine* without (giving one's self) much trouble; *admettez* (*prenez*) *qu'elle n'ait rien dit* admit that she did not say anything; *sans qu'il s'en doute* without his suspecting it.

LESSON XIII

§ 123. Oral Drill based on the Indicative after:

au moment où tout fait présager qu'on doit réussir at the moment when everything presages success; *dès que* (from the very moment) *vous vous présenterez* as soon as you (will) make an appearance; *dès que vous voulez* since you wish; *aussitôt que* (*en même temps que*) *vous présentez votre note, vous touchez toujours votre argent* whenever you present your bill, you receive your money; *sitôt que* (*aussi promptement*) as soon as; *au moment même qu'il arriva* at the very moment he came; *aussitôt après son arrivée* immediately after his arrival; *dès qu'elles sont sincères* since they are sincere; *aussi bien que* as well as; *Jean aussi bien que Paul* John as well as Paul; *il est aussi instruit que vous* he is as well informed as you; *il est aussi imbécile* (*faible d'esprit*) *que son ami* he is as much an imbecile (weak-minded) as his friend; *on le dit; et moi aussi* so it is said; and I too; *lui aussi le dit* he also says it.

ainsi que (*de la manière que*) or: *comme; si c'est ainsi que la chose s'est passée* if it happened thus; *je vous la raconterai ainsi* (*telle*) *que je l'ai entendue* (*raconter*) I shall relate it as I heard it; *s'il en est ainsi* if such is the case; *cela s'est passé ainsi* (*tel*) *que je vous l'ai raconté* that occurred precisely (in the way) I told you; *ainsi va le monde* such is the world; *il en est ainsi de tout le monde* thus it is with everybody; *offrez les billets à mesure que les amis passeront* present the tickets as friends pass along; *défiler* to defile; to go by; to go past; *à proportion* proportionately; *à mesure qu'il reçoit tant, il dépense tant* in proportion to the amount received he spends; *au fur et à mesure* (*à fur et à mesure*) *qu'il dépense* in proportion as he spends *or* according to the amount spent; *successivement* (*l'un après l'autre*) in succession; one after the other; *attendu que* (*vu que*); *de la même manière;* considering; in as much as; in so far as; whereas; *on vous traitera de la même manière que vous aurez traité les autres* they will deal with you in the way you deal with others; *aussi loin que la vue s'étend* as far as the eye reaches; *tant que* as far as; as long as; *aussi longtemps qu'il vivra* as long as he lives; *il gagne autant que moi* he earns as much as I do; *autant de café que de thé* as much coffee as tea; *d'autant mieux* so much (all) the more (the better) [for it]; *une fois autant* as much again; *d'autant plus qu'il est avare* the more so because he is a miser; *cela diminuera ses dettes d'autant* that will make his debts so much the less.

Exercice de Conversation sur l'indicatif:

à la condition qu'il soit sage provided he is good; *durant que* while; *tant que durera le conflit* while the conflict lasts *or:* as long as; *de ce que vous dites* from what you say; *depuis que les progrès de la science ont démontré sa valeur* since the progress in science has demonstrated its merit; *on inscrit les noms à mesure qu'on les reçoit* names are inscribed as they are received; *de même que* in the same manner as; so as, as; *vu que (du moment que; puisque; étant considéré que);* considering, since, seeing that; *puisque* (since, in as much as); *puisque vous vous refusez à avouer ce que vous faisiez* since you refuse to confess what you were doing; *pendant qu'elle roule ses cheveux pour les friser* while she rolls up her hair to curl it; *tandis qu'elles tiennent à la branche* while they hang to (on) the branch; *d'autres se tiennent sous l'arbre* others stand under the tree.

peut-être qu'il y a une équivoque de sens perhaps there is ambiguity; *un double sens* double interpretation; *parce que l'on exécute une danse, au son de la musique* because they perform a dance to an accompaniment; *par ce que* judging from; from what; *sans doute qu'il possède un autographe* (*de*) no doubt he has an autograph in his possession; *peut-être vous attend-il* perhaps he is waiting for you; *lorsque* when; *quand la mort le surprit* when death overtook him; *outre cela* besides that; *outre que ce sont des preuves écrites* not only they are written proofs *or:* besides being written proofs; *tandis que* while (whilst); *au lieu que* while on the contrary (whereas). Observe: *tandis que* implies contrast;

NOTE.—*quand* (when) is used preferably in a general sense to *lorsque,* and refers to a future, an hypothetical idea; also in questions.

§ 124

selon que, suivant que according.

Observe: *de manière que* so that; *de sorte que; de façon que; en sorte que,* so that; *si ce n'est que* except; *tellement que* so that (to such an extent); *sinon que* unless, all are used in the Indicative (in the subordinate clause) when *certainty* is implied *or* with the Subjunctive when there is doubt.

Oral Drill:

faites en sorte (de telle sorte) que tout le monde soit content manage in such a way that everybody be pleased; *il fit de telle sorte que*

tout le monde était content he managed so that every one was pleased; *de quelque manière que ce soit* in any way whatever; *tâchez d'arriver à ce que vous joigniez les deux bouts* contrive to have both ends meet; *une combinaison* a contrivance; *quand il vient à pleuvoir, le vent s'apaise* when the rain comes, the wind abates; *pendant qu'il met* (*a*) *la main à la pâte* while he is at it; while he does the work himself: *du jour qu'il est parti* since the day he left; *à la condition qu'il ne demandera rien* provided he asks for nothing; *à la condition de servir à table* with the condition that you wait, etc.; *selon qu'il sera bon ou méchant* as he is good or bad; according to his merit or demerit; *selon qu'il vous a bien ou mal servi* according as he served you rightly or not; *de manière à être de niveau avec la surface de l'eau* so as to be on the level with the surface of the water; *suivant qu'elle se gonfle ou qu'elle se vide* in the way it is inflated or not; *vider une bouteille* to empty the contents of a bottle; *on vide une volaille* they clean a fowl; *vider un différend* to settle a dispute; *il vida la bouteille de vin* he drank the bottle of wine; *rien de grave ne se faisait qu'on ne les eût auparavant consultés* nothing important would be transacted before consulting them; *sauf qu'il agite légèrement la main* except move his hand slightly; *son estomac est vide* (*ne contient pas d'aliments*) his stomach is empty (contains no food); *sa mort fait un grand vide* his death makes a great void; *dégarni* empty: (left) bare; *le parloir est vide* the drawing-room has been emptied; *sans rien contenir* empty *or à vide* empty; *d'où l'on a tout enlevé* where everything has been removed; *puisque ce mot est vide de sens* since that word is devoid of meaning; *il perdit tellement* (*à tel point*) *qu'il revint les mains vides* he lost to such an extent that he came back with empty hands.

§ 125. SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE PRINCIPAL CLAUSE (*absolute subjunctive*) used in independent clauses with an idea of the Imperative Mood; also in certain forms of concessions; in imprecations with or without *que:*—

qu'il le veuille ou non whether he wishes it or not; *vaille que vaille* for better or worse; haphazard; *ainsi soit-il* amen; thus be it; *pas que je sache* not that I know; *je ne sache rien* I know nothing, etc.; *puissé-je réussir* may I succeed! *Dieu le veuille* please God.

NOTE.—Principally used in the substantive clauses with: *avoir; être; venir; advenir; garder; plaire; périr; savoir; vivre; vouloir.*

vive la République long live the Republic! *Dieu m'en garde* (*à Dieu ne plaise*) God forbid! *honni soit qui mal y pense* evil to him who evil thinks; *vienne le déluge!* after that the deluge! *advienne que pourra* come what may; *qui vive* who goes (is) there? or: sentinel's cry; *sur le qui-vive* on the alert; *dussé-je périr!* were I to perish! *soit!* or: *qu'il en soit ainsi* let it be so; *sauve qui peut* (*le sauve-qui-peut*) save himself who can; *fasse le ciel* God grant.

Various Examples (*exemples divers*):

passe encore pour cela let it pass; *soit dit entre nous* be it said among ourselves (between ourselves); *cela soit dit en passant* but that by the way; *Dieu vous assiste* (*que Dieu vous assiste*) may God assist you; as a threat: *qu'on ne vous y reprenne plus* don't do it again; *Dieu vous le rende* may God reward you; *grand bien vous fasse* much good may it do you; *qu'il n'en soit plus question* let us say no more about it; *que cela ne vous tourmente point* don't let that worry you; *que cela n'arrive plus* never do that again; *qu'à cela ne tienne* little matters.

NOTE.—You may often explain the above Subjunctives in parsing either by inverting or by expressing the verbs of *wishing*, etc., which are understood.

Exercice de Conversation:

que le hasard seul décide rely solely upon chance; *un jeu de hasard* game of chance; *qu'il compte sur* (or *s'abandonne au*) *le hasard* that he should count upon (trust to) fortune; *c'est beaucoup dire* that is saying much; *on s'expose à des pertes* (*à des revers*) we make ourselves liable to losses (reverses); *s'exposer au danger* to be exposed to danger; *qu'il expose ses peintures* let him exhibit his paintings; *exposer son système* to explain (to propound; to expound) one's system; *il expose sa vie tous les jours* he endangers his life every day; *leur appartement est un peu trop exposé au nord* their apartment is rather too much exposed to the north; *enfant abandonné* foundling; *s'exposer à la critique* to lay one's self open to criticism; *argent* (m.) *comptant* cash; *qu'il fasse un exposé des faits* let him draw up a statement based on facts; *les produits de presque tous les pays furent admis à l'Exposition de San Francisco* the products of most countries were admitted at the San Francisco Exposition; *quelle belle exposition de marchandises!* what a beautiful exhibit of merchandise! *quel opulent étalage* what an opulent display!

qu'on l'ait abandonné sur la place, c'est un fait constaté that he was abandoned in the square is a known fact; *le vitrier* the glazier; *les foires se tiennent annuellement à X.* the country-fairs are held annually at X.; *quel bel emplacement pour les bestiaux* what a fine location for cattle; *les Halles de Paris* Central Market in Paris; *une place publique* a public place; *le marché au poisson* the fish-market; *les mettre en vue* to place them in view; *qu'il exhibe son passeport* let him show (produce) his passport; *le vitrage* glazing; *belle exhibition de tableaux* a beautiful show of pictures; *un étalage d'objets qui intéressent le public* a display of articles which interest the public; *une vitrine* a show-window; *certains marchands étalent leurs marchandises sur la voie publique* certain merchants display their goods on the street; *le carreau de vitre* pane of glass; *on ne passe pas* no thoroughfare; *le vitrail* the stained glass window; *une porte vitrée* a glass door; *vitrer* to provide with glass.

§ 126. Certain Relative Pronouns or Conjunctive Adverbs: implying doubt, inclination; also when the principal clause refers to a general negation or the negation implies a negative answer, all require the Subjunctive:

indiquez-lui un livre qu'il puisse comprendre recommend him a book which he may understand; *je lui ai recommandé un livre qu'il peut comprendre* I did recommend him a book that he can understand; same rule after: *qui; le seul; la seule; les seuls qui; les seules qui; le premier qui; la première qui; les premiers qui; les premières qui.*

also: after Superlatives, except when the idea is absolutely true; the superlative, the numeral word, the negative, interrogative or conditional clause, adjectival clause being based on certainty:

envoyez-moi quelqu'un qui sache commander send me some one that knows how to order; *y a-t-il un endroit qui soit plus pittoresque que celui-ci* is there a spot more picturesque than this? *un site agréable* a pleasant site (scenery); *un paysage magnifique* a magnificent landscape; *il n'est rien qui vaille* nothing worth considering; *en est-il un parmi nous qui ne soit coupable?* is there one among us who is not guilty?

§ 127. *ne:* used when the principal clause implies negation;

y a-t-il un homme qui n'ait quelque mérite? is there a man who has not some merit? *il y a peu de personnes qui le sachent* not everybody knows it; few people know it; *peu de gens l'ignorent* few people are ignorant of it; *n'est-ce point elle qui m'a salué?* is it not she who greeted me? *c'est le meilleur cigare qu'il y ait dans cette boîte* it is the best cigar (there is) in the box; *de ces trois cigares, c'est le meilleur que vous avez* out of those three cigars you have the best; *c'est le seul serviteur que j'ai* he is the only servant I have; *il est seul coupable de ce crime* he is the only one guilty of that crime; *ne:* note again that *ne* comes after verbs of fear (and after comparisons of inequality *or* as above) unless used interrogatively, negatively, *or* followed by *de:*

prenez garde que vous ne tombiez take care not to fall; *prenez garde de tomber* take care, etc.; *gardez-vous bien de mentir* beware of lying; *à moins qu'il ne garde une poire pour la soif* unless he lays up something for a rainy day; *empêchez qu'il ne le fasse* prevent him from doing that; *de crainte qu'il ne soit malade* for fear that he may be ill (for fear of his being ill); *il craint qu'il ne soit absent* he fears he may be absent.

§ 128. General Rule and Final Review:—Subjunctive *or* Indicative:

Should you be certain, positive, use Indicative; *should* you be doubtful or uncertain, use Subjunctive. In other words: independently of the form and in accordance with the general rules, *ask* yourself if there is an underlying idea which affects the principal and the subordinate clauses.

Then: should what is expressed in a subordinate clause be certain, positive, use the verb of that clause in the indicative; *should* what is expressed in a subordinate clause be uncertain or: *purely probable*, use the verb in that clause in the Subjunctive.

= main clause with subordinate

= present or future with subjunctive present or past

= past tenses with subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect,
= imperfect (Subjunctive) often replaced;
= Conditional present with Subjunctive present or imperfect;

je ne pense pas qu'il sorte I do not think he will go out; *ne pensez pas qu'il sorte* do not think he will go out; *je ne pensais pas qu'il vînt* I did not think he would come; *je ne pensai pas qu'il vînt* I did not think he would come; *il a voulu qu'on vienne* (*soit venu*) he wished us to come; *quoique je ne pense pas qu'il sorte* though I do not think he will go out; *je ne penserai pas qu'il sorte* I shall not think he will go out; *quoique je pensasse qu'il vînt* though I thought he would come; *je ne penserais pas qu'il vînt* I should not think he would come; *quoiqu'il ait voulu* though he wished; though he has wished; *il avait voulu* (*il eut voulu; quoiqu'il eût voulu; il aurait voulu*) *qu'elle vînt* (or: *fût venue*) he had wished (he had wished; though he had wished; he should have wished) her to come.

§ 129

NOTE.—Few exceptional cases after verbs of saying, etc., where a Present Indicative, etc., may be followed by a Past Subjunctive or inversely:
on ne croyait pas qu'il y ait tant de monde we did not believe that there would be (are) so many people; (various examples p. 167, § 123) *on n'affirme point qu'ils eussent tort* we do not affirm they were wrong (sequence of tense depends mainly on the sense of the context): *je doute que les Grecs fussent tous des artistes* I doubt that all the Greeks were artists; *il n'y a point d'artiste qui pût l'égaler* he has no equal; no artist (there has been no artist) equal to him; *je voudrais qu'il vienne* I should like him to come; *Dieu nous a donné certains talents pour que nous nous en servions* God has given talents that we may make use of them.

LESSON XIV

§ 130. INFINITIVE (*l'infinitif*):

In general it stands as an equivalent to the English infinitive preceded by *to;* as an object of, or dependent on the verb the Infinitive may be preceded by *de* or *à;* or without any preposition. See § 133 to § 144.

The point to be emphasized is to determine when you have to use either proposition (*de* or *à*) before the Infinitive; *de* which is of more frequent use may be merely a *sign* of the Infinitive or may most commonly replace *to; of* or *from; on account of; in respect to; for*, in English.

Briefly stated it may be used as a verbal substantive,—expressing generally an action, but vaguely; as an object, predicate, prepositional phrase, etc. As a noun and with the article, possessive adjective; compare the Greek, Latin and French forms.

l'avoir, son avoir, mon avoir the credit, his (her) credit, my credit; *les vivres, le boire et le manger* food, drinking and eating; *le déjeuner, le dîner, le souper, le goûter* breakfast (lunch), dinner, supper, luncheon; *le devoir, le lever, le coucher* (*du soleil*) duty, rising, the setting (of the sun).

§ 131. The French Infinitive has a Present and a Perfect Tense: *lire* to read; *avoir lu* to have read. The Present Infinitive may correspond to the Indicative, Imperfect, Future and the Conditional,—as a subordinate clause.

il croit lire or *il croit qu'il lit* he believes he is reading; (the latter form is required when the subject refers to different persons); *il croyait lire* or *il croyait qu'il lisait* he thought he was reading; *il compte arriver* or *il compte qu'il arrivera* he expects to arrive; *il comptait arriver* (*il comptait qu'il arriverait*) he expected to arrive (. . . he would arrive); *elle comptait venir* (. . . *qu'elle viendrait*) she expected to come (she would come); *je pense* (*j'entends*) *partir* I expect to leave; *je crois commencer à vous comprendre* I believe I begin to understand you; *elle a cru devoir lui parler* or *elle a cru qu'elle ferait bien de lui parler* she thought she had better speak to him (she thought she would speak); *elle a cru qu'il lisait* she thought he was reading; *il croit de son devoir de le gronder* (*il croit qu'il est de son devoir de* etc.) he deems it a duty to scold him; *je veux le croire* it may be so!

§ 132. Perfect of the Infinitive corresponds to the Past (Perfect), Pluperfect, Future Anterior and the Conditional Past:

il croit avoir lu for:
il croit qu'il a lu he thinks he has read; *il aime la lecture* (*il aime à lire*) he likes to read (he is fond of reading).

NOTE.—Modal Auxiliary verbs with complement (or object): *devoir; vouloir; savoir; pouvoir; oser* and also: *faire; laisser* and several verbs with no preposition between them serve as a sort of auxiliaries; also as subject or in apposition; as predicate or logical subject; after a few Impersonal verbs; after certain verbs of desiring, intending, hoping and the like; and of declaring, believing, perceiving and in some relative clauses. Examples will illustrate rule under proper heading.

§ 133. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT:

lire, c'est travailler to read is to work; reading is working; *ce* stands as a repetition: *ce n'est point gentil de votre part de parler ainsi* (for: *parler ainsi n est point gentil*) to speak thus does not become you.

1. **in the latter case** *de* **may be omitted; and in a comparison** *de* **is required;**

vaut mieux se taire que de dire des sottises à ce monsieur better be silent than to say harsh things to that gentleman; *il vaudrait mieux se taire* better be silent.

2. **as a logical subject the infinitive is often anticipated and generally preceded by** *de* **(as an expletive):**

il est agréable de voyager (*voyager est agréable*) it is pleasant to travel (traveling is pleasant); *le plus sûr est de lui parler* the safest (way) is to speak to him (her); *il est inutile de répondre; lui répondre, c'est inutile;* it is useless to answer; to answer him is useless; *ne répondez pas* do not answer; *il fait bon pêcher en eau trouble* it is good fishing in troubled water; *c'est à lui à jouer* it is his turn to play; *c'est à vous de lui dire de ne pas jouer* it belongs to you to tell him not to play. See § 47.

historical infinitive; *de* after nouns, adjectives and verbs. § 139.

§ 134. INFINITIVE AS ATTRIBUTE:

jouer n'est pas travailler playing is not working.

and in such predicates as:

il semble se plaindre he seems to lament; *il est censé connaître la loi* he is supposed to know the law; *son premier devoir est d'être auprès de sa mère* his (her) first duty is to be with his (her) mother.

***de* in predicate uses is replaced by *à* when the infinitive has the force of a predicate adjective or is rendered by *to be* (plus the adjective or past participle):**

il est facile de faire cela to do that is easy; *c'est facile à faire* that is easy to do (to be done); *ils sont à plaindre* they are to be pitied.

§ 135. Infinitive as Direct Object:

il veut entrer he wishes to enter;

faire (and its various uses and meanings): when followed by *faire* or any other verb,—is translated by: *to cause* or *have* and the object:

je ferai entrer le monsieur I shall have the gentleman enter (I shall cause him to come in); *elle fera faire une robe* she will have a gown made.

***Faire* with a reflexive verb (and the latter losing: *se* or *nous, etc.*):**

je lui ferai rappeler (not *se rappeler*) I shall have him (her) remember.

Note.—*lui; leur* (with *faire*) only used when the following verb has a direct object; otherwise: *le; la; les.*

je le ferai venir chez vous I shall have him come to your house; *je lui ferai parvenir cette lettre* I shall have that letter sent to him; *j'ai fait boire un verre de lait à cet enfant* (*je lui ai fait boire*, etc.) I gave (I caused that child to drink, etc.) that child a glass of milk; *je le lui ferai boire* I shall make him drink it; with a few more uses and under its proper heading (Irregular Verbs).

§ 136. Illustrative Sentences with *de:*

il est charmé de vous voir he is glad to see you; *il s'abstint de boire* he abstained from drinking; *il se réjouit de les voir* he rejoices at seeing them; *elle a envie de pleurer* she feels like crying; (and many other such expressions made from verb with noun): *il a honte de* he is ashamed of; *il a besoin de* (*il est dans la nécessité de*) *se servir de lui* he needs to make use of him; *il importe peu d'y aller: il est de peu d'importance de* (*il est peu d'importance de*, etc., or: *cela est de peu de conséquence*), it imports little to go there

(it is of little importance; of little consequence to, etc.); *il n'est pas digne d'être récompensé* (*il est indigne de, etc.*) he is not worthy of being rewarded (he is unworthy of, etc.); *il s'agit de se comporter en homme d'honneur* (*il est question de*) it is a question of behaving like a man of honor; *il se repent d'avoir mal agi* he repents having acted badly; *il se mêle des affaires* (*il s'ingère dans les*) he mixes in the affairs of; *on a résolu de; venir de; on vous dispense de l'accompagner* you are excused from accompanying him; (*on trouve bon que* and Subj.): *on trouve bon que vous ne l'accompagniez pas* it is found advisable that you should not accompany him; *il s'exempte de ce travail* (*il se soustrait à l'obligation de*) he avoids this work (he exempts himself from the obligation of).

§ 137. Infinitive as Indirect Object:

tu cherches à plaire you are trying to please; *il tâche de se faire aimer* or *il cherche à se faire aimer* he strives to make himself liked; *cf.: tâchons de lui plaire* let us endeavor to please him; *efforçons-nous de* (*faisons tous nos efforts pour*) let us make every effort to; *vous êtes allé* (*allée*) *chercher le médecin* you went for the doctor; *une chambre à louer* a room to rent (to be rented); *utile à savoir* useful to know.

here the infinitive is used attributively *or* **predicatively after** *être;* **also as a sort of compound noun (like an ordinary noun of characteristic).**

une salle à manger a (one) dining-room; *un verre à vin* a wine-glass; *une salle de spectacle* play-house; *un verre de vin* a glass of wine; *c'est une chose facile à faire.*

Remark.—If used with a preposition and in a subordinate clause the infinitive must refer to some word,—either as subject (expressed or understood) or direct and indirect object:

on travaille pour vivre we (people) work to live (*i. e.*, the desire for living makes us work).

ambiguity in the following:

on le chassa sans savoir pourquoi they expelled him without knowing why. Better say: *il fut chassé sans savoir pourquoi; cela va sans dire* (*sans qu'on le dise*) of course.

§ 138. Infinitive Clause mostly with:

laisser to allow
voir to see
sentir to feel
entendre to hear
écouter to listen
penser to think

and in common combination:

aller chercher to go for (to go and fetch); *envoyer chercher* to send for; *venir chercher* to come for; and other constructions: *voir faire; faire voir; je vais le voir* I will see him; *il a pensé mourir* he was on the point of dying; *écoutez-le chanter* listen to him singing; *je le vois venir* (*je le vois qui vient*) I see him coming; *il a failli tomber* he came within an ace of falling; *il a beau parler* in vain he speaks; *nous sommes allés le trouver* we went to find him; *il a été le trouver* he has been to find him.

§ 139. ABSOLUTE INFINITIVE in independent propositions (clauses):

que faire what am I (are we, etc.) to do? *que dire?* what am I going to say?

and in narrative infinitive:

et les hommes d'applaudir! and the men applauded!

and in imperative clauses:

voir page cinq see page five; for: *vous êtes prié* (*e*) *de voir à la page cinq* you are referred to page five.

Exercice de Conversation:

il aime à taquiner he is a great tease; *j'aime mieux le vin que la bière* I like wine better than beer; *je préfère le vin à la bière* I prefer wine to beer; *n'aimeriez-vous pas d'y aller?* wouldn't you like to go there? *on dit l'avoir vu* he is said to have been seen; *il souhaite pouvoir réussir* he (strongly) wishes to be able to succeed; *on espère l'attraper* they hope to catch him; *je vous assure* (*affirme; avoue; déclare;* etc.) *ne les avoir jamais vus* I declare (assert; confess; state) that I never saw them; *il nie être complice* he denies that he is an accomplice; *elle nie qu'il soit coupable* she denies that he is guilty; *je ne nie pas que la chose ne soit pas possible* or: *soit possible* I do not deny that it may be possible; *autant ne pas le faire* might as well not do it; *il doit* (*il est tenu de*) *payer* he owes (he has to pay); *il est tenu à cela* (*est obligé à cela*) he is held responsible *or:* he is bound to that; *il a laissé tomber son chapeau* he let his hat fall (he dropped his hat); *on entend sonner la cloche* we hear the bell ringing; *au moment où minuit a sonné* on the stroke of twelve (P.M.); *un appartement au midi* apartment with southern exposure; *ne trouvez-vous pas que ce chien est vilain?* don't you think this dog is ugly? *enfin! les voilà qui viennent*

at last! here they are coming; *traverser* to cross; *on a vu le voleur traverser* (*qui traversait*) *la rue* the thief was seen crossing the street; *s'il venait à faillir* if he happened to fail; *prétendre* to claim; to assume; *si je prétends avoir raison* if I claim to be right (if I do claim, etc.); *que j'ai échoué, c'est clair* that I should have failed is clear; *c'est l'évidence même* it is self-evident.

§ 140. INFINITIVE in subordinate clause used (as previously explained) for: *que* and the verb,—when the subject is the same:

il pense réussir for: *il pense qu'il réussira* he thinks he will succeed.

and when the subject is different:

il croit le moment favorable arriver or: *il croit que le moment favorable approche* he believes the favorable moment is approaching.

NOTE.—Sometimes the different subject is inverted when the infinitive is a neuter verb or used as such:

il a écouté chanter cet enfant he listened to that child singing; *elle a fait venir le médecin* she sent for the doctor (physician): (she caused the physician to come).

§ 141. COMPARE THE INFINITIVE used alone (with a prepositional infinitive) or the Infinitive in a subordinate clause and as subject, object (direct or indirect). As an abstract noun:

il aime à lire (*il aime la lecture*) he likes to read (he is fond of reading); *vouloir, c'est pouvoir* willing is power *or:* where there is a will, there is a way.
and there is an idea of *action* implied in the infinitive but *not* in a noun; *que* as subject or object in dependent infinitives.

Oral Drill:

les paroles qu'il osait nier the words he dared to deny; *l'argent que l'oncle affirmait posséder, le possédait* the money the uncle maintained having, possessed him; *il a fait sortir l'homme* he made the man go out (he caused — to go out); *on fera disparaître les difficultés* we will cause the difficulties to be removed; *on fera aplanir les difficultés* difficulties will be smoothed; *il jure d'y être* he swears to be there; *il jure être innocent* he swears he is innocent; *il profère des jurements* he is profane; he blasphemes;

il fait un serment he takes an oath; *s'il a prêté serment de fidélité* if he took an oath of fidelity; *c'est une promesse solennelle sur laquelle il faut compter* a solemn promise upon which one must rely; *pourquoi hésiter?* why hesitate? *vous semblez hésiter* you seem to hesitate; *vous devriez trouver facilement ce que vous voulez dire ou faire* you ought to be able to express yourself easily *or* decide; *déposer un fardeau* to lay down a burden; *il déclare avoir déposé ses fonds chez ce banquier* he declares he did deposit his money at that banker's; *ce vin dépose beaucoup* that wine leaves a great deal of deposit; *se plaindre* to complain; *déposer une plainte* to lodge a complaint; *le témoin a fait une déposition* the witness has made a statement; *mettre en dépôt des marchandises*, etc., *à l'entrepôt* to have goods in the warehouse; *il est dépositaire de son argent* he is the trustee of her (his) money; *un dépôt de mendicité* poorhouse; *ce qu'un témoin dépose en justice* what a witness gives as evidence in Court; *un faux témoignage* (*un témoignage mensonger*) a false testimony; *véridique* veracious; *il est appelé en témoignage* he has been called to testify; *ce vin forme un dépôt* this wine leaves a sediment; *la lie* sediment; *dans les liqueurs fermentées* in fermented liquids; *la lie du peuple* the scum of the people; *la plus vile populace* (rabble) the lowest people; *on rend témoignage à sa probité* they bear witness to his honesty; *un témoignage d'amitié* or *un gage d'amitié* a mark *or* token of friendship; *en témoignage de quoi* in testimony whereof; *un faux serment* a false oath (swearing); *le printemps approche* (*c'est le printemps qui approche* or *devient proche*) spring is drawing near (is coming); *le vent est des plus favorables* the wind is most favorable; *les quatre saisons de l'année sont* the four seasons of the year are:

l'été	*l'automne*	*l'hiver*	*le printemps*
Summer	Autumn	Winter	Spring

les mois de l'année sont: the months of the year are:

janvier	*février*	*mars*	*avril*	*mai*
January	February	March	April	May
juin	*juillet*	*août*	*septembre*	*octobre*
June	July	August	September	October
novembre November			*décembre* December	

elles (*ils*) *se succèdent sans interruption* they succeed one another continuously; *l'une* (*l'un*) *succède à l'autre* one follows the other; *l'un vient après l'autre* one succeeds the other; *tout lui réussit* or *il réussit en tout* he is successful in everything; *sans cesse; sans interruption* unceasingly; continually; *constamment* (*toujours*) constantly.

§ 142. INFINITIVE *être* frequently omitted or the subject (agent) preceded by: *à; de; par*—:

on dit l'incendie à un kilomètre d'ici they say the fire is one kilometer from here.

Various Examples for Oral Drill and Conversation:

avez-vous entendu chanter cette chanson? have you heard any one sing that song? *il a entendu dire à son père qu'elle mourra* he heard his father say that she will die (soon); *il a vu son frère assassiné par un voleur* he saw his brother killed by a thief; *il a vu son frère assassiner par un voleur* he saw his brother being killed by a thief; *il m'a fait taire* he made me keep silent (here the reflexive pronoun is omitted): *cf.: une voix de fauvette, celle de Dorothy, faisait se retourner lady B.* (Bazin) a voice like a warbler, Dorothy's, caused Lady B. to turn around; (here *se* is used by a well-known writer); *elles eurent vite fait d'élever la voix* they soon raised their voices; *je le (la) fais chanter* I make him (her) sing; *je lui fais chanter ce morceau* I have him (her) sing that selection; *je ferai chanter cet hymne à M. X.* I shall have Mr. B. sing that hymn; *il vous fera bien parler* he will make you find a tongue; *ses créanciers l'on fait arrêter* his creditors had him arrested.

§ 143. FEW VERBS:—two in succession are linked without a preposition:

il va chanter he is going to sing; *or:* he will sing; *il a beau crier* in vain he cries; *elle désire vous voir* she wishes to see you; *laissez-le jouer* allow him to play; *voulez-vous venir* do you wish to (will you) come? *je dois travailler* I must work; *savez-vous parler français* can you speak French? *pouvez-vous marcher* are you able to (can you) walk? *il ose le répéter* he dares to repeat it; *quand comptez-vous partir?* when do you expect to leave? *je le vois revenir* I see him coming back (or returning). Other examples at § 80.

§ 144. IMPORTANT REMARK.—All prepositions: *à; de; sans; pour; après, etc.*, are followed by the infinitive; *en* alone requires the Present Participle:

après avoir lu after reading (after having read); *après sa lecture* after his (her) reading; *après s'être égaré* after having wandered; *on attend avant d'être introduit près de quelqu'un* we are expected

to wait before being shown in (one is . . .); *sans avoir pris ses précautions* without being prepared (unprepared); *en allant; tout en allant;* in going; while going.

General Practice and Final Review:

il est de retour he is back (he has returned); *êtes-vous sur votre retour?* are you about to return? *ils sont tous prêts à partir pour retourner* they are all ready to leave for their return; *a-t-il rendu vos livres?* has he given back your books? has he returned your books? *ce coupable fait un retour sur lui-même* (*de sérieuses réflexions sur*) this guilty person is reviewing his past or: is reflecting (upon) deeply; *elle est sur le retour* (*commence à vieillir*) she is past middle age; *le retour d'âge* change of life (declining years); *son amour n'est point payé de retour* unrequited love; *le retour du printemps* the return of the spring; *le renouvellement de l'année* the return of the New Year; *en retour de* (*récompense de*) in recompense (return) for; as a reward for; *il vaudrait mieux retourner le foin* it would be better to turn the hay; *il semble retourner un projet* (*l'examiner en tous sens*) he seems to examine the project in every aspect; *il se retourne* he looks around (back); *le bien retourne au premier propriétaire* the property reverts to the first owner; *il retourne à sa besogne* (*: se remet à*) he goes back to his work (resumes his, etc.); *il ne faut pas se retourner* (*regarder derrière soi*) one must not look back (behind); *elle désire retourner dans son pays* she wishes to go back to her country; *il n'a fait que retourner la méchanceté à son auteur* he made the mischief react upon the mischief-maker; *on a tourné et retourné l'accusé* (*le prévenu*) the accused (the prisoner) has been put through the third degree; *on l'a sondé* they examined him thoroughly; he was thoroughly examined.

il importe de retourner le sol (*remuer la terre*) it is necessary to prepare the ground (to till it); *le chien remue la queue* a dog wags his tail; *une girouette* a weathercock; *on lui a fait changé d'avis* (*on l'a retourné*) they made him change his opinion; they converted him to their side; *il a tourné casaque* he changed sides; *c'est dommage que l'éditeur lui ait retourné son manuscrit* it is a pity that the publisher should have (has) returned his (her) manuscript; *qu'il retourne ses cartes* let him turn up his cards; *elle retourne son paletot* she is turning her coat inside out; *il vient de retourner la salade* he just mixed the salad; *à son retour elle fit blanchir le linge* on her return she had the clothes washed;

il ne faut pas revenir sur ce qu'on a dit (. . . *pas changer d'opinion*) one must abide by what has been said (decided); *il fallut rebrousser chemin* (*retourner en arrière*) we (they; one) had to turn back; *les retours de la fortune* the vicissitudes of fortune; *les vicissitudes des affaires* the fluctuations of business; *sans retour* irrevocably; forever; irreparably; *il ne fait que de sortir* he only just went out; *il ne fait que sortir* he does nothing but go out; *il vient de sortir* he just went out.

and verbs implying belief, sentiment or emotion:

il prétendait être tombé du ciel he pretended to have fallen from heaven; *elle croit bien faire* she believes in acting rightly; *on aime mieux se reposer* we (they) prefer to rest; *j'irai la voir* I shall go and see her; *voici venir son frère* here is his (her) brother coming; *voici venir l'hiver* (*voici l'hiver qui approche*) winter is coming (at hand); *voilà qu'on m'appelle* now I am called.

LESSON XV

§ 145. PARTICIPLE IN GENERAL (*verbum infinitum* in its form): by its stem it partakes of a verb; by its inflection of an adjective; or it becomes a simple noun.
Present Participle called: *participe actif;*
Past Participle called: *participe passif;*

§ 146. PARTICIPIAL CLAUSE: thus called when its participial use is in an apparently isolated, independent statement:

le printemps venu, il partit Spring having come, he left
Dieu aidant, vous réussirez God helping, you will succeed.

Observe: When the Past Participle is used as an adjective (qualifying the subject) *there is* no participial clause:

l'enfant poussé par ses camarades tomba dans le vice
the child influenced by his comrades became addicted to vice.

Oral Drill:

en passant du linge au bleu putting clothes (washing) through bluing water; *en se rinçant la bouche* while rinsing his mouth; *sans entamer sa suprématie artistique et littéraire* without attacking

his artistic and literary supremacy; *en prenant de l'huile d'olives* taking olive oil; *en achetant une botte d'asperges* on buying a bunch (bundle) of asparagus; *une chaussure de cuir* a leather shoe; *en dévidant du fil* while reeling off thread; or *en mettant en écheveau* winding into skeins; *en laissant retomber le fusil* in letting the gun fall (drop); *en voyant revenir le capitaine* on seeing the captain return; *en se pendant à une branche d'arbre* while hanging himself to the branch of a tree; *on suspend un tableau* (*au mur*) we hang a picture on the wall; *être roué de coups* to be soundly thrashed; *en bourrant le fusil* in ramming home the charge; *en enroulant le fil sur des bobines* in winding thread on bobbins; *en se perchant sur l'arbre* while perching on the tree.

en bourrant sa pipe in filling his pipe; *il est honteux de l'avoir maltraité* he is ashamed of having ill-treated him; *on l'a bourré de coups* they gave him a sound thrashing; *on le bourre de grec* they cram him with Greek; *à quoi bon bourrer ce fauteuil* (*rembourrer*)*?* what's the use of stuffing that arm-chair (upholster); *en le garnissant de crin, de bourre,* etc., in filling it with hair (woolen or cotton refuse).

§ 147. Participle Referring to the subject and the object of a verb,—direct or indirect object:—

toutes les villes soumises sont la proie du vainqueur all the surrendered cities are at the mercy of the conqueror; *faut-il vous rappeler cet ingrat* (*qui est*) *mort?* is it necessary to recall to you that ingrate now dead? *tout en vous saluant, je vous présente mes amitiés* while greeting you, I offer you my best regards.

Note.—A pleonasm: *les élèves une fois entrés* (*-ées*) *il les rappela à leur devoir* the pupils having entered, he reminded them of their duty.

§ 148. The Gerund (resembling the Present Participle) is used with: *en; tout en—*

en faisant (*en train de faire*) in doing (busy doing); *tout en faisant* while doing (making); *c'est en forgeant qu'on devient forgeron* practice makes perfect; *la forge* blacksmith's shop; *chemin faisant, je ramassai la bourse* on my way I picked up the purse; *au milieu du chemin* in the middle of the road; *en me promenant* while walking; *en fumant sa pipe* smoking his pipe; *en voyageant* (*pendant mon voyage*) while traveling; during my travel; *je le vis* I saw him (it); *en voyage* traveling (journeying abroad).

NOTE.—The ending *-ing* (in English) is frequently used in the Present Indicative and Imperfect; as a verb the present participle implying action is invariable and may have an object (direct) or be used with *ne* (negation) and *en* (preposition):

il a vu des hommes errant (qui erraient) dans les campagnes he saw men wandering (who were wandering) in the country; *j'ai vu une mère consolant son fils* I saw a mother consoling her son; *ne voulant point vous déranger, je suis parti* not wishing to disturb you, I left (set out).

with adverbs:

causant ensemble (women) chattering together; *en se promenant tranquillement* while walking free from care; *se balader* to saunter (wander about idly); *sans but* without aim or purpose; *flâner* to loiter; *en promenant l'enfant* in taking out the child for an airing; a drive; *en promenant ses regards sur l'auditoire* glancing at the audience; *en l'envisageant* while looking at him (in the face); *en le dévisageant* while looking (staring) at him; staring him out of countenance; *en ne s'étonnant de rien* not being surprised at anything; *de l'abîme* of the abyss; *étant (se trouvant) sur le bord du précipice* being on the (edge) brink of a precipice; *ne subsistant que de pain* living only on bread; *aucune ruine ne subsistant* complete destruction (nothing left); no ruin left; *un moteur fonctionnant à l'aide du vent* a motor operated by the wind; *pendant qu'il était en chemin* while on his way; *en proférant des plaintes amères* in making bitter complaints; *en amenant une erreur (sur son compte)* while bringing about a mistake (also: about him, her); *revenant sur une erreur commise dans son compte* correcting an error made in his account.

Oral Drill:

amener un incident to bring about (carry out) an incident; *porter* to take; to carry; *la guerre amène bien des maux* war brings on many evils; *en occasionnant beaucoup de fatigue* causing much fatigue; *des maladies* (bring on) disease; *en attendant cette occasion* while waiting for this opportunity; *amenez-le* bring him here; *emmenez-le* take him away (lead him away); *en apportant l'enfant* in bringing the child; *en élevant l'enfant* while bringing up the child; *élevant la voix* raising the voice; *en repassant (le linge)* while ironing; *en allant d'un lieu à l'autre* in going from one place to another; *en passant par cette ruelle* in passing through

this lane; (by-street); *tout en traversant la rue* while crossing the street; *en passant au tableau* in going to the blackboard; *ne tenant aucun compte de leur étourderie* overlooking their thoughtlessness; *en passant de la contrebande* while passing contraband; *on lui passe cette faute; on lui pardonne* we overlooked his mistake; we forgive him (we do, etc.).

§ 149. Specific Distinction:

un enfant obéissant bien a child that obeys well; *un enfant bien obéissant* a very obedient child; *des personnes pensant bien* persons who think (reason) well; *des personnes bien pensantes* right-minded people; *je la vois qui vient (je la vois venir)* I see her coming; *le cas échéant* if such should be the case.

Note.—In English the Present Participle is often used instead of the French relative clause.

soi-disant so-called; *une couleur variant du jaune pâle au rouge hyacinthe* a color varying from pale yellow to reddish brown; *ayant* having; *étant* being, are invariable.

§ 150. As Adjective and Implying a State of Being, the Present Participle varies:

ce sont des chagrins accablants such sorrows as those are overwhelming; *des poissons vivants* live fish; *la voiture d'un marchand ambulant* the cart (wagon) of an itinerant dealer; *une eau dormante* stagnant water; *une haine persévérante* an enduring hatred; *une douleur angoissante* a distressing pain; *une matière colorante bleue* a blue coloring matter; *les fusées éclairantes nous silhouettaient* the illuminating rockets silhouetted us; *ce sont des tribus errantes* they are nomads (wandering tribes); *les cendres encore fumantes* the still smouldering ashes; *le Mercredi des Cendres* Ash-Wednesday; *aimez-vous les couleurs voyantes ou tranchantes?* do you like gaudy or glaring colors? *couleurs éclatantes* brilliant colors; *les langues vivantes* the living languages; *personnes mourantes* dying persons.

§ 151. As Prepositions:

durant during	*pendant* during (while)
suivant according	*touchant* concerning
moyennant in consideration of	*nonobstant* notwithstanding

suivant le journal according to the newspaper.

§ 152. As Substantives:

le suivant; la suivante the next; *les vivants et les morts* the living and the dead; *en son vivant* during his (her) life; *ce fut un bon vivant* he was of a cheerful temperament; high liver; *un dessert à l'avenant du repas* a dessert in keeping with the repast; *un pliant* (*qui n'a ni bras ni dossier*) a folding-seat (which has no arms nor back); *les ayants cause* (*droit*) the claimants; *les allants et les venants* (the) goers and comers; *à tout venant* to the first comer; *ce sont des calmants* they are soothing remedies; *ce sont des arrivants* they are new comers; *cf.: séance tenante* during the sitting.

Practice (and with other prepositions):

il est malade depuis une semaine he has been ill a week; *durant l'hiver* during winter (time); *sa vie durant* or: *durant sa vie* during his lifetime; *on l'a surveillé pendant trois heures* he has been watched (for) three hours (long); *il s'absentera* (*pour*) *trois jours* he will be absent three days; *vous en avez pour une semaine* you have enough for a week; *dans une heure* in (after; within) an hour; *on a fait ce travail en une heure* that work has been done in one hour; *à partir de demain* from to-morrow (on); *dès ce matin; dès aujourd'hui* this very morning (day); *on commencera dès lundi* work will begin not later than Monday; *de deux à trois* two to three; *des chambres de trois* (*francs*) *jusqu'à vingt francs* rooms from three to (up to) twenty francs; *jusqu'à midi; jusqu'à Boston;* until noon; as far as Boston; *jusqu'ici* as far as here; hitherto; *dans la ville* in the city; *à l'école* at (to; in) school; *promenades dans Paris* (within Paris) trips through Paris; *il dîne en ville* he is dining out; *vers l'est; vers minuit;* towards the East; about midnight; *à peu près* or *environ six milles* about (nearly) six miles; *sur* on (upon); *au-dessus de,* etc., above; *envers son prochain* towards one's neighbor; *surtout dans les circonstances critiques* specially in critical circumstances; *dans de telles circonstances* under such circumstances; *sous la table* under (underneath) the table; *le lundi ou le mardi* on Monday(s) or Tuesday(s); *avant vous; devant vous;* before you; before (in front of).

§ 153

Note.—Prepositional locutions emphasized under each and every verb throughout the book; also idiomatic forms in both languages.

If doubtful you may inflect the present participle or not: *des tribus vivent errant* or *errantes dans les bois* tribes lead wandering lives *or* live as nomads in the forest; *une cour attenante à sa maison* court (yard) adjoining his house; *des bonbons fondants (dont l'intérieur est liquide)* liquid filled bonbons; *une table pliante* a folding table; *une poire fondante* a juicy pear; *les deux bords se touchant* the edges meet; *des billets correspondants aux numéros* tickets corresponding with the numbers; *bureau auxiliaire restant* (Sub-Post Office) where letters are to be called for; *poste restante* General Delivery; *spectacle payant* no free tickets; *rue passante* a much frequented street; *un billet d'invitation* an invitation card.

NOTE.—The ending *-ant*, strictly speaking, denoted originally a gerundive with *en* and was invariable; and the present participle or verbal adjective was inflected.

§ 154. ORTHOGRAPHY varying between few PRESENT PARTICIPLES and corresponding VERBAL ADJECTIVES or NOUNS:

adhérant: adhérent; adhering: adherent (adhesive to)
présidant: président; presiding: president
fabriquant: fabricant; manufacturing: manufacturer
fatiguant: fatigant; fatiguing: tiresome (fatiguing)
extravaguant: extravagant; talking wildly: extravagant (wild person)
affluant: affluent; flowing (into): affluent
convainquant: convaincant; convincing: conclusive
excellant: excellent; surpassing: excellent
différant: différent; differing: different
influant: influent; influencing: influent
négligeant: négligent; neglecting: negligent
suffoquant: suffocant; suffocating: choking
vaquant: vacant; being vacant (attending): vacant
intriguant: intrigant; intriguing: intriguer
divergeant: divergent; diverging: divergent
équivalant: équivalent; being equal to: equivalent
excédant: excédent; exceeding: overplus (or weight)
expédiant: expédient; despatching: expedient (shift)
précédant: précédent; preceding: precedent
résidant: résident; residing; resident
violant: violent; violating: violent

§ 155. *en* is generally repeated before each Participle:

ils sont venus en courant et en chantant they came running and singing; for emphasis

en (with: *aller* to go) may or may not be used:

une pente qui va en s'élevant graduellement a slope rising gradually; *le danger va croissant* (or: *en croissant*) danger increases; *généralement parlant* generally speaking; *donnant donnant* nothing for nothing; *il l'exerce à descendre la colline en galopant* he trains him to galop down hill.

Oral Drill: *on Prepositions:*

jusqu'au moment où il entra up to the moment when he entered; *depuis New-York jusqu'à Boston* from New York to Boston; *il n'est pas jusqu'à lui qui ne les déteste* he is not the only one who hates them; *il a critiqué jusqu'à son bienfaiteur* he even criticized his benefactor; *jusqu'à sa mère* even his (her) mother.

in rare cases: *jusques à quand* (*jusqu'à quand*) till when; how long? *jusqu'où; jusqu'ici;* how far? down to here; till now; *en temps opportun* in due time; *pas avant le dix mars* not until the tenth of March; *elle coud du matin au soir* she sews from morning till night; *de travers* obliquely; *un habit de tous les jours* an every day coat; *à travers; au travers de;* through; through (obstacles); *au travers de l'ennemi* through the enemy's lines; *à travers les champs* across the fields; *il entend de travers* he misconstrues (misunderstands); *il parle à tort et à travers* he talks at random; *les travers de la société* the follies (foibles) of society; *en forme de croix* crosswise; *des traverses de chemin de fer* railroad ties; *disposé en travers* placed (drawn) across; *une ligne transversale* intersecting line (lying; being across); *il a l'esprit de travers* cross-grained; *une traversée de voie* railroad intersecting line; *un embranchement* junction (of a railroad); *la bifurcation d'un chemin* the division of a road; *une aiguille; l'aiguilleur;* a switch; the switchman.

Voici un acrostiche fait sur Louis XIV par quelque solliciteur au gousset vide:

L *ouis est un héros sans peur et sans reproche;*
O *n désire le voir. Aussitôt qu'on l'approche*
U *n sentiment d'amour enflamme tous les cœurs.*
I *l ne trouve chez nous que des adorateurs.*
S *on image est partout, excepté dans ma poche.*

LESSON XVI

§ 156. PAST PARTICIPLE: one from the Latin—*urus* which is active; and the other—*dus* (somewhat) resembling the adjective or the noun. The Present Participle is active: *parlant.* The Past Participle,— passive also in Latin becomes active with French neuter (intransitive) *or* Reflexive verbs:

il est sorti he has gone out (he is out); *elle s'est blessée* she (has) wounded herself; *sorti* (*étant sorti*) having gone out; or: *-s; ies; sortie* (*étant sortie*) having gone out; *ayant blessé* having wounded; *s'étant blessé* (*-e); (-és; -ées*) having wounded himself; herself; themselves.

§ 157. with other verbs the Past Participle implies a state of being:

il est blessé; il est aimé, he is (has been) wounded; he is loved; *un hôtel* (*qui est*) *bien construit* a well-built hotel; *la maison est bâtie par MM. B. et Cie.* the house is (being) built by Messrs. B. and Co.

NOTE.—Here is a present participle which is (being) active. Other compound tenses of the active voice:
il a mangé he ate (he has eaten); *ayant chanté* having sung; after he had sung; after singing; after having sung; *étant allé* having gone (being gone), etc.

§ 158. without Auxiliary the Past Participle refers to a noun or pronoun; being used as an adjective it is inflected:

le talent récompensé talent rewarded; *les maisons détruites* houses destroyed; *que de portes ouvertes* how many doors have been opened (are open); *soirée priée* to invited persons (guests); *il est cité à l'ordre du jour* he has been publicly honored (mentioned) for his bravery; *pierre non gravée* ungraved stone; *fleurs odorantes disposées en grappes* fragrant flowers arranged in clusters.

§ 159. with: *de* the Participle refers to its complement:

elle est estimée de tout le monde everybody esteems her (she is esteemed by everybody); *c'est une danse emportée* a wild dance; *c'est une danse tumultueuse* a riotous dance; *une poignée de paille tortillée* a handful of twisted straw; *fonds alloués pour les sommes réellement dépensées* sums allotted for actual expenses; *maison détruite en grande partie par la tempête* a house partly destroyed by storm.

§ 160. with a pronoun:

on le dit parti he is said to have left; *ils la virent abattue* they saw her dejected; *elles couraient échevelées* they were running with disheveled hair; *il parla les yeux baissés* he spoke with downcast eyes; *ils sont pourvus d'un bénéfice* they are provided with special privileges (an allowance; pension, etc.).

§ 161. as a noun:

le blessé; les blessés the wounded; *le mort; la morte* the dead; *les sorties; la sortie;* exits; Commencement Day; *la rentrée* the re-entrance; *elles sorties, les messieurs sont partis* they (the ladies) being out, the gentlemen left; *il y a du parlé et du chanté* some of the lines are spoken, others are sung.

Oral Drill:

jusqu'à nouvel ordre until further notice; *par bonté* through kindness (out of kindness); *elle regarde par la fenêtre* she looks out of the window; *boire dans un verre* to drink out of a glass; *un sur cent* one out of a hundred; *le lustre suspendu au plafond* chandelier hanging from the ceiling; *il mérite d'être pendu* he deserves to be hanged; *il est accroché à une branche* he is caught on a branch; *pendu au plafond* hanging on the ceiling; *il appuie l'échelle contre le mur* he is resting the ladder against the wall; *il est parti pour affaires* he left on business; *d'aujourd'hui en huit, en quinze* in a week from to-day; two weeks from to-day; to *or* in:

en France	*en Amérique*	*en Russie*
in France	in America	in Russia
en Angleterre	*en Irlande*	*en Italie*
in England	in Ireland	in Italy

en Espagne	*en Suisse*	*en Suède*
in Spain	in Switzerland	in Sweden
en Norvège	*en Hollande*	*en Allemagne*
in Norway	in Holland	in Germany
en Ecosse	*en Chine*	*en Afrique*
in Scotland	in China	in Africa
en Australie	*en Turquie*	*en Océanie*
in Australia	in Turkey	in Oceania

or: *la France*, etc.; *l'Amérique du Nord, du Sud*
France, etc.; North America; South America
dans l'Afrique Centrale in Central Africa

but:	*au Danemark;*	*au Japon;*	*au Canada;*	*au Mexique*
(to)	in Denmark;	in Japan;	in Canada;	in Mexico
	au Portugal;	*au Brésil;*		*au Panama*
(to)	in Portugal;	in Brazil;		in Panama

NOTE.—All other countries,—not ending in *-e*, are masculine: *le Chili; le Pérou*, etc.

§ 162. AS PREPOSITIONS.—The Past Participle (being used as such) is invariable when—preceding the noun or sentence:

hormis (*hors* et *mis*) except; *attendu les événements* considering the events; *approuvé les résolutions* approved the resolutions; *ci-joint copie de votre résolution* or: *vous trouverez ci-joint, etc.*, herewith a copy of your act; *vous trouverez ci-incluse la* (*une*) *copie* please find enclosed copy, etc.

Observe: *ci-joint* and *ci-inclus* are invariable in the body of a sentence,—when no article or determining adjective precedes them.

certifié les signatures witnessed the signatures; *excepté mes frères* except my brothers; *mes frères exceptés* my brothers excepted; *ouï les témoins* heard the witnesses; *étant donné les circonstances* or: *eu égard aux etc.* (*en considération des etc.*) considering the circumstances; *passé huit heures on n'entre pas* after eight, no admittance; *sauf erreur* (*omission*) errors excepted; *sauf à changer* (*quitte à changer*) subject to correction; *deux francs y compris le vin* two francs with wine; two francs wine included; *non compris la bière* beer not included; *supposé les motifs* granted the motives; cf.: *à l'exception d'un seul* with the exception of only one; with but one exception; with one exception; with a single exception; *exempt de fautes* free from mistakes.

§ 163. PAST PARTICIPLE with *être*.—It is inflected in number and gender with the subject or pronoun to which it relates; *être* is often understood:

Marie-Antoinette, née à Vienne, mourut sur l'échafaud Marie-Antoinette, born in Vienna, died on the scaffold; *l'Amérique fut découverte par Christophe Colomb* America was discovered by Christopher Columbus; *grâces vous soient rendues* may thanks be given to you; *beaucoup sont appelés, peu sont élus* many are called, few are chosen; *partis le soir, ils arrivèrent le lendemain* having left in the evening they arrived the following day; *c'est ainsi que sont morts ses amis* thus have his friends died.

§ 164. PASSIVE VERBS.—They are always conjugated with *être*, expressed or understood in their simple tenses; and with two auxiliaries (*avoir*, *être*) in their compound tenses:

la porte est ouverte the door is open; *porte ouverte ou non, j'entre* whether the door is opened or not, I enter; *il est entré dans la chambre* he entered the room.

Oral Drill:

il est tombé par terre he fell on the ground; *il toucha l'objet du doigt* he touched the object with his finger; *à côté de* beside; *cela ne lui touche en rien* that does not affect him (her) in the least; *il me touche de près* he is a near relative of mine; *près de la table* near the table; *pour mieux voir cela, il faut que vous soyez auprès* to better see it you must stand close (by); *l'un à côté de l'autre* (*côte à côte*) side by side; *le long du mur* along the wall; *de tous côtés* on all sides; *parents du côté paternel* relatives on his father's side; *la chambre d'à côté* the adjoining room; *la porte latérale* the side door; *laisser de côté* to throw aside; *mettre de côté* (*en réserve*) to put aside; *du côté de la Bretagne* near (close by) Brittany; *dans le voisinage* in the neighborhood (vicinity); *du côté gauche* in the left side (on the left side); *un point de côté* a stitch in his side (*avoir*); *on se met de votre côté* they side with you; *voilà le côté de cette affaire* that's one aspect of that case; *le côté faible* the weak side; *de côté; à force de;* sideways; by dint of; *la côte* the rib; the shore (sea-coast); *une côtelette* a chop (cutlet); *à cause de son inimitié* on account of his enmity; *sans force* without power; *de force; par force;* by force; forcibly; *de vive force* by force

(*avec violence*); *de vive voix* by word of mouth; *à l'insu de* unknown to; *au lieu de* in lieu of; instead of; *au-delà de ses désirs* beyond his (her) wishes; *outre-mer* (*au delà des mers*) beyond the sea(s); *outre mesure* beyond measure or: *à l'excès; en temps et lieu* in due time; *chacun en son lieu* each one at his place.

§ 165. NEUTER VERBS. — A few of them take *être* in their compound tenses:

je suis allé (*e*) I went (I have gone); *tu es sorti* (*e*) you went out; *il est venu, revenu, devenu, parvenu* he came, came back, became, succeeded; *elle est rentrée* she came home (she is in); *ils sont descendus* they came down; *ils sont descendus à l'hôtel* they stopped at the hotel; they put up at, etc.; *nous sommes entrés* (*-ées*) *dans l'église* we entered the church; we have entered, etc.

vous êtes parti (*-ie*); ——(*-is; -ies*) you left
vous êtes arrivé (*-ée*); ——(*-és; -ées*) you arrived
vous êtes resté (*-ée*); ——(*-és; -ées*) you remained

ils sont nés they were born; *elles sont mortes* they are dead; they died; *ils sont morts* they died; they are dead; *elles sont retournées* they (have) returned.

Observe: Some neuter verbs are used transitively and take *avoir:*

ils ont sorti les enfants they took the children out; *elle a descendu les chaises* she took the chairs down; *elle a bien dormi* she slept well; *au bourg où je suis passé tantôt* in the hamlet I just went through.

§ 166. PAST PARTICIPLES of Passive and Neuter Verbs and those of the latter (conjugated with *être*) may be used without auxiliary:

une affaire entendue a matter (case) settled; also; agreed upon; *c'est une pomme tombée* it is a fallen apple; *une femme bien entendue* a woman well up in business; *arrivé à bon port* having come into harbor safely.

§ 167. IMPERSONAL VERBS (*not inflected*):

il est venu quelqu'un some one came; *il est venu deux dames* two ladies came; *il est arrivé des choses épouvantables* there occurred frightful things; *il y a eu une grande tempête* there was a great

storm; *un accroc* a hitch; *un accroc* a tear; *il est tombé de la neige* snow has fallen; *il est survenu une difficulté* a difficulty has arisen; *il est tombé la tête la première* he fell head foremost.

Oral Drill and Conversation:

écorce usitée contre la fièvre bark in use for fevers; *la femme est chargée de tous les travaux de ce ménage* the woman has charge of all the household duties; *mis dans la balance* weighed in the balance; *on le trouve trop léger* he has been found wanting; *trop léger* light-headed; too light; *à la légère* lightly; wantonly; thoughtlessly or: *inconsidérément; il est vêtu à la légère* he is lightly dressed; *étant blessé légèrement* (*sans gravité*) being slightly wounded; *il parle légèrement* (thoughtlessly); *une course effrénée* (*sans frein*) a mad race (unrestrained); *le papier brouillard sèche l'écriture* blotting paper dries ink; *un poisson recherché pour la délicatesse de sa chair* a fish in demand for (on account of) the delicacy of its meat; *la brouette sert à opérer de petits transports* the wheelbarrow is used for conveying small loads by hand; *la ligne droite* the straight line; *un tuyau de distribution* the feed-pipe; *un tuyau d'échappement* escape-pipe; *on vend toute espèce d'objets classés par rayons à prix fixe* they sell all sorts of articles classified by shelves and at one price (set price); *figures grossièrement dessinées* figures clumsily drawn; *c'est ce qui est arrivé* that's what happened; *on nous pousse brusquement* they are pushing us roughly; *il a le nez plat* (*écrasé*) he has a flat nose; *il est d'une aigreur de caractère* he is (so) peevish (and disagreeable)! *il vise d'un œil en fermant l'autre pour s'assurer si* he squints (aims with one eye while closing the other) to ascertain whether; *ils sont du même calibre* they are of the same caliber; *d'une constitution débile* having a frail constitution; *on se fait traîner par* they are drawn (along) by; dragged on the ground; *il ne naissait pas un prince sans que l'on fît des démonstrations* a prince was not born without demonstrations being made; *le calorifère* the radiator; *la bouche de chaleur* the register (heating apparatus); *est une ouverture au moyen de laquelle la chaleur se communique* (is an opening) through which the heated air is admitted or excluded; *il faut avant tout s'acquitter exactement de ce que l'on doit à* we must pay (off) exactly what we owe Mr. B. (first of all); *le rayon des chapeaux* or: *le comptoir des chapeaux* hat department; *donner son compte à la bonne* or: *la payer et la renvoyer* to send the maid from service *or:* to pay her and dismiss her; *en partageant les bénéfices* in sharing (dividing) the profits.

LESSON XVII

§ 168. PAST PARTICIPLE with *avoir* (or: *être* in the Reflexive Verbs). It never agrees with the *subject* and only with the direct object *preceding* the verb:

il a lu la lettre que vous avez lue he read the letter which you have read; *ce sont les livres qu'elle a eu à lire* those are the books (which) she had to read; *que de questions il a posées!* how many questions he asked! *combien d'examens avez-vous passés* how many examinations did you pass? *quelle plume a-t-il cassée?* which pen did he break? *elle a subi avec succès un examen de* she passed successfully an examination in; *ils se sont levés de bonne heure* they got up early; and note that *se* is the direct object and compare: *ils se sont écrit des lettres* or: *ils se sont écrit* they wrote letters to each other; they corresponded with one another; *elles se sont écrit* they wrote to each other; *voici les lettres qu'elles se sont écrites* here are the letters they wrote to each other.

1. after *combien de* **how much (many)**; *autant de* **as much (many)**; *que de* **how much (many)**; *plus de* **more**; *moins de* **less, etc., the Past Participle agrees with the noun following them;**
2. after *la foule de* **the multitude of**; *le peu de* **the little of**; *une nuée de* **a cloud of (a flock, a swarm), etc., the Past Participle may or may not agree:**

la foule d'esclaves que j'ai vue or *vus* the multitude of slaves I have seen. Emphasis on either: *foule* or *esclaves.*

3. **in a few gallicisms there is no agreement:**

je l'ai échappé belle! I had a narrow escape! *je l'ai manqué belle* (*l'* or *la* stands for: *occasion*) I did not avail myself of it.

4. **redundant past seldom used:**

je leur ai envoyé la lettre dès que je l'ai eu terminée I sent them the letter as soon as I had it finished; cf.: *nous les avons crus morts* we believed them dead; *il ne lui restait plus qu'à choisir* he had no choice left; there remained no more (for him) to choose from; *il en a (encore) de reste* he has some left; he has some more; *elle en est sortie résolue à les imiter* she came out (from the play) fully determined to imitate them; *il en a laissé quelques-uns* he left some (a few of them).

Oral Practice:

se sentant un peu fatiguée et voulant recouvrer ses forces (*reprendre ses forces*) *elle se retira de bonne heure* feeling somewhat tired and wishing to recuperate (to regain her strength) she went back home early; *se retirer à la campagne* to retire to the country; *il est retiré des affaires* (: *s'est retiré*) or: (*il ne s'en occupe plus*) he is retired from business (*or:* has retired) *or* he no longer attends to it; *les troupes se retirent* the withdrawal of (the) troops; *battre en retraite* to beat a retreat; *il mène une vie retirée* he leads a retired life; *on l'a retiré de l'école* he has been removed from school; *je retire ma confiance à Jean* I withdraw my confidence in John; *et il s'éloigna* and he withdrew; *ses jours s'écoulent dans la retraite* her days are spent in seclusion; *retirez le fusil à cet enfant* take the gun way from that child; *si vous retirez ce mot injurieux, je vous pardonnerai* if you retract this insult I will forgive you; *le misérable répudia sa femme* the wretch put away (divorced) his wife; *il retira* (*désavoua*) *ce qu'il avait dit* (*se rétracta*) he retracted; (refused to acknowledge or own *or* he denied) what he had said; *elle répudia la croyance de ses pères* she repudiated (renounced) the faith of her fathers; *on renonça à ce projet* that project was abandoned; we (they) gave up the project; *elle ne s'attache plus au monde* (*elle y renonce*) she renounced the world; she renounced it; *il faudra vous désister de vos importunités* you must desist from your importunities; *renoncez-y!* stop! *elle ne se départ point de son devoir* she does not swerve from her duty; *tout autour; de tous côtés* all around; on all sides; *en faisant le tour de la ville* in making the rounds of the city; *autour de moi* around (about) me; *autour de la lune* around the moon; *avec des légumes autour* with vegetables around it.

§ 169. Remarks on *avoir* with a Participle. Neuter Verbs or others used as such and Impersonal Verbs have no direct object:

elles ont vécu; ils ont dormi; they (have) lived; they have slept; *les trois heures qu'il a dormi* (*pendant lesquelles il a dormi*) the three hours that he slept (in which he, etc.); *les grandes chaleurs qu'il a fait!* the hot season that we had! *les cinq ans qu'il a vécu* the five years he lived; *les quelques semaines qu'elle a régné* the few weeks she reigned; *les pluies qu'il y a eu* the rain that fell.

vécu	*régné*	*coûté*	*souffert*
lived	reigned	cost	suffered

valu	*gémi*	*pleuré*	*langui*
valued	moaned	wept	languished

all are invariable unless used in a figurative sense:
les deux francs qu'il m'a coûté the two francs it has cost me; *les quelques minutes que le cheval a couru* the few minutes the horse ran; *cinq francs! cette canne ne les a jamais valu* five francs! that cane was never worth it; *que de milles vous avez marché* how many miles (and miles) you walked! *les trois mois qu'il a vécu* the three months that he lived; *les quatre kilogrammes que ce gigot a pesé* the four kilograms this leg of mutton weighed.

and compare:

que de dangers nous avons courus how many dangers (perils) we incurred! *sa vie, l'a-t-il vécue* his (her) life, has it been a reality? has he (she) really led that life? *que de peines il m'a coûtées* what sorrow it has been to (brought) me! (NOTE.—Not approved by the French Academy); *voilà les éloges que son travail lui a valus* such is the praise due to his work; *la viande qu'on a pesée* the meat which has been weighed.

Exercice de Conversation:

la plupart ont été patronnés et protégés most (of them) have been patronized and protected; *abandonnés, trahis peut-être par les leurs* abandoned, betrayed perhaps by their own; *il pouvait soulever un de ses bras* he could raise one of his arms; *avec la plus grande facilité* with the greatest ease (facility); *la raillerie de l'auteur s'y donne pleinement carrière* the raillery (slight satire) of the author is unrestrained; *il vous donne pleine liberté de le faire* he gives you full liberty to act; *embrasser la carrière des armes* to go into the army; *elle embrasse son fils* she embraces her son; *elle le baise au front* she kisses his forehead; *elle lui donne un baiser* she gives him a kiss; *elle sauta au cou de son père* she fell on her father's neck; *se jeter dans les bras de* to run into the arms of; *elle cherche en lui un (appui) protecteur* she is seeking in him a protector; she seeks in him a protective support; *on tenta vainement de restaurer la monarchie* it was vainly attempted to restore monarchy; *il se couvrit de gloire à* he covered himself with glory at; *ce qui demeure d'un tout* what is left out of a total number; *en retranchant une partie* in deducting a part; *enfin, les voilà arrivés* (or: *rendus*) at last they have arrived (come); *la joie se répand sur tous les visages* joy is spread over every face; *en répandant de l'eau sur la nappe* (while) spilling water over (on)

the table-cloth; *répandre des larmes* to shed tears; *il versa (répandit) son sang* he shed his blood; *le soleil répand sa lumière sur tout le globe* the sun diffuses its light all over the globe; *il se dissipe (se répand) dans le monde* he dissipates socially; *il va souvent dans la société; il est fort répandu dans le monde* he often goes into society; *répandre l'alarme* to spread the alarm; *se répandre en invectives* to break into (to use) invectives; *on le dénonça* we denounced him; *on le signala* we described him; *on appela l'attention de l'autorité sur lui* (we accused him; we informed against him) we gave information to the authorities against him; we lodged information to the, etc.; *j'attire votre attention sur* I call your attention to; *une faute d'attention; par manque d'* — a fault of inattentiveness; through lack of attention; *défaut d'attention (inattention)* want of attention; inattention; *il n'y a jamais eu en Amérique de famille(s) de ce nom* there never was in America a family by that name.

§ 170. SPECIAL RULES ON a Past Participle followed by an Infinitive preceded *or* not by a preposition. The past participle may or may not agree with the preceding direct object:

ces actrices, je les ai vu or *vues jouer* those actresses, I saw them play; *les avez-vous entendus* or *entendu chanter?* did you hear them sing? *qui les a laissé (laissés) partir?* who allowed them to go (leave)?

§ 171. SAME RULE when followed by another Past or Present Participle:

sa mère qu'il avait cru (crue) perdue his (her) mother he had thought lost; *les lettres que j'ai eues (eu) à écrire* the letters I had to write.

Exceptions: *fait* (**with Infinitive**) **is invariable; also:** *dû; pu; permis* **and** *voulu* **when an infinitive may be understood:**

il les a fait congédier he had them dismissed; *voici la robe que j'ai fait faire* here is the gown I had made; *nous lui avons rendu tous les services que nous avons dû (pu* or *voulu lui rendre)* we rendered him every service that we should have (that we could *or* desired to render him).

but:

les cent francs que je lui ai dus sont payés the hundred francs I owed him have been paid; *ce sont les sommes voulues* these are

the requisite sums; *la chose requise* the necessary thing (required); *c'est tout ce qu'il faut* that is all that is required; *vous n'aurez point besoin de cette somme* you wouldn't require that sum of money (that amount); *dans l'ordre voulu* in requisite form.

§ 172. BETWEEN TWO *que* the Past Participle is invariable when the object follows:

voilà les fautes que j'avais supposé que vous feriez those are the mistakes I had presumed you would make.

NOTE.—The frequent use of *que . . . que* is not always commendable nor elegant.

§ 173. THE PAST PARTICIPLE preceded by *le* (*l'*) for: *cela* (as direct object) is not inflected:

l'affaire tourna comme on l'avait prédit the affair turned out as we had predicted (it would); *la maladie est plus grave que nous l'avions pensé* the illness is more serious than we had thought.

Oral Drill:

il perdit considérablement de son poids he lost considerable of his weight; *il s'exerce* (*se livre*) *aux combats de boxe* he trains (practises) for boxing bouts; *sa digestion est lente et difficile* his digestion is slow and painful; *il exerce un métier pénible* he practises an arduous trade (carries on, etc.); *tirez à la courte paille* (straw) choose by lot; draw lots (cuts); *ce qui s'applique dans plusieurs opérations* that's applied in many operations; *employé comme combustible* used as fuel; *un corsage en tissu léger* a waist of light tissue; *un bloc de bois non travaillé* a piece of rough wood; *du fer battu* wrought iron; *c'est une matière qui s'embrase* (*s'enflamme*) *facilement* a substance easily combustible (inflammable); *la guerre a embrasé toute l'Europe* war has set all Europe ablaze; *le feu consume tout* fire destroys (consumes) everything; *un carré* a square; *la racine carrée* the square root; *un tableau partagé en soixante cases numérotées* a board divided into sixty numbered squares; *engagé dans une affaire périlleuse* involved in a perilous affair; *pour l'éclairage au gaz* for gas-lighting; *ainsi appelé de la couverture dont on le revêt* thus called on account of the top (envelope) that covers it; *en les grondant entre ses dents* in snarling at them between his teeth; *coupant à travers champs* cutting across lots; *en enfilant les harengs* stringing herrings; *enfiler une aiguille* to thread a needle; *appartement privé fort à la mode* very

stylish private apartment; *on lui a coupé les oreilles* his ears have been cut; they cut his ears; *prendre un caractère plus démocratique* to assume a more democratic character; *ce qui honore le plus son érudition* and that honors the more his erudition; *une leçon particulière* a private lesson; *il est privé de son appui* he is deprived of his support.

§ 174. *EN* and THE PAST PARTICIPLE.—The pronoun *en* (being neuter) is always an indirect object and the past participle does not change—unless determined by nouns or adverbs of quantity:

il a acheté des pommes et en a mangé he has bought apples and has eaten some (of them); *quant au désastre, voici les nouvelles que j'en ai reçues* as to the disaster, here is the news that I received; *autant de lions il a tirés, autant (de lions) il en a tués* as many lions as he shot at, he killed; *plus il a eu de dollars, plus il en a dépensés* the more money he had, the more he spent.

§ 175. IF ADVERB follows *en*, the Past Participle is not inflected:

quant aux pays, il en a tant visité in regard to countries he visited many of them; *elle a plus de maisons que je n'en ai vu* she has more houses than I have seen; *hélas! qu'il en a vu mourir de jeunes gens* alas! how many children he has seen die; *des livres, combien en avez-vous lu?* in reference to books, how many have you read? *il a acheté beaucoup de meubles; j'en ai acheté plus que lui* he bought many pieces of furniture; but I have bought more (than he).

§ 176. AFTER *le peu de* (sufficient quantity), the Past Participle agrees with its complement,—unless the idea refers principally to: *le peu:*

le peu de pommes que nous avons achetées nous a suffi the little quantity of apples we bought sufficed us; *le peu de nourriture qu'il a pris a hâté sa mort* the little food he took (has) hastened his death.

Collectives:

la foule de; la multitude des, etc., follow same rule according to sense and emphasis.

§ 177. PAST PARTICIPLE OF A REFLEXIVE VERB takes *être* (and is of active force) and agrees in gender and number with the direct object when the latter precedes:

elle s'est blessée she wounded herself; she has wounded herself; *elles se sont blessées à la main* they are wounded in their hands; *elle s'est blessé la main* she wounded her hand; *voilà les nouvelles qu'elles se sont écrites* that is the news they have written to one another; *elles se sont écrit des lettres; elles se sont écrit;* they corresponded; they wrote letters to each other.

NOTE.—*se* may be direct or indirect object.

§ 178. STRICTLY SPEAKING the Reflexive Verbs express an action reflecting upon the subject:

in reference to meaning; *il s'est coupé* **he cut himself; in reference to their form some are by their nature essentially reflexive and their past participle agrees with the subject and are for that reason (often) called:** *essentially pronominal verbs:*

elle s'est évanouie she fainted; *les prérogatives qu'ils se sont arrogées* the prerogatives that they have assumed.

NOTE.—The latter verb (essentially reflexive) is an exception to above rule and is inflected on account of its direct object preceding it.

See full list § 180.

ils se sont arrogé des pouvoirs excessifs they have assumed excessive powers; *ils se sont attribué des droits* (*sans y avoir droit*) they have claimed rights to which they were not entitled; *on réclame ce qui nous appartient* we claim our own (what belongs to us); *revendiquez toujours vos droits* always demand your rights; *il assume toute responsabilité: la revendiquer;* he assumes all responsibility; to take it upon one's self; (to undertake to perform an act).

General Practice:

cela fait (*cela étant fait*), *il se retira* that done (being done) he withdrew; *vu les obstacles à surmonter* in view of the obstacles to overcome; *des difficultés insurmontables* insurmountable difficulties (drawbacks); *tout tourna à son désavantage* everything turned out to his detriment; *à son détriment* to his prejudice; *toute*

réserve faite de mes droits my rights being reserved; *sans préjudice des vôtres* without prejudice to yours; *sans exception* (*réserve*) without reserve (unreservedly); *sous toute réserve* with due restriction; *il parle avec réserve* he speaks with discretion; *il est discret* he is discreet.

§ 179. Reciprocal and Reflexive and Pronominal Verbs. The reciprocal verbs (a mutual act) express an idea with two subjects performing the same act (referring to the same verb):

ils se sont aimés (*l'un a aimé l'autre*) they liked (loved) each other (one has liked the other); *les chiens se sont battus* the dogs fought (they fought each other); *elles se sont aimées les unes les autres* they loved one another; *ils s'instruisent mutuellement* (mutually) they impart their knowledge to one, etc.

Note reciprocal force specially in the plural: *ils se flattent réciproquement* they flatter one another; cf.: *ils se flattent de tout savoir* they boast of knowing all; and to avoid ambiguity: *ils se sont flattés les uns les autres* they flattered one another; *ils se sont battus* they fought among themselves; *se frapper mutuellement* to strike one another; *se repentir* to repent; *une amitié réciproque* a reciprocal love; *une aversion mutuelle* a mutual aversion.

§ 180. Verbs Essentially Reflexive:

s'abstenir de to abstain from
s'accouder to lean on one's elbow
s'accroupir to crouch
s'adonner à to give one's mind to
s'agenouiller to kneel down
s'agriffer à to cling to (with claws)
s'aheurter à to maintain a thing obstinately; to be wedded to an opinion; to bump
s'arroger to claim
se blottir to squat; to lie close to the ground
se cabrer to prance; to rear
se dédire to recant
se défier (*de*) to defy
se démener to stir
se désister to renounce
s'ébahir to be aghast

s'écrier to exclaim
s'écrouler to collapse
s'emparer de to take possession of
s'empresser de to hasten to
s'en aller to go away
s'enquêter (obsolete) to inquire
s'enquérir to enquire
s'évader to escape
s'évanouir to faint
s'évertuer to exert one's self
s'extasier to go into raptures
se gargariser to gargle one's throat
se gendarmer to fly into a passion inopportunely (to make a strong protest against)
s'ingénier to strive; to make mental efforts to succeed
s'ingérer dans to meddle with
se méfier de to distrust
se méprendre to mistake
se moquer de to laugh at
s'opiniâtrer to be opinionated; to be very obstinate
se parjurer to forswear one's self; to perjure, etc.; to swear falsely
se ratatiner to shrink (wrinkle)
se raviser to change (alter) one's mind
se rebeller to revolt; *contre* against
se récrier to protest
se réfugier au Mexique to take refuge in Mexico
se rengorger to give one's self airs
se repentir to repent (*see* full conjugation)
se souvenir de to remember

The above list refers to verbs whose past participle agrees in gender and number with the subject; *s'arroger* being excepted; and all the other reflexives follow the rule of *avoir* (though used with *être*).

Oral Drill:

il tâche de trouver un moyen pour réussir he strives (through mental efforts) to succeed; *protester vivement contre une proposition* to make a strong protest against a suggestion, etc.; *tout ratatiné* all shriveled (up); *il se réfugia dans des mots équivoques* he had recourse to ambiguous words; *échouer; se briser contre;* to fail; to dash to pieces; *il s'est enrhumé* (*il a un rhume*) he caught a cold (he has a cold); *elle s'est enrhumée* she caught a cold; *ils*

se sont défendus they defended themselves; *elle s'est levée* she got up; *ils se sont fâchés* they became angry.

Note that the reflexive construction is more common in French and generally expressed in English by a neuter verb; or by such reflexives as:

s'approcher de to approach; *se souvenir de* to recollect (remember), etc., and as transitives in English.

je ne me suis pas fié à ce monsieur I did not trust that gentleman; *elle s'est couchée à dix heures* she retired at ten o'clock; *elle s'est adressée au chef* she applied to the chief; *il s'est dit à lui-même* he said to himself; *se sont-elles encore acheté des chapeaux pour Pâques?* did they buy hats again for Easter? *or* did they buy themselves hats, etc.; *ils se sont mutuellement contrariés* they have antagonized one another; *elle s'est heurtée à la tête* she hurt her head; *heurter son amour-propre* to wound (hurt) his (her) self-esteem; *heurter* to knock; *heurter les enfants* to run against the children.

§ 181. Active or Neuter Verbs may take the reflexive form:

laver to wash; *se laver* to wash one's self; *il se lave* he washes himself; he is washing, etc.; *il s'est adossé au mur* he leaned against the wall; *elle lave le bébé* she bathes the baby; *se plaire à; plaire à;* to take delight in; to please; *il s'est plu* or *elle s'est plu à* he *or* she took pleasure in; *ils se sont parlé* they spoke to one another; — to each other; *nuire à; se nuire;* to injure; — one another; *ils se sont nui* they injured one another; *ils se sont approchés d'elles* they approached them; *on adossa le bâtiment contre le mur* they put up the building against the wall; *approchez le fauteuil* bring the armchair nearer; *l'hiver approche* winter approaches.

Note that *se* may be in the dative; also it may be omitted after *faire:*

on le fait taire we make him keep silent; *faites-le asseoir* make him sit down; *les années se sont écoulées rapidement* the years have elapsed quickly; *le temps écoulé* the time spent (past).

Oral Drill:

on écoule des marchandises (*on les vend facilement*) they sell goods quickly *or: ces marchandises s'écoulent facilement* those goods sell quickly; *la bière s'est écoulée* the beer has run off; *l'eau se retira* (*s'écoula*) *en foule* the water poured out; *un débouché* an outlet;

en grande quantité in large quantity; *elle s'est cognée contre un obstacle* she bumped against an obstacle; against something solid (large); *ils se sont choqués en se rencontrant* they clashed (collided); *deux convois de marchandises se sont tamponnés* two freight trains ran into each other; *ils se sont nui les uns aux autres* they harmed each other; *il se débarbouille* (*se lave le visage*) he is washing his face; *ils se sont débattus* they disputed; *cependant il se ravisa* he changed his mind, however (*or:* he thought better of it); *elle s'est hâtée de sortir* she hastened to go out; *ils se sont pressés de l'achever* they hastened (made haste) to finish it; *il s'appuie du coude* he leans (rests) upon one elbow; *il s'est dressé sur les pieds de derrière* he rose up on his hind legs; *il frappe la terre des pieds de devant* he prances; he scrapes the ground with his forefoot; *sautiller* to jump about; *caracoler* to perform a caracole.

Review reflexives also at Lesson XXIX.

PART III

REGULAR VERBS

LESSON XVIII

§ 1. Regular Verbs of the First Group end in *-er:*

parler to speak *parlant* speaking *parlé* spoken

Present Indicative (*le présent de l'indicatif*):

je parle	I speak, am speaking, have been speaking, do speak
tu parles	you speak (thou speakest), are speaking, have been speaking, do speak
il parle	he speaks, is speaking, has been speaking, does speak
elle parle	she speaks, is speaking, has been speaking, does speak
on parle	(we, they, people in general) one speaks, are speaking, have been speaking, do speak
nous parlons	we speak, are speaking, have been speaking, do speak
vous parlez	you " " " " " " " "
ils parlent	they " " " " " " " "
elles parlent	" " " " " " " " "

Exercice de Conversation:

est-ce que je parle bien do I speak well?
oui, monsieur; vous parlez bien yes, Sir; you speak well
est-ce que tu parles à Jean? do you speak to John?
est-ce qu'il parle de Jacques? does he speak of James?
je ne parle pas I do not speak (I am not speaking, etc.)

Note.—*Tu* is used among relatives and friends.

aimer to like (love)	*trouver* to find; to like
détester to dislike	*adorer* to love (adore)
proposer to propose	*disposer* to dispose
étudier to study	*penser à* to think of
considérer to look upon	*penser de* to think (as opinion)

j'aime; tu aimes; il aime; elle aime; on aime; etc.; *je l'aime; je ne l'aime pas;* I like it (him); I do not; *je ne l'aime pas* I do not like it (him); *comment trouvez-vous le vin aujourd'hui?* how do you like the wine to-day? *Assez bon* fairly good; *je le trouve meilleur qu'hier* I find it better than yesterday; *je déteste ce verbe* I dislike that verb; *elle adore son enfant* she loves her child; *on l'adore* every-

one loves him (her); *ici on parle français* French is spoken here; *aimer son prochain comme soi-même* to love one's neighbor as one's self; *l'homme propose et Dieu dispose* man proposes and God disposes; *n'étudie-t-il pas* or *est-ce qu'il n'étudie pas?* does he not study? *est-ce qu'elle n'étudie pas?* does she not study? *je pense à vous* I think of you; *que pensez-vous de lui* what do you think of him? *on le considère beaucoup* he is highly thought of.

Other examples: *exister* to exist *consulter* to consult

si ce mot existe, je consulterai le dictionnaire if that word exists, I shall look it up in the dictionary; *pour le trouver* to (so as to) find it; *est-ce que vous parlez le français ou l'allemand?* do you speak French or German? *je ne parle ni l'un ni l'autre* I speak neither (the) one nor the other; *il le parle un peu* he speaks it a little; *elle le parle assez bien* she speaks it fairly well; *il ne le parle pas (point) du tout* he does not speak it at all; *le parle-t-il? est-ce qu'il le parle?* does he speak it? *ne le parle-t-il pas?* does he not speak it? *elle le parle, n'est-ce pas?* she speaks it, does she not?

parlé-je? (in poetry only) for: *est-ce que je parle? vous le parlez, n'est-ce pas?* you speak it, do you not? *n'est-ce pas que vous le parlez?* you speak it, I am sure (is it not true that you, etc.); *est-ce que vous ne le parlez pas?* (and with surprise) do you not speak it? or again: is it possible that you do not speak it? *à qui parlez-vous?* to whom are you speaking? *à mon père* to my father; *à ma mère* to my mother; *à ma sœur* to my sister; *à mon frère* to my brother; *à mon père et à ma mère* to my father and mother.

avec qui parlez-vous? with whom do you speak? *avec mon cousin et avec ma cousine* with my two cousins; *tout le monde* everybody; *de qui parle-t-il?* of whom is he speaking? *de quoi parle-t-on?* of what do you speak? *or:* of what do they speak? *or again:* what is the subject (topic) of the conversation? *le monsieur auquel on parle est un étranger* the gentleman to whom we speak is a foreigner; *il parle français* he speaks French; *c'est un Parisien* he is a Parisian; *une Parisienne* Parisian lady; *tout ce que vous avez* anything you have; all you have;

fermer to close (shut) *la porte* the door
la fenêtre the window *le livre* the book

on ferme à cinq heures doors are closed at five o'clock; *je ferme la porte; il la ferme;* I close the door; he closes it; *je ne la ferme pas* I do not close it; *on la ferme tous les jours (soirs)* it is closed every day (evening); *fermez-la* shut it; *s'il vous plaît* if you please.

§ 2

tout (m.) *toute* (f.)	*tous* (m. pl.) *toutes* (f. pl.)
all, every, whole, any	all, every, whole, any

NOTE.—*tout* (*adjectif:* adjective) may mean: any; *tous* (as a pronoun) is heard: *touss.*

tout homme qui; toute femme qui; any man who; any woman that;
parlez tous speak all;
tout before the name of a city (feminine) and meaning:
tout le peuple is not inflected;
tout Rome en a été témoin all Rome witnessed it
as adverb *tout* is invariable:
ils sont sortis tout contents they went out (left) quite pleased;
une dame tout en pleurs (*larmes*) a lady in tears;
éplorée in tears.

and except in:

une maison toute en feu a house all on fire; and also before a feminine adjective beginning with a consonant or *h* (aspirate) *tout* varies:
toute honteuse quite ashamed; *toute la famille* the whole family; *c'est une toute autre chose* quite another matter (thing); *à toute autre question* to any other question; *ceci est tout autre chose* this is quite different; *il parle de tout* he speaks of everything; *tout le monde en parle* everybody speaks of it, etc.

apporter to bring	*chercher* to seek (look for)
visiter to visit	*regarder* to look (at)
prêcher to preach	*tirer* to pull
pousser to push	*manifester* to manifest

apporter une fleur to bring a flower; *il cherche son chapeau* he is looking for his hat; *elle le cherche* she is looking for it; *on visite un malade* (*une malade*) we visit a patient; *je te* (*vous*) *cherche* I am looking for you; *me cherche-t-il?* or: *est-ce qu'il me,* etc., is he looking for me?

Oral Drill:

il a beau dire in vain he says; *il dit la vérité* he speaks the truth; *vous avez beau parler* in vain you speak; *voilà une heure qu'il parle* he has been speaking for an hour; *il parle pour parler* (*sans avoir rien à dire*) he speaks merely to talk (without having anything to say); *on parle* (*s'entretient*) *de choses et d'autres* we speak of various things; *il parle* (*agit*) *en l'air* he talks to no purpose;

sur divers sujets on (upon) various topics; *on parle à un sourd (à un mur)* we speak to a deaf person (to a wall); *il a beau jeu* he has a good hand; *sa présence me gêne* his presence prevents me from talking; *les dents lui claquent de peur* his teeth chatter from fear; *il n'est bruit que de cela* there is no talk but of that; *c'est un diseur de riens* he is an idle talker; *brebis* (sheep) *qui bêle perd sa goulée* (mouthful; coll.); the ass that brays most eats least (: too much talk, no dinner); *jamais beau parler n'écorche la langue* civility costs nothing (it is always well to speak frankly); *il a son franc-parler* he is outspoken; *il prêche d'exemple* he practises what he preaches; *je le regarde* I am looking at it (him); *faire connaître* to make known; *manifestez vos volontés* manifest your wishes.

§ 3. IMPERFECT (*l'imparfait de l'indicatif*):

je parlais I was speaking (I spoke, did speak, used to speak, had been speaking, *would* speak: *as a Past of habit*)
tu parlais (thou wast speaking) you were speaking (spoke; etc.)
il parlait he was speaking (kept speaking, did speak, etc.)
nous parlions we were speaking (spoke, did speak, etc.)
vous parliez you were speaking (spoke, did speak, etc.)
ils parlaient they were speaking (spoke, did speak, etc.)

cacher to hide	*ôter* to remove (take off)
enlever to remove	*travailler* to work
porter to wear (take; bear)	*assister* (*à*) to attend

Exercice de Conversation:

il cachait souvent mon chapeau he would often hide my hat; *en présence des dames* in the presence of ladies; *en entrant dans la salle de classe* on entering the class-room; *la servante enlevait le couvert* the servant removed the dishes (cleared the table); *il me parlait toujours en allemand, en anglais, en italien* he would always speak to me in German, English *or* Italian; *elle ne lui parlait jamais en espagnol* she never spoke to him (her) in Spanish; *ne leur parliez-vous pas en portugais?* would you not speak to them in Portuguese? *à qui parliez-vous, lorsque je suis entré (dans la salle)* to whom were you speaking when I entered (the class-room)? *est-ce que vous lui parliez de moi (de lui, d'elle, d'eux)?* were you speaking to him (her) about me [of me; about him (her) *or* about them: of them]?
demeurer près d'ici to live (reside) near here
porter un chapeau (des gants) to wear a hat (gloves)
porter des fruits to yield fruit; *l'arbre* the tree (m.).

§ 4. Past Definite (Preterit) (*le passé défini*):

je parlai I spoke
il parla he spoke
vous parlâtes you spoke
tu parlas (thou spokest) you spoke
nous parlâmes we spoke
ils parlèrent they spoke

(for review):

je ne parlai pas I did not speak; *tu ne parlas pas* you did not (speak); *il parla à Boston en mil neuf cent huit* he spoke in Boston in nineteen hundred and eight; *on assista à la réunion* we (they) attended the meeting; *elle traversa la Manche en* she crossed the English Channel in; *au secours!* help! *elle cria: au voleur; à l'assassin; au feu!* she shouted: "thief!" "murderer!" "fire!" *on accepta son offre* his (her) offer was accepted; *on joua aux cartes* we (they) played cards

blâmer to blame
louer to rent; to praise;
gronder to scold
préparer la leçon to prepare (to get ready: in advance) the lesson; *durer une heure* to last an hour.

§ 5. Future (*le futur*):

je parlerai I will (shall) speak
tu parleras (thou shalt *or* wilt speak) you shall *or* will speak
il parlera he shall (will) speak
nous parlerons we will (shall) speak
vous parlerez you shall (will) speak
ils parleront they shall (will) speak

Practice:

je ne parlerai pas I will not speak *or* I refuse to speak; *je parlerai maintenant* I shall speak now (: I intend to speak now); *tu ne voleras pas* you shall not steal: (I command you not to steal); *il ne restera pas* he shall not stay (remain): (I oppose his staying); *je vais tailler mon crayon* I will sharpen my pencil (now); I am going to sharpen, etc.; *remarquer dans la foule* to notice among the crowd; *distinguer* to make a distinction; *écouter* to listen (to): *on les écoute* we are listening to them.

pêcher to fish (angle)
plonger to dive
la ligne the line
pécher to sin
baptiser to baptize (christen)
le péché the sin
effacer un mot to erase a word
biffez-le strike it off (run a pen through it)
rayez-le cross it off
raturez-le scratch it out

Oral Drill:

à la ligne to the line; *or* with rod and line; *dans l'eau* in (into) the water; *le vrai du faux* the right from the wrong; the true from the false; *un tailleur* a tailor (cutter); *un pêcheur* a fisherman; *un pécheur* a sinner; *son exercice est chargé de ratures* his exercise is full of erasures; *paroles* (f.) *inutiles* vain words; *la paix; la guerre;* peace; war; *la confusion des langues* the confusion of tongues; *conférer un titre* to confer a title (upon); *donner un accent anglais* to pronounce with an English accent; *indiquer la direction* to indicate the direction; *un instrument qui mesure* an instrument that measures; *elle se poudre le visage* she powders her face; *nommez-le: Jean* name it (him), John; *appelez-le* call him; *un appareil* an apparatus; *on lui donna ce nom* that name was given to him (her); *avec arrogance; avec fierté;* arrogantly; proudly.

Exercice de Conversation:

il comptera de un à dix he will count from one to ten; *il trouvera à qui parler* [*chaussure* (f.) *à son pied*] (shoe for his foot): he will meet his match or: (what he wants); *cet échec ne diminuera en rien sa gloire* this failure will not lessen his fame in the least; *tout contribuera au progrès des recherches* everything will contribute to the advance of research; *on lui procurera un abri* we shall provide a shelter for him (her); *il professe cette doctrine* he professes that doctrine; *il observe les Dix Commandements* he observes the Ten Commandments; *on inventera un terme pour désigner cela* a word (an expression) shall be given to designate it (that); *en tirer perte ou profit* to gain or lose by it; *traiter d'affaires* to speak of business (to discuss); *il parle de tout sans rien savoir* he discourses on everything without knowing anything; *il sera question de vous* they will talk about you; *vous l'aborderez et* (*vous*) *lui adresserez la parole* first approach him and then speak to him; *l'orateur portera la parole* the orator will now address you (*Mesdames et Messieurs* Ladies and, etc.); *il prit la parole* he began to speak; *vous vous adresserez au concierge* apply to the porter; *il parlera; n'est-ce pas?* he will speak, will he not? *il aura à parler* (*il lui faudra parler*) he will have to speak; *gronder* (*morigéner*) to reprimand; *on lui donnera le nom de Jean* they will give him the name of John (— name him John); *tancer les élèves dissipés* to rebuke (lecture) inattentive pupils; *lier, enchaîner une idée* to link, to associate an idea; *récompenser* to reward; *annoncer* to announce; *confirmer* to confirm; *les dernières nouvelles* the latest news.

§ 6. CONDITIONAL (*le présent du conditionnel*):

je parlerais I would *or* should speak
tu parlerais (thou wouldst *or* shouldst speak) you would *or* should, etc.
il parlerait he would (should) speak
nous parlerions we would (should) speak
vous parleriez you would (should) speak
ils parleraient they would (should) speak

Oral Drill:

si je parlais français, je gagnerais davantage if I spoke French, I would earn more; *elle leur parlerait, si elle avait le temps* she would speak to them, if she had the time; *il en parlerait* he would speak of it (of her, etc.); *elle parlerait ces langues, si elle les avait étudiées* she would speak those languages, if she had studied them; *on lui parlerait, si on avait le temps* we would speak to him (her) if we had the time; *je ne sais si je lui parlerais de cela* I do not know whether I should speak to him about it; *et je ne sais s'il m'en parlerait* and I do not know whether he would speak of it to me; *ne leur parleriez-vous pas, si vous les rencontriez?* would you not speak to them, if you (ever) should meet them? *vous leur parleriez, n'est-ce pas?* you would speak to them, would you not? cf.: *elle n'a pas voulu parler* (: — *a refusé de parler*) she would not speak! (— refused to speak); *il se refuse le nécessaire* he denies himself the necessities; *elle se refuse à faire cela* she does not consent to do that; *il risquerait le tout pour le tout* he would stake all; *un mot spirituel* a witty remark; *un mot à double entente* an ambiguous word; *mot à mot; sans rien changer;* word for word; without changing anything; *prompt comme la poudre* as quick as a flash; *qui refuse muse:* he who will not when he may, when he will he shall have "nay"; *y regarder à deux fois avant de le faire* to think twice before doing it (that); *prendre garde à ce que l'on va faire* to beware of what is to be done; *remporter la victoire* to carry the day; *il changea brusquement de propos* he suddenly changed the subject; *il est réglé comme un papier de musique* he is regular in his habits; *régler* to rule; *réprimander un enfant* to reprimand a child; *toute leur histoire se résume dans les luttes incessantes de ces états* their whole history is summed up in the incessant struggles between those states; *région désolée* desolate region (section); *une invasion allemande* a German invasion.

§ 7. IMPERATIVE (*l'impératif*):

parle speak *parlons* let us speak *parlez* speak

qu'il parle let him speak *qu'elle parle* let her speak
qu'ils parlent let them speak
qu'ils ne parlent pas let them not speak
parle-le speak it *ne le parle pas* do not speak it

ne les parle pas do not speak them; *parle-lui; parlez-lui*; speak to him (her); *parle-leur; parlez-leur;* speak to them; *ne lui parlez jamais* never speak to him (her); *ne parlez point* speak not; do not speak; *parlons-en* let us speak of it (of him, etc.); *n'en parlons plus* let us speak no more of it; about it; *Jean, ne parle plus* say no more, John; *tranchons le mot* let us say the word *or* let us speak out.

passons outre (*continuons; n'en tenons pas compte*) let us overlook it (let us pass it over; let us not insist); *passons l'éponge sur cela* (*sponge*) let us forget it; *brisons là* let us stop talking (arguing); *ne discutons pas davantage* let us discuss no more; *oublions le passé* let us forget the past; *c'est la plus riche des trois contrées qui composent ce royaume* it is the richest of the three countries which compose that kingdom: *diverses nationalités* various nationalities; *manger de la chicorée en salade* to eat chicory as a salad *or* chicory salad; *inattentif; inattentive;* inattentive; *actif; active* active; *récalcitrant* refractory (unruly); *docile* docile; *chercher une occasion* to seek an opportunity; *chercher une occupation* to seek a position; *les voiles obscurs* the dark veils; *la voile* the sail; *couchez l'enfant* (*mettez-le au lit*) put the child to bed.

LESSON XIX

§ 8. SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT or FUTURE (*le présent du subjonctif*):

que je parle that I may (can) speak; also: other forms in English
que tu parles that (thou mayest) you speak *or* that you may (can) speak; also: other forms in English
qu'il parle that he may (can) speak; also: other forms in English
que nous parlions that we may (can) speak " " " "
que vous parliez that you may (can) speak " " " "
qu'ils parlent that they may (can) speak " " " "

many examples are given for various forms at pages above (Lessons IX, XXVI):

il faut que je parle français I must speak French; *or*: it is important that I should speak French; etc.; *il ne faut pas que vous lui parliez en anglais* you should not speak to him (her) in English; *il est possible qu'il les parle bien* it is possible that he speaks them well; he may speak, etc.; *il vaut mieux que vous leur parliez* you had better speak to them; *il faudra que je leur parle* I shall have to speak to them; *s'occuper de* to be engaged in; *la chimie* chemistry.

Oral Drill:

le lit occupe toute la place the bed occupies the whole space; *l'air remplit tout l'espace* the air fills all space; *elle occupe un emploi* she has a position; *on s'en occupe* (they attend to it): are working at it; *il s'occupe à cela* (*: il consacre son temps à; il donne son temps à*) he is busy with that (he devotes his time to; he gives his time to); *cette lecture occupe ses loisirs* that reading takes up his (her) moments of leisure; *on vous occupera* (*: on vous donnera à travailler*) we will (shall) keep you busy; we will give you work; *est-ce que j'occupe votre place* (*siège*)? am I in your seat? *on est à vous dans une minute; on s'occupera de vous à l'instant* you will be waited on in a moment; we shall attend to you soon; *ne vous en occupez pas* do not trouble yourself (yourselves) about it.

§ 9. Imperfect (Subjunctive) (*l'imparfait du subjonctif*):

que je parlasse that I might speak (*or:* other forms in English)
que tu parlasses that thou mightest speak; that you might speak, etc.
qu'il parlât that he might speak.
que nous parlassions that we might speak.
que vous parlassiez that you might speak.
qu'ils parlassent that they might speak.

See Rules, Lessons XIII and XXVI.

Note.—Tense mostly used in books.

§ 10. Subjunctive Past and Pluperfect:

Practice for more examples: at Lesson xxvi

il n'a plus à redouter la force de son adversaire he will not have to fear any longer the strength of his opponent; *la chaleur* the heat;

la preuve des actes, elle valeur la preuve des paroles the cold: *avez les yeux rouges, the eyes, il est un exemple* he gives an example: *vous des faits* give facts as proof. *dans la Bible* to quote the Bible.

The Compound Tenses of *parler*.

§ 11. The Past Indefinite (Perfect):

j'ai parlé, tu as parlé, il a parlé, nous avons parlé, vous avez parlé, ils ont parlé. (or) I have spoken (I spoke), thou hast spoken: thou spokest, or you have spoken, he has spoken (he spoke); we have spoken (we spoke), you have spoken (you spoke); they have spoken (they spoke).

Note.—This past is of constant use in conversation.

Oral Drill:

Je temps à autre at times, *lui avez-vous parlé* or *l'avez-vous lui avez, ou?* did you speak to him (her)? *je ne lui ai pas encore parlé* I have not yet spoken to him; to her; *ne lui avez-vous pas parlé quelquefois?* (*n'avez-vous ne lui avez pas parlé quelquefois?*) have you not spoken to him sometimes? *pourquoi* why? *parce que* because *être en retard* to be late, *en quelque temps que ce soit* at any time

Ne observe that *ne* is greatly used in English:

ils lui ont parlé, n'est-ce pas? they spoke to him, did they not? *n'est-ce pas qu'il leur a parlé? — Si, il leur a parlé une fois,* is it not true that he spoke to them? Yes, he did once; *plus d'une fois* more than once; *plusieurs fois* several times, *de temps en temps* (*de fois à autre*); *rarement* from time to time (now and then); *rarement, il se répète une fois pour toutes* I repeat once for all, *à mesure que l'on s'élève dans l'atmosphère* as one rises in the air; *mesurer la hauteur à laquelle on s'élève* to measure the height that one reaches; *une locomotive a déraillé* with hesitation and difficulty, *attaquer à coups de projectiles* to attack with projectiles, *fabriquer le fromage* to make cheese, *a canard plonge son bec* the duck digs with its (its) beak, *puiser de l'eau dans un baquet* to draw water with a bucket, *à la rivière* from the river; *puiser aux sources* (*emprunter de source*) to draw from original sources; *puiser un passage dans Virgile* to borrow from Virgil; *couler de source* to flow from a spring; to come from the heart; *on implore les anges* (*on invoque*) we supplicate (invoke) the angels.

§ 12. PLUPERFECT (INDICATIVE) (*le plus-que-parfait de l'indicatif*):

j'avais parlé I had spoken — *tu avais parlé* thou hadst spoken: you had, etc.

il avait parlé he had spoken — *nous avions parlé* we had spoken

vous aviez parlé you had spoken — *ils avaient parlé* they had spoken

Exercice de Conversation:

parfois at times; *si on avait parlé* if we had spoken (had we spoken?) *s'il avait parlé* if he had spoken; *si elle avait parlé* if she had spoken; *s'ils lui avaient parlé* if they had spoken to him (her); *si elles ne leur avaient pas parlé* if they had not spoken to them; *ne lui aviez-vous jamais parlé* had you never spoken to him (her)? *Jamais!* never; *n'est-ce pas que vous aviez déjà parlé à . . ?* isn't it true that you had already spoken to . . ? *avait-il fait l'éloge de cet auteur?* had he spoken in praise of that author? *on en avait parlé en termes flatteurs* we had spoken of him in flattering terms; *ils ont parlé politique étrangère* (*extérieure*) they talked politics (foreign politics); *ils ont parlé sur tout* they discoursed upon everything; *parler français comme une vache espagnole* (Spanish cow); (colloq.) to speak broken French; *il ne lui a pas mâché la vérité* (mince the truth) he spoke his mind freely to him; *il pèse ses paroles* he weighs his words; *elle commanda le dîner* she ordered the dinner; *commandez-lui d'apporter* or (: *qu'il apporte*) order him to bring (fetch); *il commande le bataillon* he commands (orders) the battalion; *orné de; entouré de;* adorned (ornamented) with; surrounded by; *exprimer diverses idées et leurs rapports* to express various ideas and their relation; *la répétition générale* general rehearsal; *la répétition consiste à recommencer* repetition consists of repeating many times; *son revenu consiste en rentes* (*se compose de*) his income consists of annuities; *il est composé* (*il se compose*) *de trois parties* it is composed of three parts; *le bonheur consiste dans la satisfaction de* happiness is derived from the pleasure of (the satisfaction of).

§ 13. PAST ANTERIOR (*le passé antérieur*):

j'eus parlé I had spoken; — *tu eus parlé* you had spoken (*or:* thou hadst spoken)

il eut parlé he had spoken — *nous eûmes parlé* we had spoken

vous eûtes parlé you had spoken *ils eurent parlé* they had spoken.

NOTE.—Tense mostly used in books or: with *quand* when: *dès que* (*aussitôt que; sitôt que*) as soon as.

Oral Drill:

aussitôt qu'il eût parlé as soon as he had spoken; *à peine fut-il entré qu'il s'excusa* scarcely had he entered when he excused himself; *la sonnerie électrique* the electric bell; *indiquer les heures distinctement* to indicate the hours distinctly; *se développer librement (: émancipé de toute tutelle)* to develop without restraint (free from all tutelage); *la langue; le langage parlé;* the language (tongue); the spoken language; *le langage des Japonais* the mode of expression among the Japanese; *l'argot des Halles* the (professional) slang at the Central Market in Paris; *l'idiome grec* the Greek tongue; *or:* a language peculiar to the Greeks; *le dialecte provençal* the Provençal dialect; *des idiotismes* idiomatic constructions; *expressions idiomatiques* idiomatic expressions; *le jargon* unintelligible language; also: *langue étrangère qu'on n entend point* a mixture (of languages) that we cannot understand; *langue spéciale aux Apaches* the jargon of the Apaches; *le patois (idiome populaire)* language (illiterate or provincial speech) to be distinguished from the standard (literary) dialect; *propre à une province* peculiar to a province; vernacular.

§ 14. FUTURE PAST (*le futur antérieur*):

j'aurai parlé I will *or* shall have spoken
tu auras parlé you shall (will) have spoken; *or:* thou wilt (shalt) have spoken
il aura parlé he shall (will) have spoken
nous aurons parlé we will (shall) have spoken
vous aurez parlé you shall (will) have spoken
ils auront parlé they shall (will) have spoken

Exercice de Conversation:

dès que j'aurai parlé as soon as I have spoken (*or:* shall have finished speaking); *il n'aura pas parlé (fini de parler) avant votre arrivée* he will not be through speaking before you arrive; *parle-t-il autrement qu'il ne pense?* does he speak differently from what he thinks? *mal à propos* not opportune (unseasonable); *non mérité* (also: *déplacé*) uncalled for; *il choisit ses termes (ses mots, ses expressions)* he selects his words (his expressions); *de vive voix* by word of mouth; *combler de politesse* to overwhelm with politeness; *propos incohérents* incoherent talk; *d'une autre façon* some other way; *scier le bois* to saw wood; *la scierie* the saw-mill; *il met de l'affectation à bien parler* he speaks affectedly; he is affected in his speech; *meubles anciens* antique furniture; *les anciens*

the men of old; the ancients; *les auteurs anciens* ancient authors; *l'ancien maire* the former Mayor; *cela existe depuis longtemps* that has been in existence for many years; *le nouveau maire* the new mayor; *paroles sottes et frivoles* light and foolish words; *retomber entre les mains des* to fall again into the hands of the; to become once more the possession of the; *auditoire peu nombreux* small attendance.

§ 15. CONDITIONAL PAST (First Form) (*le passé du conditionnel*):

j'aurais parlé I would *or* should have spoken
tu aurais parlé you should *or* would have spoken; or: (thou shouldst *or* wouldst have spoken)
il aurait parlé he should *or* would have spoken
nous aurions parlé we would *or* should have spoken
vous auriez parlé you should *or* would have spoken
ils auraient parlé they would *or* should have spoken

Oral Drill:

je vous aurais parlé, si j'avais eu le temps I would have spoken to you, if I had had the time; *il aurait parlé, s'il avait pu (voulu)* he would have spoken, if he could (wished); *ne lui auriez-vous pas parlé* would you not have spoken to him; to her? *quand même il leur aurait parlé* even if he had spoken to them; *je croyais qu'il m'aurait parlé* I thought he would have spoken to me; *imiter les Italiens, les Américains, les Anglais* to imitate the Italians, the Americans, the English; *dans une autre langue* in another language; *locution propre à la langue française et transportée dans* an expression peculiar to the French language and introduced into; *jouez à la paume* play tennis; *un jeu où l'on se renvoie la balle avec une raquette* a game in which the ball is sent back with a racket.

§ 16. CONDITIONAL PAST (Second Form):

j'eusse parlé I would *or* should have spoken
tu eusses parlé you should *or* would have spoken
il eût parlé he should *or* would have spoken
nous eussions parlé we would have *or* should have spoken
vous eussiez parlé you should have *or* would have spoken
ils eussent parlé they should have *or* would have spoken

eussé-je parlé en public should I have spoken in public? *ne leur eût-il pas parlé* would he not have spoken to them? *si vous eussiez*

parlé, je vous aurais (or: *eusse*) *entendu* should you have spoken, I would have heard you.

NOTE.—After *si* (if) the second form is used instead of the pluperfect indicative:

s'il eût pu parler if he (only) could have spoken; *ils n'eussent jamais parlé français, s'il eût été présent* they would never have spoken French, if he had been there.

Oral Drill:

sa forme rappelle celle du serpent the shape resembles the snake; *tricher au jeu* to cheat at a game; *contrées dévastées par de fréquents tremblements de terre et des éruptions volcaniques* countries devastated by frequent earthquakes and volcanic eruptions; *arrêter pour toujours l'irruption des barbares* to check for ever the sudden and violent inroad of the barbarians; *le débordement de la Seine* (*l'irruption*) overflowing of the Seine river; *faire irruption; incursion;* to invade; to make a raid; *contenir, outre le calendrier 1918, des observations astronomiques et météorologiques, des articles de statistiques* to contain, besides the calendar of 1918, astronomical and meteorological observations, articles on statistics.

§ 17. IMPERATIVE PERFECT (see Lesson X).

§ 18. SUBJUNCTIVE PAST:

que j'aie parlé that I may (can) have spoken *or* other forms in English
que tu aies parlé that you may (can) have spoken
qu'il ait parlé that he may (can) have spoken
que nous ayons parlé that we may (can) have spoken
que vous ayez parlé that you may (can) have spoken
qu'ils aient parlé that they may (can) have spoken

il doute que vous lui ayez parlé he doubts whether you have spoken to him (her); *il est le seul qui vous ait parlé* he is the only one that has, etc.; *ce sera la seule qui leur ait parlé* she will be (or: is) the only one who spoke to them.
Review also Lessons XIII, XXVI.

§ 19. SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT:

que j'eusse parlé that I might have spoken *or* other forms in English
que tu eusses parlé that you might have spoken

qu'il eût parlé that he might have spoken
que nous eussions parlé that we might have spoken
que vous eussiez parlé that you might have spoken
qu'ils eussent parlé that they might have spoken

(Lessons XIII, XXVI fully illustrated)

je ne savais pas que vous lui eussiez parlé I did not know you had spoken to him (her); *il aurait été le seul élève qui eût parlé* he would have been the only pupil to have spoken (to) etc.; *c'était la seule dame qui eût parlé* she was the only lady who might have spoken; *je n'aurais pas voulu qu'ils eussent parlé* I would not have wished them to have spoken; *je ne croirai jamais qu'il eût parlé, s'il avait assisté à la fête* I shall never believe that he would have spoken, if he had attended the celebration; *il était possible qu'on leur eût parlé* possibly they have been spoken to.

Oral Drill:

causer de l'angoisse to cause anguish; *éprouver d'amers déplaisirs* (*mécontentements*) to feel sad disappointments; *se distinguer par son poil long et soyeux* to be remarkable for its long and silky hair; *des plaintes amères* bitter complaints; *enfoncer le fer dans le bois* to drive (sink) the iron into the wood; *on le boutonne par devant* (*derrière*) it is buttoned in front (in the back); *caserner, baraquer un régiment* (the regiment in the barracks) to lodge soldiers in garrison; *tortiller un mouchoir* to wring (twist) a handkerchief; *traverser la rue* to cross the street; *animer son style* to enliven (to give life to) one's style; *lui donner de la vigueur* (*force*) to give vivacity (action); *égrener les céréales* to husk (to strip the husk) from the corn (wheat), rice (*le riz*), cereal.

LESSON XX

§ 20. Various Expressions on *parler* and Verbs of the First Group:

aller and *envoyer* being irregular
le français se parle en Amérique French is spoken in America; *bien parlé!* good! well expressed; *parlez plus haut; parlez plus bas;* louder· lower; *puisqu'il faut parler net* since plain speaking is desired; *la bouche parle de l'abondance du cœur* out of the abundance of the heart, the mouth speaketh; *parlez-moi de cela!* good! (as approbation or irony); *je vous apprendrai à bien parler* I will teach you to speak (more respectfully); *il s'exprime bien* he ex-

presses himself well; *on le félicite* he is congratulated; *cela provoque de vifs applaudissements* that calls forth warm applause; *chaleureux accueil* cordial welcome; *élévation (abaissement) de la voix* the raising (lowering) of a voice, *on hésite* we hesitate; *on juge les langues par analogie* languages are interpreted through analogy; or: *d'après les rapports qui existent entre elles* from their illustration by comparison; their likeness to one another; cf.: *d'après les rapports qui existent* according to the reports made; *rapporter les événements année par année* to record events happening yearly (yearly events).

Exercice de Conversation:

à tort et à travers aimlessly; *il parle du nez* he speaks through his nose; *elle parle mal* she speaks ill; *il y a un temps pour parler et un temps pour se taire* there comes a time when one must speak or keep silent; *il faut laisser parler* let them gossip; *à propos de rien* for no purpose (for nothing at all); *il a la langue grasse (son parler est peu intelligible)* he speaks thick (: not easily understood); *la langue lui a fourché* his (her) tongue tripped; *elle médit de son prochain* she speaks ill of her neighbor; *elle mange ses mots* she clips her words; *mal prononcer* not to pronounce well; *on jeta les hauts cris* they protested loudly; *il a le parler bref* he is a man of few words; *il a le verbe haut* he is loud spoken; *il parle d'abondance (sans préparation)* he speaks without previous study *or* preparation; offhand; *avec abondance; paroles sans suite;* with fluency; disconnected words; *cela parle tout seul* that is clear; *ouvrez la bouche: (parlez!)* open the mouth (your, etc.); *il en dit du bien (du mal)* he speaks well *or* ill of him (her), etc.; *elle raisonne bien* she reasons well.

Oral Drill:

le chien dresse les oreilles the dog pricks up his ears; *il baissa l'oreille* he looked confused; *il écoute avec intérêt* he listens with interest; *il est bien tombé* chance favored him; *la conversation tomba sur* the conversation turned to (on); *ses cheveux lui tombent sur les épaules* her hair falls on her shoulders; *les feuilles tombent une à une* the leaves fall one by one; *la chute des feuilles* the fall of the leaves; *tomber à plat* to fall flat; *à plat ventre* flat on the ground; *un échec complet* complete failure; *aux pieds de quelqu'un* at his feet; *tout tombe dans l'oubli* everything is soon forgotten; *se tromper (tomber dans l'erreur) tomber en disgrâce* to fall into

error; to be mistaken; — into disgrace; *tomber de son haut* to be extremely surprised *or:* — *des nues* (from the clouds).

lui être échu en partage (*lui être tombé*) to have fallen to his lot; *écraser* to crush; *sa fête tombe le mardi* his birthday falls on a Tuesday; *en lambeaux* into rags (tatters); *cet auteur tombe* this author is falling into disfavor; *tomber à rien; à peu de chose;* to fall through; to amount to little; *ce livre lui est tombé entre les mains* that book fell into his hands; *tomber d'accord; par hasard;* to fall into accord; by chance; *être d'aplomb* to be perpendicular; *tomber à pic* abrupt; *perpendiculairement* perpendicular; *tomber de cheval* to fall from one's horse; *le sort est tombé sur lui* (*: l'a désigné*) it fell to his fate (: it has selected him) *or:* it fell to his lot; *pas une parole n'est proférée* not a word is uttered; *articuler un son* to articulate a sound; *sons articulés* (*paroles articulées*) utterance of articulate sounds; *mesurer ses paroles* to measure one's words; *balbutier* to lisp; to mumble; to stammer; *inspirer; une inspiration;* to inspire; an inspiration; *il a le débit facile* he has a free delivery; *il accentue bien* he pronounces (accentuates) with proper accent; *ils font toujours des coq-à-l'âne* they are always talking nonsense; incoherent talk; *il a beau dire, il n'en sera ni plus ni moins* he may talk as much as he pleases, it will be so; *il parle par expérience* he speaks from experience; *il est lent à parler* he is slow of speech; *c'est une manière de parler* it is a way (manner) of speaking; *au pied de la lettre* literally; strictly speaking; *il demande la parole* he begs leave to speak; *autant en emporte le vent* (the wind carries away) all that is idle talk; it is moonshine; *innocent badinage* harmless talk.

il est bavard he is loquacious (talkative); *on caquette* (*taille des bavettes*) they chat, gossip (: cutting bibs); *à proprement parler* (*: à la rigueur*) properly speaking (in a strict sense); *il parle clair et net* (*il dit sa pensée; il parle franchement*) he speaks his mind (openly and frankly); or: *il ne se gêne pas* he does not mince matters; *cessez de tenir ce langage* cease to speak in such a manner; *cesser de parler* stop! *changez de propos* talk of something else; *sans ambages* (*détours*) without turning from the point in question; *cela leur fait honneur* that speaks well for them; *pour ainsi dire* so to speak; *il en dit du mal* (*du bien*) he speaks ill of him, etc.; he speaks highly of, etc.; *il traîne ses paroles* he drawls out his words; *lentement; avec lenteur;* slowly; with slowness; *soit dit à leur honneur* to their honor be it spoken; *j'ai affaire à elle* I want to speak to her; *j'ai affaire avec elle* I deal with her; *être en rapport avec*

to have dealings with; *c'est sa façon de parler* it is his mode of speaking; *la conversation roula sur divers sujets* the conversation turned upon various subjects; *à la politique* to politics; *les gros poissons mangent les petits* the large fishes eat the small ones; *la force prime le droit* might overcomes right; *la raison du plus fort est toujours la meilleure* the reason of the stronger is always the better (one) *or:* might makes right; *parlez-moi de cela* that is something; *la langue leur frétille* they are longing (dying) to speak; *ils ont une grande démangeaison de parler* they strongly desire to speak; *la démangeaison* itching.

il annonce (*prêche*) he proclaims (preaches) the Gospel; *trouver un bon mot* to find a good word; *un mot spirituel* witty remark; *entrer en conversation* to enter into conversation; *entamer la conversation* to start (broach) the, etc.; *remonter de la mer dans les fleuves* to go up from the sea into the rivers; *remonter une montre* to wind a watch; *remonter la rivière* to ascend the river; *il se hâta d'engager la conversation* he hastened to begin, etc.; *additionner* to add up; *ajouter* to add; *diviser* to divide; *multiplier* to multiply; *retrancher* to subtract (to take away); *reparler* to speak again; *caqueter* to cackle; *le caquet d'une poule* the cackle of a hen; *se retirer en bon ordre* to withdraw in good order; *sécher* to dry; *sec* (*sèche*) dry; *la sécheresse* dryness, drought; *elle fait sécher le linge* she is spreading out linen to dry; *se faire sécher* to dry one's self; *gâter* to spoil; *gâter* to damage; to taint; *la viande que la chaleur a gâtée* the meat which has been tainted by the heat; *endommager* (*causer du dommage*) to damage; to occasion damage to; *détériorer* to impair; to deteriorate; *dégrader* to degenerate; to become worse; *gâter le plaisir* to spoil the pleasure (fun); *figer* to congeal; *coaguler* to coagulate; *le lait* milk; *cailleter* to chatter (gossip); *cailler* to curdle; *fumer du havane* to smoke Havana cigars; *son fils en qui il voyait déjà un futur héros* his son who promised to be a future hero; *des décorations superbes ornent le monument, entre autres les figures des anges, du Devoir* Angels and Duty were among the rich decorations enhancing the monument; *comme chaque fois qu'elle parlait de son fils* as each time she spoke of her son; *elle demande la parole* she requests permission to speak; *elle a la parole* she is allowed to speak; *on lui adressa la parole* (*on lui parla*) they spoke to him (her); *il ménage ses paroles* (*il parle peu*) he is chary of words; *il se ménage* he takes care of himself; *le ménagement* regard; circumspection (caution).

elle jase comme une pie (magpie) she is a chatterer; *babiller* to talk much and idly (to prate); *bavarder* to chatter (jabber); *jaser* to prattle; (slander); *causer* to hold a conversation; *sur son compte* about him (her); *de son prochain* about one's neighbor; *le marmot* the brat; *on le critique* he is criticized; *il piaille* (: *il pousse des cris aigus et répétés*) it shrieks (: it utters sharp and lengthened sounds); *la pie jacasse* the magpie is chattering; *le perroquet piaille* the parrot, etc.; *les Parisiens grasseyent* Parisians roll their *r*; *on se tutoie entre amis, frères et sœurs* thou and thee are used among friends, brothers and sisters; *on prononce selon les règles* rules are observed in pronunciation (pronouncing); *cela ne vaut pas la peine d'en parler* it is not worth mentioning; *il a le parler facile* he is a fluent speaker; *les murailles parlent* walls have ears; *les murs ont des yeux* (*des oreilles*) walls have eyes (ears); *cela parle tout seul* it needs no explanation; *ne m'en parlez pas* do not raise the question (*or* I know all about it); *il parle l'argot* he speaks slang; *voilà parler* (*c'est parler*) that's the idea! *tout le monde en parle* every one speaks of it; *il parle en maître* he speaks with authority; *si j'ose parler ainsi* if I may say so; *cet orateur parle avec connaissance de cause* that orator speaks upon good grounds; *parlez franchement* speak plainly; *parlez vertement* sharply; *il en parle tout à son aise* it is easy for him to speak; *fouler le sol de la patrie* to tread one's native heath; to trample upon; *cajoler* to deceive with; to persuade by (fair words, false persuasives); *longuement* at length.

dans un intérêt quelconque for some motive (of his own); *il caresse l'enfant* he is caressing the child; *le chien lui lèche la main* the dog licks his hand; *on le loue* he is praised; *louer* to rent; *flatter* to flatter; *saler* to salt (overcharge, fleece); *exciter* to excite; *encourager* to encourage (stimulate); *décourager* to discourage (deter); *favoriser* to favor; to countenance (further *or* promote); *constituer* to constitute; *or:* to form; to establish; *organiser* to organize; *ânonner* to falter; to utter hesitatingly; brokenly; *bredouiller* to stammer (stutter); *baragouiner* to talk gibberish; *affecter* to affect; *des dehors vertueux* feigning virtue (to be virtuous); *destiner* (*affecter*) to be reserved for; *isoler* to isolate (insulate); *or: cantonner* to canton; to allot quarters to; *on lui reproche de ne pas avoir marché immédiatement sur Verdun* they criticize his hesitancy in not advancing towards; *toutes les fois que le péril était imminent, il poussait un cri* each time his life was at stake, he would utter a cry; *ces messieurs s'adressent à celui qui ne sait*

point tirer parti d'un avantage those gentlemen refer to any one that does not avail himself of an opportunity.

Remarks on Verbs of the First Group

§ 21. *verbs* ending in *-ger* retain the *e* before *a* or *o:*
mangeant eating; *nous mangeons* we are eating

§ 22. *verbs* ending in *-cer* take *ç* (*i.e. : c* with cedilla) before *a; o : je plaçais* I placed (put):
plaçant placing (putting); *nous plaçons* we place

Oral Drill:

on l'interrogeait he was questioned; *sur les participes* on the participles; *en voyageant* while traveling; *il changeait souvent d'opinion;* he would often change his opinion; *il prononçait bien* he pronounced well; *pour abréger; abrégeons;* to be brief; let us cut short; *on lança* they threw; *il perça le mur* he made a hole through the wall *or:* an opening; *pratiquer un trou* to let in a hole; *une ouverture* an opening; *un foret* a gimlet (to bore); *lancer des circulaires* to send out circulars; *siéger* to hold sessions; *corriger* to correct; *grincer* to grit; *engager* to engage.

§ 23. *verbs* with *é* on the penultimate syllable (of the infinitive) change that *é* into *è* before an unstressed syllable (: mute syllable):

espérer to hope; *j'espère; tu espères; il espère; ils espèrent*, etc.; but: *nous espérons* we hope; *vous espérez* you hope; and in the Future and the Conditional: *il espérera; il espérerait;* he will hope; he would hope.

in poetry:

espéré-je for: *est-ce que j'espère?* do I hope? do I hope?

le travail abrège les heures work shortens the hours; *céder* to yield; *il cède en tout* he yields in everything; *il cédera* he will yield; *accélérer* to accelerate; to increase; *on accélère la vitesse* (speed) they accelerate the speed; *on l'accélérera* it will be increased; *on accélérerait le pas* we would hasten our steps; *on célèbre votre fête* your birthday anniversary is (being) celebrated; *ce héros; cette héroïne;* that hero; that heroine.
créer does not change the *é* (acute).

§ 24. *verbs* with an unaccented *e* (like: *mener* to lead) on the last but one syllable, change that *e* into *è* before a mute syllable:

elle mène she is taking (leading); but: *nous menons* we take, etc.; the last syllable being stressed; *achever* to end (complete); *il achève* he is, etc.; *nous achevons* we are finishing; *il achèvera* (: the grave *è* in the Future and Conditional); also: with *acheter* to buy; *becqueter* to peck (*donner des coups de bec:* to strike with the beak); *bourreler* to torture; *crever* to burst; *écarteler* to quarter; *geler* to freeze; *harceler* to harass; *lever* to lift; *marteler* to hammer; *modeler* to model; *peler* to peel (peel off skin); *peser* to weigh (measure); *ensemencer* to scatter seed for growth (on; in; over); *semer* to sow; *le marteau* the hammer; *la graine* the seed; *un grain de blé* a grain of wheat.

NOTE.—All compounds follow the same rule:

dégeler to thaw; *soulever* to lift (from under); *relever* to lift again; *soupeser* to try to weigh; *le poids* the weight; *amener* to bring (in, up, over, about, on and round); *emmener* to lead away (to take away); *surmener* to override; *ramener* to bring (lead) back again, etc.

§ 25

appeler to call; *jeter* to throw
j'appelle, tu appelles, il appelle, ils appellent, on appellera they will call; but: *appelons* let us call.

Observe: Verbs ending in *-ler* or *-ter* take no *è* (grave) on the penultimate, because they double the *l* or *t* before a mute syllable: also in:

on jette we throw; *vous jetez* you throw; *jette-le; jetez-le;* throw it away; and in: *amonceler* to heap up; *banqueter* to banquet; *bosseler* to emboss (dent); *botteler* (*du foin* hay) to put up in bundles; *briqueter* to lay with bricks; *cacheter* to seal; *canneler* to groove; *caqueter* to cackle; *carreler* to pave (with bricks); *chanceler* to stagger; *ciseler* to chisel; *colleter* to collar *or: saisir au collet pour renverser* to grab by the neck; to throw down; *cordeler* to twist like a cord; (*tordre en forme de corde*); to twist (twine); *craqueter* to crackle; *créneler* to tooth (embattle); *le créneau* battlement.

déchiqueter (*la peau:* the skin) to slash (cut) *or:* (*couper par taillades* to cut in slashes; *par petites parties* into small pieces); *denteler* to indent (cog); *empaqueter* to pack up; *ensorceler* to bewitch; *étinceler* to sparkle (flash); *feuilleter* (*la feuille*) to turn over the leaves; *ficeler* to tie (*: un paquet* a package); or: *attacher avec une ficelle* to tie with a string (with twine); *fureter* to ferret out; *grommeler* to grumble; *haleter* to gasp for breath; *javeler* to lay in loose sheaves; *marqueter* to inlay; *morceler* to cut up; to parcel; *museler* to muzzle (gag); *niveler* to make even (*: le niveau* the level); *râteler* to rake; (*le râteau* rake; *le râtelier* rack; or set of teeth); *renouveler* to renew; *ressemeler* to sole anew; *ruisseler* to trickle down; *souffleter* to slap (in the face); *tacheter* to speckle (to mark with speckles; to spot); *moucheter* to fleck; *voleter* to flutter; and others derived from them.

NOTE.—*créé* (*créée*) *agréée*, in verbs ending in: *-éer* and *-ier* retain the *é* (acute) or the *i:*

il créera, il crée (and the 2nd *e* is not heard); *elle prie* she prays; *elle priera* (*e* not heard), etc.

§ 26. *verbs* ending in *-oyer; -uyer* change *y* into *i* before *e* mute:

essuyer to wipe (off, out, away)	*ployer* to bend
il essuiera he will wipe	*il ploie* it bends

§ 27. *verbs* ending in *-ayer; -eyer* generally preserve the *y*:

payer to pay (for) *il paie* (*paye*) he pays

LESSON XXI

REGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND GROUP end in *-ir*:

finir to finish *finissant* finishing *fini* finished

§ 28. PRESENT INDICATIVE (*le présent de l'indicatif*):

je finis I finish (am finishing; do finish; have been finishing)
tu finis you finish (thou art finishing *or*) are finishing, etc.
il finit he finishes (is finishing; does finish, has been finishing)
nous finissons we finish, are finishing; do finish; have been finishing

vous finissez you finish, are finishing; do finish; have been finishing
ils finissent they finish; are finishing; do finish; have been finishing

Oral Practice (for reviewing):

il commence et je finis he begins and I finish; *on commence par avoir raison et on finit par avoir tort* they begin right and end wrong; *commençons par une leçon de musique* (*de chant, de flûte, de harpe*) *et finissons par une leçon de français, de lecture ou de danse* let us begin with a music lesson (singing lesson, a lesson on the flute, harp) and end with a French (*or:* reading, dancing) lesson; *ce verbe finit en -ir* this verb ends in *-ir; elle finit sa leçon* she is finishing her lesson; *il commence à travailler* he is beginning to work; *la pendule sonne les heures* the clock strikes the hours; *le corroyeur apprête le cuir* the currier dresses leather; *le tanneur prépare les cuirs avec du tan* the tanner prepares (converts the skin into) leather with tanbark; with tan; *c'est ce qui le préoccupe le moins* (*plus*) what preoccupies him the least (most); *il eut un grand succès* he gained success (achieved great success); *il acquit une grande popularité et essaya de tirer le pays de sa décadence* he acquired a great popularity and tried to save the country from its decadence; *un large plateau formé de plaines pierreuses et désertes* a vast stony and desolate plateau (elevated plain); *il administra sagement les finances* he conducted the finances wisely; *c'est une région marécageuse située à l'embouchure de* it is a marshy region (section) situated at the mouth of.

où règne un climat très chaud et extrêmement sec where a very warm and extremely dry climate prevails; *la sécheresse du climat* the dryness of the climate; *mouvements qui se succèdent d'une façon régulière* (*irrégulière*) rhythmical movements (: marked by some regular *or* irregular recurrence); *d'une façon mesurée* measuredly; *le chien jappe* the dog yelps; *le chien aboie* (barks); *sans cesse* unceasingly; *le vider* to empty it; *on nettoie les verres* the glasses are cleaned; *nettoyer un appartement* to clean out an apartment; *le vider* to take everything out; *on le balaie* it is (being) swept; *on ancre* (*jette l'ancre*) they cast anchor; *la cire à cacheter* sealing-wax; *les vents amoncellent le sable* the winds pile up the sand; *entasser* to accumulate (heap up, pack together); *comment s'appelle ce monsieur* (*: se nommer*)*?* how is the gentleman called? *le nom* the name; *le prénom* the first name; or *le petit nom; le nom de baptême* the Christian name; *osciller* to oscillate; *entre deux partis* (to waver) between two parties; *un travail en bosse sur la pierre* relief work on stones (ornament with bosses); *cabos-*

ser de l'argenterie to dent silverware; *semé de bosses* dented; *rechercher avec ardeur* (*tâcher d'obtenir*) to search arduously; to try to get; *sa conscience le tourmente* his conscience torments him; *avidemment* eagerly; *avec un souffle* with a breath; *émettre un son* to emit a sound (of the breath); *hors d'haleine* out of breath; or *essoufflé; adresser un hommage ému à la mémoire de tous les enfants de la France morts au champ d'honneur* to render profound homage to the memory of all the Sons of France who died on the field of honor; *pencher d'un côté* (*de l'autre*) to lean on one side (on the other).

Oral Drill:

on baisse (*hausse*) *le toit* they are lowering (raising) the roof; *on le diminue en hauteur* they lessen the height of it; *modeler en cire* to model in wax; *boucher les fentes* to fill the cracks; *tirer le sucre* to extract sugar from; *savonner* (*le linge*) to soap (the linen); to lather one's face; *le visage* the face; *respiration oppressée* oppressed breathing; *thème latin* Latin exercise; *l'exercice est un devoir pour se familiariser avec les règles* the exercise is a drill to become familiar with rules; *apprises en classe* studied in class; *la leçon* the lesson; *le, la, les; la finit-elle* (*: est-ce qu'elle la finit?*) is she finishing it? *ne la finit-elle pas* or: *est-ce qu'elle ne la finit pas?* is she not finishing it? *je la finis* I am finishing it; *on les finit toujours à la même heure* we always finish them at the same hour; *il le finit, n'est-ce pas?* he is finishing it, is he not? *mon thème est fini* my exercise is finished; *j'ai fini mon travail* my work is done; *un travail achevé* work completed; *il termine la lettre en vous présentant ses meilleures amitiés* he ends the letter (while) offering you his best regards; *c'est fini* it is over; *la leçon est finie* the lesson is over; *à moitié fait qui commence bien* a good beginning is half the battle; *cela n'en finit pas* there is no end to it; *la moitié d'une pomme* the half of an apple; *une heure et demie* an hour and a half; half-past one; *il y a un commencement à tout* there is a beginning in all things; *n'a pas fini qui commence* the beginning is not everything; *pour en finir* (*en résumé*) to conclude (to sum up, on the whole); *c'est la rentrée des classes* it is the beginning of the Term; *c'est le coup de grâce* it is the finishing stroke; *charité bien ordonnée commence par soi-même* charity begins at home; *il est absent au moment de l'appel* he is absent at roll-call; *choisir* to choose; *l'heure est mal choisie* the hour is (not well selected) badly chosen; *achever ses études* to complete one's studies.

§ 29. IMPERFECT (Indicative):

je finissais I was finishing (used to finish), I finished, had been finishing

tu finissais you were finishing (used to finish), you finished, had been finishing

il finissait he was finishing (used to finish), he finished, had been finishing

nous finissions we were finishing (used to finish), we finished, had been finishing

vous finissiez you were finishing (used to finish), you finished, had been finishing

ils finissaient they were finishing (used to finish), they finished, had been finishing

Observe that *-iss-* is inserted between the stem and the ending.

Exercice de Conversation:

si nous finissions! suppose we finish now (: better finish); *il finissait de bonne heure* he used to finish early; *je croyais qu'elle finissait à midi* I thought she finished at twelve; *il n'en finissait pas* he never stopped; *s'arrêter* to stop (*cesser de parler*); (*cesser de marcher* to stop walking); *comme il finissait et que j'étais prêt* as he was finishing and I was ready. Note that *que* is often omitted in English: *quand on finissait, et qu'on était ensemble* when we finished our work and were together; *que ne le finissiez-vous* why did you not finish it then? *on commençait où vous finissiez* we (they) began where you ended *or* (: we would begin, etc.); *son livre est commencé depuis longtemps* his (her) book was started (begun) long ago; *si vous finissiez votre leçon, j'en serais content* (*e*) if you should finish your lesson, I would be satisfied; *je ne savais si elle finissait à onze heures ou à midi* I did not know whether she finished at eleven or at noon; *j'ai cru qu'elle finissait avant vous* I thought (she would finish before you *or* she used to finish, etc.) she did finish before you.

Exercice de Conversation:

nous finirons de lire à six heures we shall stop reading at six; *je croyais finir avant votre arrivée* I expected to finish before you came; *c'était à n'en pas finir* there was no end to it; *c'est fini maintenant* it is over now; *c'est une affaire finie* let us forget it (: one must forget it); *au bout de l'aune* (ell) *il faut le drap* (cloth) everything has an end; *il a mangé son pain blanc le premier* (he ate his white bread first) the happiest of his days are over; *on*

est heureux quand on en est quitte it will be well when finished; *ses beaux jours sont passés* his happiest days have gone: are of the past; *ce sont des discours à perte d'haleine* (until one is out of breath) those speeches are too long; *un ouvrage de longue haleine* (*lequel demande un long temps*) a work requiring much of one's time; *courte haleine* short breath; *perdre l'haleine* to get out of breath; *la reprendre* to recover it; *achever ses études* to complete one's studies; *un homme d'expédition* (quick in his business); *il termine rapidement ses affaires* he finishes up his work quickly.

§ 30. Past Definite (*le passé défini*):

je finis I finished	*tu finis* you finished
il finit he finished	*nous finîmes* we finished
vous finîtes you finished	*ils finirent* they finished

Note that it is mostly used in books.

il finit hier he finished yesterday; *hier matin* yesterday morning; *la pluie discontinua* the rain ceased; *elle le finit en 1880* (*mil huit cent quatre-vingt*) she finished it in 1880 (one thousand eight hundred and eighty); *ils recommencèrent de plus belle* they began again worse than ever; *elle s'arrêta au* (*plus fort*) *plus beau de son récit* she stopped at the most interesting part of her narrative; *la montagne enfanta une souris* the mountain brought forth a mouse (the whole thing ended in smoke).

Oral Drill:

réussir to succeed; *l'absence refroidit* (*: attiédit* makes lukewarm) *le cœur* absence cools the heart; *il est complètement rétabli* he is completely recovered; *s'il est pincé, il est puni* when he is caught he is punished; *on fait des notes sur un texte pour l'éclaircir* notes are made on a text to elucidate it; *ce toit nous garantit* (*protège*) *de la pluie* this roof shelters us (protects) from rain; *affermir le manche* to fix the handle firmly; *subir des métamorphoses* to undergo changes (metamorphoses); *chaque saison* each (every) season; *l'année précédente* the preceding year; *subir la peine de la transportation* to undergo the punishment (penalty) of deportation; *attendri par* moved by; *muni de* provided with; *suivant l'office qu'il remplit* according to the duties he fulfills; *établir une différence entre eux et nous* to establish a difference between them and us; *ce genre de vie l'abrutit* that mode of life besotted him; *une occasion favorable* a favorable opportunity; *le dédain, l'indifférence* disdain, indifference; *bondir de joie* to leap for joy;

garnir d'un coussin to garnish (to decorate, to adorn) with a cushion; *or:* a cushion footstool; *or: un pouf* an ottoman seat; *faire un pouf* to disappear without paying one's debts; *une pomme pourrie* a rotten apple; *un habit tout poudreux (couvert de poussière)* a coat covered with dust; *épaissir* to thicken (make thick); *l'endurcissement* the hardness (of heart).

l'épaississement the thickening (-ness); *on courroie (soude) le fer* we solder iron; *on le forge* we hammer it; *calfeutrer une porte* to fill the cracks of a door; *il fonda une école fameuse* he founded a celebrated school; *la déportation* deportation (transportation); exile; *remarques explicatives* explanatory remarks; *expliquer une leçon* to explain the lesson; *assister à une réunion* to attend a meeting; *méthodiquement* methodically; *solidement* solidly; firmly; *saisir la nuance* to discern the shade; *amincir un bâton aux deux bouts* to whittle a stick (to cut down) at both ends; *indiquer le chemin* to point out the way (to show); *limiter* to limit (bound); *restreindre* to restrict (confine); *déterminer la limite* to set a limit; to fix a boundary; *prendre pour soi au détriment des autres* to appropriate to one's self to the exclusion of others; *la borne* the boundary; *le rapport (la ressemblance)* the connection (the similarity); *le terme* the end.

§ 31. PAST INDEFINITE (Perfect) (*le passé indéfini*):

j'ai fini I (have) finished	*tu as fini* you (have) finished
il a fini he (has) finished	*nous avons fini* we (have) finished
vous avez fini you (have) finished	*ils ont fini* they (have) finished

Note that this tense is frequently used in conversation.

Practice with: *le (l'); la (l'); les; en* (some; any); and if object precedes (Rule, Lesson XVII) the Past Participle is inflected (varies).

je l'ai fini I finished it; *je l'ai finie* I finished it; *j'en ai fini un* or *une* I finished one (of them); *je les ai finis* or *je les ai finies* I (have) finished them; *les a-t-il finis* or *finies* or: *est-ce qu'il les a finis* (or: *finies*)? did he finish them?

As previously stated the Past Participle agrees in number and gender with the preceding pronouns (*en* being excepted) and the object *must* precede the verb (plus the Past Participle); the object may be a noun or pronoun.

Exercice de Conversation:

ce sont les exercices qu'il a finis those are the exercises he finished; *c'est* or *ce sont les lettres qu'elle a finies* those are the letters she

finished; *avez-vous fini votre exercice? Oui, monsieur, je l'ai fini* did you finish your exercise? Yes, Sir; I did; *avez-vous fini votre lettre? Oui, monsieur; je l'ai finie* have you finished your letter? Yes, Sir; I have; *l'avez-vous fini* (*e*) did you finish it? *n'est-ce pas que vous les avez finis* (*-es*) haven't you finished them? *est-ce qu'ils n'ont pas fini leurs leçons?* haven't they finished their lessons (*for:* is it possible that they haven't finished, etc.?); *les ont-elles finies* have they finished them; did they finish them? *ne les ont-elles pas finies?* haven't they finished them? *attendez, j'ai fini* wait, I have done; *il a mal fini* he died miserably; *elle a fini par avoir tort* (she ended wrong) she finally was wrong; *as-tu fini, Jean* are you through, John? (also: with irony); *c'est qu'ils ont fini* they must have finished; *il a fini par avoir raison* he was right at last; *c'est fini* (*c'en est fini*) it is all over; *c'en est fait d'eux* they are done for; *elle a amené cette affaire à bien* she ended the matter satisfactorily; *blêmir* to blench; to grow pale; to turn pale; *pâlir* (*devenir pâle*) to become pale; to grow pale; *il joue de l'accordéon à contre-cœur* he plays the accordeon reluctantly; *il pince de la guitare* (*de la harpe*) he plays the guitar (the harp); *il touche du piano* he plays (on) the piano; *il est pâle; il est blême;* he is pale; he is very pale; *blême de colère* white (pale) with anger; *il corrigea le défaut* he corrected the defect; *cet homme a mal tourné* that man has gone wrong.

il a manqué son travail (*mal exécuté*, etc.) he made a failure of his work; *or:* he did his work badly; *la pyramide aboutit en pointe* the pyramid has a pointed top *or:* comes to a point; *il a cinq centimes de reste* or: *il lui reste cinq centimes* he has one cent over; *l'héritier présomptif de la couronne porte le nom de* the heir presumptive of the Crown bears the name of; *le rejeton d'une dynastie vaincue et détrônée* the scion of a conquered and dethroned dynasty; *attacher quelque chose à* to fasten (make fast; to tie; to fix; to suspend, to bind) something to; *blanchir les cheveux; du linge;* to whiten the hair; (to wash) linen; *il joue son dernier atout* he is playing his last trump; *il remplit son verre de bière* he is filling his glass with beer; *agir* to act; *à ceux dont il s'agit* to whom it is referred; *il guérit les névralgies, la paralysie* he cures neuralgia, paralysis; *première partie de la tâche* first part of the task; *un travail continu* continuous work; *la terminaison du verbe* the ending of the verb; *un mot variable* word which is variable; *le radical* the root; *il y a une similitude partielle de cette image à l'autre* there is a partial similitude between this image and the other (one).

§ 32. REDUNDANT PAST *seldom used:*

quand elle a eu fini when she had finished (for:—she had *or* got finished.

Oral Drill:

l'ancien monde the Old World; *recueils de morceaux choisis dans les œuvres des poètes* selections from the poets; *le nouveau monde* the New World; *un fer rougi au feu* iron heated on the fire; *fer travaillé au marteau* iron beaten with a hammer; *fer battu* wrought iron; *fer à friser* hair curling-iron; *les dispositions prévues dans la présente circulaire sont applicables* the provisions set forth (made) in the present circular are applicable, fit to (*or* for); *il s'est proposé de réhabiliter la mémoire de* he proposed (had in view) to vindicate the memory of; *il est chargé du jugement des affaires criminelles les plus graves* his special duty (office) is to decide the most serious criminal cases; *il profite d'une invention dont il n'est pas l'auteur* he makes use of an invention which is not his own.

§ 33. PAST ANTERIOR (*le passé antérieur*):

j'eus fini I had finished	*tu eus fini* you had finished
il eut fini he had finished	*nous eûmes fini* we had finished
vous eûtes fini you had finished	*ils eurent fini* they had finished

NOTE.—Action accomplished *immediately* before another past action.

quand j'eus fini, je sortis after I had finished, I went out (after having finished; my work done, I went out).

Tense mostly used with conjunctions of time:

aussitôt qu'ils eurent fini, ils recommencèrent as soon as they had finished, they began again; *à peine eurent-ils fini qu'ils recommencèrent* scarcely had they finished than they started anew.

LESSON XXII

§ 34. PLUPERFECT (*le plus-que-parfait*):

j'avais fini I had finished
tu avais fini you had finished (thou hadst, etc.)
il avait fini he had finished
nous avions fini we had finished
vous aviez fini you had finished
ils avaient fini they had finished

NOTE.—Tense often used with *si* (if):

and *lorsque, quand* (when); after; *je croyais; j'ai cru que* (I thought) *vous aviez fini* I thought you had finished; *elle avait fini sa leçon, quand il entra* (*rentra*) her lesson was over, when he entered (came home); *s'il ne l'avait pas fini, il était le deuxième* if he had not finished it, he would have been the second (for: *il aurait été le deuxième*); *je ne savais si elle avait fini* I did not know whether she had finished; *si vous aviez fini avant moi, je serais sorti* if you had (*or:* had you) finished before me, I would have left (gone out); *elle croyait qu'ils les avaient finis* (*-es*) she thought they had finished them; *on avait toujours fini après vous* we always finished after you; *elle croyait les avoir finis* (*-ies*): *elle croyait qu'elle les avait, etc.* she thought she had finished them:

Exercice de Conversation:

aux deux bouts at both ends; *toucher par un bout* to touch at one end; *aux deux bouts* at both extremities; *appauvrir un pays* to impoverish a country; *on attendra le fait accompli pour croire à une telle chose* we shall await the accomplished fact before believing (in) such a thing; *on nous a ravi ce bien* that property has been taken from us; *enlever de force* to seize forcibly; *établir l'égalité* to establish equality; *agir avec un grand ménagement auprès d'eux* to act with great circumspection with them; *alourdir les vêtements* to render the clothes heavier; *l'eau les appesantit* water makes them heavier; *lourd* heavy; sultry; *saisir à propos* to seize opportunely; *aplatir des métaux* to flatten metals; *on les rend plats* they are made flat; *réussir à bouleverser les réseaux de chemin de fer* to succeed in disconnecting the railroad lines; *bouleverser l'esprit* to upset the mind; *saisir un oiseau au passage* to catch a bird on the wing; *loin de s'offenser des critiques, il les provoquait pour en faire son profit* far from being provoked at his critics, he encouraged them to his own profit.

§ 35. FUTURE (*le futur*):

je finirai I will *or* shall finish
tu finiras you shall *or* will finish (thou shalt *or* wilt finish)
il finira he shall *or* will finish
nous finirons we will *or* shall finish
vous finirez you shall *or* will finish
ils finiront they shall *or* will finish

NOTE.—*aller* (to go) is often followed by a verb in the Infinitive (and referring to a near future):

je vais finir I will finish: I am going to finish; *je commencerai où vous finirez* I shall begin where you leave off; *dites-moi à quelle heure vous finirez* tell me at what time you finish: (when you finish); *quand tu finiras, je finirai* when you finish, so shall I; *je suis sûr qu'il finira avant vous* I am sure he will finish before you; *il croit (qu'il finira) finir après elle* he believes he will finish after her; *il ne sait s'il le finira* he does not know whether he will finish it; *il ne le finira de sitôt* he will not finish it so soon; (he may not finish it for a long while); *c'est à qui le finira le premier (la première)* every one wishes to finish first; *j'en finirai tout de suite avec lui* I shall get rid of him at once; *en finirez-vous avec vos sottises? (il ne finira jamais)* will you stop calling names? (he will never stop); *il finira par les persuader* he at length will persuade them; *quand je serai à Paris, je le finirai* when I am in Paris I will finish it; *s'il a le temps, il les finira* if he (will have) has *or* if he should have the time, he will finish them; *quiconque ne le finira pas* whoever does not finish it; *quant à elle, elle ne les finira point* as for her, she will not finish them; *plus on finira de bonne heure, plus tôt on partira* the sooner we finish, the sooner we leave; *j'ai entendu dire à votre frère que vous finirez à six heures* I heard your brother say that you will finish by six o'clock; *ni l'un ni l'autre ne finiront avant moi* neither one will finish before me; cf.: *j'ai à finir* I have to finish; I have got to finish; *voulez-vous finir?* will you finish? *je vais finir* I am about to finish; *je dois finir bientôt* I am to finish soon; *attendez, j'ai bientôt fini* wait, I will soon be done; *voulez-vous finir?* will you be quiet? *il est sur le point de mourir; il touche à sa fin* he is at the point of death *or:* he is at death's door.

Oral Drill:

choisir une nouvelle sphère d'action dans to choose a new sphere of action in; *démolir en partie des retranchements* to demolish a part of the retrenchments; *attaquer dans ses derniers retranchements* to attack (anyone) in his last stronghold; *se retrancher dans les remparts* to intrench one's self within the ramparts; *les prés reverdissent au printemps* the meadows become green again in the spring; *en certains pays* in certain countries; *alléger un volume* to lighten a volume (bulk; mass); *alléger un poids (: le rendre plus léger)* to lighten a weight (to make it lighter); *remplir à la fois* to fill at the same time; *applaudir une pièce* to applaud a play (selection); *applaudir à vos succès* to applaud your success; *il s'applaudit d'avoir réussi* he glories in his own success; *la mise*

en ordre des feuilles imprimées the classification of printed sheets; *avec soin* carefully; with care; *ne les a-t-on pas encore finis* (*-ies*) are they not finished yet *or* have they not been finished? *approfondir une question* to fathom a question; *sur la ruine d'autrui* upon the ruin of others; *saisir le cheval par la bride* to seize the horse by the bridle; *vert* (*e*) green; *ils sont mûrs* they are ripe; *mûrir* to ripen; to become ripe; *salir* to soil; to become soiled *or* dirty; *bâtir* to build; *couler de source* to flow from its spring; *l'eau jaillit* the water spouts (out); gushes (out); *l'insomnie l'anéantit* insomnia weakens him extremely; *exténuer de fatigue* to overcome with fatigue; *on achève une chose commencée* we finish what is begun; *saisir le poignet* to seize the wrist; *il travaille à la journée* he works by the day; *agir doucement* to act gently.

§ 36. FUTURE PAST (*le futur antérieur*):

j'aurai fini I will *or* shall have finished
tu auras fini you shall *or* will have finished (thou shalt, etc.)
il aura fini he shall *or* will have finished
nous aurons fini we will *or* shall have finished
vous aurez fini you shall *or* will have finished
ils auront fini they shall or will have finished

NOTE.—After *quand; aussitôt que, dès que*, etc., use the Future Past when an idea of futurity is implied; after all temporal clauses as above.

aussitôt que vous aurez fini, j'aurai fini as soon as you (have finished) are free, so shall I; *j'aurai fini* (*j'ai fini*) *dans cinq minutes* I will have finished in five minutes (: within, etc.); *il aura fini quand vous viendrez* he will have finished when you come; *il partira aussitôt que vous aurez fini* he will leave as soon as you have finished; *c'est qu'il aura fini* he must have finished (by this time); *c'est que vous l'aurez perdu* you may have lost it: perhaps you did lose it; *il croit finir demain* (*il croit qu'il finira demain*) or: *il croit qu'il aura fini demain* he thinks he will have finished to-morrow *or* he thinks he will finish, etc.; *quand vous croirez avoir fini, dites-le moi* when you think you have done, (do) tell me.

§ 37. REDUNDANT PAST (*seldom used*):

dès qu'elle aura eu fini or *cessé* as soon as she has (will have) finished.

§ 38. CONDITIONAL PRESENT *or* FUTURE (*le conditionnel présent* ou *futur*):

je finirais I would *or* should finish
tu finirais you should *or* would finish (thou shouldst *or* wouldst, etc.)
il finirait he should *or* would finish
nous finirions we would *or* should finish
vous finiriez you should *or* would finish
ils finiraient they should *or* would finish

NOTE.—This tense generally answers to the Imperfect (Indicative) with: *si* (if) or: *vice-versa.*

je finirais, si j'avais le temps or: *si j'avais le temps, je finirais* I would finish if I had the time: *or:* should I have time I would finish (were I to have *or:* if I should have *or:* should I happen *or:* if I should happen to have, etc.); *je ne savais si elle finirait* I did not know if she would finish (whether she would finish or not); *si j'étais de vous, je le finirais* if I were in your place, I would finish it; *quand même elle la finirait* even if she should finish it; *même quand nous croyons finir* even when we think we are through; *je ne sais si on le finirait avant vous* I do not know if we can finish it ahead of you; *ils ne finiraient pas, s'ils voulaient tout dire* it would be an endless narrative if they wished to tell all; *qui ne le finirait* who wouldn't finish it? *elles le finiraient bien* they would gladly finish it; *il le finirait, qu'elle n'en serait point satisfaite* he might finish it, and yet she wouldn't be pleased; *si on avait le temps, on le finirait* if we had the time, we would finish it *or* should we, etc.; cf.: *il ne voulait pas le finir* he *wouldn't* finish it; *moi! ne pas le finir* (*moi! je ne le finirais pas*) I wouldn't finish it! *quelle folie que de le finir* how foolish to finish it! *oh! si je le finissais avant lui* oh! if I could (only) finish it before he does; *je voudrais bien le finir* how gladly I would finish it!

Exercice de Conversation:

il ne saurait le finir he couldn't finish it; *je désirerais avoir fini* or: *je voudrais bien avoir, etc.* I wish I had finished; *le mieux est d'en finir* better be done (be through with it); *j'aime mieux finir que de commencer* I would rather finish than begin; *débuter par la comédie* to start with comedy; *à titre d'essai* as an experiment; *sommet arrondi* rounded summit (rounding summit); *noircir* to black; to blacken; *tout en noir* everything looks black before

him; *il passe du blanc au noir* (*d'une extrémité à l'autre*) he goes to extremes; *au delà de toute mesure* to extremes; *tout à fait au bout* (*à l'extrême frontière*) at the furthermost end (of the frontier); *les blés mûrissent* the wheat is getting ripe; *les fruits sont mûrs* the fruit is ripe; *blâmer; désapprouver;* to blame; to disapprove (of); *jaunir* to turn yellow; to dye yellow; *sa peau jaunit* his skin is becoming yellow; *la jaunisse* the jaundice.

§ 39. Conditional Past (First Form) (*le passé du conditionnel*):

j'aurais fini I would *or* should have finished
tu aurais fini you would *or* should have finished (thou wouldst, etc.)
il aurait fini he would *or* should have finished
nous aurions fini we would *or* should have finished
vous auriez fini you would *or* should have finished
ils auraient fini they would *or* should have finished

Oral Drill:

plutôt rather (with a verb); *quoi! il aurait fini* what! he has finished (so soon); *quand même il les aurait finis* even if he had finished them; *ne les auriez-vous pas finis* would you not have finished them? *il disait qu'il aurait fini plus tard; plus tôt* he said he would have finished later; sooner; *il fait un peu froid* rather cold; *je croyais qu'il aurait fini plus tôt* I thought he would have finished sooner; *si j'avais eu mon exercice, je l'aurais fini* if I had had my exercise, I would have finished it; *elle l'aurait fini, si elle avait pu* she would have finished it, if she could; *elle l'aurait fini, si elle avait voulu* she could have finished it, if she had wanted to.

§ 40. Conditional Past (Second Form):

j'eusse fini I would *or* should have finished
tu eusses fini you would *or* should have finished (thou wouldst, etc.)
il eût fini he would *or* should have finished
nous eussions fini we would *or* should have finished
vous eussiez fini you would *or* should have finished
ils eussent fini they would *or* should have finished

Drill:

eussé-je fini (in poetry: would that I had finished!) *or:* had I finished! for: *si j'avais, etc.*

NOTE.—After *si* (if) the 2d Form (rarely used) of the Conditional *replaces* the Pluperfect (Indicative):

si vous eussiez fini, je vous aurais (or *eusse*) *payé;* for: *si vous aviez fini, etc.* if you had finished, I would have paid you; *si elle eût pu venir* (if she should have come) if she had been able to come; *elles n'eussent jamais fini, s'il n'eût été présent* they would never have finished, if he had not been present.

§ 41. Note the *ne* after *si* (unless); and also after *depuis que, il y a (voilà) . . . que:*

il y a cinq jours que je ne vous ai vu (e); for: *je ne vous ai point vu depuis cinq jours* I haven't seen you for five days *or* it is five days since I saw you;

But: in other tenses use: *ne . . . pas.* See with *s'en falloir* and Part IV, § 36.

§ 42. In a subordinate clause (the main clause being negative in meaning):

il ne nie pas qu'il ne soit son frère he does not deny that he is his brother: cf.: *il n'ignore pas que je suis son frère* or: *il sait fort bien que, etc.* he knows very well I am his brother.

§ 43. And in certain independent clauses in negative questions implying usually an affirmative:

time: *il ne l'oubliera de sa vie* he will not forget it while he lives; cf.: *on ne l'a dit à (qui que ce soit) personne* it was kept secret; *si je ne me trompe* if I mistake not; *elle n'est pas (plus avancée) plus riche qu'elle l'était* she is not richer than she was; *qui ne comprend cela?* who does not understand that?

§ 44. A negative interrogative implying affirmation is followed by *ne;* also after: *autre que:*

n'importe no matter; *si ce n'est vous* except you; *ne pas être* not to be; *content de ne pas voir; de n'avoir pas vu; de ne pas l'avoir vu* pleased not to see; not to have seen; not to have seen it *or* him; *non qu'il ne le fasse* not that he does not do it; *que ne ferait la mère pour son enfant?* what would a mother not do for her child?

§ 45. Negation implied:

a-t-elle un ami qui ne soit infidèle has she one friend who is not unfaithful? *ces navires venant de X. eussent eu tout avantage à entrer dans le port* every advantage was offered to those boats entering the harbor from X.; *on ne voit pas pourquoi la flottille eût allongé son voyage, en passant par* one does not comprehend why the flotilla on her way to X. should have lengthened her course; *de courte durée* of short duration.

§ 46. IMPERATIVE (*l'impératif*):

finis finish (thou) *finissons* let us finish
finissez finish (you *or* ye)
qu'il finisse let him finish; *qu'elle finisse* let her finish; *qu'ils finissent* let them finish.

Oral Drill:

finis-le finish it; *ne le finis pas* do not finish it; *finis-la* finish it; *ne la finis pas* do not finish it; *finissons-le* let us finish it; *ne le (la) finissez pas* do not finish it; *ne le (la) finissons pas* let us not finish it; *ne le finis pas demain* do not finish it to-morrow; *voyons! finissez* now! out with it; speak out! *finissons-en avec cela* or *achevez* make an end of it; cf.: *mettons la dernière main à* let us put the finishing touch to (on); *cessons de lire* let us stop (reading) our reading; *restons-en là* let us leave off (there).

§ 47. PERFECT:

aie fini tout à l'heure finish your work shortly.

Exercice de Conversation:

ne remplissons pas nos verres let us not fill our glasses; *obéir* (*à*): *obéissons à nos maîtres* let us obey our masters (teachers); *désobéir* (*à*): *ne lui désobéissons pas* let us not disobey him (her); *on le punit tous les jours* he is punished every day; *bâtissons* let us build; *unissons nos voix à celles* let us unite our voices with those; *n'agissez pas* do not act; *choisissez l'un ou l'autre* choose either one; *il faut qu'il polisse ce morceau de bois* he must smooth that piece of wood; *à l'aide de la plane* with a plane; *ne le salissez pas* do not soil it; *qu'on le saisisse* let some one hold him.

§ 48. SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT or FUTURE, etc. (*le présent du subjonctif*):

que je finisse that I may *or* can finish
que tu finisses that you may *or* can finish
qu'il finisse that he may *or* can finish
que nous finissions that we may *or* can finish
que vous finissiez that you may *or* can finish
qu'ils finissent that they may *or* can finish
and other forms in English, Lesson XII.

Exercice de Conversation:

it faut que je le (la) finisse à midi I must finish it by noon; it is necessary that I, etc.; *elle désire que vous les finissiez* she wishes you to finish them; *il ne faut pas que vous élargissiez ce détenu* you must not release that prisoner (convict) or: you should not set him at liberty; *il importe que vous vous réunissiez (sous la présidence de)* it is important that you should meet (under the presidency of); *il est impossible qu'il le finisse* it is impossible for him to finish it; cf.: *il est impossible de le finir* it is impossible to finish it.

§ 49. IMPERFECT (of the Subjunctive) *l'imparfait du subjonctif:*

que je finisse that I might finish (and other forms in English)
que tu finisses that you might finish
qu'il finît that he might finish
que nous finissions that we might finish
que vous finissiez that you might finish
qu'ils finissent that they might finish

NOTE.—Tense mostly used in books; also at Lesson XII.

Oral Drill:

ils n'ont pas mal travaillé they worked rather hard; *le succès final dépend de* the final success depends on; *raidir le bras* to stiffen one's arm; *ils seront punis de leurs actes* they will be punished for their acts; *eux seuls seront responsables si, en fin de compte, il y avait faute* they alone will be held responsible if, at the final account, a mistake is found; *tous les intéressés* to the interested parties; *accord accepté par* understanding between; *on choisit l'arbitre pour prononcer dans un différend* a referee has been selected to pronounce his judgment upon a dispute; *garanti par*

une compagnie d'assurance guaranteed by an insurance company; *frémir de crainte* to shudder with fear; *cela a été une négociation bien menée que celle qui a abouti à une entente* this negociation has been well thought out to have led to an understanding; *se grouper autour du drapeau* to rally around the flag; *pourrir* to rot; *son étoile pâlit* his star is on the wane; *corrompre* to corrupt; *l'eau pourrit le bois* water corrupts wood; *une dent cariée* (*gâtée*) decayed tooth; *établir un système* to establish a system; *il n'en finit pas de retourner ces pièces d'identité* he keeps turning over and over those identification papers (documents).

§ 50. SUBJUNCTIVE PAST (*le passé du subjonctif*):

que j'aie fini that I may (can) have finished
que tu aies fini that you may (can) have finished
qu'il ait fini that he may (can) have finished
que nous ayons fini that we may (can) have finished
que vous ayez fini that you may (can) have finished
qu'ils aient fini that they may (can) have finished
and other forms in English.

elle doute que vous l'ayez fini she doubts that you (may) have finished it; *il est le seul qui l'ait fini* he is the only one that may have finished it; *ce sera la seule qui les ait finis* (*-es*) she will be the only one to have finished them; cf.: *ce sera la seule qui les a finis* she is the only one that (has) finished them.

§ 51. SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT:

que j'eusse fini that I might have finished
que tu eusses fini that you might have finished
qu'il eût fini that he might have finished
que nous eussions fini that we might have finished
que vous eussiez fini that you might have finished
qu'ils eussent fini that they might have finished
and other forms in English; also Passive, Intransitive and Reflexive verbs.

je ne savais pas que vous l'eussiez fini I did not know you had finished it; *elle aurait été la seule qui l'eût fini* she is the only one who might have done it; *c'était la seule dame qui les eût finis* (*-es*) she was the only lady who had finished them; *je n'aurais pas voulu qu'ils l'eussent fini* I would not have wished them to finish it; *elle ne croira jamais qu'il l'eût fini avant elle* she will never believe he had finished it before she did.

Oral Drill on *finir* and its equivalents:

en France tout finit par des chansons in France every topic is turned into a ballad; *de bout en bout* (*d'un bout à l'autre*) from beginning to end (from one end to the other); *fin de siècle* up to date; *avant qu'il soit un mois* before a month is over; *ce fut le coup de grâce* it was the finishing stroke; *en définitive* after all; *il a le bras long* he has great influence; *il y met la dernière main* he is putting the finishing touches to it; *un coup de collier; un coup d'épaule* put the shoulder to the wheel; or: *venez en aide* come and help; *un dernier coup de collier* let us make a final effort; *encore un coup* one more lift (push); *donnez-lui un coup de main* give him a hand *or* help; *le bois tortu fait le feu droit* the end justifies the means; *du secours* help; *la fin couronne l'œuvre* all is well that ends well (: the evening crowns the day); *le travail mène à tout; au succès;* work leads to everything; to success; *sans en faire profession* without making a profession of it; *choisir le moment favorable* to select (choose) the propitious moment; *produits finis* finished products; *d'un bout à l'autre de la route* from one end of the route to the other.

Exercice de Conversation:

demi-fini half finished; *matière première* raw material; *venir en aide à l'exécution d'une entreprise* to come to (the assistance) assist in carrying out an enterprise; *cela tend à justifier un gain plus ou moins honnête* that tends to justify a result more or less honest; *réfléchir* to think (over); to ponder: *c'est de l'intérêt général seul qu'il s'est inspiré* he was inspired by general interest; general interest alone prompted him; *d'une grande perfection* of great perfection; *une bonne chose susceptible de résultats féconds* a good thing that may bring fertile results; prolific results; *guérir un malade* to cure a patient; *établir un gouvernement* to establish a government; *le froid engourdit les membres* the cold benumbs the limbs; *l'infirmière ne cesse de prodiguer au soldat blessé des soins éclairés et dévoués* the nurse does not cease to lavish her capable and devoted care on the wounded soldier; *une œuvre réfléchie* thoughtful work; *voilà l'atelier où s'exécute ce travail* there is the work-shop (studio) where that work is carried on; *la paresse* (*l'oisiveté*) *engourdit l'esprit* laziness (indolence) dulls the mind; *attendrir un chou* to soften a cabbage; *la gelée a transformé ces eaux en une route solide* the frost has transformed the water into a solid path; *la leçon est finie* the lesson is over; *j'admire le fini de son œuvre* I admire the polish of his work; *ils sont brouillés, tout*

est fini they are no longer friends; *il a des bras qui n'en finissent pas* his arms are unusually long; *c'est une tâche qui n'en finit pas* an everlasting task; *c'est un joueur fini* he is a shrewd player; *cessez de (finissez de) plaisanter* stop joking; *un fin connaisseur* an expert connoisseur; *voilà la fin de la leçon; du livre; de l'année;* this is (there is) the end of the lesson; of the book; of the year; *il franchit furtivement la frontière* he stealthily crossed the frontier.

des traits fins delicate features; *de l'or pur* pure gold; *elle a la taille fine* she is slender; *ils savent le fin du fin* they are acquainted with (they know) the most secret springs of affairs; *c'est le grand finale du dernier acte* it is the great termination (concluding part) of the last act; *à bon chat, bon rat* or *fin contre fin* diamond cut diamond; *il est fin comme l'ambre* amber he is shrewd; *fin comme un cheveu* fine as hair; *l'or brut* ore; *il établit un puissant frein à* he put a powerful check on; *la finesse d'une toile d'araignée* the fineness of a cobweb; *un supplément à la fin d'un ouvrage* supplement at the end of a volume; *beau joueur* great player; *rupture passagère* of a short separation; *muni d'une mèche* having (a wick) a lock (of hair); match; *une semaine interminable* an endless week; *la paresse abrutit* laziness abases the mind; *le paresseux s'abrutit* a lazy person becomes stupid; *ennemis irréconciliables* irreconcilable enemy; *le conflit ne prit fin que vers* 1918 the conflict only ended about 1918; *terminer à l'amiable* to settle a quarrel amicably; *on l'a converti* he has been converted; *on aplanit les chemins (on les rend unis)* they level the roads (make them smooth); *un clair avertissement* an intelligible notice; *un nouvel orage sévit* another raging storm; *gazon uni* smooth lawn.

LESSON XXIII

Recevoir to receive (conjugated in full and for practice):

recevant receiving — *reçu* received

§ 52. Present Indicative (*le présent de l'indicatif*):

je reçois I receive (am receiving; do receive; have been receiving)
tu reçois you receive (are receiving; do receive; have been receiving)
il reçoit he receives (is receiving; does receive; has been receiving)
nous recevons we receive (are receiving; do receive; have been receiving)

vous recevez you receive (are receiving; do receive; have been receiving)

ils reçoivent they receive (are receiving; do receive; have been receiving)

Oral Drill:

je le reçois I receive it (him); *je la reçois* I receive it (her); *j'en reçois* I receive some; *en recevez-vous* do you receive any? *les recevez-vous* or *est-ce que vous les recevez?* do you receive them? *en reçoit-il* or *est-ce qu'il en reçoit* does he receive any? *on les reçoit* they are received; *combien en reçoit-on par jour, par semaine, par mois?* how much (many) do they (*or* we, etc.) receive a day, a week (per week), a month? *le lundi ou le mardi* on Mondays or Tuesdays, etc.

Exercice de Conversation:

on recruta parmi les paysans le plus grand nombre d'adhérents the largest number of adherents was recruited among the peasants; *les mains crispées* his (her) hands contracted; *la contraction des muscles* contraction of the muscles; *la chair qui subissait un tiraillement* the flesh undergoing a pain (: twitching with pain); *un tiraillement d'estomac* a griping pain in the stomach; *une boîte à compartiments* a box with compartments; *on loge chez soi* they (we) live at home; *chaque convive reçoit des aliments* each guest receives food; *il remplit la malle; il la bonde;* he is packing the trunk; is filling it; *autant que possible* as much as possible; *diamant façonné* cut diamond.

le reçoit-il chez lui does he receive him at his house? *la reçoit-elle chez elle?* does she receive her at her home? *les reçoit-on chez eux* (m. pl.) are they received at their house? *les reçoit-on chez elles* (f. pl.) are they received at their home? *est-ce que je ne le reçois pas chez moi* do I not receive him at my home? *n'est-ce pas que vous le (la; les) recevez chez vous? si; je le reçois, etc.* do you not receive him (her; them) at your house? Yes, I do; *ne le recevons-nous pas chez nous?* do we not receive him *or* is he not received at our home? *madame reçoit tous les jeudis* madam receives every Thursday (— is at home, etc.); *il reçoit mieux que moi* he receives more lavishly than I do; *il fait les honneurs de la maison* he does the honors of the house; *de qui recevez-vous cette lettre (ces lettres)?* who sent you that (those letters) letter? *en voici une pour toi, pour vous (lui; pour elle)* here is one for you, for you (him, her); *en voilà deux pour eux, pour elles* there are two for them and for

them; *en recevez-vous une de lui (d'elle; d'eux; d'elles)?* do you receive one from him (her, them and them)? *on en reçoit plus d'une tous les matins, tous les jours* more than one are received every morning, every day; *la bienveillance* kindness; attention; *elle les reçoit avec une bienveillante politesse* she receives them with marked attention; *une personne dont on a reçu la visite* a person who paid us a visit (we received a visit from him *or* her); *c'est une maison où l'on reçoit beaucoup* they see a great deal of company in that family; *la famille; en famille;* the family; in the family circle; *je refuse, j'accepte, je reçois des offres* I refuse, accept and receive offers; *il reçoit un mauvais accueil* he meets with a bad reception.

on l'a fort bien reçu (traité ou accueilli) he was well received (was welcomed *or* entertained); *faire accueil* to extend welcome; *cette chambre est claire* that room is light (receives much light); *il reçoit quelque chose de nouveau* he receives something new; *on tient table ouverte* they keep open house; *elle n'est pas visible* she receives no visitors (callers); *nombreuse maison* large household; *il touche ses appointements* he receives his salary; *on reçoit à la bonne franquette* they receive unceremoniously; without ceremony; *faites comme chez vous* do as (at home) you would at home.

§ 53. Imperfect (Indicative) (*l'imparfait de l'indicatif*):

je recevais I was receiving (I received, did receive, *or* had been receiving; and *would* receive as a past of habit, used to receive, etc.)
tu recevais you were receiving (you received, etc.)
il recevait he was receiving (he received, etc.)
nous recevions we were receiving (we received, etc.)
vous receviez you were receiving (you received, etc.)
ils recevaient they were receiving (they received, etc.)

Oral Drill: and with *me; te; nous; vous; le; la; les:*

il me recevait he received me (he would receive me); *il te recevait* he received you (used to receive you); *il ne nous recevait pas tous les jours* he did not receive us every day; *on ne les recevait pas le dimanche* they were not received on Sundays; *s'il vous recevait* if he should (if he were to; if he happened to receive: should he receive you: if he did) receive you; (with the Conditional); *si elle la recevait* if she should receive her, etc.; *si on ne les recevait pas* if they were not received; *je croyais que tu recevais le journal*

du matin (*soir*), *de l'après-midi* I thought you used to receive the morning (evening), afternoon papers; *les journaux* the newspapers (papers); *la feuille* the sheet; *le papier blanc* white paper.

le journal mensuel monthly paper; *une revue mensuelle* monthly review; *publication bimensuelle* bimonthly paper (issue); *ce sont* (*c'est*) *des offres acceptables* (acceptable) offers worthy of being accepted; *Coquelin dont le talent inimitable fut un grand succès* Coquelin whose inimitable talent was a great success; *la réception* reception; *recevait-il les journaux du dimanche* did he receive (then) the Sunday papers? *la revue hebdomadaire* the weekly review; *elle recevait la quinzaine théâtrale* she would (used to) receive the (Fortnightly) Biweekly Theatrical Review: *actualités; nouveautés;* topics of the day; novelties (fancy articles); *dernière création* latest styles; *marchand de nouveautés* linen-draper; *innovation* (*chose nouvelle*) innovation (change); *nouveau titre qui est substitué à un ancien* new title replacing a former one; *les mauvaises nouvelles ont des ailes* bad news has wings; *rien de nouveau sous le soleil* nothing new under the sun; *il n'arrive sur la terre que ce qui s'est déjà fait* everything that happens on earth has happened before; *le Nouveau Testament* the New Testament; *l'Ancien Testament* the Old Testament; *c'est un nouveau* (*novice*) *dans* he is a novice in; *sans expérience* (*: inexpérimenté*) without experience (: inexperienced); *nouvel an* (*le jour de l'An*) New Year's day; *nouvel habit* a different coat.

c'est du nouveau (*voilà du nouveau*) that's news to me (: I am surprised); *de nouveau* over again; afresh; anew; *une robe nouvelle* a new gown (of recent date); *un habit neuf* a new coat (brand new); *une maison neuve* a newly built house; *le nouveau plaît* anything new pleases; *depuis peu* (*récemment*) recently; *nouvelles à la main* (*petites nouvelles*) news items; *ouvrages nouvellement parus* (*livres nouveaux*) books recently published; *il a acheté un nouveau livre* he bought another book; *un autre livre* another book; *encore un* one more; *on recevait le jeudi* we used to receive on Thursdays; *encore une fois* once more; *deux fois* twice; *trois fois* (thrice) three times.

§ 54. Past Definite:

je reçus I received
tu reçus you received
il reçut he received
nous reçûmes we received
vous reçûtes you received
ils reçurent they received

mostly used in books or with conjunctions of time; also with: *hier encore* only yesterday; *hier* yesterday; *hier matin* yesterday

morning; *hier soir* yesterday evening (last night); *avant-hier* the day before yesterday; *avant hier soir* before yesterday evening.

Conversation:

lundi je reçus une lettre de M. X. Monday I received a letter from Mr. B.; *il la reçut hier soir* he received it last evening; *on en reçut une avant-hier* one was received the day before yesterday; *ils n'en reçurent qu'une hier avant-midi* they received only one yesterday forenoon; *elles en reçurent plusieurs hier après-midi* several were received by them yesterday forenoon (or: they received several of them, etc.); *elle n'en reçut qu'une de lui; le mois dernier:* she received only one from him; last month; *la semaine dernière, il en reçut trois* last week he received three (of them); *la semaine passée, on en reçut quatre* last week four were received; *l'année dernière elle en reçut cinq d'eux* last year she received five from them; *autrefois elle en recevait plusieurs* formerly she would receive several of them; *d'aujourd'hui en huit* in a week from to-day; *dès l'entrée* at the very entrance; *c'était hier lundi* yesterday was Monday; *les trois quarts du temps* most of the time; *un beau matin* (*un beau jour*) one day; one fine day; *un de ces matins* one of these days; *je m'attendais à recevoir de ses nouvelles* I expected to hear from him (her); *il m'attend* he expects me; he is waiting for me; *on s'y attendait si peu!* it was the least expected; *toutes les fois que* every time; *c'est avec impatience qu'elle attend de ses nouvelles* she is impatiently waiting for news from him (her); *une marque de prospérité générale* a sign of general prosperity; *marque de fabrique* trade-mark; *il donne de belles fleurs de couleurs variées* he is giving beautiful flowers of various colors; *le messager porte des ordres* the messenger is carrying orders; *se donner des airs* to assume airs; *à quel titre* on what grounds? *membre de la société de bienfaisance* a member of the Benevolent Society; *on le nomme membre bienfaiteur* he has been called a beneficent member (— is appointed as); *nombreuses œuvres patriotiques* numerous and patriotic deeds (acts); *se dévouer à* to devote one's self to; *en juillet dernier* in July last; *exécuter des commandes* to carry out orders; *contribution imposée* required contribution.

§ 55. Past Indefinite (Perfect) (*le passé indéfini*):

j'ai reçu I (have) received — *tu as reçu* you (have) received
il a reçu he (has) received — *nous avons reçu* we (have) received
vous avez reçu you(have) received — *ils ont reçu* they (have) received

French conversational tense and with:

Oral Drill:

aujourd'hui to-day; *ce matin* this morning; *cet avant-midi* this forenoon; *ce soir* to-night; *cet après-midi* this afternoon; this evening, etc.; *il a bien reçu votre lettre* he duly received your letter; *je n'ai pas encore reçu ta lettre* I have not yet received your letter; *tu n'as plus reçu de lettres* you haven't received any more letters; *elle n'en a jamais reçu de toi* (*de moi; de lui; d'elle; d'eux; d'elles*) she never received any from you (from me; from him; from her; from them, etc.); *elle n'en a reçu qu'une aujourd'hui* she received only one to-day; *on n'en a reçu qu'une* only one was received; only one has been received.

Exercice de Conversation:

en avez-vous reçu plus que moi did you receive more than I? *en a-t-elle reçu plus que lui* did she receive more than he? *n'en as-tu pas reçu moins* (*plus*) *qu'eux?* did you not receive less (more) than they? or: *qu'elles; que nous;* than they; than we? *n'en a-t-on point reçu autant qu'eux?* have we (they) not received as much (many) as they? *combien en ont-ils reçu?* how much (many) did they receive? *en ont-ils beaucoup reçu* did they receive many (much)? *ils n'en ont pas trop reçu* they haven't received too many (much) of them *or:* too much (of it).

§ 56

Note that *plus; moins; autant; combien; beaucoup; trop; peu* (little, few) *assez* enough
tant so much (many) *un peu* a little; all
require *de* immediately before the noun; *bien* much, many a, requires the *de* plus the definite article:

bien du monde many people; *plusieurs* (adj.) several; and no *de; plusieurs amis* several friends; *plus de pommes* more apples; *que de pommes!* how many apples! *moins de café* less coffee; *plus de cinq dollars* more than five dollars; *il y a eu bien du monde* there were many people; *ils ont reçu bien des livres* they received many books; *on a reçu beaucoup de livres* many books have been received.

Observe also: *trop* (too; and with adjective); *trop cher* too dear (expensive); and is never used before *beaucoup:*
beaucoup trop cher far too expensive; *beaucoup moins cher* far

less expensive; *beaucoup plus cher* much dearer; *beaucoup moins cher* far less, etc.; *plus il travaille, moins il réussit* the more he works, the less he succeeds; *il n'est pas aussi habile que son cousin* or: (*si habile*) he is not as clever as his cousin; *elle en a moins de trois, n'est-ce pas?* she has less than three, has she not?

§ 57

Positive (general rule)	Comparative	Superlative
petit (m.) small	*plus petit* smaller	*le plus petit* the smallest
cf.: *bon* good	*meilleur* better	*le meilleur* the best
mauvais bad	*plus mauvais* worse	*le plus mauvais* the worst
" wicked	" more wicked	*le pire* the most wicked

§ 58. and with possessive adjectives:

ses plus chers amis his dearest friends

with some superlatives:

la leçon la plus difficile the most difficult lesson; *ses ouvrages les plus intéressants* his most interesting works; *de* after a superlative; *l'homme le plus riche du monde* the richest man in the world; as adverb: *mieux* better; *j'aime mieux* (*je préfère*) I prefer; *il a bien faim* he is very hungry; *le plus fort des deux* the stronger of the two; *la plus forte de ses deux sœurs* the stronger of his two sisters; *la plus intelligente des trois* the most intelligent of the three; *un orateur des plus éloquents* a most eloquent orator; *c'est à ravir!* (*c'est tout ce qu'il y a de plus joli*) it is most beautiful; cf.: absolute superlative *le moins; le plus* (which remains invariable): *au plus haut degré* (*: extrêmement*) to the highest degree (extremely) and meaning also: *très* (*bien; fort; fort bien* very well); *elle est le moins gaie quand elle va à l'école* she is the least cheerful when she goes to school; *cf.: c'est la moins gaie de toutes* she is the least cheerful of all; *plus haut de trois pouces* higher by three inches; *le moindre bruit* the slightest (least) noise.

General Practice:

vous en serez d'autant plus satisfait you will be better satisfied for it; *c'est assez cher* it is expensive enough; *il a reçu quelques dollars* he received a few dollars; *on en a reçu quelques-uns* a few have been received; *venir de* to have just (with verb): *je viens de la*

recevoir I just received it; *il vient d'en recevoir* he just received some; *on vient d'en recevoir quelques-unes* a few have been received; *ils viennent de* they have just; *vient-on de les recevoir* have they just been received? *un billet* a note; *l'a-t-on reçu* has it been received? *pas encore* not yet; *c'est la dame la plus riche du pays* she is the richest woman in the country; *c'est pourquoi on l'admire* that is why she is admired; *c'est dommage* it is a pity; *que c'est vilain* how ugly that is! *ce n'est plus ni bon ni mauvais* it is no longer good nor bad; *est-ce qu'il a reçu la lettre?* did he receive the letter? *oui, monsieur; il l'a reçue;* yes, Sir; he did; *les avez-vous reçus* (*-es*) did you receive them? *aujourd'hui même* this very day; *en avez-vous reçu un* (*une*) *ce jour-là?* did you receive one (on) that day? *on a bien reçu son livre* his (her) book has been well received; *son livre n'a pas pris* his book was a failure (: has not been well received); *il a reçu son congé* he was dismissed (discharged); *donnez-lui son congé* dismiss him; *passez à la caisse* go to the cashier and get your money; *on l'a reçu à bras ouverts* he was received with open arms; *avaler des huîtres* to swallow oysters; *recevoir des affronts* to receive insults; *a-t-il avalé des couleuvres* (adder; bitter pill) did he receive insults without protest? *or* indignities, etc.; *sans protester* without protest.

§ 59. Pluperfect (Indicative) (*le plus-que-parfait*):

j'avais reçu I had received	*tu avais reçu* you had received
il avait reçu he had received	*nous avions reçu* we had received
vous aviez reçu you had received	*ils avaient reçu* they had received

***si* (plus the Pluperfect) answers to the Conditional Past:**

si je l'avais reçu (*e*), *je vous l'aurais donné* (*e*) or: *vice-versa:* if I had (*or:* had I) received it, I would have given it to you; *j'en avais reçu un* (*une*) I had received one; *tu en avais reçu un peu* you had received a little; *il en avait reçu un peu* he had received, etc.; *il n'en avait pas reçu* he had not received any; *elle n'en avait pas encore reçu* she had not received any (then); *en avait-il reçu* had he received any? *aucun* (*e*) none; *n'en avait-il pas reçu beaucoup?* had he not received a great deal? *Assez* Enough; *s'il en avait reçu au moins un* (*e*) if he had received at least one; *si elle en avait*

reçu un (e) de plus if she had received one more; *si on avait reçu ce soir-là* if there had been company that evening (on that very night); *si elle ne l'avait pas reçu, elle n'y aurait pas répondu (: répondre à)* if she had not received it, she wouldn't have answered it; replied to it).

elle croyait avoir reçu les lettres (: qu'elle avait reçu, etc.) she thought she had received the letters; *elle croit les avoir reçues* she believes she received them; *il croyait les avoir reçues* he thought he had received them; *il croyait qu'elle les avait reçues* he thought she had received them; *nous ne savions si vous les aviez reçues (ou non)* we didn't know whether you had received them or not.

§ 60. *de* after a negation *or* before an adjective:

pas d'amis no friends; *aucun ami* no friend (at all); *de bons amis* good friends; *il n'a point d'amis* he has no friends (at all); *il a du papier blanc* he has white paper; *de bon pain* good bread; *de l'or pur* pure gold; *de bonne huile* good oil; *de mauvaises plumes* bad pens; *de bonnes pommes* good apples; *de bonne viande* good meat.

§ 61

NOTE.—*some* or *any* always expressed in French before every noun by *de; du; de l'; de la; des.*

il a de bon pain; de bonne salade et de bonne viande he has good bread; good salad and good meat; *il n'a pas de bon pain, de bonne salade et de, etc.* he has no (not any) good bread, good salad, etc., and if negation is not complete, use: *du; de l'; de la; des* in the following: *je n'ai pas du vin rouge, mais j'ai du vin blanc;* I have no red wine, but I have white; *aussi l'avais-je reçu, et dès la porte, observé* to be sure I admitted him, but had observed him well from the door beforehand.

§ 62. PAST ANTERIOR (*le passé antérieur*):

j'eus reçu
I had received

tu eus reçu
you had received

il eut reçu
he had received

nous eûmes reçu
we had received

vous eûtes reçu
you had received

ils eurent reçu
they had received

Tense mostly used with conjunctions of time:
quand j'eus reçu vos ordres when (after) I had received your orders; *dès qu'il eut reçu sa pension* as soon as he had received his pension; *à peine eut-il reçu ma note qu'il la paya* scarcely had he received my bill when he paid it; *aussitôt qu'ils eurent reçu leurs gages* as soon as they had received their wages.

de (**for general practice**):

de bons livres et de mauvais good books and bad; *assez de crayons* pencils enough; *une douzaine de mouchoirs* one dozen handkerchiefs *une chaîne d'or* a gold chain; *assez de thé* tea enough; enough tea; *non content de le recevoir* not content with merely receiving it (him); *il l'avait à peine reçu* hardly had he received it; *on parle de ne pas le recevoir* they talk about not receiving him; *assez de chapeaux et assez chers* hats enough and dear enough; *de plus en plus vite* faster and faster; *en moins d'une minute* in less than a minute; *l'un des messieurs l'a reçu* one of the gentlemen received it; *ni l'un ni l'autre ne l'ont reçu* neither one (neither of them) admitted him; *son bureau est du côté droit* his office is on the right side; *tout de bon (sérieusement)* seriously; *sans plaisanterie* without joking; *de tous côtés* on all sides; *il y a de tels barbares* there are such barbarians; *d'autres pensent de même* others think likewise; *il y en a bien d'autres* and many others; *il n'a rien de nouveau* he has nothing new; *quelques centaines de mètres* a few hundred meters (yards); *il en reste deux* two left; two are left over; *à maintes reprises (à plusieurs reprises)* repeatedly; several times; *mainte (s) fois* many a time.

§ 63. Future (*le futur*):

je recevrai I will *or* shall receive
tu recevras you shall *or* will receive
il recevra he shall *or* will receive
nous recevrons we will *or* shall receive
vous recevrez you shall *or* will receive
ils recevront they shall *or* will receive

je recevrai un présent I will receive a present; *un don; des cadeaux de Noël;* a gift; Xmas presents; *des étrennes du Jour de l'An* New Year's gifts; *étrenner une robe (la porter pour la première fois)* to wear it for the first time; *il en recevra* he will receive some; *elle en recevra* she will receive some; *vous n'en recevrez pas ce soir* you will not receive any to-night (this evening); *nous en recevrons*

demain, soit dans l'après-midi, soit dans l'avant-midi we shall receive some to-morrow either in the afternoon or in the forenoon; *quiconque les recevra, les méritera* whoever receives them will deserve them; *dites-moi à quelle heure vous les recevrez* tell me at what time (hour) you will receive them; *quand vous en recevrez j'en achèterai* when you receive some, I'll buy some; *je suis sûr qu'il n'en recevra point* I am sure he will not receive any; *il croit toujours en recevoir* he always believes he will receive some; *or: il croit toujours qu'il en recevra; dès demain* not later than to-morrow; *il ne sait s'il en recevra six ou sept* he does not know whether he will receive six or seven; *du jour au lendemain* any day (shortly).

vous n'en recevrez pas de sitôt you will not receive any for a long while; *plus on en recevra, plus on en donnera* the more we receive, the more we will give; *ni vous ni lui n'en recevrez* neither you nor he will receive any; cf.: *je vais en recevoir* I will receive some (I am going to receive some); *je dois en recevoir au plus tôt* I am (expect) to receive some at the earliest date; *voulez-vous en recevoir* do you wish to (will you) receive any (some)? *en recevrez-vous* will you receive some (in the near future)? *il n'a pas à recevoir des ordres de lui* he does not have to receive orders from him; *il vous en donnera la primeur* (*un livre en sa primeur*) you will get the first one; *les fruits en leur primeur coûtent cher* fruit is expensive when it first arrives.

Exercice de Conversation:

en quantité considérable in large quantity; *obtenir des commandes de l'Etat* to receive orders from the State; *les prémices des champs* the first fruits from the fields; *quant à la plus grande partie* (*pour la plupart*) for the most part; *la plupart* (*des hommes*) *sont honnêtes* most men are honest; *il en aura l'étrenne* he will be the first one to wear (use) it; *café nature* coffee served without milk; *pommes de terre nature* plain boiled potatoes; *payer en nature* to pay in kind; *en valeur propre* in full value; *il toucha des objets en nature* he received the same kind of articles in exchange; *les naturels de l'Amérique* the aborigines of America; *habitants originaires* the earliest known inhabitants; *natif de New-York;* native of New York; *le sol natal* the native soil; *il se fait naturaliser Américain* he is getting his naturalization papers; *bœuf au naturel* steak cooked plain; *naturellement* naturally; by nature; easily; *facilement* (*simplement*) easily; *sans aucun changement* or *sans changement aucun* without any change (whatever).

§ 64. Future Anterior (Past):

j'aurai reçu I will *or* shall have received
tu auras reçu you shall *or* will have received
il aura reçu he shall *or* will have received
nous aurons reçu we will *or* shall have received
vous aurez reçu you shall *or* will have received
ils auront reçu they shall *or* will have received

Oral Drill:

quand vous aurez reçu la commande de savon, de chapeaux, de pantalon after you have received the order for soap, hats and trousers; *payer d'après le nombre* to pay according to the number; *aussitôt qu'il l'aura reçu, il passera chez vous* as soon as he has received it, he will call on you; *aussitôt qu'il aura reçu l'ordre du général, il partira* as soon as he has received the order from the general he will set out; *il aura reçu des blessures plus graves que ne le laissait supposer le journal* he must have received more serious wounds than the account (in the paper) intimated; *il reçoit tous les jours les doléances de braves gens désolés de ne pouvoir lui venir en aide* he receives every day the sympathy from honest people (folks) who are very sorry not to be able to come to his aid.

§ 65. Conditional (*le conditionnel*):

je recevrais I would *or* should receive
tu recevrais you should *or* would receive
il recevrait he should *or* would receive
nous recevrions we would *or* should receive
vous recevriez you should *or* would receive
ils recevraient they should or would receive

Note that this tense generally answers to the Imperfect with *si* (if):

si je passais chez lui, il me recevrait bien (if I were to call) *or* (were I to call) *or* if I should call on him, he would receive me well; *s'il avait de bons maîtres, il recevrait une éducation supérieure* if he had competent teachers, he would receive superior instruction; *qui recevrait de telles excuses?* who would receive such excuses? *la prime* the premium; cf.: *il voudrait bien recevoir la somme* he would gladly receive the sum offered; *on aime mieux recevoir que de donner* we prefer to receive rather than to give; *il préfère le vin à la bière* he prefers wine to beer; *or: il aime mieux le vin que*

la bière he likes wine better than beer; *on ne saurait mieux recevoir ses amis* (we cannot better receive our friends) one could not receive one's friends better; *je ne sais si on recevrait ces ordres de M. X.* I do not know whether these orders could be received from Mr. B.; *lui! recevoir un outrage!* he would receive an insult! *il ne saurait dorer la pilule* he couldn't gild the pill; *moyennant une prime* in consideration of a premium; *d'une bonté excessive* with excessive kindness *or* how very kind! *que de bontés* how kind! *une avance supplémentaire* an additional advance; *cinq sous de supplément* five cents extra; *lettre chargée* registered; *l'avant-veille* two days before.

§ 66. Conditional Past (First Form) (*le passé du conditionnel*):

j'aurais reçu I would *or* should have received
tu aurais reçu you should *or* would have received
il aurait reçu he should *or* would have received
nous aurions reçu we would *or* should have received
vous auriez reçu you should *or* would have received
ils auraient reçu they should *or* would have received

Note that this tense answers generally to the Pluperfect with *si* (if):

s'il avait passé chez le banquier, il aurait touché son chèque if he had called on the banker, he would have received his check; *il aurait reçu dix francs à compte* he would have received ten francs on account; *il prend des marchandises à compte* he receives (takes) merchandise on credit; *il acquitte* (*règle sa note*) *sa facture* he pays his bill (settles his account) his (itemized) bill; *solder un mémoire* or *en faire l'entier payement* to settle the whole bill (as per statement); *je crois qu'il aurait reçu mes ordres* I (believe) think he would have obeyed my orders; *obéir à* to obey; *aurait-il reçu ma lettre plus tôt? mon billet?* would he have received my letter sooner? my note? *plus tard* later; *il le tua* he killed him; *quoi! il aurait reçu la mort* (*: il aurait été tué!*) what! he would have been killed: *quand même il l'aurait reçu, il n'en aurait pas été satisfait* even if he had received it, he would not be satisfied (with it, etc.); *au comptant* (*argent comptant*) cash; *faire le compte de son bien* to estimate one's fortune; *qu'on lui donne son compte* or (*: le payer et le congédier*) let him get his money; he is discharged! *il faut vérifier le compte d'un constructeur* (*d'un entrepreneur*) one must

verify the account of a constructor (builder); *marchandise à bon compte* merchandise at a bargain; *à compte* on installment; *à valoir* to be deducted; *compter* to count; to expect; *tenir compte de* to take into consideration; *au bout du compte* or *en fin de compte* when all is said and done *or* in the end; *tout compte fait* taking everything into consideration; *il n'a pas son compte* he has not his due; *mettre au nombre de* (*compter parmi*) *ses amis* to number among one's friends.

§ 67. Conditional Past (Second Form) (*le conditionnel passé*):

j'eusse reçu I would *or* should have received
tu eusses reçu you should *or* would have received
il eût reçu he should *or* would have received
nous eussions reçu we would *or* should have received
vous eussiez reçu you should *or* would have received
ils eussent reçu they should *or* would have received

Note.—To replace the 1st Form this tense must have a condition expressed:

si vous eussiez reçu la note, vous l'eussiez payée or *auriez payée* if you had received the bill, you would have paid it; cf.: *elle comptait que vous auriez reçu sa lettre lundi* she expected you to receive his (her) letter Monday; *le forcement de ce détroit eût créé une situation de fait favorable à leurs vues, de même que la prise de la ville en eût établi le titre définitif à la possession de la province* entering this Strait would have in fact created a situation favorable to their views, also the capture of the city would have established their permanent title to the possession of the province; *eût-il reçu* had he received *or* if he had received.

§ 68. Imperative (*l'impératif*):

reçois receive — *recevons* let us receive
recevez receive (you *or* ye)
qu'il reçoive let him receive — *qu'elle reçoive* let her receive
qu'ils reçoivent let them receive — *qu'elles reçoivent* let them receive

Oral Drill:

reçois-le receive it (him); *recevons-la* let us receive it (her); *ne le reçois jamais* never receive it (him); *ne la recevez pas* do not receive it (her); *qu'ils ne les reçoivent pas* let them not receive them;

qu'ils en reçoivent let them receive some; *qu'ils n'en reçoivent pas* let them not receive any; *jusqu'à ce que le temps sec soit venu* until dry weather has come; *après que les tranchées furent prises* after the capture of the trenches; *se débattre dans la boue* to struggle in the mud; *l'affaire s'est fort mal terminée* the matter ended very badly; *ils se sont trompés dans leurs calculs* they were mistaken in their calculations.

§ 69. SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT *or* FUTURE (*le présent du subjonctif*):

que je reçoive that I may (can) receive *or* other forms in English
que tu reçoives that you may (can) receive
qu'il reçoive that he may (can) receive
que nous recevions that we may (can) receive
que vous receviez that you may (can) receive
qu'ils reçoivent that they may (can) receive

il est possible que je le reçoive I may receive it (him) *or* it is possible that I may receive it (him); *il faut qu'on les reçoive* one must receive them: they must be received; *je ne puis me figurer qu'elle le reçoive* I cannot imagine her receiving him; *il se peut qu'on les reçoive* they might be received: *qu'on le reçoive ou non* whether he is received or not. See Lesson IX fully illustrated.

Exercice de Conversation:

je pars ce matin même pour Boston I leave this morning for Boston, *il revient à l'instant* he is coming back directly; *son bail a expiré hier* (*: est expiré depuis, etc.*) his lease expired yesterday; *il a expiré entre mes bras* he expired in my arms; *je ne puis parler sans qu'il m'interrompe* I can't speak without his interrupting me; *or:* (*je ne puis parler, qu'il ne m'interrompe*); *elle a été mieux reçue qu'elle ne le croyait* she had a better reception than she expected; *elle n'est pas aussi riche que vous le pensez* she is not as rich as you think; *crédule jusqu'à la niaiserie* credulous to stupidity; *il est recommandé de ne jamais se mettre à l'eau quand on est en sueur* it is recommended never to go in bathing (*or:* into the water) when perspiring; *plonger dans l'eau* to plunge (to dive) into the water; *nager* to swim; *passer à la nage* to swim across; *une augmentation de salaire* an increase of pay (salary); *sa part* his share; *partager* to divide; *versement partiel* installment (partial payment); *sa quote-part* or *cotisation* his membership fee (quota).

§ 70. IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (*l'imparfait du subjonctif*):

que je reçusse that I might receive, etc.
que tu reçusses that you might receive
qu'il reçût that he might receive
que nous reçussions that we might receive
que vous reçussiez that you might receive
qu'ils reçussent that they might receive

and other forms in English; *see* and review the examples *or* rules at Lesson XIII and end of Lesson XXV.

§ 71. SUBJUNCTIVE PAST:

que j'aie reçu that I may (can) have received
que tu aies reçu that you may (can) have received
qu'il ait reçu that he may (can) have received
que nous ayons reçu that we may (can) have received
que vous ayez reçu that you may (can) have received
qu'ils aient reçu that they may (can) have received

Oral Drill:

supposé qu'on les ait reçus (*-es*) suppose they were received; *quoiqu'il* (*: bien qu'il*) *les ait reçus* although he may have received them; *elle craint que vous ne les ayez point reçus* she fears you may not have received them; *qu'il les ait reçus ou non* whether he received them or not; *une visite inattendue* an unexpected visit; *on alloue une somme pour indemnité* a sum is allowed as indemnity; *payé tant, reçu tant et partant quitte* paid so much, received so much; and consequently the account is settled; *a-t-il obtenu* (*attrapé*) *une place?* did he get (secure) a position? *une diminution* (*réduction*) a reduction (decrease); *au profit de tous* for the benefit of all; *tout bénéfice* any profit; *ajouter au traitement* to add to the salary; *privé de mon salaire* deprived of my salary; *un ordre proclamé* (*notifié*) *publiquement* an order proclaimed in public (issued publicly); *des viandes frigorifiées* cold storage meat; *payer de sa vie* to expose one's life to danger; *une circonstance curieuse* strange coincidence; *arrivée des marchandises* arrival of mdse.; *au moment précis* at the precise moment; *être promu au baccalauréat* to receive the first University degree; or *le premier grade universitaire; ils sont promus* they have been promoted; *élever à quelque dignité* to be promoted (in rank).

§ 72. Pluperfect Subjunctive: (*le plus-que-parfait du subjonctif*):

que j'eusse reçu that I might have received, etc.
que tu eusses reçu that you might have received
qu'il eût reçu that he might have received
que nous eussions reçu that we might have received
que vous eussiez reçu that you might have received
qu'ils eussent reçu that they might have received
and other forms in English, Lessons XIII and XXV.

je ne savais pas que vous eussiez reçu sa carte postale I didn't know you had received his (her) postal card; *elle n'aurait pas voulu que vous l'eussiez reçue* she would not have wished you to receive it; *elle ne croit pas que vous l'eussiez reçu, si vous aviez été présent* she does not believe you would have received it, if you had been there.

§ 73. Six Verbs Conjugated *like the above:*

apercevoir to perceive; to notice
décevoir to deceive; to disappoint
concevoir to conceive; to imagine
devoir to owe; (must; ought to; etc.) with verb
percevoir to perceive; to levy
recevoir to receive; to admit
préconcevoir to preconceive

LESSON XXIV

§ 74. *Devoir* (of frequent use) is conjugated as follows: and followed by a noun means: *to owe;* and followed by a verb (in the Infinitive) may mean:

must; was to; had to; will have to; ought to

Present Indicative:

je dois; tu dois; il doit; nous devons; vous devez; ils doivent; I owe; you owe; etc.

Imperfect:

je devais; tu devais; il devait; nous devions; vous deviez; ils devaient; I owed; etc.

Past Definite:

je dus; tu dus; il dut; nous dûmes; vous dûtes; ils durent; I owed; you owed; etc.

Future:

je devrai; tu devras; il devra; nous devrons; vous devrez; ils devront; I will owe; etc.

Conditional:

je devrais; tu devrais; il devrait; nous devrions; vous devriez; ils devraient; I would (should) owe; etc.

Imperative:

dois; devons; devez; owe; let us owe; owe

Present Subjunctive:

que je doive; que tu doives; qu'il doive; que nous devions; que vous deviez; qu'ils doivent; that I may owe; etc.

Imperfect Subjunctive:

que je dusse; que tu dusses; qu'il dût; que nous dussions; que vous dussiez; qu'ils dussent; that I might owe; etc.

Compound Tenses:

j'ai dû; tu as dû; il a dû; etc. (followed by the Infinitive): I had to; etc.

Review:

recevoir to receive; *recevant* receiving; *reçu* received;
je reçois; tu reçois; il reçoit; nous recevons; vous recevez; ils reçoivent I receive (am receiving; do receive; have been receiving)

je recevais; tu recevais; il recevait; nous recevions; vous receviez; ils recevaient; I received (used to receive; was receiving; did receive; had been receiving; etc.)

je reçus; tu reçus; il reçut; nous reçûmes; vous reçûtes; ils reçurent; I received; etc.

je recevrai; tu recevras; il recevra; nous recevrons; vous recevrez; ils recevront; I will (shall) receive; you shall (will) receive, etc.

je recevrais; tu recevrais; il recevrait; nous recevrions; vous recevriez; ils recevraient; I would (should) receive, etc.

reçois; recevons; recevez; receive; let us receive, etc.

que je reçoive; que tu reçoives; qu'il reçoive; que nous recevions; que vous receviez; qu'ils reçoivent; that I may (can) receive, etc.

que je reçusse; que tu reçusses; qu'il reçût; que nous reçussions; que vous reçussiez; qu'ils reçussent; that I might receive, etc.

j'ai reçu; tu as reçu; il a reçu; etc., I received, etc.

Exercice de Conversation:

combien vous dois-je? how much (many) do I owe you?
combien te dois-je? how much (many) do I owe you?
combien est-ce que je vous dois how much (many) do I owe you?
vous me devez vingt-cinq francs you owe me twenty-five francs ($5); *il lui doit un franc* he owes him (her) one franc; *ils leur doivent quelque chose* they owe them something; *on ne leur doit rien* we (they) do not owe them anything; we owe them nothing; *rien du tout* nothing at all; *je vous devais cinq centimes* (*un sou*) I owed you one cent; *il se peut que je vous doive davantage* I may owe you more; *on leur doit de l'argent* money is owed them; *il me doit une journée de travail* he owes me a day's work; *elle lui doit la vie* she is indebted to him (her) for her life *or:* she owes her life to him (her); *fais ce que dois, advienne que pourra* do what you must (do), come what may.

§ 75

as auxiliary: *devoir* **may refer to a simple future:**

je dois travailler ce soir I am to (will) work to-night

duty:

je dois travailler pour vivre I must work for my living *or* (: I owe it to myself as a duty to work)

obligation:

je dois obéir aux lois du pays I must obey the laws of the country (: it is a necessity)

intention:

je dois partir ce soir même I intend to leave this very evening

supposition:

il doit être malade he must be ill; perhaps he is ill

Oral Drill:

le facteur doit passer chez vous à huit heures the letter-carrier must call at your house at eight o'clock; *quand même je devrais (dussé-je) périr* even if I were to perish! *il doit y avoir beaucoup de monde* there must be many people there; *il devait y avoir quelqu'un* there must have been some one (there); *elle a dû repasser* she had to call again; *vous auriez dû le faire* you should have done it; you ought to have done that; *vous devriez vous reposer* you should rest.

§ 76

***dû* as a noun:**

monsieur réclame son dû the gentleman claims his due

as an adjective:

votre billet est en bonne et due forme your note is legal (: legally made); *il rentre à une heure indue* he comes home at a late hour; *contre la règle* against the rules; *le cas échéant* if such should be the case; *à l'échéance d'un billet* at the expiration of a note.

***devoir* as a noun:**

votre devoir est corrigé your exercise is (has been) corrected; *vos devoirs sont corrigés* your exercises are corrected; *nos devoirs sont-ils corrigés* are our exercises corrected? *tel est mon devoir* such is my duty; *tels sont ses devoirs* such are his (her) duties; *je me fais un devoir de lui rendre une visite* I make it a duty to pay him (her) a visit; *il est de mon devoir de le punir* it becomes my duty to punish him; *il est du devoir de M. X. d'y aller* it is incumbent upon Mr. B. to go there.

§ 77

***reçu* as a noun:**

voilà votre reçu there is your receipt; *reçu cinq francs* received five francs; *cinq francs reçus* five francs received; *est-ce une quittance* is it a receipt in full? *ce qui est dû* what is owed.

Exercice de Conversation:

il doit retourner là-bas la semaine prochaine he is to go back (return over there) next week; *il doit se faire recevoir à ce baccalauréat* he is to receive his first University degree; *contenir les termes exprès dans lesquels un acte doit être conçu* to contain the exact

terms in which (such) an act should be expressed; *il conçut le principe de cette machine* he conceived the principle of that machine; *recevoir un renfort de troupes* to receive a re-enforcement of troops; *un témoignage de satisfaction* a token of gratification; *un bureau réceptionnaire* a receiving bureau; *une blessure* a wound; *il s'engage à en payer le montant* he pledges himself to pay the amount; *devoir réussir* to be bound to succeed; *la patrie impose des sacrifices* a country imposes sacrifices; *nul plus que moi ne s'intéresse à* no one is more interested than I in; *demander un inventaire du mobilier* to ask for an inventory of the furniture; *qu'on lui rende cette justice* let him be given credit for it; *reprocher à un locataire de ne pas payer ce qu'il doit* to reproach (blame) a tenant for not paying his rent (*or* debt); *être inquiet pour le payement* to be worrying (anxious) about the payment; *comme cela se doit* as it should be (in the proper manner); *des choses pareilles doivent arriver* such things are liable to occur; *le percepteur continue de leur réclamer ses impôts* the collector continues to claim his taxes from them; *extorquer* to extort.

§ 78. Various Examples on: *devoir; recevoir, etc.* (Material for composition):

agréez, monsieur, que je vous félicite allow me to congratulate you, Sir; *agréer* (to receive kindly) is often used at the end of French letters; *il accuse réception de la somme* he acknowledges the sum of; *elle se départit de son devoir* she swerved from her duty; *il remplit ses obligations* he fulfills his obligations; *tu es dans l'obligation de leur répondre* you are under the obligation of answering them; *il faut rendre justice au diable* we must give the devil his due; *la poule* (hen) *ne doit pas chanter devant le coq* (cock) a woman must not lord over her husband; *je n'ai pas mon compte* I have not my due; *toute réflexion faite* after due reflection; *or: tout bien considéré* all things considered; *à tout seigneur, tout honneur* honor to whom honor is due; *grâces à lui* thanks to him; *qui paie ses dettes, s'enrichit* he who pays his debts becomes rich; *c'est à eux qu'il le doit* he may thank them for it; *elle accomplit ses devoirs* she accomplishes her duties; *il a besoin d'être à tel endroit, à telle heure* he is obliged (has got) to be at such a place at such an hour; *une tâche qui m'incombe* a task that falls to me.

s'engager à rembourser une perte to bind one's self to reimburse a loss; *supporter les lourds fardeaux qui nous incombent* to bear

the heavy burdens that befall us; *cela doit lui être attribué* that must be attributed to him (her); *il attend de grands résultats de* he expects great results from; *on vous en est redevable* one is indebted to you; *moyennant une redevance en denrées* in consideration of a royalty in (wares) *or* merchandise; *on éteint une dette en en payant le capital* we (pay off) reduce (liquidate) a debt by paying on the principal; *garantir une créance* to guarantee (vouch for) the payment of a debt; *on le dispense de travailler* they (release) exempt him from work; *tout retombe sur lui* everything falls upon him; *il n'a pas les soins qu'il devrait avoir* he has not the care he should have; *l'exercice des fonctions dont on est chargé* the exercise of the duties with which we are invested; *le temps pendant lequel on les exerce* the period during which they are discharged; *il rentre dans son devoir* he resumes his duty; *il reprend son travail* he resumes his work; *ce qui est dû* what remains to be paid; *on alloue* (*décrète*) *un crédit* they allow (establish) a credit; *le renouveler* to renew it; *être en fonctions* to be discharging (to perform) one's duties; *accepter* (*agréer*) *un don* to accept a donation; *on donne avis que* notice is given that; *on vous somme de* you are summoned to; *je certifie que* I certify that; *achever son devoir* to finish one's task.

il le néglige (*l'abandonne*) he neglects it; *il répond négligemment aux questions* he answers the questions negligently (indifferently); *il s'occupe moins exactement de ses devoirs* now he attends less to his duties; *former un projet* to form a project; *payer aux calendes grecques* (*: ne jamais payer*) never to pay; *revêtu des formes légales* legally made; *légaliser* to render legal; *rendons honneur à nos glorieux morts* let us render homage to our glorious dead; *concéder une grâce* to grant a favor; *la garantie* warranty (security); *catégoriquement* to the purpose; *libérer* to liberate; *débaucher* to entice; *convertir ce billet de banque en espèces* to change a bank note into cash; *supporter le poids des affaires* to bear the burden of (the) business; *demander plus qu'il n'est dû* to ask more than is owed him (her) etc.; *une haute paye journalière est allouée* a big increase in pay has been granted; *il l'engage à quitter son poste* he entreats him to leave his post; *accorder du temps* to allow more time; *il lui doit sa guérison* he owes his recovery to him; *il rentre en fonctions* he resumes (begins) his duties; *je dois nécessairement* (and with Infinitive) I must needs *or: il faut absolument que* (and the Subj.); *à l'heure qu'il faut* in due time; *en temps utile* propitiously; *il a à faire une visite* he has to make a visit; *c'est moi*

qui devrai en faire les frais (*en être responsable*) I shall have to bear the expenses (of it) *or:* I shall stand responsible for it; *le contre-coup* counter-blow; result (consequence); *on le rend quitte de cette obligation* he is released from that obligation; *acquittement préalable des frais de port* previous exemption from port charges; *on lui doit une fort estimable histoire* we are indebted to him for a very meritorious history; *payer une amende* to pay a fine.

je paie d'avance I pay in advance; *on ne doit pas s'en étonner* one must not wonder at it; *on ne doit pas s'étonner si le terme est échu* it is not strange if the rent is due; *il est de garde* he is on guard duty; *nous ne nous devons plus rien de part et d'autre* (we are even): we don't owe each other anything more; *nous sommes quitte à quitte* we are quits; *chose promise, chose due* promises should be kept; *cela lui pèse* (*: cause de la peine*) that causes him grief; *peser sur le cœur* to weigh on the mind; *accabler de* to overwhelm with; to be overwhelmed with; *personne ne doit le savoir* no one is to know it; *la faction* sentry duty; *il fera le service* he will do duty; *le devoir l'appelle* duty calls him; *il monte la garde* he mounts guard; *il fait le guet* he is on the watch (keeps watch); *quand même je devrais périr* even if I were to perish; *il a manqué à son devoir* he failed in his duty; *dans l'ordre voulu* in due form; (*payer son écot* to pay one's share); *rembourser* to reimburse; *une tâche* a task; *une tache* a spot; (stain; blot); *il s'attache à remplir son devoir* he strives to fulfill his duty; *il s'endette* he runs into debt; *il nie ses dettes* he denies his debt; *il déclare qu'il ne doit rien* he declares he does not owe anything; *il s'en acquitte* he pays (his debt) it.

il faut payer ce que l'on doit a debt must be paid; *si je n'ai pas réussi, toujours ai-je fait mon devoir* if I have not succeeded, I have done my duty nevertheless; (colloq.: *il boucha un trou* he stopped a gap *or* he paid a debt); *par manière d'acquit* for form's sake; *préparer la tâche* to prepare a task; *contracter* to contract; *effectuer* (*mettre à exécution*) to put into effect; *il effectua son projet* he carried out his project; *elle effectua le trajet* she made the trip; *se donner bien du mal* to give one's self much trouble; *on constate le payement d'une facture* the settlement of a bill is being verified; *présenter* to present; *il a acquitté la facture* he receipted the bill in full; *il vous en tient quitte* he lets you off; *pour acquit* (on a bill) paid! *majorer une facture* to overcharge a bill; *exonérer* to exonerate; to be freed from; *faire des emprunts* to borrow (on a large

scale); *emprunter* to borrow; *un emprunt* a loan; *un prêt* a loan; *sous caution* under bail; *prêter de l'argent* to loan money; *c'est un compte d'apothicaire* an extortionate bill (: an apothecary's bill); *il se porte garant du paiement de la dette* he answers for the payment of the debt; *il se porte fort pour lui* he stands security for him; *répondre* (*à*) to answer; to reply to; *être garant* to vouch for; *répondre pour* to stand security for; *décharger d'une dette* to free from a debt; *dispenser* to release; to exempt from; *objet remis en garantie* article given as security; *donner des gages pour garantir le prêt* to give pledges to assure the loan; *pour sûreté de* as security for.

il n'est pas sans le savoir he must have heard of it; he probably knows it; *c'est qu'il l'aura payé* he must have paid it (: for it); *je l'aperçois* I see him (over there); *remarquer* to notice; *il ne s'aperçoit de rien* (he overlooks): he does not notice anything; cf.: *j'avisai le voleur* I detected the thief (I noticed him quickly); *découvrir* to discover; *on ne s'avise jamais de tout* one can't think of everything; *cela se conçoit* that is easily understood; *sans qu'on le remarque* (*: inaperçu*) unobserved; without being seen; *il passa inaperçu* he passed unnoticed.

LESSON XXV

§ 79. THIRD GROUP OF REGULAR VERBS ends in *-re:*

rompre to break (off, up)		*rompant* breaking
	rompu broken	
vendre to sell	*vendant* selling	*vendu* sold

NOTE.—In the Present Indicative (in the third person singular) *vend* is not followed by: *t; il vend.*

casser (and of the 1st Group) to break (in two); *briser* to break (to pieces); *déchirer à coup de fouet* to lash to pieces.

§ 80

Present Indicative:

je romps; tu romps; il rompt; nous rompons; vous rompez; ils rompent; I break, etc.

Imperfect:

je rompais; tu rompais; il rompait; nous rompions; vous rompiez; ils rompaient; I broke, etc.

Past Definite:

je rompis; tu rompis; il rompit; nous rompîmes; vous rompîtes; ils rompirent; I broke, etc.

Future:

je romprai; tu rompras; il rompra; nous romprons; vous romprez; ils rompront; I will (shall) break, etc.

Conditional:

je romprais; tu romprais; il romprait; nous romprions; vous rompriez; ils rompraient; I would or should break, etc.

Imperative:

romps; rompons; rompez; break; let us break, etc.

Present Subjunctive:

que je rompe; que tu rompes; qu'il rompe; que nous rompions; que vous rompiez; qu'ils rompent; that I may (can) break, etc.

Imperfect Subjunctive:

que je rompisse; que tu rompisses; qu'il rompît; que nous rompissions; que vous rompissiez; qu'ils rompissent; that I might break, etc.

and Compound Tenses:

j'ai rompu; tu as rompu; il a rompu; etc., etc.

Review pp. 148–235 and pp. 205–252.

Oral Drill:

il plie et ne rompt pas he bends and does not break; *plier* to bend (fold); *le pli* the fold; *elle brise la glace* she breaks the looking-glass; *on rompit le pain* they broke bread; *tu romps la glace* you break the ice; *ils rompent le ménage* they are breaking up housekeeping; *il le rompt aux affaires* he is training him for business; *elle a beau se rompre la tête* in vain she racks her brain; (*il se casse la tête* he puzzles his brain); *qui casse les verres les paie* who breaks the glasses pays for them; *or:* you must pay for the damage; *courber une branche* to bend a branch *or: la ployer* to bend it; *il se creuse le cerveau* (*l'esprit*) he ransacks his brain; *on se fatigue à chercher* one gets tired of searching; *se baisser* to stoop; *s'incliner* to bow down; *plier les genoux* to bend the knees; *il s'humilie* he humbles himself; *il porte le déshonneur dans une*

famille unie he brings dishonor into a united family; *le vent balance les arbres;* the wind sways the trees; *il est brisé par les secousses morales* he is broken by remorse; *briser ses chaînes* to break loose one's chains; *objets cassés* broken articles.

une pierre creusée a hollowed stone; *une bille de bois* a log; *une bûche* (chunk of wood); a log; *un bloc de bois creusé* a hollowed log; *la bûche de Noël* the Xmas log; *dompter un animal* to tame an animal; *apprivoiser* to tame; to domesticate; *payer la casse* to pay the breakage; *par maladresse* through blunder (carelessness); *payer les violons* to pay the fiddler; *on plie du linge* they fold linen; *pencher* to lean; *pulvériser* to pulverize; *résistant ou flexible* resisting or flexible; *courbé en arc;* bent like a bow; *pierres concassées* or (*: réduites en petits fragments*) broken stones (reduced to small pieces); *friable* easily crumbled; *il coupe du pain* he is cutting bread; *il découpe* he is carving; *une tranche de pain* a slice of bread; *dispensez-vous de penser* spare your brains; *levons le camp* let us break camp; *il manque à sa parole* he breaks his word; *on lui trancha la tête* they cut off his head; *un détraqué* unbalanced mind; *sa voix mue* his (her) voice is breaking; *d'une voix entrecoupée* in a broken voice; *d'un cœur navré* (*brisé*) with a broken heart; *il va sur les brisées de M. X.* he waits for Mr. B.'s old shoes (: follows in his footsteps); *c'est un anneau brisé* it is a split ring; *enfant de la balle* (*: une personne élevée dans la profession de son père*) a child brought up in his father's profession; *c'est une maladie qui se déclare* an illness that breaks out in eruptions; *il s'y casse le nez* he fails in it; *il s'est cassé le nez* he broke his nose; *on viola le droit des gens* they broke the law of nations.

Oral Drill:

la faim chasse le loup hors du bois hunger chases the wolf from the forest: *or:* hunger will break through stone walls; *le vent souffle à tout rompre* (*casser*) or: *à tout détraquer:* the wind is blowing great guns; *or:* (is throwing everything into confusion); *détraquer une pendule* to put a clock out of order; *elle sentit son cœur se déchirer* she felt her heart breaking; *déchirer le cœur* to wring the heart; *un incendie se déclara* a fire broke out; *c'est couper* (*fendre*) *un cheveu en quatre,* that is to split hairs; *fendez-le en deux* split it asunder; *partageons le différend* (*les parties s'accordent*) let us split the difference *or* (the parties have come to an understanding); *enfonçons la porte* let us break open the door; *or:*

forçons-la let us force it; *ils restèrent en panne* (standstill) they were stopped by a breakdown; *il fit sauter la banque* he broke the bank; *le plomb est facile à ployer* lead is easy to bend; *l'osier se ploie facilement* rattan is easily bent; *on broie* (*écrase*) *des couleurs en délayant* they blend colors; *détremper* to dilute; *délayer* (*détremper dans un liquide*) to dilute; to dilute with liquid; *écraser* to crush, to bruise, to overwhelm; *s'écraser un doigt* to crush one's finger; *les rugissements de la tempête* the roaring of a tempest; *pousser des cris déchirants* to utter heart-rending cries; *déchirements* (m.) *de cœur* pangs of the heart; *causer de grands dégats* to cause great devastation; *éclater* to fly into shreds; *déchirer à belles dents* to pull to pieces; *lacérer* (*: mettre en pièces*) to tear to pieces; *voler en éclats* (*: éclater*) to fly into shreds; *se rompre* to fly into pieces; *mettre en poudre* to pulverize.

Practice:

réduire en poudre or *triturer* to triturate; *réduire en pâte* to reduce to paste; *en parties menues par écrasement* into small parts by crushing; *de la craie friable* breakable chalk; *belle tête, point de cervelle!* beautiful head, no brain! *vent impétueux* violent wind; *le frottement des roues* the friction of the wheels; *une cassure nette* a clean break; *il casse* or *broie du poivre* he is grinding pepper; *il foule de l'or* he beats gold; *flexible* (*aisé de plier*) easy to bend; *il se cassa l'os de la cuisse* he broke his thigh-bone; *il s'est démis la hanche* he dislocated his hip.

§ 81. Drill on the Imperfect:

le fleuve rompait ses digues the river often broke its dams; *la rivière* the river; *le ruisseau* the stream (brook); *la pluie rompait* (*abîmait*) *toujours nos chemins* rain often damaged our roads; *abîmer* to overthrow; to spoil; *s'écrouler* to crash down; *s'abîmer dans la douleur* to be plunged in grief; *un amas de sable apporté par les eaux* a mound of sand brought (made) by the waters; *le sol fut défoncé* the ground was sunken; *un terrain bas et enfoncé* a low and sunken ground; *fouler aux pieds* to trample.

Oral Drill:

si on rompait le silence! suppose we break the silence! *on rompait le jeûne à Pâques* we broke fast at Easter; *la pluie gâta* (*endommagea*) *les chemins* rain spoiled (gullied) the roads; *les soldats rompaient les rangs à midi* soldiers were dismissed at noon; *leurs voix nous rompaient les oreilles* their voices deafened our ears·

le fil thread; *on se torturait l'esprit* they puzzled (we, etc.) their brains (our, etc.); *que ne rompiez-vous le fil de son discours?* why did you not interrupt him in his speech? *or: que ne lui coupiez-vous la parole?* why did you not interrupt him when he spoke *or:* (: when he was speaking)? *on s'arrêta tout court* they stopped short; *or:* abruptly; *si on avait dit un mot, on rompait son sommeil* if a word had been uttered, his sleep would have been broken; *sans cesse* without ceasing; *il rompait son serment, s'il eût pu* he would have broken his oath, if possible *or:* if he could; *sans cesser* unceasingly; *sans discontinuer* without discontinuing.

§ 82. Past Definite:

Exercice de Conversation:

il rompit son jeûne hier he broke his fast yesterday; *on rompit le silence sans savoir pourquoi* they broke the silence without knowing why; *interrompre* to interrupt; *interruption*, etc.; *chemin raboteux* rough road; *secouer* to shake; to jolt; *la tête* the head; *on l'interpella* (*on le somma de s'expliquer*) he was asked to explain; *abrégeons le débat* let us cut short the discussion; *qui rompit ce cheval* who broke in that horse? *il se rompit le cou* he broke his neck; *la rupture* the break; breaking; *une division entre des personnes unies par* a break between persons united by; *ils rompirent:* (*ils cessèrent d'être amis*) they ceased to be friends; *la rupture* or *fracture d'un os* (*une fracture violente*) the fracture of a bone; *la rupture d'une digue* the bursting of a dam; *la rupture d'un mariage* the breaking off of a match; *c'est un enfant gâté* he is a spoiled child; *la roue tourne* the wheel moves (revolves); (colloq.: *il m'a roulé* he bowled me over); *le roulement des voitures* the noise of the carriages; — *d'yeux* the rolling of the eyes; — *du tonnerre* the rolling of thunder; *le mariage est rompu* the marriage is annulled; *le cahot* the jolt; *le silence du recueillement* the silence of meditation; *dans le chemin creux qui borde la route* in the hollow road that borders (skirts) the way; *couper la fièvre* to break the fever.

§ 83. Past Indefinite:

Oral Drill:

est-ce lui qui a rompu les glaces de ce coupé? did he break the windows of that coupé (brougham)? *la poutre a rompu* (*: s'est rompue*) the beam broke; *j'ai rompu le cheval, dès que je l'ai reçu* I broke

in the horse as soon as I received him; *il a cassé sa canne* he broke his cane; *il porte une canne* he carries a cane; *l'arbre porte des fruits* a tree bears fruit; *elle a cassé sa montre* she broke her watch; *ils ont rompu avec leurs habitudes* they broke off with their habits; *le sceau* the seal; *a-t-elle rompu le cachet de la lettre?* did she break the seal of that letter? *un grand cachet* a large seal; *il confia la chose sous le sceau du secret* he confided the matter under the seal of secrecy; *décacheter une lettre* to open (unseal) a letter; *dépouiller sa correspondance* to open his mail.

Exercice de Conversation:

il lit son courrier he is reading his mail; *la corde s'est rompue* the cord broke; *vous m'avez rompu les os* you broke my bones; *il étudie la musique à bâtons rompus* or *à diverses reprises* he studies music by fits and starts (at intervals); *une horrible morsure* ghastly bite; *il n'en reste que quelques fragments* there are only a few pieces left (: fragments); *il a été question de limiter ou d'interrompre la guerre sous-marine* it was a question of limiting or putting an end to the submarine war; *ligne droite* (*brisée*) straight *or* broken line.

§ 84. Pluperfect Indicative:

Oral Drill:

je croyais qu'on avait rompu le traité I thought the treaty had been broken; *il a cru qu'on avait rompu le cheval* he thought the horse had been broken in; *ils croyaient avoir cassé leurs pipes* (*: qu'ils avaient cassé leurs pipes*) they thought they had broken their pipes; *si nous l'avions cassée, nous l'aurions payée* if we had broken it we would have paid for it; *je ne savais si on avait rompu le pain* I did not know that they had broken the bread; *on avait cassé la fenêtre quand je rentrai* the window was broken when I came home; *à l'emporte-pièce* very sharply (: cutting answer); *la voiture m'a brisé* (*fatigué*) the carriage tired me; *on ne fait pas d'omelette sans casser des œufs* we do not make an omelet without breaking eggs.

Exercice de Conversation:

toute entreprise entraîne ses périls, ses frais all enterprise entails its perils, its expenses; *il fit ses frais* he made his expenses; *il fera de grands frais* he will go to great expense; *elle se mit en frais* (*: dépensa plus que de coutume*) she spent more than usual; *à*

grands frais at great expense; *à peu de frais* at little expense; *sans dépenser beaucoup* without spending much *or:* without much trouble; *jamais entre nous ne s'est élevée une querelle* never a quarrel arose between us; *d'humeur douce* (*pliable*) of a gentle (amenable) disposition; *docile* docile *or* tractable; *un tempérament chaud ne se défend pas comme il veut* a quick-tempered person does not defend his rights as he wishes to; *il lui annonce que sa dernière heure est venue* he announces to him that his last hour has struck.

§ 85. Past Anterior:

Oral Drill:

aussitôt que vous l'eûtes rompu au travail, il fut sage as soon as he was trained up to his work, he was (became) good; *dès que les cordes eurent rompu, il tomba* as soon as the ropes broke, he fell; *la poutre sert à soutenir le toit* a beam serves to support the roof; *un chemin aussi bien entretenu, aussi propre qu'une rue* a road as well cared for and as clean as a street; *d'un coup de pistolet* by a pistol shot; *ses mesures prises* his measures having been taken; *il brise tout* he is destructive; *quand l'équilibre des forces sera rompu* when the equilibrium of forces is at an end; *tout ne sera que chaos* chaos will reign; *reprocher d'avoir rompu cette union!* to reprove for having broken that union!

Exercice de Conversation:

route fréquentée frequented path (road); *accoutumer* (*: habituer*) to accustom; to habituate; *on l'accoutume au travail* he is trained to work; *il s'habitue au bruit* he is getting used to the noise; *elle en contracta l'habitude* she contracted the habit; *on le traite durement* they use him roughly; *avec mépris* with scorn; scornfully; *on plie le drap* (*en plusieurs doubles*) cloth is folded (in many folds); *ses mains sont comme deux tenailles* his hands are like a pair of tongs; *le cheval s'enleva des quatre pattes* the horse broke away; *une fracture d'os dont on enleva une partie* the fracture of a bone part of which has been removed; *fracturer* to fracture; *une fraction* a fraction; *chaque année* each (and every) year; *se cabrer* to rear; to prance; *un cheval fringant* a spirited horse; *foulé par* pressed by; *une pression* a pression, pressure; *le pressurage des pommes, etc.* the pressing of apples; *le pressoir* the wine-press; *la presse à papier* printing-press; *la presse à copier* copying-machine; *presser l'éponge* to squeeze the sponge; *presse*

à cidre cider-press; *presse-citron* (*s*) lemon-squeezer; ***l'imprimerie*** a printing-establishment; *presse-papier* paper-weight; *le pressage* the pressing; *il se recommande à eux* he refers to them; *lettre de recommandation* letter of reference; *il lui recommande de ne pas le faire* he requests him not to do that.

§ 86. Future:

Oral Drill:

ils rompront le cheval, dès qu'il sera ici they will break in the horse as soon as he is here; *je le romprai, si vous voulez* I shall break him in, if you wish; *on rompra les couleurs* the colors will be blended; *quiconque rompra sa volonté, sera heureux* whoever breaks his will, will be fortunate; *on m'a assuré que vous le romprez à l'obéissance* I have been assured that you will train him to be obedient; *vous ne romprez point le cachet de cette lettre* you shall not break the seal of that letter; *or* do not break the seal, etc.; *rompre le fil de l'eau* to change the course of the water; cf.: *on l'arrêta* or *le détourna* it was checked or diverted; *le bruit m'assourdit* the noise deafens my ears; *on rompra le marché* the bargain will be annulled; *il quitta subitement le fil de son discours pour entrer dans une autre matière* he suddenly changed the course of his speech to branch off into another subject; *surmonter les premières difficultés d'une affaire* to overcome the first obstacles; *il lui dit brusquement et en face quelque chose de désobligeant* he said something to him bluntly and unpleasantly; *il vaut mieux plier que rompre* better bend than break; *il céda* he yielded; *il s'attira un malheur irréparable* he brought an irreparable misfortune upon himself.

§ 87. Future Past:

Oral Drill:

dès que vous aurez rompu le cheval, il l'achètera as soon as you break in the horse, he will buy him; *ils les auront rompus, quand vous viendrez* they will be trained (broken in), when you come; *on l'aura rompu* (*e*) he *or* she must have been broken in; *on examina le projet en tous sens* the project was thoroughly studied (they considered the project from every aspect); *placez votre carte, de manière qu'on voie la face* place your card so one can see the face of it; *regardez derrière vous* look behind you; *quelle est la couleur retournée?* what suit has been turned up? *ils retournent au combat, à la victoire* they resume fighting and conquer again; *ces faits se retracent à mon esprit* those deeds are recalled to my mind; *bal-*

loter to toss (about); *tanguer* to pitch; *le roulis d'un vaisseau* the rolling of a boat; *on lui assouplira le caractère* (*: on le rompra*) his temper will be made more tractable; *l'éclisse sert à maintenir les os fracturés* a splint serves to hold the fractured bones; *porter le bras en écharpe* to wear one's arm in a sling; *écharper la laine* to comb the wool; *étriller un cheval* to curry (comb) a horse; *étroitesse de vues* narrow-minded.

§ 88. Conditional:

Oral Practice:

si on l'avait, on le romprait if we had *or* should we have him, we would train him (: break him in); *je croyais qu'on le romprait* I thought he would be broken in; *je suis sûr qu'on le romprait* I am sure (that) they would break him in; *on le romprait, qu'elle n'en serait pas satisfaite* or (*quand même on le romprait, elle n'en serait, etc.*) he would be broken in and yet she wouldn't be pleased (even if he would be broken in, she, etc.); *il le romprait bien, lui* he would break him in (he would); *sur la côte de la mer de Chine* on the coast of the Sea of China; *écrasé par un énorme poids* crushed by an immense weight; *un bois réduit en cendres* a wood (forest) reduced to ashes.

Exercice de Conversation:

on met un certain acharnement à tout détruire they seem to be actuated by (a certain) fury in their destruction; *une passion brutale* a brutal passion; *crisper son front* to contract his forehead; *l'enveloppe de la châtaigne est armée de piquants* a chestnut is provided with a prickly envelope; *glisser la lettre sous la porte* to slip the letter under the door; *la couler* (*adroitement*) to slip it (adroitly); *or: un billet* a note; *continuer une lecture interrompue* to resume interrupted reading; *une forte tâche* (*dure, pénible*) a great task (arduous, painful); *on retourne la terre* they turn the soil.

§ 89. Conditional Past (First Form):

Oral Drill:

vous l'auriez rompu, si vous l'aviez eu or: *si vous l'aviez eu, vous l'auriez rompu* you would have broken him in, if you had had him; *on aurait rompu la glace, si on avait pu* they would have broken the ice, if they could; *ils l'auraient rompue, eux* they would have broken it (they would); *on croyait la rompre* (*: on croyait qu'on l'aurait rompue*) they thought they would have broken it; *défo-*

mer le pavage to break up the pavement; *les cailloux* the pebbles; *le béton* concrete; *on brise la tige du lin, du chanvre* they crush the stalk of flax, of hemp; *on extrait le minerai de la mine* ore is extracted from the mine; *fendre l'air, l'onde, la foule* to cleave the air, to plow the wave, to break through the crowd; *sillonner les mers* to furrow the seas.

Exercice de Conversation:

avec facilité easily; *fendre du bois* to split wood; *le sol est durci (battu) or: foulé* the soil is hardened (trampled down); *l'entretien d'une route* the maintenance of a road; *métal cassant* breakable metal; *facile à réduire en poudre* easy to reduce to powder; *décider à rester auprès d'elle* to decide to remain beside her; *être fou (folle) de douleur à l'idée de la séparation* to be mad with grief at the thought (idea) of, etc.; *on creuse des mortaises* they hollow mortises.

§ 90. Conditional Past (Second Form):

si vous eussiez rompu votre serment! if you had broken your oath! *si elles eussent rompu leur serment* if they had broken their oath! *s'il eût rompu son serment, on l'eût puni* if he had (should he have) broken his oath, he would have been punished; *rompre désormais avec lui les relations auxquelles son bail l'avait assujetti* to break off henceforth the (business) relations to which his lease held him.

§ 91. Imperative:

romps-le break it (thou); *romps-la* break it; *rompons-le (la)* let us break it; *rompez-les* break them; *ne les rompez pas* do not break them; *ne le romps pas* do not break it; *ne la rompez point* do not break it; *ne les rompons point* let us not break them; *rompez!* go away! (break away).

LESSON XXVI

§ 92. Subjunctive Present:

Oral Drill:

je souhaite que vous rompiez sa volonté I hope you may break his will; *elle doute qu'ils le rompent au travail* she doubts they can train him up to work; *il est possible qu'il se casse la jambe* he may break his leg; *il vaut mieux qu'on rompe le silence* it is better to break the silence; *se tordre (: se replier)* to twist (to writhe; to recoil; to spring back); *mâchoire inférieure (supérieure)* lower

(upper) jaw; *la bouche* mouth; *la gueule du lion* the mouth of the lion; *le jugement est rendu; l'arrêt est rendu* the sentence has been pronounced; the issue has been decreed; *publiquement* in public; *la racine est tordue sur elle-même* the root is twisted (bent) upon itself; *première violation des traités internationaux* first violation of international treaties; *à quoi bon rompre les rapports diplomatiques?* of what avail is it to sever diplomatic relations? *bloquer une roue, un convoi* to block a wheel, a train; *effectuer une charge à la baïonnette* to make a charge with the bayonet.

Exercice de Conversation:

en travers d'un cours d'eau through a stream; *le duel d'artillerie continua ardent* the artillery duel was vigorously maintained; *défaite humiliante* humiliating defeat; *le prestige militaire a sombré* the military prestige has foundered; *le tir est bien réglé* the shooting is well regulated; *barrière élevée sur un chemin* barrier erected on a road; *dresser* to erect; *obstacle établi* an obstacle that has been set up; *un casse-noisette* (*s*) a nut-cracker; *il est tout cassé* he is all worn out; *cicatrice saillante* prominent scar; *se croiser* to meet one another; to intersect; *se signer* to make the sign of the Cross.

§ 93. Imperfect Subjunctive:

with review:

croit-il que nous ne rompissions sa volonté? does he believe he could not break his will? *il faudrait que vous la rompissiez* it would be necessary for you to break it; *il ne niera pas qu'ils ne la rompissent* he will not deny that they broke it; *on voulait que je la rompisse* they wished me to break it; *on doutait que je rompisse sa volonté* they doubted I would break his will; *on douta que je rompisse, etc.;* they doubted, etc.; *on a douté que je rompisse sa volonté* it has been doubted that *or* if I would break, etc.; *on avait douté que je rompisse sa volonté* they had doubted my breaking (: that I could break) his will; *on aurait douté que je rompisse sa volonté* they would have doubted my breaking his will.

and also with the Conditional:

on douterait que je rompisse sa volonté they would doubt my breaking his will.

Note.—In the last example the Imperfect (Subj.) refers to a future act and we may also use the Present Subjunctive:

on douterait que je rompe sa volonté they would doubt my breaking his will; *quoiqu'on doutât que je rompisse sa volonté* although they doubted that I would break, etc.

§ 94

Review:

(*a*)

je doute que (plus the Present Subjunctive)
quoique je doute " " " "
doutez que " " " "
je douterai que " " " "

and in other words: governing clauses requiring governed clauses in the Present Subjunctive; and incomplete action;

(*b*)

je doutais que (plus the Imperfect Subj.)
je doutai que " " " "
quoique je doutasse que " " " "
je douterais que " " " "

§ 95

NOTE.—In an hypothetical clause added to a subordinate, the Imperfect Subjunctive answers to the Imperfect (Indicative):

je ne crois pas qu'il la rompît, si on s'y opposait I do not believe he would break it, if some one objected.

Again: **any other tense than** (*a*) **requires the Imperfect Subjunctive;** *compound tenses* **follow the same** (*a*) **and** (*b*)**; and the verb being the auxiliary:**

j'ai douté (*j'aurai douté; quoique j'aie douté*) plus the Present Subj. *or* the Past (Perfect) Subj.
j'avais douté (*j'eus douté; j'aurais douté; quoique j'eusse douté*) plus the Imperfect *or* the Pluperfect Subj. *or* complete event.

Subjunctive present answers to the Present Indicative
Pluperfect (Subjunctive) answers to the Pluperfect Indicative.

§ 96. SUBJUNCTIVE PAST (PERFECT):

Oral Drill:

on ne croira pas que nous l'ayons rompu they would not believe that we broke (did break) it; *qui douterait que vous ayez rompu*

votre serment? who would doubt you have broken your oath? *croient-ils qu'ils n'aient jamais rompu leurs vœux?* do they believe they never broke their promises? *je n'ai jamais cru qu'il les ait rompus* I never believed he did break them.

and the *General Rule:*—**The Perfect (Past) of the Subjunctive refers to a past act and depends generally on a principal clause in the Present** *or* **Future of the Indicative;** *and* **again the main underlying idea may (in the principal clause) introduce a Past tense** *or* **Future of the Indicative;** *otherwise* **study the context:**

j'ai douté qu'il soit parti I doubted that he has left; *j'ai douté qu'il fût parti* I doubted that he had left; *on ne dit pas qu'il fût absent* we do not say he was absent; *elle a douté qu'il vienne* she doubted his coming (: that he will come); *il a douté qu'il partît* he doubted that he would set out; *on ne croyait pas qu'il le fasse* it was not believed he would do it; *il faudrait qu'il le fasse* he would have to do it; *je désirerais (je voudrais bien) qu'il le fasse* I should like him to do it.

and an Imperfect (plus a relative clause) may have a Past Subjunctive *instead* **of a Pluperfect;** *or* **the Imperfect or the Pluperfect of the Subjunctive may follow any tense (in the Indicative).**

§ 97. Pluperfect Subjunctive:

Oral Drill:

il voudrait que nous l'eussions rompu au travail he would wish (now) we had trained him to work; *on ne savait pas que vous eussiez rompu sa volonté* it was not known you had broken his will; *elle n'aurait pas voulu qu'on eût rompu sa volonté* she would not have wished her will to have been broken; *je ne croirai jamais qu'il l'eût rompue, si elle le lui avait ordonné* I shall never believe he could have broken it, if she had ordered him (to do so); *je doute qu'il les eût rompus* I doubt he would have broken them.

§ 98. Rule.—The Pluperfect of the Subjunctive refers to a past act and depends generally on the principal clause (in one of the Past Tenses of the Indicative and Conditional):

on doutait; on a douté; on douta; on avait douté; on aurait douté (plus the *que*) and the Pluperfect of the Subjunctive.

Final Review: **Above all the main underlying idea may (in the principal clause) introduce a verb in the Present, Future of the Indicative *or* Conditional, and require the Subjunctive and be followed by the Pluperfect of the Subjunctive; and *again* (as previously stated at p. 172 under General Rule) in an hypothetical clause added to a subordinate the Pluperfect (Subjunctive) answers to the Pluperfect (Indicative):**

RÉCAPITULATION

Proposition *Principale*	**Proposition** *Complétive*
Présent ou Futur. *Je doute; je douterai*	**Présent du Subjonctif.** *Qu'il le fasse*
	Parfait du Subjonctif. *Qu'il l'ait fait*
Temps passés. *Je doutais; je doutai; j'ai douté; j'avais douté; j'aurais douté,* etc.	**Imparfait du Subjonctif.** *Qu'il le fît*
	Plus-que-parfait du Subjonctif. *Qu'il l'eût fait*
Présent du Conditionnel. *Je douterais*	**Présent** ou **Imparfait du Subjonctif.** *Qu'il le fasse* ou *Qu'il le fît*

je ne crois pas qu'il l'eût rompu, si on le lui avait défendu I do not believe he would have broken it, if he had been prohibited (to do so); cf.: *s'il l'eût rompu* had he broken it, etc.; *eût-il avoué* if he had confessed; for: *s'il l'avait rompu; s'il avait avoué.*

(End of the First, Second and Third Groups.)

Exercice de Conversation:

on s'étonne qu'un impôt eût été mis sur le tabac we (they) are surprised that a tax should have been put on tobacco; *la rupture d'un contrat* the breaking of a contract; *le fer est cassant* iron (is apt to break) can be broken; *petit biscuit ferme et cassant* a crisp and solid little biscuit; *on coupe l'arbre pour avoir le fruit* they are cutting the tree to get the fruit; *prohiber* to prohibit; *fructifier* to be fruitful; to bear fruit; *se plier aux circonstances* to bend (bow) to circumstances; *quelque profond que soit leur ressentiment* however deep their resentment may be; *provoqué*

par des motifs humanitaires prompted by humanitarian motives; *ce bon (billet) vous autorise à toucher de l'argent* this ticket entitles you to receive some money; *un bon de pain* bread ticket; *l'opération qu'il indique, c'est la rupture* the transaction he recommends leads to war (open hostility); *il dompte les bêtes féroces* he is taming wild animals; *les dresse* trains them; *combat très violent* very violent battle; *l'ennemi a été brisé* the enemy has been crushed; *sur ces deux points* on both of these points; *à force de penser, ma tête se creuse* by dint of thinking, I rack my brain.

son cerveau lucide percera peut-être les ténèbres qui l'environnent perhaps his lucid mind may penetrate the veil of darkness; *l'acier est dur* steel is hard; *bouler les cornes d'un taureau* to provide the bull's horn with leather tips; *un boulet de canon* a cannon-ball; *une boule* bowl (ball); *boule noire* rejected vote; *jouer à la boule* to play at bowls; *boule blanche* vote carried; motion adopted; *flâner sur les boulevards* to loiter on the boulevards; *un morceau de bois fendu pour le chauffage* a piece of split wood for burning; *cambrer* to bend like an arc; *cambré* (horse) whose knees are bent out; *rompre les liens de l'amitié* to break the bonds of friendship; *un clou à tête ronde* (*une punaise*) a nail with a large, round head.

LESSON XXVII

§ 99. CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB (in *-er*) *être aimé* to be loved. Rule—Lesson XVI.

§ 100

INDICATIVE

Present

je suis aimé (e) I am loved
tu es aimé (e) you are loved
il est aimé he is loved
elle est aimée she is loved
nous sommes aimés we are loved
nous sommes aimées we are loved
vous êtes aimé (e) you are loved
vous êtes aimés (ées) you are loved
ils sont aimés they are loved
elles sont aimées they are loved

§ 101

Imperfect

j'étais aimé (*e*) I was loved, (etc.)
tu étais aimé (*e*) you were loved
il était aimé he was loved
elle était aimée she was loved
nous étions aimés we were loved
nous étions aimées we were loved
vous étiez aimé (*e*) you were loved
vous étiez aimés (*ées*) you were loved
ils étaient aimés they were loved
elles étaient aimées they were loved

§ 102

Past Definite

je fus aimé (*e*) I was loved
tu fus aimé (*e*) you were loved
il fut aimé he was loved
elle fut aimée she was loved
nous fûmes aimés we were loved
nous fûmes aimées we were loved
vous fûtes aimés you were loved
vous fûtes aimées you were loved
ils furent aimés they were loved
elles furent aimées they were loved

§ 103

Perfect (Past)

j'ai été aimé (*e*) I have been loved
tu as été aimé (*e*) you have been loved
il a été aimé he has been loved
elle a été aimée she has been loved
nous avons été aimés we have been loved
nous avons été aimées we have been loved
vous avez été aimé (*e*) you have been loved
vous avez été aimée (*ées*) you have been loved
ils ont été aimés they have been loved
elles ont été aimées they have been loved

§ 104

Pluperfect

j'avais été aimé (e) I had been loved
tu avais été aimé (e) you had been loved
il avait été aimé he had been loved
elle avait été aimée she had been loved
nous avions été aimés we had been loved
nous avions été aimées we had been loved
vous aviez été aimé (e) you had been loved
vous aviez été aimés (ées) you had been loved
ils avaient été aimés they had been loved
elles avaient été aimées they had been loved

§ 105

Past Anterior

j'eus été aimé (e) I had been loved
tu eus été aimé (e) you had been loved
il eut été aimé he had been loved
elle eut été aimée she had been loved
nous eûmes été aimés we had been loved
nous eûmes été aimées we had been loved
vous eûtes été aimés you had been loved
vous eûtes été aimées you had been loved
ils eurent été aimés they had been loved
elles eurent été aimées they had been loved

§ 106

Future

je serai aimé (e) I will (shall) be loved
tu seras aimé (e) you shall (will) be loved
il sera aimé he shall (will) be loved
elle sera aimée she shall (will) be loved
nous serons aimés we will (shall) be loved
nous serons aimées we will (shall) be loved
vous serez aimés you shall (will) be loved
vous serez aimées you shall (will) be loved
ils seront aimés they shall (will) be loved
elles seront aimées they shall (will) be loved

§ 107

Future Anterior

j'aurai été aimé (*e*) I will have been loved
tu auras été aimé (*e*) you shall have been loved
il aura été aimé he shall have been loved
elle aura été aimée she shall have been loved
nous aurons été aimés we will have been loved
nous aurons été aimées we will have been loved
vous aurez été aimé (*e*) you shall have been loved
vous aurez été aimés (*ées*) you shall have been loved
ils auront été aimés they shall have been loved
elles auront été aimées they shall have been loved

§ 108

Conditional Present

je serais aimé (*e*) I would be loved
tu serais aimé (*e*) you should be loved
il serait aimé he should be loved
elle serait aimée she would be loved
nous serions aimés we would be loved
nous serions aimées we would be loved
vous seriez aimés (*ées*) you should be loved
ils seraient aimés they would be loved

§ 109

Conditional Past

j'aurais été aimé I would have been loved
tu aurais été aimé you should have been loved
il aurait été aimé he should have been loved
elle aurait été aimée she would have been loved
nous aurions été aimés we should have been loved
nous aurions été aimées we should have been loved
vous auriez été aimé (*e*) you should have been loved
ils auraient été aimés they would have been loved

IMPERATIVE

§ 110

Present

sois aimé (*e*) be loved
soyons aimés(*-es*) let us be loved
soyez aimé (*e* or *-és*, *-ées*) be loved

§ 111

Perfect

aie été aimé (*e*) have been loved
ayons été aimés let us have been, etc.
ayez été aimé, *etc.* have been loved

§ 112

Present Subjunctive

que je sois aimé (e) that I may be loved
que tu sois aimé (e) that you may be loved
qu'il soit aimé that he may be loved
qu'elle soit aimée that she may be loved
que nous soyons aimés that we may be loved
que vous soyez aimé (e) that you may be loved
qu'ils soient aimés that they may be loved

§ 113

Past Subjunctive

que j'aie été aimé (e) that I may have been loved
que tu aies été aimé (e) that you may have been loved
qu'il ait été aimé that he may have been loved
qu'elle ait été aimée that she may have been loved
que nous ayons été aimés that we may have been loved
que vous ayez été aimés that you may have been loved
qu'ils aient été aimés that they may have been loved

§ 114

Imperfect Subjunctive

que je fusse aimé (e) that I might be loved (or other forms in English); *que tu fusses aimé (e)* that you might be loved; *qu'il fût aimé* that he might be loved; *qu'elle fût aimée* that she might be loved; *que nous fussions aimés (-ées)* that we might be loved; *que vous fussiez aimé (e), (-es); -ées* that you might be loved; *qu'ils fussent aimés* that they might be loved, etc.

§ 115

Pluperfect Subjunctive

que j'eusse été aimé (e) that I might have been loved; *que tu eusses été aimé (e)* that you might have been loved; *qu'il eût été aimé* that he might have been loved; *qu'elle eût été aimée* that she might have been loved; *que nous eussions été aimés (-ées)* that we might have been loved; *que vous eussiez été aimé (ée)* or: *-és (-ées)* that you might have been loved, *qu'ils eussent été aimés* that they might have been loved, etc., Lesson XXVI.

INFINITIVE

§ 116

Present

être aimé to be loved

§ 117

Perfect

avoir été aimé to have been loved

PARTICIPLE

§ 118

Present

étant aimé (*e*) being loved

§ 119

Perfect

ayant été aimé (*e*) having been loved

§ 120

Past Participle

aimé (m.) loved

aimée (f.) loved

§ 121. RULE.—The past participle of a Passive Verb always agrees with the subject.

NOTE.—Strictly speaking all Active (Transitive) verbs become Passive:—

transitive:—

on vend ce livre à cinq francs that book is sold at five francs

reflexive:—

cf.: ce livre se vend cinq francs that book is sold at five francs

passive:—

le livre est vendu the book is sold (has been sold)

on (one; we; they) plus the active voice often rendered in English by the passive voice. See Reflexive (p. 203); Intransitive verbs (Neuter verbs) take frequently *être*.

Practice:

il est estimé he is esteemed; *elle est estimée* she is esteemed; *vous êtes estimé* (m. sing.) you are esteemed; — *de tous* by all; *vous êtes estimée* (f. sing.) you are esteemed; *vous êtes estimés* (m. plur.) you are esteemed; *vous êtes estimées* (f. plur.) you are esteemed; *tu es estimé* (m. sing.) you are esteemed; *tu es estimée* (f. sing.) you are esteemed; *la leçon est finie* the lesson is over; *la maisor est vendue* the house is sold.

Observe.—Whether the past participle ends in *-é* (First Group); in *-i* (2d Group); *or* in *-u* (3d Group) it agrees as above in number and gender with the subject. All passive verbs take *être* and in all tenses and denote state or condition resulting from action.

LESSON XXVIII

§ 122

INFINITIVE MOOD

Être to be:

Participial Mood (Present):

étant being; *été* being; *ayant été* having been; *avoir été* to have been (Infinitive in the past).

§ 123

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Indicative:

je suis, tu es, il est, nous sommes, vous êtes, ils sont: I am, you are, he is, we are, you are, they are

Imperfect:

j'étais, tu étais, il était, nous étions, vous étiez, ils étaient: I was, you were (thou wast), he was, we were, you were, they were *or:* I used to be, etc.

Past Definite:

je fus I was; *tu fus* you were (thou wast); *il fut* he was; *nous fûmes* we were; *vous fûtes* you were; *ils furent* they were

Past Indefinite:

j'ai été I have been; *tu as été* you have been (thou hast been); *il a été* he has been; *nous avons été* we have been; *vous avez été* you have been; *ils ont été* they have been

Past Anterior:

j'eus été I had been, etc.

Pluperfect:

j'avais été I had been, etc.

Future:

je serai I will *or* shall be; *tu seras* you shall *or* will be; *il sera* he shall *or* will be; *nous serons* we will *or* shall be; *vous serez* you will *or* shall be; *ils seront* they shall *or* will be.

Future Past (anterior):

j'aurai été I will *or* shall have been, etc.

CONDITIONAL MOOD

Present *or* Future:

je serais I would *or* should be; *tu serais* you would *or* should be; *il serait* he would *or* should be; *nous serions* we would *or* should be; *vous seriez* you would *or* should be; *ils seraient* they would *or* should be.

Past (First Form):

j'aurais été I would *or* should have been; *tu aurais été* you would *or* should have been; *il aurait été* he would *or* should have been; *nous aurions été* we would *or* should have been; *ils auraient été* they would *or* should have been.

Past (Second Form):

j'eusse été I would *or* should have been; *tu eusses été* you would *or* should have been; *il eût été* he would *or* should have been; *nous eussions été* we would or should have been; *vous eussiez été* you would *or* should have been; *ils eussent été* they would *or* should have been.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Present *or* Future:

sois be (thou); *soyons* let us be; *soyez* be (you, ye)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present *or* Future:

que je sois that I may be (and other forms in English); *que tu sois* that you may be (thou mayest be); *qu'il soit* that he may be; *que nous soyons* that we may be; *que vous soyez* that you may be; *qu'ils soient* that they may be. See pp. 158–164.

Imperfect:

que je fusse that I might be (and other forms in English); *que tu fusses* that you might be; *qu'il fût* that he might be; *que nous*

fussions that we might be; *que vous fussiez* that you might be; *qu'ils fussent* that they might be.

Past:

que j'aie été that I may have been (and other forms in English); *que tu aies été* that you may (thou mayest) have been; *qu'il ait été* that he may have been; *que nous ayons été* that we may have been; *que vous ayez été* that you may have been; *qu'ils aient été* that they may have been.

Pluperfect:

que j'eusse été that I might have been (and other forms in English); *que tu eusses été* that you might have been; *qu'il eût été* that he might have been; *que nous eussions été* that we might have been; *que vous eussiez été* that you might have been; *qu'ils eussent été* that they might have been.

§ 124. Conjugation of a Neuter (Intransitive) Verb ending in *-er:*

tomber to fall; *tombant* falling; *tombé* (*e*) fallen (with *être*)

je tombe (like *je parle*) I fall (am falling, etc.); *tu tombes* you fall (thou fallest): are falling, etc.; *il tombe* he falls (is falling, etc.); *nous tombons* we fall (are falling, etc.); *vous tombez* you fall (are falling, etc.); *ils tombent* they fall (are falling, etc.): **Present Indicative.**

je tombais I was falling (I fell, did fall, used to fall, etc.); *tu tombais* you were falling, etc.; *il tombait* he was falling, etc.; *nous tombions* we were falling, etc.; *vous tombiez* you were falling, etc.; *ils tombaient* they were falling, etc.: **Imperfect of the Indicative.**

je tombai I fell; *tu tombas* you fell; *il tomba* he fell; *nous tombâmes* we fell; *vous tombâtes* you fell; *ils tombèrent* they fell: **Past Definite.**

je tomberai I will *or* shall fall; *tu tomberas* you shall *or* will fall; *il tombera* he shall *or* will fall; *nous tomberons* we will *or* shall fall; *vous tomberez* you shall *or* will fall; *ils tomberont* they shall *or* will fall: **Future.**

je tomberais I would *or* should fall; *tu tomberais* you would *or* should fall; *il tomberait* he would *or* should fall; *nous tomberions*

we would *or* should fall; *vous tomberiez* you would *or* should fall; *ils tomberaient* they would *or* should fall: **Conditional Present.**

tombe fall (thou); *tombons* let us fall; *tombez* fall: **Imperative.**

que je tombe that I may fall (and other forms in English); *que tu tombes* that you may fall (thou mayest fall); *qu'il tombe* that he may fall; *que nous tombions* that we may fall; *que vous tombiez* that you may fall; *qu'ils tombent* that they may fall: **Present Subjunctive.**

que je tombasse that I might fall (and other forms in English); *que tu tombasses* that you might fall; *qu'il tombât* that he might fall; *que nous tombassions* that we might fall; *que vous tombassiez* that you might fall; *qu'ils tombassent* that they might fall: **Imperfect (Subjunctive).**

§ 125. Compound Tenses with *être:*

je suis tombé (*e*) I fell (have fallen); *tu es tombé* (*e*) you fell (have fallen); *il est tombé* he fell (has fallen); *nous sommes tombés* we fell (have fallen); *vous êtes tombé* (*-e; -és; -ées*) you fell (have fallen); *ils sont tombés* they fell (have fallen): **Past Indefinite.**

j'étais tombé (*e*) I had fallen; *tu étais tombé* (*e*) you had fallen; *il était tombé* he had fallen; *nous étions tombés* (*es*) we had fallen; *vous étiez tombé* (*-e; -és; -ées*) you had fallen; *ils étaient tombés* they had fallen: **Pluperfect.**

je fus tombé (*e*) I had fallen; *tu fus tombé* (*e*) you had fallen; *il fut tombé* he had fallen; *nous fûmes tombés* (*-ées*) we had fallen; *vous fûtes tombé* (*-e; -és; -ées*) you had fallen; *ils furent tombés* they had fallen; *elles furent tombées* they had fallen: **Past Anterior.**

je serai tombé (*e*) I will *or* shall have fallen; *tu seras tombé* (*e*) you will *or* shall have fallen; *il sera tombé* he will *or* shall have fallen; *nous serons tombés* we will *or* shall have fallen; *vous serez tombé* (*-e; -ée; -es; -ées*) you will *or* shall have fallen; *ils seront tombés* they will *or* shall have fallen; **Future Past (Anterior).**

je serais tombé (*e*) I would *or* should have fallen; *tu serais tombé* (*e*) you would *or* should have fallen; *il serait tombé* he would *or* should have fallen; *nous serions tombés* (*-ées*) we would *or* should have fallen; *vous seriez tombé* (*-ée; -és; ées*) you would *or* should have fallen; *ils seraient tombés* they would *or* should have fallen: **Conditional Past.**

sois tombé (*e*) have fallen; *soyons tombés* (*-ées*) let us have fallen; *soyez tombé* (*-ée; -és; -ées*) have fallen: **Imperative Perfect.**

que je sois tombé (*e*) that I (may) have fallen; *que tu sois tombé* (*e*) that you (may) have fallen; *qu'il soit tombé* that he (may) have fallen; *que nous soyons tombés* (*-ées*) that we (may) have fallen; *que vous soyez tombés* (*-ées*) that you (may) have fallen; *qu'ils soient tombés* that they (may) have fallen: **Subjunctive Past.**

que je fusse tombé (*e*) that I (might) have fallen; *que tu fusses tombé* (*e*) that you (might) have fallen; *qu'il fût tombé* that he (might) have fallen; *que nous fussions tombés* (*-ées*) that we (might) have fallen; *que vous fussiez tombé* (*-ée; -és; -ées*) that you (might) have fallen; *qu'ils fussent tombés* that they (might) have fallen: **Pluperfect Subjunctive.**

être tombé to have fallen: **Infinitive Past.**

étant tombé having fallen: **Past (Participle);**
tombé (*e*) fallen: **Past Participle.**

§ 126. OTHER NEUTER VERBS CONJUGATED WITH *être:*

aller to go	*devenir* to become
décéder to die	*naître* to be born
mourir to die	*éclore* to hatch (out)
parvenir to succeed (reach)	*intervenir* to intervene
arriver (*à*) to arrive; to reach	*rester* to stay, to remain

venir to come and its compounds. Note.—*décéder* rarely used.

§ 127. OTHERS MAY IMPLY *action* AND *state of being:* with *avoir* or *être:*

sortir to go out	*disparaître* to disappear
entrer to enter (*dans*)	*passer* to pass
partir to set out	*retourner* to return (to go back)
rentrer to go in again	*descendre* to descend
accourir to hasten (run to)	*croître* to grow (up)
retomber to fall again	*redescendre* to come down again
monter to go up	*remonter* to go up again
sonner to strike (ring)	*changer* to change
baisser to lower (sink)	*déborder* to overflow
demeurer to reside (remain)	*échouer* to run aground
échapper to escape	*réchapper* to escape again
ressortir to go out again	*ressusciter* to revive (resurrect)

and few others in little use.

Practice:

ils sont sortis they are out (have gone out); *ils ont sorti les fleurs* they took the flowers out; *descendez les malles* take down the trunks; *ils sont descendus à l'hôtel* they are stopping at the hotel; *elles ont disparu ensemble* they disappeared together; *il y a cinq ans qu'ils sont disparus* it is five years since they disappeared.

§ 128

Some take *avoir* only: *ils ont dormi* (action is implied). Few neuter become Impersonal:—

il est venu quelqu'un some one came; *il est venu deux dames* two ladies came.

Compare the Forms of a Passive Verb with a Neuter:

ils sont aimés they are liked (loved); *ils sont arrivés* they have arrived.

Material for General Practice:

retomber dans la même faute to fall back into the same state; to commit the same error (*récidiver*); *le feuillage* (*les branches*) *retombe latéralement* the foliage (the branches) droops (sinks down) to one side (on both sides); *tomber aux mains de l'ennemi* to fall into the hands of the enemy; *errer dans l'espace* (*le traverser*) to wander through space (to soar through it); *de tout son long* (he fell) full length; *il tombe bien!* he is lucky *or:* he comes to the wrong person; *à plat ventre* flat on the ground; *tomber sur un passage* to come across a passage; *renverser une muraille* to tear down a wall; *la pluie tombe avec violence* it is raining torrents; *se jeter à la renverse* to throw one's self; *se pencher en arrière* to lean backwards; *le ballon atterrit* the balloon came down; *le coup l'atterra* the blow overwhelmed him.

tomber dans la dégradation to fall into degradation; *la source a tari* the spring dried up; *la source est tarie* the spring has dried up; *ils ont passé un contrat* they drew up a contract; *ses beaux jours sont passés* his best days are over; *il tomba mort* he fell dead; *ils restèrent sur la place; grièvement blessés* they fell (were left dead on the field); seriously wounded; *laisser tomber* to let drop; *les particuliers jettent des lettres dans la boîte* individuals throw letters into the box; *il a disparu de son domicile* he vanished from his home; *tomber gravement malade* to fall seriously ill; *dé-*

gager sa responsabilité to throw off his responsibility; *retourner vers quelqu'un* to go back to any one; *colis fragiles* fragile packages; *tomber comme des fruits trop mûrs* to fall like overripe fruit; *sauter du haut d'une tour* to leap from the top of a tower; *c'est renversant!* a stunner! *tomber en extase* to fall into ecstasy (entrancing joy); *il est aisé de tomber* it is easy to fall; *faire retomber la faute sur M. X.* to cast the blame on Mr. B.; *bouc-émissaire* scape-goat; *tomber en quenouille* or *passer en succession (entre les mains des femmes)* to fall to the female line; *pouf! le voilà par terre* bang! he is on the (ground) floor; *le vent est tombé (a cessé)* the wind stopped (has subsided); *tomber à l'eau* to fall into the water; *la voiture renverse* the carriage tips (falls on) to one side; *laisser tomber d'une certaine hauteur* to let drop from a certain height; *dans toute son étendue* to the full extent; *goutte à goutte* drop by drop; *dégoutter* to drop (trickle, drip; to roll off); *il roula de haut en bas* he rolled down from top to bottom; *dégringoler les escaliers* to tumble downstairs; *rouler sur l'or* to be very rich; *la scie* the saw; *le rouleau roule* a roller rolls.

un rouleau de papier roll of paper; *il est au bout de son rouleau* he is at his wit's end; *basculer* to see-saw; to tip off; *scier* to saw; *la maison s'écroula* the house collapsed (to cave in; to fall in); *les balles tombaient dru comme grêle (mouches)* bullets fell as thick as hailstones (flies); *le malade s'affaiblit de jour en jour* the patient is growing weaker every day; *il fut renversé par une automobile* he was thrown down by an automobile; *il a fait une culbute* he turned a somersault; *renverser* to overturn (upset; spill); *l'édifice tomba en s'affaissant avec fracas* the building fell with a crash; *sur le dos* on the back; *s'affaisser* to sink down; *se précipiter d'une hauteur* to leap from the top; *les deux princes s'abordèrent amicalement* the two princes approached one another amicably; *son mal est empiré* his condition is worse; *or: son mal a empiré* his condition has grown worse; cf.: *avoir (être) expiré* to have died; *il s'attira une affaire* he got into a scrape; *à la tombée du jour (entre chien et loup)* at the fall of day; *vers le soir* at dusk; *à la nuit tombante* at nightfall; *le jour baisse (: est au déclin)* night is coming on; the day is on the decline; *mon ami baisse* my friend is growing weaker; *tout tombe en ruine* everything runs to ruin; *il fut sur le point de se perdre (se ruiner)* he was on the point of ruining himself; *les fonds baissent* the funds are falling (sinking); *baissez le rideau* drop the curtain; *baissez les yeux* lower your eyes; *le lever et le baisser du rideau* the rise and

fall of the curtain; *le vent est tombé* the wind has abated; *les bras me sont tombés* my arms fell at my side; *or:* I was struck dumb with surprise; *rétablir les forces* to recover one's strength; *il tombe en faiblesse* his strength is failing (is growing weak) or: *il se sent défaillir* he feels himself sinking; *rendre stupéfait* to stupefy; *la hausse et la baisse* fluctuation; *les bras inertes* his (her) arms inert; *du reste, il a assez travaillé; voilà la nuit qui tombe* night is falling.

LESSON XXIX

§ 129. Pronominal Verbs: Reflexive—Reciprocal

action **on the same subject:**

qui s'excuse, s'accuse a guilty conscience needs no accuser; *qui se ressemble, s'assemble* birds of a feather flock together; *il se flatte; elle se flatte;* he flatters himself; she flatters herself; *nous nous flattons* we flatter ourselves; *vous vous flattez* you flatter yourself (-selves); *ils se flattent* they flatter themselves.

§ 130. *reciprocal* action:

ils s'aiment they love each other (: one another); *ils se plaisent les uns aux autres* (*elles . . . les unes, etc.*) they please one another *or: l'un plaît à, etc.; plaire* (*à*) to please.

§ 131. *others* are used instead of the Passive Form and refer to the frequency of the same act:

le soleil se couche is setting; cf.: (*à*)
le café se boit chaud coffee is drunk hot; *ces livres se vendent cher* those books are expensive; *la ville se voit d'ici* the city can be seen from here; cf.: *la maison s'est abîmée* (*écroulée*) the house collapsed or: (was totally *or* wholly destroyed); *cela se voit tous les jours* (*journellement*) that is seen daily (an everyday occurrence); *ces huîtres se mangent crues* those oysters are eaten raw; *ces fleurs se tournent vers le soleil* those flowers turn toward the sun; *le rugissement du lion s'entend de fort loin* the roaring of a lion can be heard from a great distance; *un jeu qui se joue avec deux cartes retournées et légèrement pliées* a game played with two cards face up and slightly bent; *ce verbe ne se conjugue qu'à* this verb is conjugated only in; *les mariages se célèbrent à la mairie,*

à l'église, etc. marriages are performed (celebrated) at the town-hall; at church, etc.

le maïs se sème èn maize (Indian corn) is sown in; *la soucoupe se place sous la tasse* a saucer is placed under the cup; *la pêche de l'éponge se pratique sur les côtes d'Algérie* fishing for sponges is practised on the coast of, etc.; *nous nous sommes trompés (-ées)* we were mistaken; *ils se reconnaissent coupables* they acknowledge themselves guilty; *ils s'accordent pour le faire* they agree to make (do) it; *il s'avoue l'auteur de ce crime* he confesses himself to be the author (perpetrator) of, etc.; *son état s'améliore* his condition improves; *se rapprocher de ses semblables* like meets like; *ils se font des concessions mutuelles* they make mutual concessions; *le bruit du tonnerre se fait entendre* the roaring of thunder is heard; *s'assembler (s'attrouper) en tumulte* to assemble noisily; *se réunir* to unite; to gather; to meet; *cette maison se loue à* that house can be rented for. P. 203.

§ 132. Pronominal Verb ending in *-ir*; *se repentir* to repent (Irregular Verb) *de:*

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Indicative:

je me repens I repent; *tu te repens* you repent; *il se repent* he repents; *nous nous repentons* we repent; *vous vous repentez* you repent; *ils se repentent* they repent.

cf.: je me rétablis (se rétablir to recover; to gain strength)
je me flatte (se flatter to flatter one's self) etc.
je me reconnais (se reconnaître to know one's self).

Imperfect:

je me repentais I was repenting, etc.; *tu te repentais* you were repenting, etc.; *il se repentait* he was repenting; *nous nous repentions* we were repenting; *vous vous repentiez* you were repenting; *ils se repentaient* they were repenting.

Past Definite:

je me repentis I repented; *tu te repentis* you repented; *il se repentit* he repented; *nous nous repentîmes* we repented; *vous vous repentîtes* you repented; *ils se repentirent* they repented.

Future:

je me repentirai I will *or* shall repent; *tu te repentiras* you shall *or* will repent; *il se repentira* he shall *or* will repent; *nous nous repentirons* we will *or* shall repent; *vous vous repentirez* you shall *or* will repent; *ils se repentiront* they shall *or* will repent.

CONDITIONAL MOOD

Conditional Present *or* Future:

je me repentirais I would *or* should repent; *tu te repentirais* you would *or* should repent; *il se repentirait* he would *or* should repent; *nous nous repentirions* we would *or* should repent; *vous vous repentiriez* you would *or* should repent; *ils se repentiraient* they would *or* should repent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Present:

repens-toi repent; *repentons-nous* let us repent; *repentez-vous* repent; *qu'il se repente* let him repent; *qu'ils se repentent* let them repent.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present or Future:

que je me repente that I (may) repent (*or* other forms in English); *que tu te repentes* that you (may) repent, etc.; *qu'il se repente* that he (may) repent; *que nous nous repentions* that we (may) repent; *que vous vous repentiez* that you (may) repent; *qu'ils se repentent* that they (may) repent. Review Rules, pp. 158–162.

Imperfect (Subjunctive):

que je me repentisse that I (might) repent (*or* other forms in English); *que tu te repentisses* that you (might) repent; *qu'il se repentît* that he (might) repent; *que nous nous repentissions* that we (might) repent; *que vous vous repentissiez* that you (might) repent; *qu'ils se repentissent* that they (might) repent.

COMPOUND TENSES

Past Indefinite:

je me suis repenti (*e*) I have repented (I repented); *tu t'es repenti* (*e*) you have repented; *il s'est repenti* he has repented; *nous nous sommes repentis* (*-es*) we have repented, etc.; *vous vous êtes repenti* (*-e; -s; -es*) you have repented; *ils se sont repentis* they repented.

Pluperfect:

je m'étais repenti (*e*) I had repented; *tu t'étais repenti* (*e*) you had repented, etc.

Past Anterior:

je me fus repenti (*e*) I had repented; *tu te fus repenti* (*e*) you had repented; *il se fut repenti* he had repented, etc.

Future Past:

je me serai repenti (*e*) I shall have repented; *tu te seras repenti* (*e*) you will *or* shall have repented, etc.

Conditional Past:

je me serais repenti (*e*) I would *or* should have repented; *tu te serais repenti* (*e*) you would *or* should have repented; *il se serait repenti* he would *or* should have repented, etc.

Subjunctive Past:

que je me sois repenti (*e*) that I (may) have repented (*or* other forms in English); *que tu te sois repenti* (*e*) that you (may) have repented; *qu'il se soit repenti* that he (may) have repented, etc.

Pluperfect (Subjunctive):

que je me fusse repenti (*e*) that I (might) have repented (*or* other forms in English); *que tu te fusses repenti* (*e*) that you (might) have repented; *qu'il se fût repenti* that he (might) have repented, etc.

§ 133

INFINITIVE PAST

s'être repenti to have repented.

PARTICIPLE

Present:	**Past**
se repentant repenting	*s'étant repenti* having repented

PAST PARTICIPLE

repenti (m.) repented	*repentie* (f.) repented

LESSON XXX

CONJUGATION OF AN IMPERSONAL VERB ending in *-er*.
neiger to snow.

§ 134

INDICATIVE

Present
il neige it snows (is snowing)

Past Indefinite
il a neigé it has snowed

Imperfect
il neigeait it was snowing

Pluperfect
il avait neigé it had snowed

Past Definite
il neigea it snowed

Past Anterior
il eut neigé it had snowed

Future
il neigera it will snow

Future Past (Anterior)
il aura neigé it will have snowed

Conditional Present
il neigerait it would snow

Conditional Past
il aurait neigé it would have, etc.

Subjunctive Present
qu'il neige that it may snow

Subjunctive Past
qu'il ait neigé that it may have, etc.

Imperfect (Subjunctive)
qu'il neigeât that it might snow

Pluperfect (Subjunctive)
qu'il eût neigé that it might have snowed

INFINITIVE

Present
neiger to snow

Past
avoir neigé to have snowed

PARTICIPLE

Present
neigeant snowing

Past
neigé snowed; *la neige*, snow

Practice:

falloir to be necessary; *pleuvoir* to rain.

§ 135. Les Nombres Cardinaux (*Cardinal Numbers*):

0	*zéro*	zero	21	*vingt et un*	twenty-one
1	*un* (*e*)	one	22	*vingt-deux*	twenty-two, etc.
2	*deux*	two	30	*trente*	thirty
3	*trois*	three	31	*trente et un*	thirty-one
4	*quatre*	four	32	*trente-deux*	thirty-two, etc.
5	*cinq*	five	40	*quarante*	forty
6	*six*	six	41	*quarante et un*	forty-one
7	*sept*	seven	50	*cinquante*	fifty
8	*huit*	eight	51	*cinquante et un*	fifty-one
9	*neuf*	nine	60	*soixante*	sixty
10	*dix*	ten	61	*soixante et un*	sixty-one
11	*onze*	eleven	70	*soixante-dix*	seventy
12	*douze*	twelve	71	*soixante et onze*	seventy-one
13	*treize*	thirteen	72	*soixante-douze*	seventy-two, etc.
14	*quatorze*	fourteen	80	*quatre-vingts*	eighty
15	*quinze*	fifteen	81	*quatre-vingt-un*	eighty-one
16	*seize*	sixteen	82	*quatre-vingt-deux*	eighty-two, etc.
17	*dix-sept*	seventeen	90	*quatre-vingt-dix*	ninety
18	*dix-huit*	eighteen	91	*quatre-vingt-onze*	ninety-one
19	*dix-neuf*	nineteen	92	*quatre-vingt-douze*	ninety-two, etc.
20	*vingt*	twenty	100	*cent* (a or:)	one hundred
			101	*cent un* (one)	hundred and one

deux cents two hundred; *trois cents* three hundred, etc.

Note.—*s* when *cent* is multiplied; no *s* when *cent* is followed by another numerical adjective: *trois cent un* (301); *trois cent deux* (302), etc.; likewise with *vingt: quatre vingts livres* eighty books; *quatre-vingt-deux* eighty-two, etc.

quatre cents four hundred; *cinq cents* five hundred; *six cents* six hundred; *sept cents* seven hundred; *huit cents* eight hundred; *neuf cents* nine hundred; *mille* one thousand; *deux mille* two thousand; *un million* one million; *un milliard* one billion; *un crayon* a (one) pencil; *une plume* a pen.

cf.: *mil* (Christian era) *neuf cent seize* (1916) one thousand nine hundred and sixteen; before Christ *mille* (1900) *neuf cent* or again: nineteen hundred (*dix-neuf cent*), etc.; *deux milles* two miles.

§ 136. Nombres Ordinaux (*Ordinal Numbers*):

premier (*première*) first; *deuxième* (*second*) (*e*) second; *troisième* third; *quatrième* fourth; *cinquième* fifth; *sixième* sixth; *septième*

seventh; *huitième* eighth; *neuvième* ninth; *dixième* tenth; *onzième* eleventh, etc.

20th: *vingtième* twentieth; 21st: *vingt et unième* twenty-first; 22nd (22e) *vingt-deuxième* twenty-second; *le 1er. mai* the first of May *or:* May First; *le deux juin* the second of June; *Napoléon 1er.* Napoleon the First; *Louis quatorze* Louis the Fourteenth;

NOTE.—*premier* is the only ordinal used for months or proper names: *Napoléon III* (*trois*) Napoleon the Third, etc.; cf.: *d'abord* first; *puis* then; *premièrement* first (firstly); *deuxième* is preferred to *second* when it suggests third, etc.: *il est le second* he is the second (only two are suggested); *il est le deuxième* he is the second (refers to the idea of a third).

Practice:

ils sont descendus les premiers they came down first; *un demi* (*une moitié*) one half (½); (*deux demis*) 2 halves; *le tiers* ⅓ one third; ¼ *un quart* one fourth; ⅕ *un cinquième* one fifth; 3/14 *trois quatorzièmes* three fourteenths; *une douzaine* a dozen; *une huitaine* about eight; *une dizaine* about ten; *une quinzaine* about fifteen; *une vingtaine* (a score) about twenty, etc.; *un milliard* or *un billion* a billion; *une paire* a couple (a pair; two); *un couple d'amis* a couple of friends; *une couple d'œufs* two eggs; *un millier* about a thousand; *une demi-heure* half an hour; *une heure et demie* an hour and a half; *à la page deux cent* page two hundred; *trois millions de francs* three million francs.

§ 137. AGES—DIMENSIONS:

Review:

quel âge a monsieur? How old are you, Sir? *J'ai cinquante ans* I am fifty years old; *mon frère a trente ans et ma sœur en a vingt-huit* my brother is thirty years old and my sister is twenty-eight; *il est âgé de vingt ans* he is twenty years of age (he is twenty); *vous êtes moins âgé que lui de cinq ans* you are younger than he by five years; *plus âgé* older; *elle est plus âgée que son mari de deux ans* she is two years older than her husband; *quel âge avez-vous* how old are you? etc.; *à l'âge de raison* at the age of reason; *de quelle hauteur est cet édifice* or *quelle est la hauteur de cet édifice* what is the height of this building? *il est haut de cent pieds* (*il a cent pieds de hauteur; il a cent pieds de haut; il a une hauteur de cent pieds*) it is one hundred feet high; *long, haut, large* may be

used for *longueur, hauteur, largeur,* but not *profond* nor *épais* for *profondeur* and *épaisseur; plus épais de deux pouces* thicker by two inches.

§ 138. Time of Day—Dates:

quelle heure est-il what time is it (what o'clock) is it? *il est une heure* it is one o'clock; *il est une heure et demie* it is half-past one; *il est trois heures (et) un quart* (it is) quarter past three; *trois heures et demie* half-past three; *il est six heures moins cinq (minutes)* five minutes to six; *six heures six (minutes)* six minutes past six; *l'heure du départ* hour for departure; *3:45 P.M. (trois quarante-cinq P.M.)* three forty-five; *à huit heures du soir* at eight o'clock in the evening; *à une heure précise* on the stroke of one (at one o'clock sharp [precisely]); promptly at one (o'clock); *à quelle heure* at what time? *vers (les) sept heures* toward (about) seven (o'clock); *l'heure du dîner* dinner time; *quel quantième du mois est-ce aujourd'hui (le combien* what day?) what day of the month is this (— is it to-day)? *quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui?* or: *quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui* what day of the month, etc.? *c'est aujourd'hui le premier (du mois)* to-day is the first; *c'est aujourd'hui le deux (du mois)* to-day is the second; *ce sera demain le trois* to-morrow will be the third; *le 1er. mai* the first of May (on the first of May); *c'est aujourd'hui le 1er. mai* it is May first; *il est parti le deux janvier* he left on January second; *en mai* in May; *au mois de mai* in the month of May; *en (dans) quel mois* in what month; *en* 1917 *(mil neuf cent dix-sept); dix-neuf cent dix-sept* in nineteen seventeen *or* in one thousand nine hundred and seventeen; *d'aujourd'hui en huit est (sera) la sortie* a week from to-day is Commencement Day; *d'aujourd'hui en quinze est la rentrée des classes* (in) two weeks from to-day is the beginning of the term (: the opening of school, etc.); *il y a quinze jours* two weeks ago (a fortnight ago); *il y a huit jours (: une semaine* a week) a week ago; *lundi en huit (de lundi en huit)* a week from Monday.

Practice:

le double double; *le tiers état (le tiers* neither of the nobility nor of the clergy) but commoners? French Hist.; *le triple* triple; *le quadruple* quadruple; *le quintuple* fivefold; *le sextuple* sixfold; *le septuple* sevenfold; *l'octuple* eightfold; *le nonuple* ninefold; *le décuple* tenfold; *le centuple* hundredfold; *le décime* ($\frac{1}{10}$) the tenth part of a franc; *cinq centimes* one cent; *dix centimes* (2) two

cents, etc.; *cinquante centimes* ten cents; *un franc* about twenty cents; *une pièce de deux francs* two-franc piece; *cinq frs.* (*un dollar*) one dollar; *décimer* to decimate; to destroy a considerable part of; *chapitre trois* chapter third; *les deux premiers chapitres* the first two chapters; *une fois* once.

PART IV

IRREGULAR VERBS

IRREGULAR VERBS

in *-er*

§ 1

aller, to go

Present Ind.:
I go, etc.: *je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons, vous allez, ils vont.*

Imperf.:
I was going, etc.: *j'allais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.*

Past Def.:
I went, etc.: *j'allai, -as, -a, -âmes, -âtes, èrent.*

Past Indef.:
I have gone, etc.: *je suis allé, tu es allé, etc.*
NOTE.—See *tomber*, page 294.

Future:
I will go, etc.: *j'irai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.*

Condit.:
I would go, etc.: *j'irais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.*

Imperat.:
go, etc.: *va, allons, allez.*

Pres. Subj.:
that I may go, etc.: *que j'aille, que tu ailles, qu'il aille, que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils aillent.*

Imperf. Subj.:
that I might go, etc.: *que j'allasse, que tu allasses, qu'il allât, que nous allassions, que vous allassiez, allassent.*

NOTE.—All its compound tenses with *être.*

§ 2

envoyer to send, to throw; *renvoyer* to send back, to discharge.

Pres. Ind.:
j'envoie, -es -e, envoyons, envoyez, envoient.

Imperf.:
j'envoyais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
j'envoyai, -as, -a, -âmes, -âtes, -èrent.

Future:
j'enverrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
j'enverrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
envoie, envoyons, envoyez.

Pres. Subj.:
que j'envoie, -es, -e, envoyions, -iez, envoient.

Imperf. Subj.:
que j'envoyasse, -es, envoyât, envoyassions, que vous envoyassiez qu'ils envoyassent.

Pres. Part.:
envoyant.

Past Part.:
envoyé, envoyée.

Compound Tenses:
j'ai envoyé, etc.

in *-ir*

§ 3

acquérir to acquire; *conquérir* to conquer; *s'enquérir* to inquire; *querir* to be in quest (seek); *requérir* to request (require); *reconquérir* to reconquer.

cf.: *acheter* to buy; *faire des achats* to make purchases; *faire des emplettes* to go shopping.

Pres. Ind.:
j'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquièrent.

Imperf.:
j'acquérais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
j'acquis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
j'acquerrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
j'acquerrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
acquiers, acquérons, acquérez.

Pres. Subj.:
que j'acquière, -es, -e, que n. acquérions, -iez, qu'ils acquièrent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que j'acquisse, -es, qu'il acquît, que n. acquissions, -iez, -ent.

Pres. Part.: *acquérant.* **Past Part.:** *acquis, acquise.*

NOTE.—*querir* (no *é* acute) used in the Infinitive only.

cf.: *envoyez querir le médecin-chirurgien* (surgeon) and *allez chercher*, etc. P. 178.

§ 4

assaillir to attack (hastily and vigorously).
cf.: *attaquer* to attack (to begin an attack).

Pres. Ind.:
j'assaille, -es, -e, -ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf.:
j'assaillais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
j'assaillis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
j'assaillirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
j'assaillirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
assaille, assaillons, assaillez.

Pres. Subj.:
que j'assaille, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que j'assaillisse, -es, qu'il assaillît, que n. assaillissions, assaillissiez, assaillissent.

Pres. Part.: *assaillant.* **Past Part.:** *assailli, assaillie.*

NOTE.—Likewise conjugated: *tressaillir (de joie, de peur)*, to start with joy, fear.

§ 5

bénir to bless, like *finir;* in reference to Holy water or consecrated bread, use adjective: *bénit, bénite.*

§ 6

bouillir to boil; *rebouillir* to boil again; *ébouillir* boil away.

Pres. Ind.:
je bous, bous, bout, bouillons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf.:
je bouillais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je bouillis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je bouillirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je bouillirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
bous, bouillons, bouillez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je bouille, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je bouillisse, -es, bouillît, que n. bouillissions, -iez, -ent.

Pres. Part.:
bouillant.

Past Part.:
bouilli, bouillie.

§ 7

courir to run; *accourir* to hasten; *concourir* to concur, to compete; *discourir* to discourse; *encourir* to incur; *parcourir* (*courir par*) to run over; *recourir* to run again, to have recourse to; *secourir* to succor (assist).

Pres. Ind.:
je cours, tu cours, il court, nous courons, vous courez, ils courent.

Imperf.:
je courais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past. Def.:
je courus, -us, -ut, -ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.

Future:
je courrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je courrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
cours, courons, courez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je coure, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je courusse, -es, courût, que n. courussions, que v. courussiez, qu'ils courussent.

Pres. Part.:
courant.

Past Part.:
couru, courue.
Compound Tenses with *avoir: j'ai couru*, etc.

§ 8

couvrir see *offrir; découvrir* like *offrir.*

cueillir to cull, to gather, to pick; it is conjugated like *parler*, except in the Past Participle, Past Definite, Imperfect Subj., and Infinitive; also in its compounds.

Pres. Ind.:
je cueille, -es, -e, -ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf.:
je cueillais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je cueillis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je cueillerai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je cueillerais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
cueille, cueillons, cueillez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je cueille, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je cueillisse, -es, -ît, que n. cueillissions, -issiez, -issent.

Pres. Part.:
cueillant.

Past Part.:
cueilli, cueillie. See pp. 365, 420.

§ 9

dormir to sleep; *s'endormir* to fall asleep; *endormir* to put to sleep; *redormir* to sleep again; *rendormir* to put to sleep again; *se rendormir* to go to sleep again.

Pres. Ind.:
je dors, tu dors, il dort, n. dormons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf.:
je dormais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je dormis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je dormirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je dormirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
dors, dormons, dormez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je dorme, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je dormisse, que tu dormisses, qu'il dormît, que n. dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent.

Pres. Part.:
dormant.

Past Part.:
dormi.

§ 10

faillir (*faire une faute*) to fail; *faillir* (with an Infinitive) or *être sur le point de*, to come near; *défaillir* to grow faint (and weak); *faillir* to fail in business.
cf.: *manquer* to fail (to do), to miss, to lack.

faillir almost like *finir* and the irregular forms of the Pres. Indicat., Future, and Condit. are so seldom used that many conjugate them like *finir*.

Pres. Ind.:
je faux, faux, faut, faillons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf.:
je faillais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past. Def.:
je faillis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je faudrai or *faillirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.*

Condit.:
je faudrai or *faillirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.*

No Imperative.

No Subj. Present.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je faillisse, -es, faillît, que n. faillissions, que v. faillissiez, qu'ils faillissent.

Pres. Part.:
faillant.

Past Part.:
failli, faillie.

§ 11

férir to strike, has only the Past Participle:—
Used only in *sans coup férir*, without striking a blow, that is; *sans en venir aux mains.*
féru, férue smitten; *féru d'amour: aimer à la folie.*

§ 12

fleurir to flower (blossom), like *finir*; the Past Participle has two forms: *fleurissant* and *florissant* (flourishing); also in the Imperfect, *fleurissais, etc.* and *florissais, etc.*

NOTE.—It is wrong to use the latter forms interchangeably.

§ 13

fuir to flee, to run away; *s'enfuir* to run away, to run off.

Pres. Ind.:
je fuis, fuis, fuit, n. fuyons, fuyez, fuient.
Imperf.:
je fuyais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.
Past Def.:
je fuis, fuis, fuit, fuîmes, fuîtes, fuirent.
Future:
je fuirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.
Condit.:
je fuirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.
Imperat.:
fuis, fuyons, fuyez.
Pres. Subj.:
que je fuie, -es, -e, que n. fuyions, -iez, fuient.
Imperf. Subj.:
que je fuisse, -es, fuît, fuissions, -iez, -ent.
Pres. Part.:
fuyant.
Past Part.:
fui, fuie.

§ 14

gésir to lie, used only in:—

Pres. Ind.:
je gis, gis, gît (*ci-gît*, here lies), *gisons, -ez, -ent.*
Imperf.:
je gisais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.
Pres. Part.:
gisant.
cf.: *c'est de l'argent mort*, money lying idle.

§ 15

haïr to hate, like *finir;* no *tréma* (diæresis) in the Singular (Pres. Ind.) nor in the 2d person Imperative and takes no circumflex.

Pres. Ind.:
je hais, hais, hait, haïssons, haïssez, -ent.

Imperf.:
je haïssais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
haïs, haïs, haït, haïmes, haïtes, haïrent.

Future:
haïrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
haïrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
hais, haïssons, haïssez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je haïsse, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je haïsse, -es, haït, que n. haïssions, que v. haïssiez, qu'ils haïssent.

Pres. Part.:
haïssant.

Past Part.:
haï, haïe.

Observe.—Several expressions referring to hatred, love, anger, etc., Lesson XVIII.

§ 16

issu, issue (Past. Part. from the old verb *issir, sortir*) born, sprung (descended) from.

ils étaient issus d'un des fils de M. X.
as a noun: *à l'issue du combat.*
cf.: to be issued *paraître.*

§ 17

mentir to lie, not to speak the truth.

Pres. Ind.:
je mens, mens, ment, mentons, mentez, mentent.

Imperf.:
je mentais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past. Def.:
je mentis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je mentirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je mentirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
mens, mentons, mentez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je mente, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je mentisse, -es, mentît, que n. mentissions, mentissiez, mentissent.

Pres. Part.:
mentant.

Past Part.:
menti, mentie.

Observe.—Conjugated in like manner *partir* to leave; *sortir* to go out; *sentir* to feel; *servir* to use and compounds; exceptions: *asservir, ressortir, assortir, répartir* like *finir.*

§ 18

mourir to die; it takes *être* in Compound Tenses; *mourir de soif* to die with thirst; *mourir de faim* to starve; *mourir de rire* to die with laughter; *mourir de froid* to perish from cold; *mourir de peur* to die of fright; *mourir de regret* to die of a broken heart; *mourir de la poitrine* (*de phtisie*) to die of consumption.
cf.: *meurtrir* to bruise; *meurtrier* murderer.

Pres. Ind.:
je meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent.

Imperf.:
je mourais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
mourus, -us, -ut, -ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.

Future:
mourrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
mourrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
meurs, mourons, mourez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je meure, -es, -e, que n. mourions, -iez, qu'ils meurent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je mourusse, -es, mourût, que nous mourussions, mourussiez, mourussent.

Pres. Part.:
mourant.

Past Part.:
mort, morte.

NOTE.—*amortir*, to deaden, to sink or redeem; *c'est un fonds d'amortissement* it is a sinking-fund.

§ 19

offrir to offer; conjugated like *parler*, except in the Past Def.

Pres. Ind.:
j'offre, -es, -e, -ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf.:
j'offrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past. Def.:
j'offris, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
j'offrirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
j'offrirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
offre, offrons, offrez.

Pres. Subj.:
que j'offre, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que j'offrisse, -es, offrît, que n. offrissions, -iez, -ent.

Pres. Part.:
offrant.

Past Part.:
offert, offerte. Likewise: *ouvrir*, etc.

§ 20

ouvrir to open; *couvrir* to cover; *rouvrir* to open again; *souffrir* to suffer; *découvrir* to discover; *recouvrir* to cover again; *entr'ouvrir* to half open; *rentr'ouvrir, etc.* cf.: *recouvrer* to regain (recover); *oüir* see *dire.*

§ 21

partir to leave, to depart; *repartir* to set out again, also to retort; *départir* to distribute and *se départir* to deviate; cf.: *répartir* (like *finir*) to distribute, to assess; *mettre à la voile* (*partir*) to set sail.

Pres. Ind.:
je pars, pars, part, n. partons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf.:
je partais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je partis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je partirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je partirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
pars, partons, partez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je parte, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je partisse, -es, partît, que n. partissions, -issiez, -issent.

Pres. Part.:
partant.

Past Part.:
parti, partie, with *être* in compound tenses.

§ 22

se repentir, to repent (see Lesson XXIX); *sentir* to feel, to smell; *ressentir* to feel, to experience; *consentir* to consent; *pressentir* to forebode; all like *mentir.*

servir to serve; *se servir* (*de*) to make use; *desservir* to remove (clear the table), also to officiate in;
cf.: *asservir* to reduce to servitude (enslave); *assortir* to sort (match); *ressortir* to be under the jurisdiction, like *finir*.
sortir to go out; *ressortir* (to go out again) like *mentir*.

§ 23

saillir (in its modern sense) to project, to bring into prominence; *os qui fait saillie* prominent bone; *c'est une fenêtre en saillie* bay-window.

NOTE.—It is conjugated like *finir*.

§ 24

servir (like *mentir*) to serve, to wait on.
servir de, to serve as; *se servir de* to use, to make use of.
servir à to serve to, to be useful.

§ 25

sortir to go out.

Pres. Ind.:
je sors, sors, sort, sortons, sortez, sortent.

Imperf.:
je sortais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je sortis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je sortirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je sortirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
sors, sortons, sortez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je sorte, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je sortisse, -es, sortît, que nous sortissions, sortissiez, sortissent.

Pres. Part.:
sortant.

Past Part.:
sorti, sortie; generally used with *être.*

§ 26

tenir to hold, to hold fast; to keep; *retenir* to retain; *obtenir* to obtain; *s'abstenir* to abstain from; *appartenir* to belong; *contenir* to contain; *détenir* to detain; *entretenir* to entertain; *maintenir* to maintain; *soutenir* to sustain.

Pres. Ind.:
je tiens, tu tiens, il tient, n. tenons, v. tenez, ils tiennent.

Imperf.:
je tenais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je tins, tins, tint, tînmes, tîntes, tinrent.

Future:
je tiendrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je tiendrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
tiens, tenons, tenez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je tienne, -es, -e, que n. tenions, que v. teniez, qu'ils tiennent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je tinsse, que tu tinsses, qu'il tînt, que n. tinssions, que v. tinssiez, tinssent.

Pres. Part.:
tenant.

Past Part.:
tenu, tenue.

Observe.—Verbs ending in (*v*) *enir* likewise conjugated.

§ 27

venir to come (and its compounds like *tenir*): *avenir* happen (Impers.); *advenir* to happen (Impersonal);

convenir to suit; *contrevenir* to violate; *circonvenir* to circumvent; *devenir* to become; *disconvenir* to deny; *intervenir* to intervene; *parvenir* to reach; *prévenir* to warn; *provenir* to spring (originate); *revenir* to come back; *redevenir* to become again; *se souvenir* to recollect; *subvenir* to aid (provide); *survenir* to occur; *se ressouvenir* to recollect (remember).

§ 28

vêtir to clothe, to dress; *revêtir* to clothe, to put on; *dévêtir* to divest; *se dévêtir* to take off clothing; *se revêtir* to put on clothing.

Pres. Ind.:
je vêts, vêts, vêt, vêtons, vêtez, vêtent.

Imperf.:
je vêtais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je vêtis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je vêtirai, -as, -a, -ons. -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je vêtirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
vêts, vêtons, vêtez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je vête, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je vêtisse, -isses, vêtit, que nous vêtissions, que v. vêtissiez, qu'ils vêtissent.

Pres. Part.:
vêtant.

Past Part.:
vêtu, vêtue.

Observe.—French Academy says: Indicative and Imperative Sing. hardly used; same with the plural in the Indicative, Imperfect (Indicat.), Pres. Subj. in all its persons and Pres. Participle.

§ 29

Remarks on *ouïr* and *transir:*

ouïr to hear, is used only in:
j'ai ouï dire, I heard (some one say)
ouïr les comptes to audit accounts
as a noun: *l'ouïe*, the hearing

Compare:—*entendre* to hear, to be familiar with (language) *entendre dire*, to hear (reported); *comprendre* comprehend.

in *-oir*

§ 30

apparoir used only in: *il appert* it is evident, it results.

NOTE.—Law term.

§ 31

asseoir to seat; *s'asseoir* to sit down; *se rasseoir* to sit down again.

Pres. Ind.:
j'assieds, assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseyent.

Imperf.:
j'asseyais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
j'assis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
j'assiérai or *asseyerai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.*

Condit.:
j'assiérais or *asseyerais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient*

Imperat.:
assieds, asseyons, asseyez.

Pres. Subj.:
que j'asseye, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que j'assisse, -es, assît, que n. assissions, assissiez, assissent.

Pres. Part.:
asseyant.

Past Part.:
assis, assise.

Observe.—*s'asseoir* to sit down, like *asseoir.*
Other form of conjugation often used in a figurative sense.

Pres. Ind.:
j'assois, assois, assoit, assoyons, assoyez, assoient.
Imperf.:
j'assoyais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.
Future:
j'assoirai, -as, -a, ons, -ez, -ont.
Condit.:
j'assoirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.
Imperat.:
assois, assoyons, assoyez.
Pres. Subj.:
que j'assoie, -es, -e, assoyions, assoyiez, assoient.
Pres. Part.:
assoyant.
Past Part.:
assis, assise.
Use Pronominal form for *s'asseoir.*

§ 32

choir to fall; *rechoir* to fall again; both used in the Infinitive and Past Participle only: *chu, chut.*

ce sont souvent nos meilleurs amis qui nous font choir (Hugo) our best friends are often the cause of our fall.

as a noun:
chute, la chute Niagara.

§ 33

déchoir (de, choir), to decline.

Pres. Ind.:
je déchois, -ois, -oit, déchoyons, -ez, déchoient.
Imperf.:
je déchoyais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je déchus, -us, -ut, -ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.

Future:
je décherrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je décherrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Pres. Subj.:
que je déchoie, -es, -e, que n. déchoyions, déchoyiez, déchoient.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je déchusse, -es, déchût, que n. déchussions, déchussiez, déchussent.

Pres. Part.:
is wanting.

Past Part.:
déchu, déchue.

NOTE.—*déchéance* fall (as a noun).

§ 34

devoir to owe, etc. (see Lesson XXIV).

§ 35

échoir to expire, to fall due, used only in:

Pres. Ind.:
il échoit (or *échet*).

Future:
j'écherrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
j'écherrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperf. Subj.:
que j'échusse.

Pres. Part.:
échéant.

Past Part.:
échu, échue.

§ 36

falloir (Impersonal Verb), to be necessary, indispensable, proper, useful.

Pres. Ind.:
il faut.

Imperf.:
il fallait.

Past Def.:
il fallut.

Future:
il faudra.

Condit.:
il faudrait.

Pres. Subj.:
qu'il faille.

Imperf. Subj.:
qu'il fallût.

Past Part.:
fallu (no fem.).

§ 37

mouvoir to move (machines, etc.); *promouvoir* to promote.

cf.: *déménager* to move (one's furniture).

émouvoir to move (to tears); *déposer un ministre.*

cf.: *changer de demeure* to remove (quarters).

Pres. Ind.:
je meus, meus, meut, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.

Imperf.:
je mouvais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, aient.

Past Def.:
je mus, mus, mut, mûmes, mûtes, murent.

Future:
je mouvrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je mouvrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
meus, mouvons, mouvez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je meuve, -es, -e, que n. mouvions, -iez, qu'ils meuvent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je musse, -es, mût, que n. mussions, mussiez, mussent.

Pres. Part.:
mouvant.

Past Part.:
mû, mue with no circumflex in the feminine.

Observe.—*promu* and *promue* (from *promouvoir*) are the only forms in use as adjectives and participles.

§ 38

pleuvoir (Impersonal Verb) to rain.

Pres. Ind.:
il pleut.

Imperf.:
il pleuvait.

Past Def.:
il plut.

Future:
il pleuvra.

Condit.:
il pleuvrait.

Pres. Subj.:
qu'il pleuve.

Imperf. Subj.:
qu'il plût.

Pres. Part.
pleuvant.

Past Part.:
plu.

§ 39

pourvoir to provide, to supply; *dépourvoir* to leave unprovided.
se pourvoir de to provide one's self with.

Pres. Ind.:
je pourvois, pourvois, pourvoit, n. pourvoyons, pourvoyez, pourvoient.

Imperf.:
je pourvoyais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je pourvus, -us, -ut, -ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.

Future:
je pourvoirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je pourvoirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
pourvois, pourvoyons, pourvoyez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je pourvoie, -es, -e, que n. pourvoyions, -iez, qu'ils pourvoient.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je pourvusse, -es, pourvût, que n. pourvussions, pourvussiez, pourvussent.

Pres. Part:
pourvoyant.

Past Part.:
pourvu, pourvue.

§ 40

pouvoir to be able; *le pouvoir, la puissance* the power.

Pres. Ind.: I (may) can, etc.
je puis, or *peux, tu peux, peut, n. pouvons, pouvez, peuvent.*

Imperf.:
je pouvais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je pus, pus, put, pûmes, pûtes, purent.

Future:
je pourrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je pourrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperative is wanting.

Pres. Subj.:
que je puisse, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf.:
que je pusse, -es, pût, que n. pussions, que v. pussiez, pussent.

Pres. Part.:
pouvant.

Past Part.:
pu (only).

§ 41

savoir to know (by the mind), to be aware.
savoir (with Infinitive), to know how; can, could.
cf.: *connaître* to know (by the senses), to recognize

Pres. Ind.:
je sais, sais, sait, savons, savez, savent.

Imperf.:
je savais, -ais, -ait, -ions, iez, -aient.

Past. Def.:
je sus, sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent.

Future:
je saurai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je saurais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
sache, sachons, sachez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je sache, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je susse, -es, sût, que n. sussions, sussiez, sussent.

Pres. Part.:
sachant.

Past Part.:
su, sue.

§ 42

valoir to be worth; *valoir mieux* to be better; *faire valoir* to set off, to make the best of; *équivaloir* (*être équivalent*) to be equivalent; *chaloir* (obsolete) to care for; *prévaloir* to prevail. cf.: *rendre la pareille* or *revaloir* to pay back.

Pres. Ind.:
je vaux, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent.

Imperf.:
je valais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je valus, -us, -ut, -ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.

Future:
je vaudrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je vaudrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
vaux, valons, valez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je vaille, -es, -e, que n. valions, -iez, qu'ils vaillent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je valusse, -es, valût, que n. valussions, -ussiez, -ussent

Pres. Part.:
valant.

Past Part.:
valu, value.

NOTE.—*prévaloir* in the Subj. Pres.: *que je prévale.*

§ 43

voir to see; *se voir* to visit one another; *se faire voir* to show oneself; *aller voir les curiosités* to go sight-seeing; *entrevoir* to get (catch sight of) a glimpse; *revoir* to see again; *prévoir* to foresee (regular in the Future and Conditional).

Pres. Ind.:
je vois, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient.

Imperf.:
je voyais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je vis, vis, vit, vîmes, vîtes, virent.

Future:
je verrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je verrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
vois, voyons, voyez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je voie, voies, voie, voyions, -iez, qu'ils voient.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je visse, -es, qu'il vît, que n. vissions, vissiez, qu'ils vissent.

Pres. Part.:
voyant.

Past Part.:
vu, vue

§ 44

vouloir to will, to wish, to want (wish for); *en vouloir* to bear ill-will; *vouloir du bien* to wish well; *vouloir dire* to mean; *vouloir dire à* to want to tell; *vouloir bien* to be willing; *en vouloir conclure* to infer from.

Pres. Ind.:
je veux, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent.

Imperf.:
je voulais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je voulus, -us, -ut, -ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.

Future:
je voudrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je voudrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
veux, voulons, voulez.

NOTE.—This form implies an express recommendation to be firm.

veuille, veuillons, veuillez (the latter form often used) are for requests.

Pres. Subj.:
que je veuille, -es, -e, que n. voulions, -iez, veuillent.

NOTE.—*que n. veuillions, que v. veuilliez* were used in the 17th and 18th centuries.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je voulusse, -es, voulût, que n. voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent.

Pres. Part.:
voulant.

Past Part.:
voulu, voulue.

in *-re*

§ 45

astreindre to oblige, to compel; *s'astreindre* to tie one's self down; conjugated like *atteindre.*

§ 46

absoudre to absolve, to acquit, to remit (sins); cf.: *pardonner* to forgive.

Pres. Ind.:
j'absous, absous, absout, absolvons, absolvez, absolvent.

Imperf.:
j'absolvais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.: wanting.

Future:
j'absoudrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
j'absoudrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
absous, absolvons, absolvez.

Pres. Subj.:
que j'absolve.

Imperf. Subj.: wanting.

Pres. Part.:
absolvant.

Past Part.:
absous, absoute.

§ 47

atteindre to reach, to attain, to be seized; *ratteindre* to overtake.

NOTE.—Verbs ending in *aindre, oindre* like *atteindre.*

Pres. Ind.:
j'atteins, atteins, atteint, atteignons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf.:
j'atteignais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past. Def.:
j'atteignis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
j'atteindrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
j'atteindrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
atteins, atteignons, atteignez.

Pres. Subj.:
que j'atteigne, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que j'atteignisse, -es, atteignît, atteignissions, -iez, qu'ils atteignissent.

Pres. Part.:
atteignant.

Past Part.:
atteint, atteinte.

§ 48

battre to beat, to bang, to thrash; *se battre avec acharnement* to fight desperately; *se battre à coups de poing*

(with fists); *abattre* to abate, to fall down, to cut down; *combattre* to combat, to wage war against; *débattre* to debate; *se débattre* to struggle; *s'ébattre* to be engaged in sports, to gambol; *rabattre* to pull down, to deduct.

cf.: *livrer bataille* to fight a battle.

lutter corps à corps to wrestle.

NOTE.—Loses *t* in the Present Indicative; otherwise like *rompre*.

§ 49

boire to drink, to imbibe; *s'imboire* to be imbued; cf.: *avaler* to swallow and *achever de boire* to drink up; *sabler une coupe de champagne* to toss off, etc.

Pres. Ind.:
je bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent.

Imperf.:
je buvais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je bus, bus, but, bûmes, bûtes, burent.

Future:
je boirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je boirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
bois, buvons, buvez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je boive, -es, -e, que n. buvions, -iez, -boivent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je busse, -es, qu'il bût, que n. bussions, bussiez, qu'ils bussent.

Pres. Part.: *buvant.*

Past Part.: *bu, bue.*

§ 50

braire (formerly to whine) to bray, to imitate the cry of an ass.

cf.: *hi-han* (cry of an ass)

Pres. Ind.:
il brait, ils braient.

Future:
il braira, ils brairont.

Condit:.
il brairait, ils brairaient.

§ 51

bruire (formerly to speak loudly of a person, of things), to make an indistinct sound, to rustle, to rattle; *faire bruire* to cause to rattle.

Pres. Ind.:
il bruit.

Imperf.:
il bruyait, ils bruyaient.

NOTE.—A few writers have used other persons.

Bruit (m.) a noise.

§ 52

ceindre to enclose, to encircle (little space), to gird on; *enceindre* to enclose (so as to forbid entrance), to surround (large space).

Pres. Ind.:
je ceins, ceins, ceint, ceignons, ceignez, ceignent.

Imperf.:
je ceignais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past. Def.:
je ceignis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je ceindrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je ceindrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
ceins, ceignons, ceignez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je ceigne, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je ceignisse, -es, qu'il ceignît, que n. ceignissions, ceignissiez, ceignissent.

Pres. Part.:
ceignant.

Past Part.:
ceint, ceinte.

§ 53

clore to close, to fence, to finish, to close (accounts); *déclore* to unfence, to throw open; *éclore* to hatch, to open; *enclore* to fence in, to inclose; *forclore* to foreclose, to estop, to debar.
cf.: *fermer* to close.

Pres. Ind.:
je clos, tu clos, il clôt.

Future:
je clorai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je clorais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperative:
clos.

Pres. Subj.:
que je close, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Past Part.:
clos, close, in all its compound tenses.

§ 54

inclus, incluse, with *ci:*
ci-inclus, (*e*), here enclosed. (See Past Participle.)

§ 55

conclure (*de*) to conclude, to end, to close; *conclure* (*à*) to lead to, to judge; *exclure* to exclude; *inclure* to inclose; *reclure* to shut up, to cloister.

Pres. Ind.:
je conclus, conclus, conclut, concluons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf.:
je concluais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je conclus, -us, -ût, -ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.

Future:
je conclurai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je conclurais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
conclus, concluons, concluez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je conclue, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je conclusse, -es, qu'il conclût, conclussions, conclussiez, conclussent.

Pres. Part.:
concluant.

Past Part.:
conclu, conclue.

NOTE.—*conclure* means also to draw a final conclusion, to come to a final conclusion.

cf.: *déduire*, to draw a special inference from a general statement. *induire* to lead to a general statement by way of special inferences.

§ 56

conduire to conduct, to govern, to escort; *se conduire* to behave; *éconduire* to show out (dismiss); *reconduire* to lead back.
cf.: *guider* to guide (mostly persons).
mener to lead.

NOTE.—Verbs ending in *-duire*, like *déduire*, to deduct; *enduire* to coat (plaster); *induire* to induce; *introduire* to introduce; *produire* to produce; *réduire* to reduce; *reproduire* to reproduce; *séduire* to seduce; *traduire* to render (translate); *construire* to construct; *reconstruire* to reconstruct; *déconstruire* to take apart. Endings *-truire*, all like *conduire*. Also *détruire*, to destroy and *cuire* (to cook) and *recuire* (recook).

Pres. Ind.:
je conduis, conduis, conduit, conduisons, -ez, -ent.
Imperf.:
je conduisais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.
Past Def.:
je conduisis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.
Future:
je conduirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.
Condit.:
je conduirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.
Imperat.:
conduis, conduisons, conduisez.
Pres. Subj.:
que je conduise, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.
Imperfect:
que je conduisisse, -es, conduisît, que n. conduisissions, -iez, -ent.
Pres. Part.:
conduisant.
Past Part.:
conduit, conduite.

§ 57

confire to preserve, to cause to steep (soak), to pickle; *déconfire* to discomfit, to do for; *déconfiture* (n.) discomfiture, havoc, insolvency.

Pres. Ind.:
je confis, -is, -it, -ons, -ez, -ent.
Imperf.:
je confisais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.
Past Def.:
je confis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.
Future:
je confirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.
Condit.:
je confirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.
Imperat.:
confis, confisons, confisez.
Pres. Subj.:
que je confise, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je confisse, -es, qu'il confît, que n. confissions, -iez, -ent.

NOTE.—Tense little used in the Imperfect Subj.

Pres. Part.:
confisant.

Past Part.:
confit, confite.

§ 58

connaître to know, to be acquainted with, to perceive; *connaître à fond* to know thoroughly; *se connaître* to know one's self or each other; *se connaître en quelque chose* to be a judge of, etc.; *ne plus se connaître* to be beside one's self; *se faire connaître* to become known; cf.: *divulguer un secret* to reveal a secret; *méconnaître* not to know; *reconnaître* to recognize.

Pres. Ind.:
je connais, -ais, -aît, connaissons, -ez, -ent.

NOTE.—Verbs in *-aître* preserve the circumflex before *t*.

Imperf.:
je connaissais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je connus, -us, -ut, -ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.

Future:
je connaîtrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je connaîtrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
connais, connaissons, connaissez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je connaisse, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je connusse, -es, qu'il connût, que n. connussions, -iez, -ent.

Pres. Part.:
connaissant.

Past Part.:
connu, connue.

§ 59

construire (like *conduire*) to construct, to build, to frame.

§ 60

contraindre (like *craindre* at page 341), to constrain, to compel.

NOTE.—*contraindre à* with Infinitive or noun when the sense implies great efforts; *contraindre de* refers to the result.

§ 61

contredire (like *dire* at page 344, except in the Pres. Indicat. 2d Pers. Plural *vous contredisez*) to contradict; *dédire* to recant, to retract, to disprove; *interdire* to interdict; *médire* to slander; *prédire* to predict, all like *contredire*.

NOTE.—Imperative like Indicative.

§ 62

coudre to sew, to stitch; *recoudre* to sew again; *découdre* to unsew, to rip.

Pres. Ind.:
je couds, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent.

Imperf.:
je cousais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je cousis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je coudrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je coudrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
couds, cousons, cousez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je couse, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je cousisse, -es, qu'il cousît, que nous cousissions, -iez, -ent.

Pres. Part.:
cousant.

Past Part.:
cousu, cousue.

§ 63

craindre to fear, to dread, to have fear of; *se faire craindre* to cause one's self to be dreaded.

NOTE.—Verbs ending in *eindre, oindre* likewise conjugated.

Pres. Ind.:
je crains, crains, craint, craignons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf.:
je craignais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je craignis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je craindrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je craindrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
crains, craignons, craignez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je craigne, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je craignisse, -es, qu'il craignît, que nous craignissions, -iez, -ent.

Pres. Part.:
craignant.

Past Part.:
craint, crainte.

§ 64

croire to believe, to have faith in, to be of opinion.
faire accroire to make to believe (impose); *mécroire* (seldom used), to disbelieve.
also *décroire* to disbelieve.

Pres. Ind.:
je crois, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient.

Imperf.:
je croyais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je crus, crus, crut, crûmes, crûtes, crurent.

Future:
je croirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je croirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
crois, croyons, croyez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je croie, -es, -e, croyions, -iez, croient.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je crusse, -es, qu'il crût, que n. crussions, que v. crussiez, qu'ils crussent.

Pres. Part.:
croyant.

Past Part.:
cru, crue.

§ 65

croître to grow, to grow up, to thrive; *accroître* to increase; *décroître* to decrease; *recroître* to grow again; *surcroître* to overgrow.

NOTE.—Compare 2d Group Verbs like *grossir*, to grow stout; *maigrir*, to grow thin; *rajeunir* to grow young; *vieillir* to grow old; *jaunir* to become yellow; *blanchir* to whiten, etc.

Pres. Ind.:
je crois, crois, croît, croissons, croissez, croissent.

Imperf.:
je croissais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je crûs, crûs, crût, crûmes, crûtes, crûrent.

Future:
je croîtrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je croîtrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
croîs, croissons, croissez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je croisse, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperfect:

que je crûsse, crûsses, qu'il crût, crûssions, crûssiez, crûssent.

Pres. Part.:

croissant.

Past Part.:

crû, crue (no circumflex in the feminine).

§ 66

accroître (like *croître*) to increase; *recroître* to grow again; *surcroître* to grow out (of), to overgrow, have no circumflex in the Past Participle nor in the third person singular and third person plural.

NOTE.—*accroître* includes in its meanings those of *agrandir* (to enlarge) and *augmenter* (referring to number or elevation).

§ 67

cuire (like *conduire*) to cook, to do, to boil, to bake, to roast, to broil, to grill; *recuire* to cook again, etc.
cf.: *brûler* to burn.

§ 68

déduire (like *construire*) to take from, to draw from.
induire to induce (lead into), to infer.
détruire to destroy, to demolish.

§ 69

détruire (like *conduire*) to destroy; *se détruire* to destroy one's self.

§ 70

déteindre (like *atteindre*) to take out the dye, to fade.

mon costume se déteint my suit loses its color; cf.: *elles se fanent* they are fading away (falling out); *elles se flétrissent* they are withering. See *teindre* (to dye); *reteindre* to dye again.

§ 71

dire to say (tell), to relate, to name, to recite, to express, to think; *entendre dire* to hear (reported); *faire dire à* to make any one say or send word to; *à vrai dire* or *à dire vrai* to speak the truth; *ne pas se le faire dire deux fois* to obey at once; *vouloir dire* to mean, to signify; *pour ainsi dire* so to speak; *sans mot dire* (*sans dire le mot*); *ne dire mot* to keep silent; *dire un mot* to say a word; *avoir beau dire* to speak in vain; *se le faire dire* to hesitate.

redire to say again; *maudire* to curse (like *dire* in the Past Part., Future and Cond.; otherwise like *finir*); *contredire* to contradict; *dédire* to recant, to deny; *interdire* to interdict; *médire* to slander; *prédire* to predict; like *dire* except in the Indicative (Pres.) and Imperative, 2d pers. plural, *-ez*.

Pres. Ind.:
je dis, dis, dit, disons, dites, disent.

Imperf.:
je disais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je dis, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent.

Future:
je dirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je dirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
dis, disons, dites.

Pres. Subj.:
que je dise, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj :
que je disse, disses, qu'il dît, dissions, -iez, -ent.

Pres. Part.: *disant.*

Past Part.: *dit, dite.*

NOTE.—*ouïr dire* (to hear say) used only in the Infinitive and in *ouïe* (hearing); *apprendre des nouvelles* (hear news). See § 29.

§ 72

dissoudre (like *absoudre*) to dissolve, to break up.

§ 73

éclore (like *clore*), to hatch, to open, and is used as follows:

Pres. Ind.:
éclos, éclos, éclôt, éclosons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf.:
éclosais, éclosions.

Future:
éclorai, éclorons.

Condit.:
éclorais, éclorions.

Pres. Subj.:
que j'éclose.

Past Part.:
éclos, éclose.

§ 74

écrire to write, to pen, to set down; *circonscrire* to circumscribe; *décrire* to describe; *inscrire* to inscribe; *prescrire* to prescribe; *proscrire* to proscribe; *récrire* to rewrite; *souscrire* to subscribe; *transcrire* to transcribe;
cf.: *faire le relevé de*, to make an abstract of (dates, births, etc.).

Pres. Ind.:
j'écris, écris, écrit, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent.

Imperf.:
j'écrivais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
j'écrivis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
j'écrirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
j'écrirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
écris, écrivons, écrivez.

Pres. Subj.:
que j'écrive, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que j'écrivisse, -es, qu'il écrivît, que n. écrivissions, écrivissiez, qu'ils écrivissent.

Pres. Part.:
écrivant.

Past Part.:
écrit, écrite.

§ 75

inscrire (like *écrire*) to inscribe, to set down, to impanel.

§ 76

souscrire (like *écrire*) to subscribe, to underwrite.

§ 77

empreindre (like *craindre*) to imprint, to impress, to stamp.

cf.: *marquer à l'empreinte de* to bear the stamp of; *imprimer* to print; cf.: *imprimeur* printer.

§ 78

enfreindre (like *craindre*) to infringe, to violate.

on a enfreint les règles the rules have been violated; *ils ont enfreint le traité* (infringed, etc.); *elles ont enfreint les lois* (transgressed the laws).

§ 79

épreindre (like *craindre*) to squeeze out.

il a épreint le jus he squeezed out the juice.

§ 80

éteindre (like *craindre*) to extinguish, to put out; *réteindre* to put out again.

§ 81

étreindre (like *craindre*) to embrace.

qui trop embrasse, mal étreint grasp all, lose all; *les émotions m'étreignent* (seize); *ce furent de douces étreintes* (sweet embraces).

§ 82

enduire (like *déduire*) to coat, to do over.

§ 83

faire to do, to make, to create, to construct, to take, to carry on, to cause to, etc., etc.; *contrefaire* to counterfeit, to disguise; *défaire* to undo; *forfaire* to forfeit, to be lacking in one's duty; *malfaire* to do ill; *méfaire* to harm; *parfaire* to complete; *redéfaire* to undo again; *refaire* to do again; *se défaire* to get rid of; *satisfaire* to satisfy; *surfaire* to overcharge, to overpraise; cf.: *faire époque* to mark an era.

Pres. Ind.:
je fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font.

Imperf.:
je faisais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je fis, fis, fit, fîmes, fîtes, firent.

Future:
je ferai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je ferais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
fais, faisons, faites.

Pres. Subj.:
que je fasse, -es, -e, -ions, iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je fisse, -es, qu'il fît, fissions, -iez, -ent.

Pres. Part.: *faisant.*

Past Part.: *fait, faite.*

NOTE.—*faire* is frequently followed by an Infinitive; *faire* is frequently followed by noun (no article); *faire voir* to show; *faire fortune*, to make a fortune; cf.: *rendre* adjective.

faire faire to cause to be made; *faire bâtir* to have built; *ne faire que* to be always engaged in.

quel temps fait-il? how is the weather? *il fait chaud, le temps est chaud* it is warm; *il fait froid* or *il fait un temps froid* it is cold; *il fait mauvais, il fait un mauvais temps* it is bad weather; *il fait humide* it is damp; cf.: *quel vilain temps!* what disagreeable weather! *quel sale temps!* what nasty weather! *il fait sec* it is dry weather; *il fait bon* it is comfortable; *il fait frais* it is cool; *il fait obscur* (*sombre* or *noir*) it is dark; *il fait un temps noir* it is gloomy weather; *il fait gris* it is raw; *il fait nuit* it is night *or* getting night; *il fait jour* it is daylight; *il fait clair* it is light; *il fait clair de lune* it is moonlight; *il fait doux* it is mild; *il fait soleil, il fait du soleil* it is sunny; *il fait un beau soleil* it is beautiful sunshine; *il est tantôt nuit* it will soon be night; *il fait un froid de loup* it is bitter cold; *il fait verglas* or *il tombe du verglas* the rain freezes; *il fait des éclairs* it is lightning; *il fait du vent* it is windy (*il fait de l'air); il fait de l'orage* it is stormy; *il fait du brouillard,* it is foggy; *il fait de la boue* it is muddy; *il fait de la poussière* it is dusty; *il fait glissant* it is slippery; cf.: *le pied m'a manqué* my foot slipped; *il fait bon vivre ici* this is a good place to live in; *il fait bien crotté dans les rues,* the streets are very dirty; *le temps est triste* it is dull weather; *le temps est brumeux* it is misty (hazy); *le temps est couvert* it is cloudy; *le temps se brouille* clouds are gathering; *le temps se tourne au beau* (changing to fair); *le temps se remet au beau* it is becoming fine weather; *le temps se resserre* it is getting colder; *le temps s'adoucit* (*se relâche*) it is getting milder; *le temps se réchauffe* it is getting warmer; *le temps s'obscurcit* it is getting cloudy; *le temps s'éclaircit* it is clearing up; *le temps se rembrunit* or *se couvre* (cloudy); *le ciel se couvre* or *s'obscurcit; le temps est* or *se met, au beau; le vent se refroidit* the wind is freshening, or *le vent se rafraîchit; voilà un temps qui promet un orage* this weather forebodes a storm; *voilà un orage qui se prépare* there is a storm brewing; *le jour court à son déclin* or *est à son, etc.* the day is declining (twilight); *quel temps il fait!* what weather to be sure! cf.: *après la pluie le beau temps* every cloud has its silver lining; *petite pluie abat grand vent* a little rain lays a great dust.

§ 84

geindre (like *craindre*) to whine; *gémir* (like *finir*) to groan

cf.: *pousser un gémissement* to utter a groan; colloq.: *qu'a-t-il à geindre?* what is he complaining about?

§ 85

instruire (like *déduire*) to instruct, to teach, to investigate.

cf.: *enseigner* to teach (grammar); *ignorer* not to know; not to be aware of; *s'instruire* to instruct one's self.

§ 86

interdire (like *dire* except in the Indicative: *vous interdisez* and in the Imperative, *interdisez*) to interdict (dumbfound).

§ 87

joindre (like *craindre*) to join, to add, to overtake; *adjoindre* to adjoin; *conjoindre* to conjoin; *déjoindre* to disjoin; *disjoindre* to disjoin; *enjoindre* to enjoin; *rejoindre* to rejoin; *oindre* to anoint; also *poindre* to dawn.

cf.: *relier*, to bind; *relieur* binder.

§ 88

lire to read; *élire* to elect; *relire* to read again; *réélire* to re-elect; *lire et relire* to read over and over again. *faire la lecture* (reading) *à*, to read to.

cf.: *faire une étude spéciale de* to read up; *faire la leçon à* to lecture any one; *faire mention* (books) to read of.

Pres. Ind.:
je lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent.

Imperf.:
je lisais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past. Def.:
je lus, lus, lut, lûmes, lûtes, lurent.

Future:
je lirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je lirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
lis, lisons, lisez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je lise, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je lusse, que tu lusses, qu'il lût, que nous lussions, que vous lussiez, qu'ils lussent.

Pres. Part.:
lisant.

Past Part.:
lu, lue.

§ 89

luire to shine, to glitter, to appear; *reluire* to glisten.

Pres. Ind.:
je luis, luis, luit, luisons, luisez, luisent.

Imperf.:
je luisais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Future:
luirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je luirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Pres. Subj.:
que je luise, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Pres. Part.:
luisant.

Past Part.:
lui (only).

NOTE.—No Past Definite, Imperative, Imperfect Subj.

§ 90

maudire (like *dire* except in the Plural of the Indicative) to curse.

je maudis, maudis, maudit, maudissons, maudissez, maudissent.
je maudissais, etc., like *finir; maudissant.*
il maudit son sort he curses his lot; *maudit sois-tu, bourreau de mon enfant* cursed be thou, executioner of my child; *Caïn fut maudit de (par) Dieu* malediction of God fell upon Cain; *maudit*

soit le maladroit! deuce take the clumsy fool: cf.: *il jure*, he swears; *il en jure* he swears to it.

§ 91

méconnaître (like *connaître*) not to know again, to disown.

§ 92

médire (like *dire*, except in the 2d Pers. Plural in the Indicative, Imperative: *médisez*) to slander, to speak ill.

§ 93

mettre to put, to put on; *admettre* to admit; *commettre* to commit; *compromettre* to compromise; *démettre* to dislocate; *émettre* to emit; *s'entremettre* to interpose; *omettre* to omit; *permettre* to permit; *promettre* to promise; *remettre* to remit, to put back; *repromettre* to promise again; *soumettre* to submit; *transmettre* to transmit; *se mettre à* to begin; *se mettre en route* to set out.

Pres. Ind.:
je mets, tu mets, il met, n. mettons, mettez, mettent.

Imperf.:
je mettais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je mis, mis, mit, mîmes, mîtes, mirent.

Future:
mettrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je mettrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
mets, mettons, mettez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je mette, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je misse, -es, qu'il mît, missions, -iez, -ent.

Pres. Part.: *mettant.*

Past Part.: *mis, mise.*

§ 94

moudre to grind; *émoudre* to sharpen; *remoudre* to grind again; *rémoudre* to sharpen again; cf.: *tailler un crayon* to sharpen a pencil; *repasser un rasoir* (or *affiler un rasoir sur la pierre*) to hone, set a razor; *aiguiser* (to whet) refers more to bringing to a sharp point: *tranchant très affilé* (keen edged).

Present Ind.:
je mouds, mouds, moud, moulons, moulez, moulent.

Imperf.:
je moulais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je moulus, moulus, moulut, moulûmes, moulûtes, moulurent.

Future:
je moudrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je moudrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
mouds, moulons, moulez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je moule, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je moulusse, -es, qu'il moulût, que n. moulussions, moulussiez, moulussent.

Pres. Part.:
moulant.

Past Part.:
moulu, moulue.

§ 95

naître to be born; *renaître* to be born again, to receive; *prendre naissance* to originate; *donner naissance à* to give rise to; *faire naître des soupçons* to give rise to suspicion.

Pres. Ind.:
je nais, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent.

Imperf.:
je naissais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je naquis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je naîtrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je naîtrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
nais, naissons, naissez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je naisse, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je naquisse, -es, qu'il naquît, que n. naquissions, que v. naquissiez, qu'ils naquissent.

Pres. Part.:
naissant.

Past Part.:
né, née.

NOTE.—Always *être* in its compound tenses.

§ 96

nuire to hurt, to annoy; *ne pas nuire* not to harm; *se nuire* to hurt one's self or each other.

cf.: *blesser* to wound, to hurt, to injure; *faire mal* to hurt; *faire du mal* to injure.

Pres. Ind.:
je nuis, nuis, nuit, nuisons, nuisez, nuisent.

Imperf.:
je nuisais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past. Def.:
je nuisis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je nuirai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je nuirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
nuis, nuisons, nuisez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je nuise, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je nuisisse, -es, qu'il nuisît, que n. nuisissions, nuisissiez, qu'ils nuisissent.

Pres. Part.:
nuisant.

Past Part.:
nui (invariable).

§ 97

oindre (like *craindre*) to anoint; cf. *frotter* to rub.

§ 98

paître (like *connaître*) to graze, to pasture; *repaître* to feed (not frequently used); *se repaître* to feast upon (to feed).

NOTE.—*Paître* has no Past Def. nor Imperf. Subj.; *pu* is little used, but *repaître* has a Past Part. and a Past. Def.

§ 99

paraître (like *connaître*) to appear, to seem, to be issued; *apparaître* to appear (suddenly); *reparaître* to reappear; *comparaître* to be summoned, to appear at court; *disparaître* to disappear, to vanish out of sight.

§ 100

peindre (like *craindre*) to paint, to depict; *repeindre* to paint again; *dépeindre* to depict, to portray.

cf.: *faire le croquis d'une figure* to sketch a figure.
peindre en émail to enamel; *une peinture en émail* enameled picture; *peindre à l'huile* to paint in oil; *peindre d'après nature* to paint from nature; *se faire peindre* (*faire son portrait*) to sit for one's portrait; cf.: *poser pour son portrait* (*debout*, standing; *assis* seated); *faire poser* to keep waiting for nothing, to be duped.

§ 101

plaindre (like *craindre*) to pity, to moan; *n'être pas à plaindre* not to be pitied, to be in good circumstances; *se plaindre* to complain of, to pity each other.

cf.: *geindre* to whine; *gémir* to moan, to sigh over, to groan; *s'attendrir sur* to be moved to pity; *se lamenter* to bewail; *pleurer* (*ses fautes*) to regret; *regretter* to regret (lament), to be sorry for, to miss.

§ 102

se plaindre que, used with Subjunctive; *se plaindre que* used with Indicative when that verb refers to a true statement; *se plaindre de ce que* always followed by Indicative.

§ 103

plaire to please, to suit; *déplaire* to displease; *se plaire à* to delight in.

cf.: *faire plaisir à* to give pleasure to; *charmer* to please; *enchanter* to delight; *ravir* to enrapture; *être content* (*de*) to be pleased; *prendre plaisir à* to be pleased in; *être enchanté* (*de*) to be delighted to; *se faire un plaisir de, faire ses délices de* to delight in.

Pres. Ind.:
je plais, plais, plaît, plaisons, plaisez, plaisent.

Imperf.:
je plaisais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je plus, plus, plut, plûmes, plûtes, plurent.

Future:
je plairai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je plairais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
plais, plaisons, plaisez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je plaise, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je plusse, -es, qu'il plût, que nous plussions, que vous plussiez, qu'ils plussent.

Pres. Part.:
plaisant.

Past Part.:
plu (only).

§ 104

poindre no longer used in the sense of: to sting; *piquer* now replaces it. *Poindre* (used in the Infinitive and Future) is conjugated like *joindre.* § 87.

§ 105

prendre to take, to provide one's self, to seize, to accept. to catch.

se prendre to be taken; *se prendre à* to begin to; *s'y prendre* to manage to do (a thing), to set about; *s'en prendre à* to lay the blame on; *se prendre pour* to look upon one's self as; *se prendre de paroles* to engage in heated words; *se prendre d'amitié* to take a liking to.

Pres. Ind.:
je prends, tu prends, il prend, nous prenons, vous prenez, ils prennent.

Imperf.:
je prenais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je pris, pris, prit, prîmes, prîtes, prirent.

Future:
je prendrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, ont.

Condit.:
je prendrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
prends, prenons, prenez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je prenne, que tu prennes, qu'il prenne, que n. prenions, que v. preniez, qu'ils prennent.

Imperf. Subj.:

que je prisse, que tu prisses, qu'il prît, que n. prissions, que v. prissiez, qu'ils prissent.

Pres. Part.:

prenant.

Past. Part.:

pris, prise.

Also:—

apprendre to learn; *désapprendre* to unlearn; *rapprendre* to learn again; *comprendre* to understand; cf.: *entendre* to understand; *déprendre* to loosen; *reprendre* to retake; *s'éprendre* to become enamored of; *entreprendre* to undertake; *se méprendre* to mistake; *surprendre* to surprise.

cf.: *mettre une chose sur le métier* to undertake; *trop entreprendre* to overreach; *s'engager dans* to undertake (embark in); cf. *s'engager* (*enrôler dans*) to enlist.

§ 106

produire (like *conduire*) to produce, to yield, to exhibit; *reproduire* to produce again, to republish.

§ 107

réduire (like *conduire*) to reduce, to abate, to curtail.

§ 108

résoudre (*résolvant*, *résolu*, or *résolue*); also *résous*. to resolve, to solve, to dissolve, to settle.

NOTE.—Other tenses like *absoudre; résous*, refers exclusively to things.

§ 109

rire to laugh; *sourire* to smile.

cf.: *ébaucher un sourire* (*indiquer légèrement*); *pleurer* to weep; *se moquer de* to laugh at.

Pres. Ind.:

je ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient.

Imperf.:

je riais, riais, riait, riions, riiez, riaient.

Past Def.:
je ris, ris, rit, rîmes, rîtes, rirent.
Future:
je rirai, riras, rira, rirons, rirez, riront.
Condit.:
je rirais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.
Imperat.:
ris, rions, riez.
Pres. Subj.:
que je rie, que tu ries, qu'il rie, que n. riions, que v. riiez, qu'ils rient.
Imperf. Subj.:
que je risse, risses, qu'il rît, que n. rissions, que v. rissiez, qu'ils rissent.
Pres. Part.:
riant.
Past Part.:
ri (only).

§ 110

suffire (like *confire*) to suffice, to be equal to.

NOTE.—The Past. Part. is *suffi.*

§ 111

sourdre to rise from the earth is used only in the Infinitive and in the third person Singular Indicative (Académie).

NOTE.—*une source*, a spring, derives from it.

§ 112

suivre to follow, to go next, to pursue; *s'ensuivre* (Impersonal) to ensue, to follow; *poursuivre* to pursue, to proceed.

Pres. Ind.:
je suis, tu suis, il suit, nous suivons, vous suivez, ils suivent.
Imperf.:
je suivais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
je suivis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je suivrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je suivrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
suis, suivons, suivez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je suive, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je suivisse, -es, qu'il suivît, que n. suivissions, que v. suivissiez, qu'ils suivissent.

Pres. Part.:
suivant.

Past Part.:
suivi, suivie.

§ 113

taire (like *plaire*) to say nothing of (not to mention); *se taire* to keep silent. *Taire* has no circumflex.

§ 114

teindre (like *craindre*) to dye, to color; *reteindre* to dye again.

NOTE.—See page 343, § 70.

§ 115

traduire (like *conduire*) to translate, to render, to denote.

§ 116

traire to milk, to draw; *abstraire* to abstract; *distraire* to distract; *extraire* to extract; *soustraire* (subtract).

cf.: *tirer* to draw, to pull, to extricate; *traîner* to draw, to drag along, to trail.

§ 117

tistre or *tître* to weave, is used only in the Past. Part. and compound tenses; *tisser* is now in use.

§ 118

vaincre to conquer, to overcome; *se vaincre* to conquer one's inclinations; *se laisser vaincre à* to lead one's self into; *convaincre* to convince.

cf.: *se persuader d'une chose* to convince one's self, etc.

Pres. Ind.:
je vaincs, vaincs, vainc, vainquons, vainquez, vainquent.

Imperf.:
je vainquais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past. Def.:
je vainquis, -is, -it, -îmes, -îtes, -irent.

Future:
je vaincrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je vaincrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
vaincs, vainquons, vainquez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je vainque, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je vainquisse, -es, qu'il vainquît, que n. vainquissions, -iez, -ent.

Pres. Part.:
vainquant.

Past Part.:
vaincu, vaincue.

§ 119

vivre to live; *savoir vivre* to behave like a gentleman; *revivre* to come to life again; *survivre* to survive.

demeurer to reside; *habiter* to live in.

Pres. Ind.:
je vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent.

Imperf.:
je vivais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Past Def.:
vécus, -us, -ut, -ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.

Future:
je vivrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont.

Condit.:
je vivrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

Imperat.:
vis, vivons, vivez.

Pres. Subj.:
que je vive, -es, -e, -ions, iez, ent.

Imperf. Subj.:
que je vécusse, -es, qu'il vécût, que n. vécussions, que v. vécussiez qu'ils vécussent.

Pres. Part.:
vivant.

Past Part.:
vécu, vécue.

NOTE.—This verb is frequently active in form only.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

in French or *English* for guidance

NOTE.—*Abbreviations:* (n.) *nom;* (m.) *masculin;* (f.) *féminin;* (adj.) *adjectif;* (prep.) *préposition;* (pron.) *pronom;* (interj.) *interjection;* (v.) *verbe;* (p. p.) *participe passé;* — same word; *numbers* refer to pages; other abbreviations as in English Dictionaries; *to* before verbs often omitted. For convenience the correct division of French syllables has not always been observed.

A

a a (m.); -(an, one) *un* (*e*) 9, 75
à at, to, in, 3
abandon (v.) *abandonner;* -ment, *abandon* (m.)
abase (v.), *dégrader; s'humilier*
abate, 55, *s'abattre; diminuer; décroître*
abattre (v.), 334, to fall
abbé, 66
abbey *abbaye* (f.); abbot *abbé* (m.), 15
abbrevi-ate (v.) *abréger;* -ation, — (f.)
abdic-ate (v.) *abdiquer;* -ation — (f.); (v.) *renoncer à*, 197
abdomen (m.), 19
abduct (v.) *ravir*, 238
abécédé (m.) *l'alphabet*, 6
abed *alité; au lit*, 148
aberration (n.) — (f.); *anormal*, 78
abhor (v.) *avoir en horreur, haïr, détester*
ability, 108, *habileté* (f.), *capacité; aptitude* (f.)
abject, 33, *vil; méprisable; bas*
abjure (v.) *abjurer; renoncer à*, 341
ablative *ablatif* (m.), 74 (with *par, de*)
ablaze *en flammes* (f.), 102
able (adj.) *capable; propre à; en mesure de; en état de;* to be — *pouvoir*, 329
able-bodied (adj.) *robuste; fort*
ably (adv.) *avec habileté* (f.) (*adresse*, f.)
aboard *à bord* (m).; *en voiture* (f.), 309
abode *séjour* (m.); *résidence* (f.), 361
abol-ish (v.) *abolir; mettre fin à; révoquer; annuler; dissoudre*, 345; *abroger;* -ition — (f.)
abnormal (adj) *anormal; irrégulier*, 78
abomin-able (adj.) —; *dégoûtant*, 115; -ate (v.) *avoir en horreur* (f.), *dégoût* (m.); *haïr*, 316; *répugner;* -ation — (f.)
aborig-inal (m.) *naturels*, 258; -ines *-ènes*
abound (v.) *être en abondance* (f.), 109; *abonder en*
about (prep.) *environ*, 187; *à peu près; vers* (time or direction)
above (adv., prep.) *au-dessus (de);* — board, *sans déguisement* (m.), 187
abreast (adv.) *côte à côte* (f.), 193
abridg-e (v.) *faire un abrégé (épitomé);* -ment *abrégé* (m.), 228, 275
abroad *à l'étranger*
abrogate (v.) *abroger*
abrupt (adj.) *brusque, rude;* (slope) *rapide; perpendiculaire, vertical; déclin* (m.); -ly, 224; *à plomb, perpendiculaire (-ment);* -ness *rudesse* (f.)

abscess (n.) *abcès* (m.); *infection* (f.)
abscond (v.) *dérober; cacher; se* —
absen-ce (n.), 54, *absence* (f.) (lack); -t, 4, —, (m.); -tly, 359; *par distraction* (f.); *par manque d'attention;* -t-minded, 54, *distrait* (adj.); *il s'absente* he often goes away
absolu (adj.) perfect, 43
absolu-te (adj.) *absolu; indépendant; souverain;* -tely (adv.) *absolument; sans restriction* (f.); *purement et simplement;* -tion — (f.)
absolve (v.) *absoudre*, 332
absorb (v.) *absorber; plonger* (mind); *occuper fortement*, 197, 217; *être absorbé;* — (drink) *boire*, 334; *avaler*, 255
absor-bent (adj.) *absorbant; qui occupe entièrement;* -ption — (f.)
abstain (v.), 322, *s'abstenir* (*de*); *s'empêcher* (*de*)
abstemious (adj.) *tempérant; sobre* (*dans*)
abstract (n.) *abstrait;* — (v.) *isoler*, 227; *faire abstraction de;* -ly *isolément*
absurd (adj). *ridicule;* -ity *-ité* (f.); *stupidité*
abundan-ce (n.) *abondance* (f.); *surcroît* (m.), 343; -t (adj.) *abondant; en abondance* (f.)
abuse (v.) *abuser* (*de*); *mal user*, 197; *injurier* (*offenser*), 165
abusif, 59, wrongly used
abyss (n.) *abîme* (m.); *gouffre* (*précipice*) (m.), 145, 297
academ-y, 47, *académie* (f.); -ic (adj.) *-ique*
accede (v.) *céder* (*à*); *se rendre aux désirs de; consentir*, 320
accelera-te (v.), 343, *accroître;* -tion (n.) *accroissement* (m.), 228
accent (n.), 46, — (m.); *prononciation* (f.); tonic — *l'accent tonique;* -uate (v.) *-uer; marquer d'un* —; — (stress) — (f.), 45, 225
accept (v.) 28, *accepter; recevoir*, 249; *prendre*, 356; -able, 28, *agréable;* -ance *-ation* (f.)
access (n.) *accès* (*abord*) (m.); *entrée* (f.); -ible (adj.) —; *abordable*, 215; -it (n.) —, 33, -ory (n.) *accessoire* (m.), 24
accident (n.) — (m.), 193; -al (adj.) *-al;* -ally (adv.) *par accident*
accla-im (v.) *acclamer*, 349; -mation — (f.)
acclimate (v.) *acclimater; s'—; s'habituer à*, 277
accolade, 5 (brace), *embrassement* (m.), 347; — (f.)
accommod-ate (v.) *accommoder; convenir; être content* (*de*); -ation, 104; *amabilité, complaisance* (f.)
accompagner (v.) accompan-y, 57; -ist (n.) *qui accompagne;* 358; -iment (n.) *accompagnement* (m.)
accompli (adj.) -shed; (years) reached, 304; completed; effected; fulfilled; done; achieved; performed; carried out, 238
accomplish (v.) *accomplir, achever, remplir; exécuter; réaliser*, 238; -ment (n.) *accomplissement* (m.), 152; *achèvement* (m.); *résolution* (f.); *acquisition; agrément*, 244
accord (n.) *accord* (m.), 59; *conformité de sentiments; harmonie* (f.); *concordance* (f.); *union de sons;* 110, *d'accord* (agreed upon); *tomber d'*— to agree; to be of one mind (finally); 59, *s'accorder* to agree (suit)
accorder (v.) to agree; *être en accordance* (77, gr., *l'adjectif s'accorde avec le nom; on accorde le verbe avec son sujet*); cf.: 269, *concéder; mettre d'accord; octroyer; consentir* (*à admettre*); *être d'accord;* 60, to grant (to be of one mind)
accordeur (*de*) tuner
according to *selon; suivant;* -ly, 169, *en conséquence, donc, alors*; see *follow*

accost (v.) *accoster, aborder* (to come alongside); — (*s'approcher aussi près que possible*), 127, 205
accouder (*s'*) (v.) to lean upon one's elbow (s) 203; — *du . coude* (*sur le c—*)
account (n.) *compte* (m.); (v.) *rendre compte de;* -able, *responsable*, 268
accoupler (v.) to couple; to yoke; *s'*— to pair
(*r*)*accourcir* (v.) to shorten (the way); 342, *une raccourcie* short cut
accourir, 312, to hasten (run) to
accoutrement — (m.), 115; *habillement bizarre* (peculiar, unusual)
accoutrer (*s'*) or: *se parer de*, 323, to bedeck one's self (rig, etc.)
accoutumé (*à*), 277, accustomed (to); used to
accouver to set (a hen), 345
accredit (v.) *-éditer*, 160; *inspirer la confiance; s'-er* to gain esteem
accroc hitch, tear, 191; 206, *-hement* locking (of 2 teams); *-her* to hang (a hat) up or upon; to catch; *s'-er* to cling, 203
accroire (*faire*) *à* to make believe, 341; *s'en faire* — to consider one's self important, 209
accroissement (m.) increase of (speed); cf.: *ralentissement* (m.) slackening
accroupir (*s'*) to squat (down), 203; *se baisser*
accrue, 343, *accroître* (*s'*); *augmenter;* cf.: *diminuer, amoindrir*, 165
accueil (m.) reception, 36; *-lir*, 313 (v.) welcome
acculer (*contre le mur*) to push (to the wall); *s'adosser* to lean against, 205; *on le mit dans l'impossibilité de;* he was placed where he could not move, etc. (nonplussed)
accumul-er (v.) -ate, amass; *entasser* (heap) pile up; *mettre l'un sur l'autre;* 231, *amasser; amonceler*, 229; *rassembler*, 313, *cueillir* (gather); *faire une collection*
accura-cy (n.) *précision*, 99; *clarté; justesse* (f.); -te, 305, *exact; correct, juste*
accurse (v.) *maudire*, 344
accu-sateur, 66; (v.) *accuser* -se; (*de*); *imputer; révéler* (sins); (betray) — *servir d'indice; indiquer; faire ressortir* (to bring out), 321; *j'accuse réception de*, 268; *s'accuser*
accusatif accusative; (*ce*) *que* =that which (what)
accusation — (f.); *imputation* (f.), 199; *reproche* (m.), 227
accustom (v.) see *accoutumer*
accustom (v.) *accoutumer* (*s'*); *se faire:* 183, *prendre l'habitude à; avoir coutume* (*de*) to be -ed; *s'habituer* to get used to, 106; 347, *se faire à* to inure one's self
ace (n.) *as* (m.)
acerbe (adj.) sharp (taste);— (harsh) language, 153
achalandée (*boutique bien*) well patronized shop (f.)
acharné (adj.) desperate (fight); bitter
acharnement (n.) fury (m.); *s'acharner à*, 98, to persist in
achat (m.) purchase, 310
ach-e, *mal;* -ing *douleur; souffrance* (f.); (adj.) *douloureux*
acheminement (m.) (forward) march towards; *progrès* (m.)
s'acheminer to (speed along) march
acheter (v.) to buy, 22, 229
achet-er purchase; see *acquérir*, Irr. verb; *-eur* buyer
ach-ever achieve, see *finir* (conjugated); *terminer; consommer; donner le coup de grâce; tuer; perdre complètement; -èvement* (m.) completion; see *bâtir; construire; ériger*
Achille (m.), 24; -s
acid, 12, *acide* (m.); (tart) (adj.) — *acide;* -ity *-ité* (f.)

acide (m.) acid
acier (m.) steel; — *fondu* cast steel; *fil d'*— steel wire
acknowledg-e (v.), 339, *reconnaître;* (letter) *accuser réception de* (: [*un*] *accusé de r*—); -ment *reconnaissance* (f.); cf.: *ingratitude* (f.)
acolyte (m.) —, 14
acompte, see *devoir; 10 frs. à compte* (on a/c.)
acoustics *acoustique* (f.); *cornet* — ear (rubber) trumpet
acquaint *renseigner; (le) tenir au courant de, informer;* to get -ed *faire la connaissance de*, 310
acquérir acquire; *acquisition; acquéreur* purchaser, 29; cf.: *prendre des informations* (or: *demander); sans s'informer* (make inquiries): *à* — to come into possession of; *s'* — *un nom* to become celebrated; *mal acquis* ill-gotten; *l'argent se gagne avec peine; contrat d'acquisition* deed of purchase
acquiesce *accéder à* (accede to)
acquit, } see *devoir*, etc., 270
s' acquitter, } cf. *constater le payement;* to verify the payment; -tal *acquittement* (m.)
acre, 11, *acre* (: 40 *ares et demi*) or 160 sq. rods, or 43,560 sq. ft.
acrid *âcre; piquant* (pungent, sour, sharp); -ity *âcreté* (f.)
acrobat -e (m.) *danseu-r* (-*se de corde*); cf.: *clown, jongleur, équilibriste*
across, see p. 189
acrost-iche -ic (m.)
act, 9, *acte* (m.); *action* (f.); (v.) *agir* to —; *faire acte de présence* to put in an appearance
act-e (n.) act; *-ion*, 33 (deed); (v.) *agir* to act
acteur actor, 66
ac-tif (adj.) active; -tivity *-tivité* (f.); *verbe* — transitive verb; *la forme active* active form; *-tivement* -tively; *actif et passif* assets and liabilities, 87
action, 64, deed (act); *en* — at work; *Jour d'Action de Grâces* Thanksgiving; *-s* shares (stock); *-naire*, shareholder
activer to expedite (business); (poke) *le feu*
actualités (f.) news of the day
actuate (v.) *mouvoir*, 327
actuel present, actual; (real) effective; *-lement*, 56, now (-adays)
acuité (f.) acuteness; cf.: *aigu, pointu* acute, pointed
acute (adj.) *aigu* (*-ë*)
adage *proverbe* (m.); *maxime* (f.)
Adam, 26
adap-tation appliance; adjusting; fitting; *-ter* to make suitable (fit)
add (v.) *ajouter;* — up *additionner;* -ition *addition* (f.)
add (to) *joindre, augmenter; faire l'addition* (f.); see *superfluous*
adder *couleuvre* (f.)
addicted to vice *porté au vice*
address *adresse* (f.); *adresser;* wrong —, — *mal mise; s' -er à* to apply to; *adressez-lui la parole* speak to him (her)
adhérer (v.) adhere (cling), 188
adhésion (f.) consent
adieu a farewell (*quand on se quitte* at parting)
adjacent —; *attenant; contigu* (-ous); see *follow*
adjectif (n.) adjective, 55
adjectival (adj.) *qui tient de l'adjectif* (m.)
adjoindre adjoin; *associer à*, 99 (see *joindre);* -ing, see *adjacent*
adjoint (*professeur* —) associate professor; adjunct
adjudant adjutant
adjudicataire (in public contracts) purchaser who is to fulfill the agreement as per contract: *par adjudication*

adjuger (*une entreprise*) to award labor to be performed as above; — (*un prix*) to — a prize

adjur-er to beseech (implore); -ation — or *prière instante*

adjust (v.) *joindre; adapter*

adjuteur who helps (: as auxiliary)

admettre, 351, admit (see *mettre*); *recevoir, comporter* (to stand); *accueillir*

adminis-trateur trustee; (-trator) curator; -tration — (f.); -ter *-trer; conduire; diriger; conférer* (Cath.)

admirable —, 30

admira-ble —; -bly *admirablement; d'une manière admirable, parfaite*

admira-teur admirer; -tion — (f.)

admi-re (v.), 58, *admirer; considérer* (*avec étonnement et surprise*); -rer (m.) *admirateur; trouver étrange* to wonder at (find it strange); -ration — (f.); -rable —; — deeply *ravir d'admiration; charmer* to delight; *transporté de joie* (beside one's self) in raptures; in heaven (: *être aux anges*); *plaire extrêmement; fasciner* (to put under a spell); *roses admirables* wonderful flowers!

admirer (v.) to admire, 147

admissible —; entitled (worthy) to be admitted; allowable

admission — (f.); admittance; no — *défense d'entrer*

adonné (*à*) addicted to; *s'-er à* to give one's self up to

adopt-er un enfant to adopt a child; *il fait une motion* he makes a motion; *on l'appuie* it is seconded; *on la fait* — it is carried; *mettons aux voix la motion* let us put the motion to vote; *-ion* (f.), 25; *-if* (*fils*) adoptive child, 28, 79

adorable charming (lovely!)

adorer (v.) to love (adore); *aimer avec passion;* cf.: *aimer éperdument* to love to distraction; *languir d'amour* to pine away for love; *être épris de* to be enamored with; *se lier avec* (*former une liaison*) to become acquainted with; *entiché de* infatuated with, or: *en raffoler* to be, etc.; *chérir la patrie* to love the fatherland; *prendre en amitié*, to take a liking to; to be wedded to an opinion; *s'attacher fortement à une*, etc.; *il l'aime comme la prunelle de ses yeux* he loves her like the apple of his eye; *s'attacher à plaire* to use every effort (to strive) to please; see *follow*

adorn *orner* (v.); cf.: *parer* (*de*); *embellir; décorer; illustrer;* -ment *parure* (f.); *ornement* (m.)

adosser to rest against; or: *appuyer contre*

adouc-ir to sweeten; cf.: to mitigate (soften, calm, soothe and appease; *s'—; -issement* sweetening, palliation, relief: *soulagement* (m.); assuaging

adresse (f.) see *address* and *parler*

adroit (cf.: direct) clever; *plein d'esprit, d'invention;* cf.: *habile* skillful; *connaisseur rusé* (cunning); -ly *avec adresse;* -ness *dextérité* (f.); *se connaître en* to be an expert in; *ingénieux*

adula-te *aduler; flatter servilement;* -tion *flatterie basse; compliment flatteur;* -tor *flatteur, louangeur*

adult *adulte*

adulterate *falsifier; altérer; adultérer; cette boisson est frelatée* this beverage (drink) is ad-ed; or: *on y met des substances étrangères* they make it impure by admixture of a foreign (or a baser) substance

advance *avancer;* — (*d'un pas*) — one step; *qui n'avance pas recule* he who does not —

advance—*Continued*
retrogrades; *faire des progrès* to make progress; — (proceed) *poursuivre; continuer; promouvoir* (promote); what is the advantage! *la belle avance*

advancement *progrès; avancement (d'un pas)* (m.); making a step forward; *élévation en grade* promotion; *amélioration* (f.) (improvement)

advantage *avantage, profit* (m.); *-s* (successes); -ous *avantageux*

advenir, see *venir*

Advent *l'avent* (m.); Sunday in — *dimanche de* ——

adventur-e *aventure* (f.); *entreprise hasardeuse; à l'*— at all hazards; *par* — (*d'*) — by chance; -ous *-eux;* see *s'exposer*, p. 170; *courir le risque* to take the chance

adverb *-e* (m.); *mot invariable*, 59; -ial (*modifie le verbe, l'adjectif, l'expression); locution -ale*

advers-ary *adversaire, rival; faire concurrence à* (f.) to (oppose) compete with (*concourir pour*); *c*— *à* (co-operate); -ative *conjonction* — (f.); *mais* (but), *quoique* (although)

advers-e, la partie —; the opposition (law); *fortune* — ill fortune; *la mauvaise chance le poursuit* he has a run of bad luck; **-ity** *-ité* (f.); *infortune* (f).; *malheur* (m.)

advertise (v.) *annoncer;* -ment, *-ce* (f.); *réclame* (f.); to praise (loud) *en faire l'éloge* (m.); see *louer*, p. 213; *mousser un succès* to praise a successful affair loudly; *battre la grosse caisse* to make a splurge over; a big splurge; *il claque son fouet* he cracks his own whip

advice (n.) *avis, conseil* (m.); see *follow*; (v.) *donner avis* to give notice; *donner (demander) des conseils* to advise (to ask for —)

advisable (adj.) *prudent; bon, sage (de);* it may not be (deemed) — *on ne saurait recommander (à) de; convenable (expédient); à propos (utile);* cf.: to seek a makeshift *chercher un expédient*, or: *recourir à*, see *courir;* -ness *utilité* (f.); *instruire (de)* to be made cognizant of; *il est au courant de* (com.) he is well informed in (grounded); *le tenir au c*— *de* to keep him advised concerning

advise (v.) *conseiller (de)*

advisedly *à dessein;* see *expect; de dessein prémédité* designedly

advisement *considération* (f.); see *devoir; une telle* — *le décida* (or: *raison* (f.) *motif*); such motive prompted him; see *résoudre* (solve) or settle (a point); *déterminer* or *faire prendre une résolution* to take resolve; *se déterminer à* to r— upon; *cela le d*— *à* that makes him take that resolve; *conseiller de; résolu* -te; *il est déterminé* (bold); *les résoudre à* to prevail upon them; *s'y r*— to make up one's mind to do it; colloq.: *il branle dans le manche* irresolute; *s'obstiner dans;* see *s'opiniâtrer*, p. 204; *un parti pris* foregone conclusion; resolutely *résolument; manquer de* — to lack —; *quelle résolution* what a —! *changer de* — to change mind; see (v.) *cut; qu'ont-ils arrêté* what has been resolved on? *il prévient (résout) d'avance toute objection* he meets any — in advance

afar (adv.) *au loin*, 96

affamé (adj.) famished, 32

affirm (v.) *affirmer;* -ation — (f.); -ative (adj.) *affirmatif;* — (n.); *affirmative* (f.); -ly *d'une manière* —

affirmative (form) (*la forme*)—, 59

affluent (m.), 188
affluer (v.), 188
afflux, 34 (m.); — (med.)
affreux, 80
affût (m.), 13, gun carriage; on the lookout
Afrique (n., f.), 192
age, 3, *âge* (m.); -d *âgé de*, 304
agenda (m.) memorandum book, 18
agnosticisme (m.), 22
agriculteur, 3, farmer
ai (*avoir*), 81
aid *aide* (f.); (see *help*); (v.) *aider à;* in — of (towards) *au profit* (*bénéfice*) *de;* to come to (assist) aid *venir en aide; prêter son concours; s'aider de* — (with)
aie (*avoir*), 81
aïe! ouch! 17
aïeul, 71
aigles, 68
aigu (-*ë*), 9, 78
aiguille (f.) needle, switch; *-r* to thread a —, 24; *-ur* (m.) switchman
aiguiser to sharpen (whet), 352
aile (f.) wing, 4
aille etc. (*aller*) Subj.
ailleurs elsewhere, 16
aim (at), see *purpose*
aimable, 30, lovable
aimer (v.) to like (love), 20
aîné sr.; elder
ainsi thus, 46
air (*avoir l'*), 56, to look; to seem to be; *paraître; l'air et la chanson* (appearance and reality)
air (n.) *air* (m.), 14; *il fait de l'air*, 348, there is wind; *il prend l'air*, 356, he goes out for a walk; or: *le frais* (takes) the air (-ing); made up stories *contes en l'air;* to hover (soar) in the — *planer dans les airs*
ajouter to add, 26
alarme, 64
album (m.) —, 21
alcôve (f.) alcove, recess, 12
Alexandre (m.) -er, 34
allaient et venaient, 40, kept going and coming
allant (*en*) while going (on his, our, my, their, her way to), 40
Allemand, 5, German; *A—gne*, 192, Germany
aller, 309, to go; *s'en* — to go away
allez, 30, go, 309 (Imper.)
allonger (v.) to lengthen (prolong)
allons, 3, come! *aller*, 309
almanach (m.) almanac, 22
almonds (burned) *pralines* (f.)
almost *presque; à peu près;* the *e* in — elided in: *presqu'île*
alors then, 30
aloyau (m.) sirloin, 14
alphabet, 6; alphabet (m.); in -ical order *par ordre -étique*
already *déjà*
Alsace (f.), 30; *-cien* (*-nne* f.) Alsacian
also *aussi;* (likewise; so) —
amaze (v.) *frapper d'étonnement* (m.); see *wonder, surprise;* stand aghast *demeure ébahi; — interdit* speechless; *quel ne fut point son étonnement* imagine his amazement when; *imaginez-vous que* (fancy or just imagine or picture to yourself . . .); colloq.; *c'est renversant* I am dazed! (*étonnement profond* great surprise!); and verb *enchanter* (delight); enrapture (v.) *être sous le charme de* (spell of), *séduire* fascinate (v.)
amazone (f.) (woman) rider, 12
ambassadeur, 66
ambi-tion — (f.); -tious *ambitieux; il a de l'ambition;* see *extinguish*
ambulance (f.) —, 19
âme (n. f.) soul, 3
amen, 19 (m.)
amer (adj.) bitter, 29
America *l'Amérique* (f.), 192
American, 5, *Américain* (m.); — lady, 19, *-e* (f.), 65
ami (n. m.) friend; *-e* (f.), 3; *-tié* (f.), 19, friendship, 12; *en amitié* as a —
ammoni-aque (f.) -ac, 26

amnistie (f.) amnesty, 19
among *entre; — parmi*
amont (m.) (the direction from which a stream descends);— (*en*), up the river (from)
amour, 68; 19
amputation (n.) — , 19
amus-ant (adj.) -ing, 32
amuser (v.) to amuse, 19
an (m.) year, 304; *-née* (f.) (whole) year
anabaptisme (m.) -m, 28
anabaptiste (m.) -t, 28
analyse (f.), 14, analysis
ancien, 78
âne (m.) mule, 9
anglais 5, English (language); *Angleterre*, 192, England
anguille (f.) eel, 24
animal (m.) 70
annales (f.) annals, 18
anneau (m.) (plain) ring, 18
année (f.) year, 18
annexe (f.), 18, annex; *-r* (v.) to — (add), 53
annivers-aire (m.) -ary, 27
annonce (f.), 27, advertisement; *-r* (v.) to announce, 58
annoter (v.) to annotate (edit), 18
annuaire (m.) (yearly) book record, 18
annu-el -al, 27
annuit-é (f.) -y, 18
annuler (v.) to cancel (annul), 18
another *un autre; encore un;* one — *l'un l'autre*
answer (n.) *réponse* (f.); (v.) *répondre* (*à*)
Ant-échrist (m.) -ichrist, 31
antipath-ie (f.), 32, -y
any, 124, see *de; du, de l', de la, des;* — other *tout autre; quelqu'autre*
août (m.) August, 180; *-er* (v.) to reap in —
apart *à part*
apath-ie (f.), 33, -y
aplomb (m.) assurance, 20
apostrophe *apostrophe* (f.), 57, *mots mis en* — apostrophized words
apôtre (m.), 12, apostle; *faire le bon* — to be a wolf in sheep's clothing
apparaître (v.) (*paraître*), 354
apparent, 57 (adj.) —
appartement, 56, apartment
appear, 354, *paraître*; (comets) *apparaître; sembler* (seem); (publish, to be issued); to — to me only as dots *ne me paraître que des points;* — before the judges — *à la barre; le soleil paraît* the sun -s; *il luit* it shines or: *brille; darder ses rayons* to dart forth its rays; *éblouir* to dazzle; (*passer* or *disparaître*): *la beauté passe;* just out! *vient de paraître; mettre au jour* to have (it) published; *p*— to seem to be; so it seems *à ce qu'il paraît;* to come in sight (sun) *commencer à p—; faire un acte de présence* to put in an appearance; *p*— (*se faire voir*); *l'aurore parut; l'acteur fit son début* (appeared on the scene) for the first time; *p*— *comme témoin* to — as a witness; before courts of justice (*comparaître*) *en justice; le mandat de comparution* summons to —; he was sued at law *on l'appela en justice; si vous êtes fâché, ne le laissez point paraître* if you are angry do not show it; *p*— *pour la dernière fois* to make his last a—; *aimer à bien p*—, to like to make a good appearance; *faire p*— to write (books); *faites paraître le coupable* have the guilty one brought in; *il paraît que . . .* it seems as if . . .; *il n'y paraît pas* there are no signs of it; *il y paraît* it seems so (: *il y a toute apparence); il lui semble qu'on le voit* he thinks (fancies) that they see him; *cela lui semble ainsi* so it seems to him; *selon toute apparence* in all probability; dispel the clouds *faire dis*— (or:

appear—*Continued*
dissiper) *les nuages;* cf.: *dissiper* (squander) *son bien* (fortune): (*le manger*); *il a l'air et la chanson;* see *air; apparition* (astro.); *en apparence* [*la récolte sera bonne* apparently the harvest will be good] — — judging from what we see; *ces lignes sont apparemment de M. X.* apparently those lines are from Mr. B.; *les apparences sont pour eux* probabilities favor their case; *il fera cela pour les apparences* he will do that for show; *le blé a une belle apparence* that wheat promises well; *sauvez les apparences* (*dehors*) save appearances; *sont-ce des plaintes apparentes?* are those complaints feigned? *pas la moindre apparence de vérité* not the least sign of truth; cf.: *il est bien de figure* good-looking; *elle a bonne mine* she looks well; *en peinture* in appearance
appeler to call, 229
appendice (m.) appendix, 18
applic-able can be applied; *-ation*, 56
apply (to) *s'adresser à*
apporter (v.) to bring (fetch), 156
apprendre (see *prendre*), 356–7, to learn
appris p. p. of *apprendre*, 356, 28
approuvé, 192
appui (m.) support, 46
appuyer (v.) to lay stress (on, upon)
après after; *d'*— according, 56
April, 180 (m.), *avril*
aquat-ique (adj.) -ic, 28
aquilin (*nez*) (adj.) Roman nose
aquilon (m.) north wind, 29
arbre (m.), 55, tree
arc, 11; — *en-ciel* (m.), 112
archéologie (f.) archæology
archevêque archbishop
archiduc archduke
archidiacre (m.) archdeacon, 24
architect-e (m.) architect, 24, 40; *-ure* (f.) —
ardent burning, 37, 42
are (see: *to be* (v.)
argent (m.), 3, money (silver)
argile, 65
arguer (v.) (law) to accuse (of), 24
aride (adj.), 12, arid
aristocra-te (m.), 32, -t; *-tie* (f.) -cy
Aristophanes (of Byzantium) *Aristophane* (*de Byzance*)
arithmétique (f.) arithmetic, 24
arm, 65, to -s *aux armes!* to take up -s *prendre les armes;* he has long — *il a des bras longs;* -ed (with) *armé* (*muni*) *de* or: *ayant*
armoire, 65
army, 11, *armée* (f.); see *follow*
arome (f.) aroma, 12
arrêt (m.), 11, stop; decree (decision), 53
arrêter (v.) to stop; *s'*— to make a stop
arrivé, 3, arrived, 194
arriv-e (v.) *arriver;* -al *arrivée* (f.) — at (reach) *-er*, 38
arroser (v.) to water (sprinkle), 13
arrow (n.) *flèche* (f.); see *traire*, etc.
art (m.), 33, —
artère, 65
article (m.), 54
articulate *articuler* (*un son*)
articuler (v.) to articulate
artiste, 66
as — as *aussi* (*si*) *que*, 167; *comme* (just) — *de même que* [see comparative]; as *comme, en qualité de;* as an example — *exemple;* such as *tel que;* as well as *aussi bien;* as if dead (*en quelque façon*) *comme mort;* as a teacher *en qualité de maître;* cf.: *comme il est drôle* how funny he acts! as he was entering *comme il entrait* (*au moment où*); *comme il est votre parrain* as he is your godfather; cf.: *parce que* because; *puisque* since (as); see *follow*

ascend-ance (f.), 30, -ency
ascension (f.) —, 30
Ash Wednesday *mercredi des cendres*
aside *de côté; à l'écart* (aloof)
Asie (f.) Asia, 192
ask (v.) *demander (à M. de);* — after — *des nouvelles de la santé de*
aspect (m.), 33, —
ass *âne* (m.), 227
assembly, 3, *assemblée; réunion* (f.)
asseyez-vous, 15 (*s'asseoir*) sit down, 324
assez, 253
assister (*à*) to attend, 31
Ass-omption (f.) -umption, 28
assurance de ma (notre) parfaite considération (: letter-writing) or: . . . *considération distinguée* (see *expression*)
asterisk, 5, *astérisque* (m.)
asthme (m.) asthma, 24
astrono-mique, 37; *-mie* (f.) -my
at *à;* — rest *en repos;* — home *chez moi (lui, elle, eux, elles)*
athée (m.), 33, atheist
Athènes (f.) Athens
athlète (m.), 33, —
atlas (m.), 30
atome (m.), 12, atom
atonique, 12, atonic
atout (m.) trump, 16
âtre (f.), 11, hearth
attend (v.) (a meeting), *assister (à une réunion);* see *follow;* — (take care of) *soigner;* -ance (large) *nombreux auditoire* (m.)
attend (on), 42 (we, they, etc.), are waiting
attendant, 38, meanwhile; while waiting (*en*), 38, in the meantime
attendre to wait (for); expect
attendu considering, 192
attentat (m.), 40, attack; attempt (at crime)
attente (*salle d'*) waiting-room
attenti-f (adj.) -ve, 33
attribute (n.), 59, *attribut* (m.); (v.) — *attribuer;* (gr.) *l'attribut (le prédicat) est le troisième terme de la proposition* the predicate is the third term of a proposition
au, 124, to the
aucun (m.), 119 (pron. indef.), no
augmenter (v.) increase, 15
aujourd'hui to-day, 54
auquel, 135
aurore (f.) aurora, 15
aussi, 55, also, too, 3, 95
aussi (*bien . . . que*) as (well as), 53
aussitôt que as soon as, 167
austère austere, 15
autant, 253, as much (many); *pas* — not so much (many)
auteur, 67, author
autocra-tie (f.), 32, -cy
automne, 64
autre other, 40; *-ment que*, 59, different from
autres (*à d'*), 54 (to), others; tell it — — (colloq.)
avais (*avoir*), 81, had
aval (m.), 11 (security); *donner son* — to indorse (note); — down *en* — (a stream); *le côté vers lequel descend une rivière* the direction in which a river descends; cf.: *amont*
avant before (time); 56; — *que*, 60, before;
avant-dernier last but one, the penult
— *-hier* (adv.), 33
avec with (prep.), 23
avertir to warn, 41
avis (m.), 39, notice: 271
aviser (v.) to advise (let know)
avocat (m.), 9, lawyer
avoir, 81, to have
avril (m.) April, 25
axe (f.) *axis*, 34
axiome (m.), 12, axiom, 34
ayant (p. part., *avoir*), 85
ayons (imperative) *avoir*, 85

B

babil (m.) chatter, 25
Babylone (f.) Babylon

bac (m.) ferry (boat), 11
bachelier, 31, — *-ès-Lettres* Bachelor in Literature
bacill-e (m.) -us, 25
bague (f.), 9, ring; *anneau* (plain) ring (m.)
bailleur, 66
bait (n.) *appât* (m.) (see *hook*)
bal (m.) ball, 11
balafre (f.) scar, 11
balbutie (f.) lisping, 32; (v.) *-r* to stammer
balbutier, 225
balle (f.) ball; see *pelote* (f.) (hand) —
balle (f.) bullet, 25
balsam-ique (adj.) -ic, 30
banc (m.) bench, 18
banque (f.), 30, bank
baptême (m.), 64, baptism, 28
baptiser to baptize, 28
baptism-al, -e, -aux (adj.), 28
baptistaire (m.) birth (certificate), 28
Bapt-iste (m.) -ist (Jean), 28
baptis-tère (m.) -tery, 28
bargain *marché* (m.); good — (*faire un*) *m— avantageux;* current price *m— au comptant;* — sales *occasions* (f.); (*marchandises au rabais: solde* (f.)); (v.) *marchander; il n'y a pas à* — ! now (decide) make a decision; *profitez des occasions;* see *opportunity;* you will not come down on your price *vous ne rabattez rien de votre prix; vente* (f.) *au rabais* sale at reduced prices; *solde de marchandises* (f.) — sales
baril (m.), 25, barrel
bas (adj.), 78; (n. m.) stocking
base (f.), 11, base; basis; *se -r* (— *fonder*)
basket (n.) *panier* (m.)
bastion (m.) —, 33
bât (m.), 9, pack saddle; Prov. *savoir* (*sentir*) *où le — blesse* to (know) feel where the shoe pinches
(to) be, 291, *être; exister; y avoir;* — — out *être sorti;* — — in — *rentré;* — — a part of *faire partie de;* — — equal *être égal;* — make — *rendre égal*
beau (*bel*), 79
beaucoup, 253; hard, 39
beautiful *beau ;* -ly *admirablement; avoir beau* in vain (*with* verb), 211
beauty *beauté* (f.)
Beaux-Arts Fine Arts, 53
become, 323, *devenir;* (to grow) — small — *petit;* what has — of him *qu'est-il devenu?*
before (prep.) *avant* (time); — *devant* (in front of), 142
beg (v.) *mendier;* -gar *mendiant;* see *request: prier* (pray) —; see *urge*
begin (v.) *commencer; se mettre à; se prendre à*, 356; 351; -ner *commençant;* -ning *commencement* (m.)
behind *derrière* (see *follow*)
beige (*bis*), 15, *laine* (f.); — undyed wool
bélier, 67
believe (v.) *croire*, 341; *penser* (think); *avoir la foi en; s'imaginer; juger; à en juger par* (— judge by); *se croire; lui faire croire* to make him —
belle (adj.), 79
belong (v.) *appartenir*, 322; *être à*
benzine (n.) — (f.), 19; (*essence*, f.)
berceau (m.) cradle
bercer (v.) to rock (lull)
berceuse (f.) rocker, 15
berger, 65
beseech (v.) *supplier;* see *request, beg, entreat;* -ing *supplication* (f.)
beset *poursuivre;* see *follow;* see *rompre* (3d group)
bestial (adj.), 71, — , 33
bétail (m.) cattle, 71
bête (f.), 9, beast; — *de somme* — of burden; — (adj.) stupid
Bethléem, 26, Bethlehem
between (prep.) *entre;* — us three *à nous trois*
beurre (m.), 16, butter; (v.) *-r* to —, 29; *battre du* — to churn the cream, 333

beware (of) (v.) *prendre garde*, 172
bible (f.), 12
biceps (m.), 101
biche, 67
bien, 95, well; *mieux* better; *le* — the good; 38, property; *assez* — fairly well, 309; *pas trop* — not very well, 19; — *plus* much more, 253; *en plus*, 31; in addition (: *par surcroît*, 342)
bill (m.) — (Parl.), 25
billard (m.) billiard, 25
bille (f.) billiard-ball, 25
billet (m.) note; ticket, 25
birth (n.) *naissance* (f.) (*naître*); *fête* (f.); — day *fête de n*—
bis, 30
bis (adj.) brown (bread)
Biscay (Bay of) *Biscaye*
biscuit (m.), 33, —
bizarre odd, 11
blade *lame* (f.); — *tranchante* (not dull) keen edged; see *cut*
blague (f.) pouch; hoax, 24
blaguer (v.) to hoax, 24
blanc, 78 (*-he*); *-hir*, 99, 236
blé (m.) wheat, 11
bleu, 70; — *clair* light blue, 56
bloc (m.) (*de marbre*), 12, block (of marble)
blocus (m.), 30, blockade
blunder (see *commit*) *erreur*; see *mistake* (oversight) *bévue* or *erreur grossière*; a big — *lourde méprise*; *par inadvertance* inadvertently
boa (m.) — , 17
bœuf (m.) beef, ox, 31, 15, 24
boire (v.) to drink, 334
bois (v.), 334
bois (m.), 59, woods (forest)
bol (m.) bowl, 12
bon good, 78; (n. m.) ticket
bond (m.) bound (hop), 20
bonheur (m.) happiness, 43
bonhomme, 73
bonnet (m.) cap, 53
bonté, 65
borax (m.) borax, 34
borrow (v.) *emprunter* (*à*); -ed by, 270, *emprunté par*
bosquet (n. m.), 13, grove
bos-se (n.) bump, 13; *-su* hunchback
bosseler (v.), 229, to emboss
botte (f.), 65
bouc (m.), 67, he-goat
bouche (f.) mouth; *gueule* (f.) (of tigers, etc.); *-er* (v.) to stop (gap), 16
boucher (n. m.) butcher, 29
boue (n. f.) mud, 64, 348
bouillir (v.) to boil, 312
bouillon (m.) broth, 25
boulanger (n.) baker, 39
boule (f.), 16, bowl
bouquet (n.), 33
bourbe (f.), 64
bourg (m.) hamlet, 37; *-eois*, 16
bourse (f.) purse; scholarship, 16
bout (m.) end (top), tip, 29, 8; *a*—*ir* to come to an end
brake (n.) *frein* (m.); apply the — *serrez le* —
bras (m.) arm, 11
bread *pain* (m.); *cuire le p*— to bake bread; — in the oven *p*— *au four*; new — *du pain frais*; fresh — *du pain tendre*; stale — *du pain dur* (*rassis*); brown — *du p*— *bis*; home-made — *pain de ménage*; little rolls *des petits pains*; *croissants* (m.) crescent rolls; see *crochet*
break (v.), 271, *briser*; (out, in; up)
breath *souffle* (m.); *respiration* (f.)
breathe (v.) *respirer* (— in); *respirer encore* still alive (to be); *le temps de r*— *un moment* just a chance to breathe! *y respirer un bon air* to breathe (therein, — to) a pure air; *respirer* (*au visage*) *la santé* to be the picture of health; see *traire*, etc.; *un ouvrage de longue haleine* a work requiring much time
brebis, 65
breed (good) *de bonne race*· see *follow*; (v.) *engendrer*
breeze *brise* (f.)
brief *court*; *bref*; -ly *bref en un mot*

brigade (f.), 36
broad *large;* -ening *extension* (f.)
broche (f.), 12, brooch; spit (cook.), 343
bronze (m.) bronze, 20
brosse (f.), 13, brush; (v.) *brosser* to —
brother *frère;* — -in-law *beau-frère;* -ly *en frère; fraternel*
brouillard (m.) fog, 348
bru (f.), 67, daughter-in-law
brume (f.) (thick) fog, 13, 348
brut raw, 33
Bruxelles, 34, Brussels
bûche (f.), 13, log
build (v.) *bâtir; construire; se faire* — to have built; *une maison qu'il se fait construire* he is having a house built; -ing *bâtiment* (m.); *édifice; de haute construction* high —
buis (m.), 30, boxwood
bulbe (f.) bulb
burn *brûler;* (n.) *brûlure* (f.)
burst (v.) *crever;* see *rire;* -ing *explosion* (f.); *faire e—* to explode
bury *ensevelir, enterrer;* see *extract*
business *affaires* (f.)
buste (m.) bust, 13
but *mais;* — (only) *ne . . . que; seulement;* (v. *doubt*) *que*
butte (f.), 9 (small hill) hillock, or *colline* (f.); 32, *être en butte à* to be exposed to
buveur, 66 (v. *boire*, 334)
buy (v.) *acheter;* — (shop) *faire des achats* (m.)
by *par, de, à;* followed — it (*qui*) *en est suivi*

C

çà, 9, there; — *et là* (hither and thither) here and there
ça = (*cela*) colloq.: that (it); *c'est* — ! that's it! *ça ira*, 46, it will go (do, etc.)
cabane (f.) hut, 11
cabinet (m.) (*de lecture*) (reading-) room, 33
câbl-e (m.) —, 9; *corde* (f.) (rope); *-ogramme* (m.) *dépêche télégraphique par un câble*
cacao (m.), 13, cacao (: to make cocoa and chocolate)
café (m.), 11, coffee
calcul (m.) calculation, 25; (v.) *-er* to compute
call (v.) *appeler;* to be called *s'appeler; se nommer;* — on *passer chez—;*—again *repasser;* — your attention to *attirer* (*appeler*) *votre attention sur;* (see *direct*); -ed *dit;* so-called *soi-disant;* call the roll *faire l'appel* (m.); proclaim their names *proclamez les noms;* Lecture-Hall *salle des conférences* (f.); to give a lecture *faire une conférence;* lecture him finely *chantez-lui sa gamme; lui en remontrer* to teach him (by irony); keep on reading *continuez à lire;* — up your — *continuez de lire*
calm, 3, *calme; tranquille;* to — *se calmer*
calomnie (f.) slander; *-r* to —, 26
calvitie (f.) baldness, 32
Camille, 25
camp (m.) —, 38; *-er* (v.) to —
campagne (f.) country
Canada (m.) Dominion of, *la Puissance du Canada*
canard, 67
candidat (m.), 53, -e
canne (f.) cane, 18
cañon (m.), 8
cantatrice, 66
caoutchouc (m.) rubber (shoes), 23
cap (m.) Cape (Cod), 11
capable *habile; propre à;* — *susceptible* (*de*) or: liable to
caper (v.) *faire des cabrioles; sauter gaiement et vivement*
capital (n.) *capitale* (f.); *capitale*, 5; *chef-lieu* (m.); — dinner *fier dîner*
câpre (f.), 11, caper
capt-ieux (adj.), 80, -ious, 33
car (conj.) for, 11; cf. *parce que*, 126, because
carafe, 64

carafon, 64
cardinal points *les points cardinaux*, 64
care (in — of) *aux soins de; soin* (m.); to take — *avoir soin de;* (to see to) *s'en charger,* — — *occuper;* to keep an eye on *y veiller*
career (see *profession*) (n.) *carrière* (f.); *cours* (n.) *de la vie; embrasser la c— des armes;* see *follow; donner c— à* to give free rein to, or: *pleine liberté* free scope
caress (v.) *caresser*, 227
caressante, 3
cargo (m.) —, 8
carnaval (m.), 36, carnival
carnivo-re (adj.), 58, -rous animal
carré (m.) square; (adj.), 53
carreau (m.) diamond (card); 11, pane; — (tailor's goose); little square; *demeurer* (*rester*) *sur le* — to be killed on the spot
carve *découper;* see *to cut*
cas (*où*) (m.) case (when), 53, 59
cascade (f.), 35
case, 30, *cas* (m.); in — (see p. 163) *au* (*en*) — *que;* in most -s *dans la plupart des cas*
case (f.) (Uncle Tom's), 11, cabin; pigeon-hole; *il est casé* he has settled down; (v.) *-r* to secure a position for
catalogue (m.) catalog; (v.) *-r* to make (write upon) a —
cathédrale, 64
cathol-icisme, 6, catholicism; -ic *-ique*
cave (f.), 11, cellar
ce (*c'*), 132, 175
cède yields to, 29
céder (v.) to yield, 29
cedilla, 7, *cédille* (f.)
celle (*-s*) that, etc., 130
celui (*celle*), 130
cent (one) hundred, 303–5; 35
centime (m.), 305; *⅕ sou; 5 c.* = 1 ct.
centimèt-re (m.), 33, -er
century (*âge*) *siècle* (m.)
cep (f.) (vine) stock, 28
ce qui (*que*) what, 131
cercueil (m.) coffin (bier), 25
cerf (m.) stag, 67
cerf-volant (m.) kite, 24
cerise (f.), 5, cherry; *-ier* — -tree
certain (adj.), 110, —
ces, 129, these (those) (dem. adj.), 129
c'est-à-dire that is to say, 5
c'est que, 5, why
c'est que, 113
césur-e (f.) -a (pause), 45
cet (*-te*), 129
ceux (*celui*) those, 130
chacun, 111 (*pron. indéf.*), 57
chair, 65
chaise (f.) chair, 14
chaleur, 64
chambre (f.) room, 56
chameau (m.) camel, 3
champ (m.) field, 28
champagne, 9, 334; la —
change *se modifier* (its form); — *changer* (*de*); ex— *échanger, faire un échange* (*troc*), 59
chanson (f.) song, 66
chant (m.), 26, singing; 54, airs
chanter (v.) to sing, 11
chanteur, 66
chaos (m.), 24
chapeau (m.), 13, hat
chapelier (m.) hatter
chapitre (m.) chapter, 27
chaque, 59, each
Charles-Quint Charles the Fifth
charm-ant (adj.) -ing, 40
charmer, 40
chasse (f.) hunt; *-r* to chase, 24
chasseur, 66
chasuble (f.), 13, chasuble (outer vestment)
chat, 67
château (m.), 13
chatte (f.), 24
chaud, 121, warm, heat, 36
chaux, 65
cheap (*à*) *bon marché;* -er, *à meilleur* — (m.)
chef d'œuvre (m.), 24
chef-lieu, 36, chief town
chemise (f.) shirt; see *bargain*
chêne (m.) oak

chenil (m.) kennel, 25
cheptel (m.) lease of cattle, 28
cher, 9, dear (expensive); *chèrement* -ly
chercher (v.) to seek (look for), 57
cherry *ceris-e* (f.); — -tree *-ier* (m.)
cheval (m.) horse, 70
cheveu (*x*) (m.) hair
chèvre, 67
chez (prep.) at (the house of) home, 122
chien (m.) dog, 41
chiffre (m.) figure (cipher); see *déchiffrer* decipher
child *enfant* (m., f.)
chimère (f.) chimera, 24
Chine (f.) China, 20, 192
chiourme (f.) convicts' gang (crew), 17
chiromancie (f.) palmistry, 24
chirurgie (f.) surgery, 24; *-n* surgeon, 24
chœur (m.) choir; chorus, 16, 26
choix (m.), 16, choice; (v.) *choisir* to select
chok-e (v.) *étouffer* (see *rire*); stifle —; smother; suffocate; *il ne peut* (*plus*) *respirer* he can hardly breathe; -ing *étouffement* (m.); *intercepter l'air* to check the air; *éteindre une révolte* to suppress — —
choléra (m.) —, 22
chômage (m.) loafing, 12
chômer (v.), 12, to be idle; to celebrate
chorus (m.) —, 30
chose (f.), 3, thing, 70
chrétien (m.) Christian, 33
Christ, 22, *le Christ; Jésus-Christ*, 31; -mas *Noël; la —*
christianisme, 64
chrome (m.) chromium, 12
chuintant (like *ch*, *j*), 23; fricative
chut! 33
ciel, 71
ciguë (f.) hemlock, 7
ci-inclus, 192
ci-joint, 192
cil (m.) eyelash, 25
cinq five; *-uième* fifth, 303
cinquante fifty, 303
circumflex *circonflexe* (m.)
cire (f.) wax, 12; *-r* to wax (polish)
cireur de bottes bootblack
cité (f.) local precincts, 43; or: *circonscription locale;* eminent city; oldest part of London *cité de Londres; la cité sainte* the Holy City or Jerusalem
clair (adj.) clear; light, 56; 5, -ly
clarté (f.) clearness
class *classe* (f.)
classical Latin, *latin classique*
classics *les classiques* (m.)
classi-fication *tableau; classement* (m.); (sorting) *distribution* (f.); -fy (v.) *classer*, 56
classique (adj.), 59, classical
clé (*clef*) (f.), 65
clear (adj.) *clair; limpide;* -ness *clarté, précision* (f.); -ly *clairement;* — out (v.) *vider les lieux!*
clerc (m.) choir boy (Fr.); (lawyer's) clerk; *pas de* — unsuccessful step, 23
close (v.) *fermer; clore*, 336; (adv.) *tout près;* it smells close *ça sent le renfermé;* (see *shut*); *clore la séance* to — the meeting; *la fenêtre clôt mal* the window does not — firmly; *hermétiquement* hermetically closed; *clore un marché* to — a bargain; *arrêter un compte* to — an account; *à huis clos* behind closed doors; *on demande le huis clos* the public is requested to leave the room; *clos* (m.) (or: *enclos*) a small tract of land or: enclosure; *à fleur de terre* close to the ground; — up ranks *serrons les rangs; l'hiver est sur son déclin* winter is drawing near its end; *il trouva visage de bois* he found (the door closed) no one; see (past part.) *ci-inclus; il a la bouche close* (is mum); *rapprocher* to bring (nearer) closer; *serrez-vous!* stand close;

close—*Continued*
toucher au terme de to draw near the close of the term; *la fin du jour* (*s'*) *approche* it grows towards the close of the day; *resserrer* to tie again, to draw closer; *fermer à double tour* to double lock; close lines *les lignes serrées; les poursuivre l'épée dans les reins* to pursue them closely; *être sous les verrous* (bolt) to be in jail; (colloq.) *coucher au violon* to be locked up; *près* (*proche*) *de* near, close to; *auprès de* beside; see *enclore; enfermez le chien dans le chenil* put the dog in the kennel; *renfermez-le* shut him in; *entourer* (*de*) to surround; to be -ed; — *de soins* to be well attended; *environner la ville* to encompass the city; *envelopper* to wrap up; *être -é* to be hemmed in; *cerner de toutes parts* to encircle; rock-bound *entouré de rochers* (m.); *être en tête à tête avec le médecin* to be closeted with the doctor; *il les garde sous clef* he keeps them locked up; *sous bande* under wrapper; *bras de mer* (*resserré entre deux terres*) an arm of the sea
club (m.), 13, *fermé* (exclusive) —
coch-er (*-ère* f.) coachman, 29
codic-ille (m.) -il, 25
cœur (m.) heart, courage, 16
coffre (m.) chest, 12; — *-fort* safe
cognation (f.) —, 24
cognats (m.) cognates, 24
cognition (f.) act of knowing, 24
coiffeur (m.) hairdresser, 16
coïncident, 188
coïncider (v.), 188
coing (m.) quince, 24
col (m.) crest (hill), 12; *faux-col* collar (man)
cold (n., adj.) *froid* (m.), 121, 318; to have a — *avoir un rhume;* to catch — *s'enrhumer;* 348, to suffer from a — *avoir des atteintes de froid;* benumb with — *transi de* — or *pris de* —; he caught a — there *il y a gagné un rhume;* -ness *froideur* (f.); -ly *froidement* (*avec froideur*)
colis (m.) parcel, 30
collation (f.) —, 25
colle (f.) glue; *-r* to glue, 25
collect (v.) *faire la collecte* (*quête*); see *follow; cueillir* or *ramasser des chiffons dans la boîte à ordures* to — rags from the waste-box; *recueillir des olives* to harvest, etc.; *recueillir des idées* (*: se recueillir*) to — one's thoughts; *colliger des livres rares* to make a — of, etc.
collect-if (adj.) -ive, 58, 26
collège (m.) college, 25
collier (m.) collar, 25
colliger to make a collection (libr.), 26
colline (f.) hill, 25
collocation (f.) — (classification), 26
collo-que (m.) -quy, 26
collusion (f.) deceit, 26
colon: *deux points* (*:*)
coloris, 30, hue (coloring)
combat (n. m.), 11, fight; — *lutte* (f.) struggle
combattre, see *battre*, 234
combien, 38, how much (many), 253
combine (v.) *réunir, mêler à* (*avec*)
combustion (f.) —, 33
come! *allons;* (v.) *venir;* to have just come *venir de;* to — across (meet) *rencontrer;* — over (side with) *se ranger à;* see *follow;* — down! *descendez;* — — (price) *rabattre*
comma *virgule* (f.); *signe* (*trait un peu courbé à gauche*) (m.)
comme, 94, 55, as (like), 12; 126, how!
commémoratif, 79, 26
commen-cement (m.) —, 56; (v.) *-cer* to begin
commensal (m.) eating at same table, 26

comment how? 20
commentaire, 113
commet, 4 (v. 351)
commis (m.) clerk; — *voyageur* traveling salesman
commisération (f.) —, 26
commit (v.) *commettre* (see *mettre*, 351); she made a blunder *elle commit une erreur; faire une faute* to make a mistake
common noun *nom commun* (m.)
commotion (f.) —, 26
commu-able -table, 26
commun (adj.) common, 88
compagnon, 66
comparaison (f.), 92, comparison
comparatifs, 59, 92 (see *positif*)
compare (v.) *comparer* (*à*), 5, 330
comparison *comparaison* (f.)
complément, 53, as adjunct; obj. case, 57
complet, 79; — (n.) (full) suit
complete (v.) *compléter;* see *superfluous:* and *achieve* or *finir*
compliqué, 59, complicated, intricate
comporter, 53, to have to deal with
comp-ose (v.) *composer; écrire, rédiger*, 53; *se composer* (word) *de; faire un devoir; -osition*, 53, — (f.); (gr.) *sujet à développer;* -oser *compositeur* (m.)
compound (adj.) *composé*, 54
comprendre (*prendre*), 53, 356
compris (p. p.) (*y*), 56, included; 356
comptab-le accountan-t, 28; *-ilité* -cy, 28; bookkeeping
comptant cash, 28
compte (m.) account; *-r* (v.) to count, 28
compteur (m.) register (gas), 28
comptoir (m.) (: *rayon*) department, 28
comte, 66
concert, 33
concordance (f.) 58, — (agreement) of words as per rules
concourir (*courir*) to compete, 312
concours (m.) competition, 53
condamner (v.) to condemn, 26
conditionnel, 58
conduit (*se*) behaves, 38, 337
conduit (*conduire*, 337), 38, takes (drives)
conduite (f.) conduct; pipe
cône (m.) cone, 12
confesser (v.) to confess, 31, 332
confier (v.) to confide
confire (v.) to preserve, 338
confiserie (f.) confectionery
confitures (f.), 53, preserves
conformably *conformément;* see *follow*
confu-se *confondre avec;* -sion — (f.)
congé (m.) day off; leave, 28; — (*pour prendre*) p. p. c. = to take leave, 28
congrès (m.), 30
conjonctif (*pronom*), 120; as subject, as dir. obj., as indir. obj., 156
conjonction, 58
conjuga-te (v.) *conjuguer;* -tion *conjugaison* (f.)
connaissance (f.) knowledge, 56; acquaintance
connaître (v.) to know, 339
connect (bind, join) *lier; propositions liées entre elles* propositions being related to each other (*par le sens* from the context); *avoir les pieds et poings liés* to have tied hands and feet; *joindre les mains* to clasp hands; *joindre l'intérêt au capital* to add the interest to the capital; *il saute à pieds joints sur le sable* he jumps upon the sand; *joindre les deux wagons* to couple the two cars; *joindre l'utile et l'agréable* (*mêler l'utile à l'agréable*) to combine utility with pleasure; *mêlez-vous de vos affaires* mind your own business! colloq.: *il ne s'y frottera pas!* he will not meddle with it; *sa boutique joint la vôtre* his shop is adjacent to yours; *lier; joindre; unir* (*à*); -ion *rapport* (m.); *liaison* (f.); *vous vous joindrez à nous, n'est-ce pas?* you will join us, will

connect—*Continued*
you not? cf.: *serez-vous des nôtres?* will you join (: be with) us? *joindre* (to add) requires *à; joindre* (to combine) requires *à* or *avec; joints bien faits* well-made joints; *il joint à peine les deux bouts* he hardly makes both ends meet, *la jointure du genou ci-joint;* see p. part. Various examples: *le besoin rapproche les hommes* necessity brings (reconciles) men together; *ils lièrent amitié avec lui* they became intimate friends of his; *ils ont le jeu serré* (close) they play most cautiously; *sans serrer* (to clasp) *la main* without shaking hands; *resserrer les liens de l'amitié* to bring closer the bonds of friendship; *ils renouèrent amitié* they renewed their friendship or: they were friends again; *ne nous mettons pas au jeu* do not mix ourselves in it; *que diable allait-il faire dans cette galère* (Molière) what business had he there? *pourquoi s'est-il mêlé à eux?* why did he mix with them? or: *s'est-il mêlé dans cette affaire?* did he take part (or: mix) in that affair? *rattachez cette question aux autres* connect this question with the others; *cela ne vous engage à rien* that binds you to nothing; *les beaux esprits se rencontrent* great wits (jump together) run in the same channel; *leurs idées se rencontrent* their ideas coincide; *les extrêmes se touchent* extremes meet; *ces maisons se touchent* these houses adjoin; *ils s'entendent pour me nuire* they work together to injure me; *il ira vous joindre* he will go and meet you; *ils se mêlent ensemble* they commingle; *de quoi vous mêlez-vous?* what business is that of yours? *mêle-toi (mêlez-vous) de tes (vos) affaires; deux têtes dans un bonnet* they are hand and glove together; *ajoutez à cela* add to this (added to this); *bout à bout* or: *l'un ajouté à l'autre* one (being) added to the other; *ce passage a été ajouté à cette page* this passage is an interpolation; *il fronça le sourcil* he knit his brows; *ces rues se coupent à angle droit* those streets meet at right angle; *la rue aboutit à l'avenue X.* the street (leads to) meets Avenue X.; *il m'a abordé dans la rue* he accosted me in the street; *on ne pourra les rejoindre* they will be out of reach; *il ne faut pas leur marcher sur le pied* one must not step (tread) on their feet (they are thin-skinned); *l'emboîture des os* the juncture of the bones; *ils nous rejoindront* they will rejoin us; *ces deux rues se rejoignent* (meet); *la Saône débouche dans le Rhône* the Saone river falls into the Rhone; *la Seine se jette dans la Manche* the Seine river falls (flows) into the English Channel; *débander* to disband; to unbind; *à la débandade* in the confusion (disorder)

conquer, 310, *conquérir;* see *vanquish;* -or *conquérant* (m.)
conquiert, see *acquérir*, 310
conscience, 31
conseil, 53, Board (m.)
considérer, 45, to take into consideration
consist (v.) *se composer de; former de; être composé de; consister dans* (*en*), 46
consister (v.), 46
consonant *consonne* (f.)
conspirer, 31
const-ance (f.), 65; *constant* (adj.) —; *-amment* -antly (adv.), 19
constitut-if (adj.), 56, -ive

construct, 340 (v.), *construire; bâtir* (build); see *matériaux;* (produce) — *un poème;* — (draw) in geom.; — *les phrases* (sentences); or: *faire la construction de* (to arrange and connect the words); *se* — (to — for); American-built ship *un vaisseau de c— américaine;* shipyard *la cale de c—;* dry dock *la cale sèche;* house-builder *constructeur de maison; démolir* to demolish (tear down)
construction (f.), 53, — arrangement and connection
construire (v.), 340
construit p. p. of *construire*, 340
contact, 33, *contact, choc* (m.)
content (adj.) content, 27
conter (v.) to tell (relate), 27
contester (v.), 59, to dispute (oppose)
contiennent (*tenir*), 322, contain
contient (*tenir*), 322, contains
continu-e (v.) *continuer; ne cesser* (*de*); (to resume: *poursuivre, continuer à*); (to keep up reading: *continuer de lire*); -ation *la suite;* to be -ed *à suivre;* see *end* or *follow*
contract (v.) *se contracter, se crisper;* -ion *contraction* (f.)
contradiction (f.), 54; see *dire*, 344
contraire (m.) opposite; cf.: *je sais le* — I know better
contredire (*dire*), 344, to contradict
contributions directes direct taxes
converger, etc., 188
converser, 31, to converse
convient (*venir*), 55, 323
convince (v.) *convaincre* (see vanquish), 360; *conviction profonde* deep (firm) —; *preuve évidente* clear proof; *certitude raisonnée* persuasion by argument; see *croire*
copie (f.), 56
copier to copy
coq (m.) rooster; — *d'Inde*, 67
coque (f.) shell; *œuf à la* — boiled egg
coquille (f.) shell (mollusk), 29
corps (m.) body, 12
correct (adj.), 33, correct; *en règle;* exact (*juste*)
correct (v.) *corriger;* -ion, 29, *correction* (f.); -ed *corrigé* (*-e);* -ly *correctement*, 5, 80
correspondance (f.) sequence, 58
corro-borer (v.) -borate, 29
corrosi-f (m.) -ve, 29
corruption (f.) —, 28
côté (m.) side, direction; (each went his own way), 57
côte (f.) coast; rib; *-lette* cutlet
counsel (v.) *conseiller;* see *advise* (deliberate), *tenir conseil* or *délibérer;* cf.: *dissuader* (*détourner*); *si jeunesse savait, et si vieillesse pouvait* if only youth knew (wisdom), if only old age could apply it or: *la jeunesse manque de sagesse pour délibérer et la vieillesse de puissance pour exécuter* (— lacks wisdom in -s; — — power in execution); see *consult*
country *pays* (m.); *patrie, région* (f.); in the — *à la campagne;* — house (see *villa*)
coupe (f.) cup; cut, 16
couper (v.) to cut, 44
courir, irreg., 312
courrai (*courir*), 312, 29
course (n.), 30, *cours* (m.) (river, evolution, length of a stream); streamlet — *d'eau;* duration *cycle, cours;* to give vent to *donner* — *à;* French — *cours de français; cette pièce de monnaie a cours* that coin is in circulation; rate (at the *Bourse* or Stock Exchange) *cours;* see *course, coureur, courant, courir*
court (adj.), 16, short, brief; — *vêtu* — dress, 56
cousin, 66
couteau, 63
coutil (m.) ticking, 25
couvent (m.) convent, 27
couver (v.) to set (hens), 27
coward *lâche*

crac (m.), 11, crack (pop); —! in no time! *le voilà parti* he was off, 320
crackle (v.) *croquer;* see *crochet*
craindre (v.) to fear, 341
crains (*craindre*), 59
crainte (f.) fear, 19
crâne (m.), 9, cranium; *quel air* —! how determined he looks! *d'une crânerie* how bold! (colloq.)
crayon, 63
créé (p. p.), 230
creep (v.) *ramper;* — (along) or walk with difficulty *se traîner pesamment;* that makes my flesh — *cela me donne la chair de poule* (gooseflesh)
créer (v.) to create, 10
crescent (n.) (see *croître*, 342); *croissant;* — (rolls) —
cric (m.) (screw) jack, 23
cric! (— *crac!*) creaking (noise), 23, accompanied by breaking (tearing)
criera (fut. of *crier*); (he) will shout, 10
crime (m.), 4
croc cf.: *croc* (m.) tusk, fang, hook, 23; *moustache en croc* — with turned up ends; *croquer* to crackle; *faire croquer sous la dent* to crackle between the teeth; *croquer des pralines* to eat burned almonds; *croquer le pain sec* to crunch dry bread with, etc.; cf.: *accroc* (n.) a tear; hitch; *accrocher* to hook (hang); *décrocher* to unhook (take down); (snatch) or win
crochet (m.), 2; (v.) *broder au crochet* to knit with a — needle or hook
croix (f.), 65, cross
croûte (f.) crust, 16
croyait (*croire*), 125, 341, thought (believed)
cru (p. p. of *croire*, 341), believed (thought)
crû (p.p. of *croître*, 342), grown (increased)
crucifix (m.) —, 34
crunch (v.) *croquer;* (see *crochet*)
crush (v.) *écraser*, 274
cuiller, 65
cuir (m.) leather, 16
cuire (v.) to cook, etc., 343
cuisine (f.) kitchen, 20
cuivre (m.) copper, 16
cultivat-e (v.) *cultiver;* -ion *la culture;* sugar cane — *la — de la canne à sucre;* to — reasoning powers *cultiver la raison;* — friendship (*entretenir des relations assidues avec*); *cultiver ses amies;* bee culture *la culture des abeilles;* to devote one's self to *se livrer à, s'adonner à;* -ed ground *terrain cultivé* (*: que l'on cultive*); *il prend des soins pour rendre utiles des productions de la terre* he takes pains to improve the products of the ground
curé (m.) curate, priest, 8, 321
cut (v.) *couper;* see *moudre*, 352; — up a fowl *dépecer une volaille;* to carve *découper; trancher* to slice; to cut out work for *lui tailler de la besogne; donner du fil à retordre;* — — to the quick *couper* (*trancher*) *dans le vif* or: to work in earnest; to skin (fleece) *tondre;* — a flint *t— sur un œuf;* split *fendu;* remove (trouble) *trancher la difficulté; voilà le hic!* or: *la d—* there is the rub! *partager le différend* to split the difference; sharpen the appetite *ouvrir l'appétit* (m.); *se frayer un chemin* to make way (to cut through: to succeed); cutting answer *une réponse mordante;* see *rompre; fin comme un rasoir* sharp as a needle
cyclone (m.) —, 14
cynique (m.) cynic; (adj.) -al, 14

D

d'abord, 5, first (at —); from the first, 304
dagger, 5, *poignard* (m.)

daim (m.) deer, 20
dalle (f.), 11, slab; flagstone; *-r* (v.) to pave with f—
dam (m.) (eternal) punishment, 19
dame, 65
damner (v.) to doom, 19
dans in, into, within
danse (f.) dance, 18; *-r* (v.) to —
danseur, 66
dart (v.), see *traire*, etc.
dash *tiret; élan* (m.)
date (n.), 54, *date* (f.); *échéance* (expiration) (f.); out of —; *passé de mode* (*suranné, vieilli, démodé*); dated (under date of) *en date de* (*datée du*); to date (v.) *dater, mettre la date;* to date as far as *remonter à;* to bear the date *porter la date;* undated *sans date*
datif (m.) dative; (*ce*) *à quoi* (that) of (to) which, 74
day *jour* (m.); good — *bonjour;* I wish you good — (morning) *je vous souhaite le bonjour;* he bids you good — *il vous dit bonjour;* — (long) *journée* (f.)
de, 74, of (from); 103; 125, some (any); 176, 253–254
dead (died) *mort* (n. or adj.); *-e* (f.), 318
débris (m.), 72
décembre, 180, December
décimer (v.) decimate, 305
découvert (p. p. *découvrir*, 320)
découverte (f.) (v. *découvrir*, 320)
défendeur, 66
défendre (v.), 59, to prohibit
défense, 64
défi (m.) challenge, 12
déficit (m.), 54
défier (*de*) (v.) to challenge
défunt (m.) (defunct) deceased, 21
degré (m.), 55
déjà, 56, already; so soon!
déjeuner (m.) breakfast (lunch), 15
delay (n.) *retard, délai* (m.); to — *retarder;* see *drag*
deliberate (see *resolve*) (adj.) *libre, aisé;* -ly *à* (*avec*) *dessein* (*de propos délibéré*); *on l'a fait exprès* it was done purposely; see *counsel*
délicatesse (f.), 58; delicate point
délice, 70; 355
demander (v.) to ask, 4; (*à*) + *de* (with Inf.), 226
demandeur, 66
démangeaison (f.), itching, 15
demi (adj.) half, 36; m...$\frac{1}{2}$=1 *deux demis valent un entier*, 330
demi-unité (f.) = *une demie* one half
démocratie (f.), 32, democracy
démonstrati-f (adj.), 57, -ve
denote *indiquer, dénoter, marquer*
dent, 65
dentiste dentist
depend (see *follow*) on; (v.) *dépendre de;* — (or: rest with; *relever de* to be amenable to), 53
dépens, 72
dépense, 64
dépôt (m.) (mil.) depot; warehouse; (railroad) station (U. S. A.), 12
depuis, 118
derivation *dérivé* (m.)
derive (v.) *venir* (*tirer son origine*) *de, provenir* (due to) *de*
dérivés (*temps*) see p. 81
dernier, 79, last; 5, final
des, 124, 256
descendre, 296
désespérer, 59, to despair
design *dessein;* cf.: *dessin* (m.); — *délibéré* firm —; *accomplir un acte* to perform an action (act); his mother's wish *l'intention de sa mère;* see *vouloir;* in honor of: *à l'intention de; la bonne volonté* or *l'intention est réputée pour le fait* the will is as good as the deed; *c'est positif!* it is a fact
designa-te (v.), 53, *désigner, indiquer, fixer;* cf.: 54, 53, to refer; *-tion* (f.), 56
désigner, 53
désinence (f.) (suffix) ending, 46
dès que, 167

destination (n.) — (f.); (letter) *à sa* — as addressed; (*au destinataire* to whom it is directed); *ce à quoi elle est destinée* the purpose for which it was intended; to destine: *on l'a destiné à exercer le métier des armes* he was made to be in the army (: a soldier); *à qui destinez-vous (réserver) ce bien* to whom do you intend to give that property?

destiny *destin* (m.); *la déesse du destin* the goddess of —; lot; doom; fate; fortune; *le destin est irrévocable; la destinée de l'homme (le sort auquel il est réservé)* the course of human life (to be pursued by him): the fate to which he is destined: *le parti en est pris: le sort en est jeté* the die is cast; *elle se plaint de son sort* she bewails her fate; *choisi par le sort* selected by chance (good fortune); *par un heureux hasard* by lucky chance; *voué à la perdition (ruine, au désastre)* doomed! *châtiment mérité* deserved punishment; *il accomplira sa destinée* he will fulfill (meet) his —

désuétude (f.), 30, disuse (law)

déterminatif, 74 (n.), (m.; or adj.)

détermi-ner (v.) to -ne

détruire (see *conduire*), 337

détruit (p. p.), 337

deux two; both; *-ième* second, 303

devant, 55, before (: in front of)

devenu (*venir*) become, 322

devez owe (v. *devoir*, 267), 27

deviate (v.) *changer de direction; détourner; se détourner; se départir de*

devinette (f.) riddle

devineur, 66

dévot (m.), 78, devout person

devra, 59 (*devoir*, 266), must

diæresis *tréma* (m.), 7

diagnos-tique (f.) -tics, 24

dictée (f.) dictation, 55

dicter (v.), 55, to dictate

dictionary *dictionnaire* (m.), 48

Dieu, 4, God; 66, *les dieux* the gods

différence (f.) —, 56, 33

différend (n.) divergence of opinion, 18

différen-t (adj.) —, 188; (v.) *-tier* to -tiate, 33

difficile (adj.), 59, difficult

digne, 22, worthy; *dignité* (f.) dignity

dilemme (m.) dilemma, 19

dimanche, 6, Sunday; *le* —, on — *dindon*, 67

diocèse (m.) diocese, 11; *desservir* to officiate in, 321

diph-thong *-tongue* (f.)

diploma-te (m.) -t, 32

diploma-tie (f.) -cy, 32

dirais (Condit.) of *dire*, 344, 3

direct (adj.), 33, direct; *en ligne -e* or *droite*: straight line; direct (v.) *diriger, conduire, surveiller, mener;* — (steps) *diriger ses pas, se — vers;* — (attention) — *l'attention de...sur;* -ion — (f.); (*suivre*) *la —; conduite* (f.) (assume); *administration* (f.); — — (director's office); -ly *directement; il va — à New-York* he goes straight to N. Y.; I go — *j'y vais tout de suite* or *de ce pas;* -or *directeur;* cf. guiding plan *plan directeur;* by the most direct road *par la voie la plus directe* (rail. etc.)

dis (*dire*, 344) say, 3; — *le*, 7, say it (so)

disait (*dire*, 344) said

disappear, 354 (v.), *disparaître;* (flee) — *s'échapper, se dérober;* -ance *disparition* (f.)

disconnect (see, 349, *joindre* or *follow*)

discourir, 312

discours (m.), 32, speech, 312

dish *plat* (m.); — pan *bassine* (f.)

disjunctives or: *formes toniques: moi, toi*, etc.

disorder *désordre* (m.); *tout traîne chez lui* his house is in —

disposition, 53, *arrangement* (*provision*)

distance — (f.); at a — *de loin*
distant *lointain; éloigné;* see *far*
distiller (v.) to distill, 25
distinct *différent*, 33; *clair*
distinguer, 57
distin-guish *séparer, établir la différence; discerner;* — one's self *se distinguer par, se signaler; se faire remarquer;* -ction *différence; division; séparation;* -ctly *distinctement; d'une manière distincte;* -guished *distingué;* refined manners *des manières -ées;* cf. *savoir distinguer:* to be able to tell which is which
dit (*dire*) said, 344
dites (*dire*) say (tell), 344
diurne (adj.), 13
divergent, 188
divers, 111; *-ité* (f.), 58, variety
divide (v.) *diviser;* (share) *partager; séparer par parties* (into sections); *partager en parties égales* to — into equal parts; to create division *désunir;* to spread discord *semer la discorde* (division); cf.: *répartir, disposer, distribuer*
divin, divine, 43
division (f.) —
dix (10), 303; *-ième* (10th)
dix-sept (17), 303
dix-huit (18), 303
dix-neuf (19), 303
dizain (m.) (rosary) beads
dizaine (f.), 304, about ten; some ten
docte (m.), 12, scholar (erudite person)
dog *chien* (m.); see *follow;* — house *chenil* (m.); see *close*
doge, 66
dogm-e (m.) -a, 12
dois (v. *devoir*, 264) owe, must, am to
dôme (m.) —, 12
dominer (v.) to lord (overlook), 43
domino (m.), 12
dompt-er (v.) to tame, etc.; *-able* -able, 28; *-eur* tamer, 28
don (m.) gift (donation)
donc then, therefore, 20, 35
donner (v.) to give, 12
dont (rel. pron.) of whom, etc., 136
dors (v. *dormir*) sleep, 314
dot *point* (m.); — your i's *mettez les points sur les i;* -ted with mistakes *criblé de fautes* (f.)
dot (f.) dowry, 65
douairière (f.) dowager, 15
doucement, 3, slowly, 80
douceur (f.), 58, gentleness
douter (v.), 59, to doubt; *se* — *de* to suspect
douteux doubtful, 59
doux, 79
doyen (m.) dean
drachme (m.) drachma, 23
draft *traite* (f.)
drag (along) *tirer; traîner;* — into it *y entraîner;* — on *traîner en longueur*
drap (m.) cloth, 38
draught horses, see *traire;* between two -s *entre deux airs; un courant d'air* —; (chimney *cheminée* f.) *avoir du tirage* or *tirer* (to draw)
draw (v.) *tracer une ligne* (line); *des larmes* (tears); *tirer une loterie* (lottery number); *tiré du latin* borrowed from Latin; — *son origine* (its origin) or *provenir de;* see *silence;* colloq. to pump *tirer les vers du nez;* — *dessiner*
drôle (adj.) funny, 12
du (see *article*), 124
dû (p. p. *devoir*), 266
duc, 66
dune (f.) —, 13; sand dune
duo (m.) duet, 73
dur hard, 13
durée (f.) duration, 13
durer (v.) to last
dye (v.) *teindre*, 359; — *la façade en noir* to have the façade black, *bon* (*grand*) *teint* fast color (dye); *avoir le teint pâle* to look pale; *mauvais* (*faux* or *petit*) *teint* poor -ing; -ing establishment *teinturerie* (f.); -r *teinturier* (*-ère*, f.);

dye—*Continued*
-ing *teinture* (f.); *une t— de l'école* superficial knowledge (from school); *teinturier dégraisseur,* scourer
dynamo (m.) dynamo, 13
dynas-tie (f.) -ty, 20

E

ear-ly *de bonne heure;* -lier *de meilleure —;* as — as *dès* 1919; — riser *matinal* (adj.)
easy (adj.) *facile;* he takes it easy; -going *il ne se fait pas de bile* (sl.) (f.), *ne pas se tourmenter;* -ily *facilement, aisément*
eat (v.) *manger;* (feed) *donner à —*
eau (f.) water, 13
éblouir (v.) to dazzle, 17
échec (m.) reverse, 23
échecs (m.) chess, 31
écho (m.), 12, echo; *au loin l'— résonne* afar the — is heard
échouer (v.) to fail; to shipwreck
éclair (f.) lightning, 14, 348
éclat (m.) pomp (splendor), 39
éclatant (adj.), 39, brilliant (color)
écol-e (f.), 3, school; *-ier* — boy
économe (m.) bursar (steward); (adj.) saving (thrifty), 12
écossais (m.) Scotchman
Ecosse (f.) Scotland, 192
écrasant (adj.) crushing, 37
écraser, 9, to crush
écrit (*écrire*) written, 345; to be —, 55; *-ure* (f.) writing
écrivain, 67
Eden, 26
edit (v.) *publier,* 354; *faire paraître; rédiger;* -ion *édition* (f.), 54; -or in chief *rédacteur-en-chef;* -or (publisher) *éditeur*
Edmond (m.), 23, Edmund
Edouard Edward, 23
efface, see 213: erase, strike out; *gomme* (f.) *à effacer* eraser; *rayer; biffer; raturer; s'effacer* to bow down before talent; *s'incliner*
effect (n.) *effet* (m.), 33; see *follow*
effort, 47, pressure
égalité (f.) equality (see *comparatif,* 91)
égoïste selfish
Egypte (f.) Egypt, 192
eight *huit,* 303
either . . . or: *ou* (*soit*) . . . *ou* (*soit*); see Subj.; *soit dans — soit dans —; —* one *l'un ou l'autre; vaincre ou mourir* to conquer or die
électeur (m.) elector
élection (f.), 43; (v. *élire*), 349
élémentaire, 54
élève (m., f.) pupil
élevé, 55, high; (v.) *élever* to raise
elide (v.) *élider; faire une élision*
elision (n.) *élision, suppression* (f.)
elle, 81, she; her(s), 99, 129
ellips-e (f.), 56, -is
éloquence (f.), 32
éloquent, 42
embar-quement (m.) -king, 29
embarquer (v.) to embark, 29
emblème (m.) emblem, 19
embrace (n.) *accolade; étreinte* (f.); *embrassement* (m.); to — (v.) *embrasser*
embroider (v.) *broder;* or: (embellish); -y *broderie* (f.); see *crochet*
emmagasiner to store (warehouse), 18
emmener (v.), 18, to take (lead) away, 229
empêcher (v.) to prevent, 55
empereur (m.), 66
empire (m.) —, 19
emplo-i (m.), 53, use; -yment
emploie (Subj. *employer,* 230)
employer (v.), 55, (to employ) use
emprunté (*à*), 54, borrowed from, 19
emprunter (*à*), 54, to borrow (from)
en (prep.), 4, in, 74, 181
en (pron.), 120, 253, 156
s'en with *aller,* 204
en ce que, 59, from the fact that
enchanteur (m.), 66
encre (f.) ink, 26
encrier (m.) inkwell, 26

end *fin* (f.); *bout* (tip, top) (m.); *terme* (m.); — (v.) *finir, terminer, achever;* -ing *terminaison* (f.); — in: *se terminant par;* (that the word is not finished) *que le mot n'est pas fini et qu'il continue à la ligne suivante* (but is continued on the next line); see *follow*
endormi asleep (*dormir*), 314
endormir (*s'*) to fall asleep, 47, 314
endroit (m.) place, position, 29
enemy *ennemi* (m.)
enfant, 3, child, 68
Enghien, 24
English *Anglais;* -man —; -woman *Anglaise;* — language *anglais* (m.)
enivre-r (v.) to intoxica-te, 18; *-ment* (m.) -tion
enjoy (see *relax*): *jouir d'une bonne santé* — good health; *goûter la musique* — music; *il s'amuse* he is having a good time; *savourer les auteurs* enjoy (relish) the authors; -ment *la jouissance; la possession*
ennemi (m.) enemy; inimical, 27
ennoblir (v.) to ennoble, 18
ennui (m.) vexation, 18
ennuyer (v.) to tire (bore), 18
enorgueillir (v.) to make proud, 18
enseigne (f.) ensign, 53; sign
enseignement (m.), 53
enseigner to teach, 5, 115, 223
ensemble, 34
ensue (see *follow*)
ensuite, 5, afterwards
entail (v.) *entraîner; amener;* see *beg, urge*
entendre to hear, 38; *entendu*, 53
entente (f.), understanding
enti-er, 79; *-èrement* entirely (wholly)
entourage (m.) (company) relation, 45
entourer (v.) to surround (*de*)
entreat (v.) *conjurer* (*de*)
entre-croiser (*croiser en divers sens*), 57, to cross in various ways
entrer (v.) (*dans*) to enter (into); 54, incorporated
entresol (m.) suite of low rooms between the ground floor and the first floor
entr'ouvrir (v. *ouvrir*), 320, to half open
envers, 103
envoie (see *envoyer*), 309
épais, 78, thick
épaisseur (f.) thickness
épigramme (f.) epigram
épigramme, 65; witty thought
épigraphe, 65
épine (f.), 12, thorn; — *dorsale* spinal cord
épisode (n. m.) —
épithè-te (f.), 59, -t
épître (f.) epistle, 12
époque (f.), 12, epoch; *faire* — to mark an era, 347
épouvantable, 37, frightful, 46
épreuve (f.), 53, test
equal *égal;* — to — *à* (*équivalent à*); see *égaler* under *to be;* -ly *également;* -ity *égalité* (f.); -ize (v.) *égaliser*
Equateur (m.) Ecuador, 24
équation (f.) —, 24
équestre equestrian (adj.), 28
équilibre equilibrium, 25
equivalent to: *valant* (being worth, 330); 188, *l'équivalent de: qui équivaut à*, 58; [*équivaloir*] (irreg.), 330
équivoque, 65
erase (see *efface*) *effacer*
errant (adj.) wandering, 188
errer (v.) to err (wander), 29
erreur (f.) error (with: *commettre*)
erron-é (adj.) -eous, 29
ès (in the), 30; *B— -ès-L—.*
escarpé (adj.) steep, 35
escort (*chaperon*) *escorter;* (see *follow*); *accompagner pour protéger; -é d'un agent* accompanied by a policeman; *traîner avec elle des valets* to be accompanied by a retinue of servants; *surveiller* to watch closely; to supervise (direct); see *conduire*

escroc (m.), 36, crook
espérance (f.) hope, 24
espérer (v.), 228
espoir (m.), 37
esprit (m.) mind, wit, 35
essai (m.) essay
essayer (v.), 58, to try
essence (f.), 31
essenti-el (adj.) -al, 33
est (n.) east, 64
est, 120
estimé, 42, esteemed
estomac (m.) stomach, 23
et (conj.) and, 3
établir (v.), 57, to establish
était, 291, was (were), 3
étang (m.) pond, 24
étant being (v. *être*), 291
état condition (m.), 58; *Etats-Unis* (m.) the United States
été, 291, been
été, 64
étendre (v.) to stretch, 47
êtes, 3 (291, *être*), are
Etienne Stephen, 18
étiqu-eter (v.) to label, 29; *-ette* (f.) —, 29
étoffe (f.) material (cloth), 12
être (v.), 291, to be; (n.) being; *peut-être* perhaps; *bien-être* (m.) welfare
étrier (m.) stirrup; *à franc* — at full speed
étude, 65
étudiant (m.) student, 40 (college)
étudier (v.) to study, 40
étymolog-ie (f.) -y, 14
eu (p. p. *avoir*), 81, had
eûmes had (*avoir*), 82
euphon-y *-ie* (f.); -ic (al) *euphonique*
Europ-e (f.), 192; *-éen* (*m.*), 20
eusse (*que j'*), (*avoir*), 85
eûtes had (*avoir*), 82
evening *soir* (m.); *soirée* (f.)
éviter (v.), 59, to avoid, 164
exact, 33 (adj.), —
examen (m.), 53
example, 22, *exemple* (m.); for — *par* —, 55
excellent (adj. or v.), 188
except (prep.) *excepté; hormis*, 22; -ion, 54, *exception;* -ally *par* —
except-é, 192; *-er* (v.) to except, 28
exception (f.) — 34; *-nel* -al, 37
exceptionnel, 37; unusual
excès (m.), 34
excessif (adj.), 34
exciter (v.) to incite, 34
exclamation (f.), 4
exclamer (*s'*) (v.) exclaim
exclure (v.) to exclude, 336
exéat, 73, leave (eccl.) of absence
exécr-er (v.) -ate, 34
exemplaire (adj.) excellent; (n.), 54, — (m.) copy
exempt (adj.) free from; —; (v.) *-er* to exempt, 28
exerci-ce (m.) -se, 34
exhaust (v.) *épuiser;* -ed with fatigue *épuisé de fatigue* (f.); (cf.: *rendu, éreinté* done up)
exiger (v.), 56, to demand (require)
exil (m.) -e; *-er* (v.) to exile, 25
exister (v.) to exist, 55
exod-e (m.) -us, 22
expect (v.) *attendre*, 99; *compter* (*penser*); *s'attendre à;* (*partir*) *dans le dessein de* (to leave) in (with) the expectation of; *avoir l'intention de* to intend; see *purpose; goal; aim*
expédient (m.) —, 26, 188
expédier (v.) to forward (goods), 188
expédition (f.), 74
expérience, (f.) —, 54
expert, 40
explication (f.) explanation, 57
expliquer to explain, 57
exposer (v.), 55, to be exposed
exprès, 99
express (v.) *exprimer*, 346; *manifester ses pensées, etc; les faire connaître; énoncer un axiome;* -ive *expressif; langue -ive;* see *translate*
— (train) *le rapide, l'express* (m.); *train express; bateau express*
" — *ce que l'on conçoit bien, s'énonce clairement*

express—*Continued*
"— *et les mots pour le dire arrivent aisément*"
expression, 55, expression; *manière de s'exprimer; phrase* (f.), *mot* (m.); *locution* (f.): *en termes exprès* precise words
expression collective (f.), 59, c— —
expression (*l'*) (letter-ending) *de mes* (*nos*) *sentiments distingués* (or: *respectueux hommages*); 54, Respectfully yours (see *assurance* or *veuillez agréer*)
extase, 65
extend (v.) *étendre* (enlarge, expand surface, influence, etc.): to hold out *tendre* (*la main;* hand); *présenter* (*offrir*) *des condoléances* (or: *témoigner des sentiments de regrets* (*sympathie*) *à la douleur d'autrui*) — — sympathy; nostrils expand *les narines se dilatent;* — rise in price *augmenter de prix; atteindre* reach (age); (*s'*) *accroître* (vice); *s'étendre* or *atteindre:* (illness); *augmenter le volume d'un corps* to increase, etc.; *élargir* (to broaden) to enlarge; *se développer* (to increase) to develop; *croître* to grow (up); to thrive; lengthen (days); outgrow *devenir trop petit;* to gain in; to rise (water); grown-up man *homme fait;* see *increase*
extension: see *stretch* (*-ing*); — *du bras* arm extension; — (growth) of business — *des affaires* (f.); see *extend*
extent *étendue* (f.); *s'étendre* to stretch one's self; to lie down (at full length) upon; to dwell — *sur un sujet* (*de composition*); *étendu* stretched (arms); of great area *de grande étendue; des connaissances profondes* (*-ues*) wide (extensive) knowledge; *vaste étendue des mers* wide expanse of the sea (s); *ailes déployées* (*-ues*) wings spread out; *il se coucha de tout son long* he laid down full length; *éparpiller* to scatter (to spread) or *disperser* (*répandre*); *à sa portée* within his reach; *d'une certaine étendue* of some extent
extérieur (n. and adj.), 80
extinguish, 346 (v.), *éteindre* (put or go out); *le feu s'est éteint* the fire went out; *le feu est éteint* the fire is out; (check it) : *on a arrêté l'incendie* (m.) they have the fire under control; (subdue): *é— l'ambition; elle s'est éteint la voix* she lost her voice; *calmer la soif* to quench thirst; *notre soif est éteinte* our thirst has been quenched; *réteindre* to put out again; cf.: *il n'a pas inventé la poudre* he will never set a river on fire; *le soleil éteint les couleurs* the sun softens down, etc.; *il s'éteignit le 31 mai* he died peacefully, etc.; *il a la voix éteinte* his voice is scarcely audible; *yeux éteints* dull eyes
extraire (see *traire*, 359); *arracher* to extract; (extirpate) *extirper; exterminer* (destroy) or *détruire;* (uproot) *déraciner; un extrait* (*bouillon*); *tirer de la terre* (extract from the earth); *retirer* to pull out (see *withdraw*); *la partie qui vient en terre* the part (root) growing in the soil; see *croître; objet enfoui dans le sol* object sunken in the earth (buried under); *avaler d'un trait* to swallow at a gulp; *faire le trajet d'un* — (*tout d'une haleine:* (*traite*) to make the trip at a stretch (without stopping); *partir comme un* — to dart off like an arrow; *trait* or *train des bateaux* train of boats; *une traite* a draft; *un traité* a treatise; *traiter* to treat; *à fond de train* at full speed (gallop); *la traite des noirs* slave trade
eye *œil* (m.); *yeux* -s; sore —

eye—*Continued*
mal à l'œil (— *aux yeux* eyes); *les objets frappent ma vue* the objects strike my eyes

F

fable, 5, *fable* (f.); *conte* (m.)
fabliau (m.) short fable, 17
fabrique (f.), 188; *-r* (v.), 29, to make
fabulist *fabuliste* (m.)
face (f.) —, 9; to — *donner sur* (to look into)
facétie (f.), 32, jest (joke)
facile (adj.), 59, easy
façon, 65
facultatif, 56, optional
faculté de droit law school
faible (adj.) feeble, weak, 16
faiblir (v.) to weaken
fail (v.) *faillir*, 314–15; *le cœur lui a failli* his (her) heart failed; *elle a failli tomber* she came near falling; cf.: *être sur le point de* or *manquer de; le cœur lui a manqué* (*défailli*); *une affaire faillie* an unsuccessful dealing; *ce commerçant a failli; c'est un failli;* that merchant failed; a bankrupt; cf.: *faire faillite* to become bankrupt; *ils ont fait faillite; ils sont en faillite* they became bankrupt; they are bankrupts; cf.: *déposer son bilan* to stop payment (to become bankrupt); *on a vu le moment qu'elle allait mourir* we came near seeing her die; *toujours prêt* never failing; *je me sens défaillir* I feel myself sinking; *elle se sentit défaillir* she felt she was going to faint; *ses plans échouèrent* his plans failed; *il fit faux bond* he failed to come; *il a manqué au rendez-vous* he failed to keep his appointment; *des artistes manqués* failures as artists; *il en a été quitte pour la peur* he got off with a fright; *il est sujet à manquer* he is liable to fail (or: to be mistaken); *manquer le train* to miss the train; *manquer à l'appel* not to answer the roll-call; *il manque deux élèves* two pupils are wanting (: absent); *sont-ils absents?* are they missing? *un témoin fait défaut* one witness is wanting; *elle a manqué de se noyer* she came near being drowned; *manquer à un engagement* to fail to keep an appointment; *le fusil a manqué* (*raté*) the gun missed fire; *manquer une occasion* to lose an opportunity; cf.: *profitez toujours des occasions* avail yourself (-ves) of opportunities (: bargain sales); *ne manquez pas de repasser* do not fail to call again; *je n'y manquerai pas* I shall not fail to do so; *manque-t-il d'argent?* is he short of money? *dépourvu de choses nécessaires* to be destitute; *dans le besoin* (*la misère*) or *à l'étroit:* in need (poverty) or in narrow (straightened) circumstances; *viser* (to aim at): *il a donné à côté* he missed the mark or: *il a manqué son coup* he missed his aim; *il n'y a si bon cheval qui ne bronche* it is a good horse that never stumbles; *la raison, de même que l'homme, trébuche souvent* reason, like man, often has its failures; *on ne peut s'en passer* (to do without) we can't dispense with it (him, etc.); *c'est sa faute* or *il ne pourra s'en prendre qu'à lui* it's his own fault (: he alone to blame); *jouer de malheur* to have a run of ill-luck; *il paie* (*paye*) *d'ingratitude* he lacks gratitude; *à défaut de cela* failing that; to miss: *il me manque* I miss him; *elle me manque* I miss her; *ses amis lui manquent* he (she) misses his (her) etc.; *tous ses amis le regrettent* all his friends miss him; impersonally: *il me*

fail—*Continued*
manque deux livres I miss two books; *il m'en manque un* I miss one; *il ne m'en manque que trois* I miss but three; *je manque à ma sœur* my sister misses me; *il s'en manque d'un peu* just a little more (measurement); see *falloir, vouloir; il ne manquerait plus que cela* that would be the last; *il s'endormit sur son ouvrage* he was slack about his work; (he was wanting in, etc.); *faute de parler on meurt sans confession* spare to speak and spare to speed; *il ne réussit en rien* he is a complete failure; *il manque de courage* or *le courage lui manque* he lacks courage; *rien ne lui manquera* (: *il ne lui manquera rien*) he shall want for nothing or: he will have all he wants; *il l'a manqué belle!* he missed a fine opportunity! (: *occasion* f.); cf.: *on ne vous voit plus!* we miss you; or: *vous devenez rare* (*comme les beaux jours*) you are a stranger
faim (f.) hunger, 65
faire (v.) to do (make), 347
faisan, 66
faisant see *faire*, 347
faisons see *faire*, 347
fait (m.), 8, fact; (p. p. of v. *faire*) makes (causes to), 176; *fait partie*, 55, forms a part
faites (or *fais*), 347, do (make)
faith *foi* (f.); *croyance* (f.); -ful *fidèle; -es* (church); -ness *fidélité* (f.); -fully *fidèlement*
falloir (*s'en*) see *want*, or *require; peu s'en est fallu qu'il ne tombât* or: *il s'en est fallu de peu qu'*, etc.; *il s'en faut de beaucoup qu'il soit aussi savant que M. X.*, he is far less learned than M. B.; *il ne s'en est fallu guère qu'il ne mourût* he came very near dying; cf.: *il a failli mourir* (*il fut sur le point de mourir*); *il s'en faut l'épaisseur d'un cheveu* it comes within a hair's breadth; *de combien s'en faut-il?* how much is wanting? *il s'en faut de peu* little is wanting; cf.: *il ne tient qu'à un cheveu* it hangs on a thread; *il s'en fallut de bien peu* it was a narrow shave! cf.: *il l'a échappé belle* (narrow escape); *il s'en est fallu de peu qu'elle ne tombât; tant s'en faut* far from it; *il m'en faut un* I want (need) one; *il lui faut* $1 she (he) needs $1; *il leur faut* $1 they need $1; *il nous faut* $1 we need $1; *il me faut étudier* or: *il faut que j'étudie* I must study; *de plus, il faut remarquer* one must observe, moreover; *c'est la plume qu'il faut* it is the right pen; *ce n'est pas la plume, etc.* the wrong pen; *il faut s'entr'aider, s'il le faut* it is necessary to help one another, if need be; *combien vous* (*en*) *faut-il?* how much (many) do you want? *il faudra leur en passer* you will have to hand them some; *se passer de* to dispense with; *il faudra vous en passer* you will have to dispense with it; *il faut y passer à tout prix* no escape from it; *il vous faudra y passer* you'll have to go through it; *il nous faut en passer par là* it must be borne (endured); *de deux maux, il faut choisir le moindre* of two evils, choose the lesser; *il m'a fallu un mois pour le faire* it took me a month to do it; *il a l'air comme il faut* he looks like a gentleman; *elles ont l'air comme il faut* very ladylike; *il ne faut pas regarder de si près* (so closely) one must not be so particular; *il ne lui faut plus rien*, or: *il a ce qu'il lui faut*, or: *il a ce dont il a besoin* he has all he needs; *il ne manque de rien* he wants for nothing;

falloir—Continued
ne leur manque-t-il rien? have they all they want? *avez-vous tout ce qu'il faut pour écrire?* or: *avez vous de quoi écrire?* have you all you need for writing? *plus qu'il n'en faut* more than enough; *elle n'a besoin de rien* she wants (needs) nothing; *il lui en faut deux* he (she) must have two; *comme il faut* in style; *elle ne dit que ce qu'il faut dire* she says only what is necessary (to say); *il fallait donc le dire!* you ought to have said so (sooner); *il ne faut pas éveiller le chat qui dort* let sleeping dogs lie (or: *réveiller, etc.*); *une phrase tournée comme il faut* or: *une phrase bien tournée* a well-turned sentence; *un jeune homme comme il faut* a well-bred young man; *il faut que jeunesse se passe* he is sowing his wild oats; *à l'heure qu'il fallait* in the nick of time; *ce n'est pas là ce qu'il faut* that is not the right thing; *il faut des livres à cet enfant* that child must have books; *il n'a que ce qu'il faut pour vivre* he has enough to live on; *vous en faut-il deux de plus?* do you need two more? *il ne m'en faut que trois de plus* I need only three more; *je croyais qu'il vous en fallait un* I thought you were in need of one; *j'en avais plus qu'il ne m'en fallait* I had more than I needed; see NE; *que faut-il faire?* what is to be done? *il ne faut pas lui marcher sur le pied* he is quick-tempered or: see *tread; il me faut aller à Boston* I have to (or: I must) go to Boston; *que* after *il faut, il fallait,* etc., calls for the Subj.; *il fallait bien que je sois là* I had to be (come) here; *il fallait qu'il sortît tous les jours* it was necessary for him to go out every day; *il me faudrait y aller* I ought to go there.

NOTE.—Imperf. of the Subj. thus avoided in conversation: *il lui faut y aller* he has to go there. Observe: when addressing oneself or others, one may omit *se, me, te, lui,* etc.; *il faut ouvrir* (you or I, etc.) someone must open the door; *il faut savoir ce qu'il veut* you (we) must know what he wants; *il faut y aller* you (we, someone else) must go; *partons, puisqu'il le faut* let us depart then; *faites-le comme il faut* do it properly; *voilà l'homme qu'il me faut* the very man I need; cf.: *il n'y a que lui pour cela* he is the very man needed; *il fait mon affaire* he (it) suits me; *voilà mon affaire* (— *mon fait*) just what I want (— was looking for)! *pourquoi faut-il que* why is it that . . .? Obs.: — *il faut que* may mean: it may be (it is to be supposed, one would think) (: *on dirait que*) in: *il faut qu'il soit malade* he must be ill (: perhaps he is ill); *s'il fallait qu'il mourût, elle en mourrait* (should he die) if he should die, she would die also. In exclamations of surprise, regret, irony, admiration, etc.: *il faut voir! il fallait voir! il faut le voir à l'œuvre!* you should see him at work! *il fallait la voir danser!* you should have seen her dance! *faut-il voir tant de politiciens au pouvoir* what a pity to see so many politicians in power! *il faudra voir comment il s'y prend!* let us see how he will do it! (well! let us wait for results!); *s'en falloir beaucoup; de beaucoup* (by far) *; à beaucoup près* by a great deal; *s'en falloir peu* (*de peu, très peu*) to come near, little is wanting;

falloir—Continued
ne s'en falloir guère (*de guère*) to be wanting but little. Obs.: Used negatively, interrogatively, *or* with *peu*, *s'en falloir* calls for *que* and *ne* in the subordinate clause (in the Subj.), even when the sense may not be construed negatively. Various expressions: *j'ai affaire à lui* I want to speak to him; *il désire se faire couper les cheveux* he wants to have his hair cut; *pressé d'argent* in urgent need of money; *qui s'excuse, s'accuse* see *Reflexive* (gr.); *faute de* for lack of; *faute d'un point Martin perdit son âne* for want of a nail the shoe was lost (or: a miss is as good as a mile); *il ne se fera pas faute d'y aller* or: *il ne manquera pas d'y aller* he shall not fail to be there; *de plus, je vous ferai observer* moreover, I shall point out to you; *sans faute* without fail; — —*s* mistakes; *il a faute* or *manque de tout* he is in want of everything; *connaître la gêne* to know what want is; *ils ne se le laisseront pas dire deux fois* they will not need to be told twice; *au besoin* if need be (*s'il le faut*); *à bon vin point d'enseigne* good wine needs no bush; *on ne doit pas se gêner entre camarades* there is no need of ceremony among comrades; *j' en avais de trop* (*de reste*) more than I needed; cf.: *il en a plus besoin que vous* he needs it more than you; *il n'en est pas besoin* no necessity for it; *à sotte demande point de réponse* a silly question needs no answer; *demander une jeune fille en mariage* to solicit the hand of a, etc.; *il demande à la dame* he asks of the lady; *elle demande où il demeure* she enquires about his residence; *on demande qu'il sorte* it is required of him to go out; *elle voulait vous voir* she wanted, etc.
famille (f.) family, 55
fanfare, 48; (*sonner sa*) — to strike up a flourish
fang (birds) *serre; griffe* (f.) claw; see *crochet*
fantôme (m.) phantom, 12
faon (m.) doe, fawn, 14
far *loin;* -ther *plus loin;* very — *bien loin;* (distant) *lointain*
farmer *agriculteur, fermier* (m.)
fasse preuve, 58; (show); see *faire*, 347
fatalité (f.) or:
fate *sort* (m.); see *destiny*
father *père;* grand— *grand-père* (m.)
fatherland *patrie* (f.)
fatiguer (v.), 54, to tire
faubourg (m.) suburb, 24
faubourgs in Paris city proper
faudrait (*falloir*, 326), it would be necessary
faut (*falloir*, 326), 140 (impersonal)
faut (*s'en*), 59; see (*tient à*) *falloir*, 326; *peu s'en est fallu qu'il ne tombât* or: *il s'en est fallu de peu qu'il etc.* he came near (very near) falling; *il s'en faut de beaucoup* much is wanting; far from it
faute (f.), 53, mistake; — *de* for want of
faut-il, p. 5, must I (speak more plainly); see *falloir*
faux, 79; *chanter* — to sing out of tune
fau(l)x (f.) scythe, 65
favor (esteemed) *honorée* (f.); see *honorée; faveur* (f.); to ask a — *demander une* —
feast *fête* (f.); *régal, festin* (m.)
features *traits* (m.); see *traire* etc.
February *février* (m.), 180
femelle (f.) female
féminin (n. and adj.), 10, feminine
femme (f.) wife, woman, 26
fenêtre (f.) window, 10
fer iron, 9; — shoe (see *horse*)

ferai (fut. of *faire*) etc.; I'll not do that, 10; 347
fermer, 5, 336
fête (f.), 7, feast, celebration, 54; — *de naissance* birthday, 352
feu (m.) fire; *au — l'* 15
feu, 56, the late
feuille, 65; *-ter*
fever *fièvre* (f.); to be -ish *avoir la fièvre* (*être fiévreux*); he had a return of — *la fièvre l'a repris*
fidèle, 10, faithful
fidèle faithful; *fidélité* f—ness; *les -es* the congregation
fier (adj.) proud, 29
fier (*se*) *à* (v.) to trust, 157
figure (f.) — ; *-r* (v.) to appear
figurer (v.) to appear, 58, 354; *fièvre* (f.) fever, 4
fil (m.) thread; (v.) *-er* to spin
fille (f.) daughter
filleul godson
filleule goddaughter
fils (m.) son, 23
fin, 65
find (v.) *trouver, se rencontrer*
finesse (f.) fine point, 60
finir (v.) to end, 203
first (adv.) *d'abord; premièrement;* at — *d'abord; au commencement;* from the very —; *dès le début;* the — (one) *le premier; unième;* in the — place *en premier lieu*
fixed *fixé; immuable* (not liable to change)
flageolet (m.) —, 15
flashes (o[f] wit) *traits d'esprit* (m.); *étinceler d'indignation* flash with indignation; see *luire* (shine)
flatter (v.) *flatter; se flatter de* to boast; to glory in; -y *flatterie* (f.); -er *flatteur* (m.)
fleur (f.) flower, 16; *-ir* to blossom, 315
fleuve (m.) river (large), 15
flexible (adj.), 34, —
fling (v.) *lancer;* see *traire*, etc.
flourish (see *traire*); *fleurir*, 315
flûte (f.), 231
flux (m.), 114
foi (f.) faith
fois (f.), 65, time; *une* — once; *deux* — twice, 306; *toutes les fois que*, 58, every time
fol, 79
folie (f.), 10, madness
folle (f.) [mad] insane, 71
follow (v.) *suivre;* (escort) —; — closely — *de près;* — (his bent) — *son penchant* (*se laisser aller à*); cf.: — *sa vocation;* cf.: *est-ce à dire que* does it — that? *une question n'attendait pas l'autre* one question followed another; *leur maison touche à la nôtre* their house is next to ours; *qui m'aime me suive* peril proves who dearly loves; *quelle profession suit-il?* what is his profession; or: what career is he about to enter? cf.: *entrer dans la carrière* to begin a career (difficult undertaking); *il exerce le métier des armes* he is (in the army) a soldier; *faire suivre* forward (letters); — *un conseil* — an advice; — *de loin* — at a distance; *à suivre* to be continued; (adhere to) *suivre les opinions de; se ranger à son avis* to come over to his opinion; — *morts et il les a suivis* — dead and now he is gone; listen well to me *suivez-moi bien; il n'est pas présent à la conversation* he is not listening (to, etc.); *s— un cours* to attend a course; *suis ton chemin* go your way; *poursuivons notre ch—* let us go our way; *s— dès yeux jusqu'à la gare* f— with the eyes as far as the station; *comme* (*ainsi qu'*) *il suit* as follows; *s— les progrès* to observe the —ss; *idée qui le poursuit* (: obsession) idea which (besets or dominates) haunts him; *il tend* (*va*) *à ses fins* he pursues his point; *bon chien chasse de race* a chip of the old block;

follow—*Continued*
suivre le fil de l'eau to go with the stream; *pour— en justice* to prosecute at law; cf.: *intenter des poursuites* or *un procès* to institute proceedings; *il suit de là que vous avez raison* then it follows you are right; *il ne s'ensuit pas qu'il ait tort* (see Subj. —); *ce n'est pas une raison plausible* that reason does not follow logically; *il ne faut pas inférer de là que* or: *ce n'est pas à dire* it does not follow that; *la suite* continuation; *ainsi de suite* and so forth (on); *faites-le tout de suite* do it at once; *la suite au prochain numéro* the continuation in the next number; *marcher à la suite des soldats* to walk behind the soldiers; *chapitres* (m.) *sans suite* disconnected chapters; *donner suite à un projet* to pursue a project; cf.: *relancer*, 99, or *le poursuivre pour obtenir quelque chose* to importune him for something; *ensuite* or *quoi encore* what next? *mettez-les de suite* put them one after the other; *à la suite d'une longue maladie* after a prolonged illness; *telles furent les suites de sa maladie* such were the effects of his, etc.; *une belle suite de timbres-poste* a beautiful collection of postage-stamps; *par suite d'un malentendu* on account of a misunderstanding; *attendez la suite* wait for what comes next; *le jour suivant* the next day; *le lendemain de sa fête* the day after his birthday; *suivant* according to; — *leurs progrès* in proportion to their progress; cf.: *conformément à ce titre* conformably to that title; *à vous en croire* (*à vous entendre*) according to you; *d'après votre sentiment* (: *à votre avis*) according to you; *suivant le dire de* or *au compte de M. X.* according to Mr. B. *selon lui* in his opinion; *c'est selon* it depends; *selon l'exigence du cas* as occasion requires; *suivant qu'il est heureux ou malheureux* as he is fortunate or unfortunate; *on vous écoute, poursuivez* we are listening, proceed; *le remords le poursuivra* remorse will torment him; *ils les ont poursuivis* they pursued them; cf.: *il est à ses trousses* he is after him; *courir après lui* to run after him; *être aux trousses de l'ennemi* to be upon the enemy's heels; *ne marchez point sur mes talons* do not follow me too near (tread upon my heels); *à l'instar des poètes* by imitating the poets; *ce me semble* or *à mon avis* in my opinion
follower *disciple* (m.); *apôtre* (m.); *les fidèles* (faithful)
following *suivant* (*e*); see *follow*
fondateur founder; *fondation* (f.) foundation
fonder (v.), 10, to found (establish)
font make (are, 27) (v.), *faire*, 347
fool, 79; it's -ish *de la folie*
for (prep.) *pour;* — (since) *depuis;* but — *sans;* — (conj.) *car* (*parce que* because)
force (f.) strength, 35; (coercion), 58
forêt, 65
form (v.), 55, *former; composer; organiser*
formal (adj.) *formel, précis*
formation (*du pluriel*), 70, 77
(the) former, 133, *celui-là; l'ancien;* -ly *anciennement, autrefois, antérieurement*
formes atones (see personal pronouns, 156–157); — *toniques, moi, lui, etc.*
fort (adj.), 33; *fort* (adv.— very; *fort* (*se faire*) to take upon oneself; to undertake to, 55;

fort—Continued
ne courz pos si fort do not run so fast, do not run thus; *se faire forte* (f.) *d'une chose* to derive advantage from it
fortunate *heureux;* (happy) —
fortune (f.); see (v.) *smile;* fortune, 58
forward! *en avant;* — (send) *faire suivre* (on letters); *expédier* (send off)
fosse (f.) ditch (grave), 13
fougueux spirited, impetuous, 24
fouille (f.) excavation, 17
fouine (f.) martin, 17
foule (f.), 16, crowd, 196
four *quatre;* -th *quatrième;* (¼) *le quart,* 304
four (m.) oven
fourchette (f.) fork
fournil (m.) bakehouse, 25
frais, 79
frais (m.); see *air,* 348
fraise (f.) strawberry
franc (n.) *de port,* 56, post-paid, 305
franc (adj.), 79; *-hement* -kly
français (m.) French (language)
français, 5, 77; *-e* (f.) Frenchwoman, 210
France, 192
fratern-el (adj.) -al
frein (m.), 64 (see *brake*)
French, 77, *français (e); le français* (language); —man *Français;* —woman *-e,* 220
frequent (adj.) *fréquent; nombreux;* -ly *souvent, fréquemment;* to — (v.) *-er; visiter, hanter*
frère (m.) brother, 9
friction, 32; *-ner,* to rub, 354
friend *ami* (m.); *amie* (f.)
froid (n.; adj.) cold, 348
frôler (v.) to touch (lightly), 29
frotte-r (v.) to rub; *-ment* rubbing; 354, *oindre* to anoint; *frictionner un membre* or *faire une friction* to rub a limb; *friction* (f.) or *nettoyage* (m.) *de la tête* shampooing; *onguent* salve; *bouchonner* to rub down (horse)
fruit (m.), 55
fuir (v.) to flee, 315
fun (n.) *plaisir* (m.); *par plaisanterie* for fun; see *rire;* -ny *drôle*
fusil (m.) gun, 37
fût (m.) cask (wine), 13
fut (past def.) of *être,* 291
futaie (f.) timber trees, 15

G

gageure (f.) wager, 13
gai (adj.) merry (cheerful), 14
garantie (f.), 32; 271
garçon, 65, boy; waiter; *toujours* — still a bachelor
garde (*-r*), 5, keep, 172
garni (m.) (see *live in a*), 12
gars (*: garçon*), 9, boy; colloq.: *rude* — hardy youth
gâter (v.), 59, to spoil (decay)
gather, 313, *cueillir; se réunir*
Gaule (f.) Gaul, 192
gaulois (m.) gallic, 16
gaz (m.) gas, 11
geai (m.) jay, 15
gemme (f.) any precious stone, 26
gendre, 67
gêne (f.) embarrassment; *dans la* — in need; *ne vous gênez point* do not stand on ceremony; *-r* to pinch
général, 3, 70 (n. and adj.), 54
generally *en général; généralement; d'une manière générale*
Geneva *Genève* (f.), 11
génisse, 67
génitif (m.), 74, genitive; (*ce*) *dont:* (that) of which
genre (m.) gender; kind, 53
gens, 54
gentil, 99; —*homme,* 73
gentle *doux;* sweet *d*—; mild; soft *tempéré;* -y *doucement;* slowly; -ness *douceur* (f.) *indulgence* (f.); less severe towards *plus doux envers*
gentle-man *monsieur;* the — *le* —; -men *messieurs*
geôl-e (f.), 15, gaol (jail); *-ier* (m.), 15, jailer
German *allemand;* — lady *-e;* -y *l'Allemagne* (f.)
gestion (f.) —, 33; management

get out of my way *ôtez-vous de mon passage;* to get (obtain) *avoir, obtenir*
ghetto (m.) —, 24
gilet (m.) vest (waistcoat), 24
give (v.) *donner; offrir; présenter*
good (adj.) *bon* (f. *bonne*); (adv.) *bien* (well); as — as *aussi bon* (*bien*) *que*
good! (interj.) *c'est très bien! bon!*
goujon (m.) gudgeon, 24
gouverneur, 66
glace (f.) ice; mirror, 272
glacer (v.) to ice; 47, chilled
globe (m.) —, 12
glory, 3, *gloire* (f.)
gnome (m.), 12, gnome, 22
gnost-ique, 22 -ic
goal (n.) *but* (m.); (*frapper au* to aim at); see *purpose; la fin qu'il se propose* the end he has in view; *de — en blanc* brusquely
go (v.) *aller;* — away *s'en aller; s'éloigner; se retirer.* How are you *comment allez-vous?* Very well, thank you, and how are you? *Très bien, merci, et vous?* Fairly well *assez bien;* not very well *pas trop bien;* better and better *de mieux en mieux;* from bad to worse *de mal en pis.* How is business? *comment vont les affaires?* rather quietly *tout doucement; comment ça va?* how goes it? fine! *à merveille;* go and dine *aller dîner;* — for *aller chercher;* — back *reculer;* to let go *relâcher;* let drop *laisser tomber;* go ahead *aller de l'avant;* — — (first) *prendre les devants;* — — and meet *aller au devant de;* — *à la rencontre de;* — astray *s'égarer;* — to sleep *s'endormir;* — backwards *reculer;* — back and forth *aller et venir;* — beyond (*aller trop loin*) *dépasser;* — by (pass); — forward *avancer;* — (leave) *partir de, quitter;* go on *continuer* (*à*); *avancer* (steps); — down *descendre;* — out *sortir; s'éteindre* (fire); — over (through) *passer;* — up *monter;* (ascend) *remonter;* — in all directions *courir de tous côtés;* — — up to *aborder;* — with *accompagner* (*de*); — without *se passer de*; — with (*follow*); go your way (see *follow*)
golfe (m.) gulf, 12
gondole (f.) gondola
Goth (m.), 25
grâce (*à vous*), 9, thanks to you; *par la — de Dieu*, 332, by the grace of God; *Grâce!* Mercy (upon); *dire ses -s*, 344, to say grace; *de bonne* — readily, 331; with a good — ; *il est en — auprès de* he is in the good -s of; *s'insinuer dans les bonnes — de* to grow into (his, etc.) favor; *Jour* (*d'Actions*) *de Grâces* Thanksgiving day; *coup de* — the last blow; *demander en* — to implore urgently; -fully *avec grâce; on lui fit grâce* he was pardoned; *se pourvoir en* — to make a petition for mercy (a commutation of a sentence)
grammar, 5, *grammaire* (f.); -ian *grammairien*, 19
grammatic (*al*) —; *de grammaire*, 19
grammatiste (m.) poor grammarian, 19
gramme (m.) (15 = grains), 19
grand (adj.) great, 77; *-ir* to grow tall
grand-father — *-père*, 73
grand-mother *grand'mère* (f.), 73
gras (*-se*), 78, fat
grasseyer (v.) to roll the *r*, 29
gratis, 30
gratuit (adj.), 32 -ous
grave (adj.), 65, grave, serious, 60, 9
Grec (n.) Greek, 79; *Grèce* (f.) Greece, 192
grenouille (f.) frog
grésil (m.) sleet, 348

gril (m.), 25, gridiron
grimper (v.) to climb (up), 47
gros (*-se* f.) big (fat); (v.) *-sir*, 342
groseille (f.) gooseberry, 53
group *groupe* (m.); *réunion* (f.); -ing *groupement* (m.); — (v.) *mettre en groupe; grouper;* to gather in —(s) *réunir en —; agrouper*
grow (up), 342 (v.), *croître;* to thrive *pousser;* (see *extend, increase*); *les jours commencent à c—* days begin to lengthen; *à décroître* (decrease); *c— trop rapidement* too rapidly
guenon, 67
guer-re (f.) war; *-rier* -rior, 36
guest (n.) *hôte* (m.)
gueux (m. adj.) (wretchedly) poor, 24
gui (m.) mistletoe, 24
guide, 67–8, 24
guider (v.) to guide, 24, 337
guillemet (m.), 5 (Fr.), quotation mark, 5
guillotine (f.), 24
guitare (n.) guitar, 17
gulp *trait* (m.) — see *traire*, etc.
gymnas-e (m.), 14, -ium, 24; *-tique* (f.) gymnastics, 20

H

habile (adj.) clever; *-té* (f.) -ness, 33
habits (m.) clothes, 53; — *marron* maroon, 56
habitude, 65
handed (word) down to us *mot qui nous vient de*
hang (v.) *pendre;* — up *accrocher;* — (in the air) *suspendre;* -ing *en suspendant;* see *hook*
haine (f.) hatred, 20
haineux full of hatred, 20
hair *cheveu* (m.); to have a — cut (trimmed) *se faire tailler les -x; il porte la barbe rase* he shaves close; — (clip) *rafraîchir les cheveux; se faire couper les —;* see *to cut*
haïr (v.) to hate, 7; *haine* (f.) hatred; *-neux*, 316, full of resentment
happ-y *heureux;* -iness *bonheur* (m.); -ily *heureusement; par bonheur* (luck)
hareng (m.) herring, 24
harnacher to put on the harness
harnais (m.) harness, 16
hâte (f.), 11, haste; *se -r* (*de*) to hasten to, 204
hate, 316, *haïr, détester; mépriser; en vouloir à; méprisable*, -ful *haineux*
hatred *haine* (f.)
haunt (obsess) *poursuivre;* see *follow;* cf.: *dis-moi qui tu hantes et je te dirai qui tu es* (tell me with whom you keep company and I shall tell you who you are)
haut, 77, 305
hauteur, 305
he, 116, *il; lui;* cf.: he, himself *lui-même;* (as intensive pronoun); *celui qui* he who (that), any one, etc.; he and she *lui et elle;* (as disjunctives): *sera-ce lui* can he be the one?
head *tête* (f.); -ache *mal à la tête* (— *de* —); — first *la — la première*
health *santé* (f.); Board of Health *Bureau* (m.) *de Santé* (f.); -y *sain; salubre; salutaire* (*pour la santé*) wholesome; cf.: *sain et sauf;* see p. 89; sound body *corps sain* (m.); of a sound mind *sain d'esprit;* cf.: *troubler par aucune maladie* not to be disturbed by any illness; *en bonne santé* in good —; *porter une santé* to present a toast; *maison de santé* private hospital; to your — *à votre santé*
heel (n.) *talon* (m.); see *follow*
hélas! alas! 30
Hélène (f.) Helen
help! *au secours* (*à moi!*) ; — *aide; assistance* (f.); to give — *porter secours; — main forte;* — one another *s'entr'aider;*

help—*Continued*
aider, secourir, assister; public — *assistance publique;* with the — of *à l'aide de;* (*ayant*) or *muni* or *armé* or *pourvu de*
hennir (v.) to neigh; (see *nasals*); *-issement* (m.) neighing
her, 118; see poss. adj.; -s, etc.
Hercule (m.) -s, 35
here *ici* (*là*); — is (are) *voici;* — and there *ici et là; un peu partout*
herewith *sous ce pli;* see p. part.
héroïne (f.) heroine
héros (m.) hero, 24
herself *elle-même; se* (in Refl. v.); by — *toute seule; sans aide*
heure (f.) hour; time, 305
heureu-x, 80; *-se année*, 10, happy New Year; (adv.) *-sement* happily, fortunately
hexamèt-re (m.) -er, 34
hiatus (m.), 44
hideux (adj.) hideous, 22
hier, 99
hippodrome (m.), 12
histoire (f.), 65, history, story
hiver (m.), 64; *-ner* (v.) hibernate
homme man, 4
homonyme (m.), -ym, 14
honorable (adj.) —, 42
honorée (f.) (*du*): (letter) or kind letter
hook (crochet) *crochet* (m.); *hameçon* (m.); (v.) *accrocher;* see *crochet; mordre à l'hameçon* to nibble at the bait; *ça mord* it bites; *ça ne mord pas* or *il ne se laisse pas prendre* he is not easily duped
hôpital (m.), 73
horloge, 65
horreur (f.), 88; *horrible* (adj.), 29
horse *cheval* (m.); —shoe *fer à cheval* (m.); —dealer *maquignon;* on —back *à cheval* (to ride *monter*)
hospice (m.) (Cath.) hospital; almshouse
hospital (n.) *hôpital, hospice, Hôtel-Dieu* (m.)
hôte, 66, host, guest, 12
hôtel (m.) hôtel
houille (f.) (*gisements de*, m. 316), coal-beds, 17
how *comment? comme* (*qu'*) *il fait chaud*, 126, how warm it is! —ever *cependant, d'ailleurs; il paraît cependant difficile de* it seems difficult however to
huche (f.) (bread) board; — *à pain* (bread) box; *-r* (hunt.) to whistle, 47
huile, 65
huit eight; *-ième* -h; *le* — on the 8th; *d'aujourd'hui en* — in a week from to-day, 303
huître (f.) oyster, 33
hum-ain (adj.), 33 -an
humble humble, 21
humbug (m.) —, 21
hundred (one) *cent;* about — — *une centaine de*, 303
hussard (m.), hussar, 13
hyène (f.) hyena, 17
hymen (m.), 19
hymne, 69
hyphen *trait* (m.) *d'union* (f.), 7

I

I *je; moi*
ici here, 12; *voici* — is (are); *voilà* there is (are), 127
idea *idée* (f.); see *follow* and *strike*
idem, 26
idiome (m.) idiom, 12
idole, 65
if *si;* whether *si*
igné igneous, 24
ignorance (f.) —, 55; *par* — (blunder)
ignorer, 55, 243
il (pron.) he; it, 25
ill (sick) *malade* (see *patient*); -ness *maladie* (f.); ill + adj. = *mal;* also: *un* or *dis* as prefixes
illumin-er (v.) to -ate, 25
illustr-e illustrious; *-é* -ated, 25
image, 65, picture (book); *livre d'—s*
imitation (f.), 32,—

immangeable unfit to eat, 20
immanquable sure to happen (occur), 20
immediate, 20, *immédiat;* -ly *immédiatement; tout de suite*
immesurable unmeasurable, 20
immeuble (m.), 20, real estate; apt. house, 26
immortel (adj.) immortal, 20
imparfait, 58
impératrice, 66
impéritie (f.) unfitness, 32
implore (v.) *implorer une grâce* (pardon) *;* see *beg* or *request* or *urge; demander humblement et avec instance* to call upon (for) in supplication; see *beseech*
import *il importe* (see Subj.), 162; *il est important de* (or with Subj.); *il y a grande urgence à ce que* (and Subj.): it is very urgent, etc.; see *urge*
importance (f.) —
important, 40
importune (v.) *importuner, fatiguer, incommoder, assaillir; solliciteur* canvasser; see *follow*
impossible impossible, 20
impromptu, 28
in *en; dans* (in, into, after, within)
inattendu (adj.) unexpected, 36
incertitude (f.), 55, doubt
inclus, 192
increase (v.) *accroître* (fortune); *s'accroître*, 342 (see *extend*); to a certain extent *jusqu'à un certain point; allonger une table* (lengthen a table); *aussi loin que la vue s'étend* as far as the eyes can reach
indéfini (adj.) -te, 57, 211
indemne unscathed, 18
index (m.) —
indication (f.), 37, —, sign, mark
indifféremment, equally, 53
indifférent (adj.) —
indiquer, 53, to denote, 59, enumerate; to mention, 55; to show, 55
indirect indirect; see *direct; contributions -es* indirect taxes; *[proposition complétive indirecte* explanatory clause]; -ly *indirectement; d'une manière détournée* in an — way
indispensable indispensable; see *pass*
industr-ie (f.) -y
industry *industrie* (f.); *chevalier d'industrie* (*vit d'expédients* lives on his wits); — *agricole, manufacturière* agricultural, manufacturing —; man of — *homme* (*laborieux*) *industrieux;* -al center *centre industriel* (m.); *cela concerne l'industrie* it relates to —; cf. *dextérité, intelligence, adresse* (f.); *travailler beaucoup* to work diligently; *recherches laborieuses* laborious researches; *coûter beaucoup de peine* to cost much labor
inep-tie (f.), 32, -tness
inert (adj.), 32, —; *-ie* (f.) -ia
inex-act (adj.) —, 20
-aucé (adj.), 34, ungranted
-citable unexcitable
-cusable, 34
-écuté unexecuted, 34
-ercé, 34, untrained, 34
-igible not exacted, 34
-istant not existing, 34
-orable —, 34
-périence (f.) —, 34
-piable (adj.) unatonable, 34
-pié (adj.) unatoned for, 34
-plicable (adj.) —, 34
-ploité (adj.) untilled, unworked (mine), 34
-ploré (adj.) unexplored, 34
-pressif (adj.) -ve, 34
-primable (adj.) inexpressible, 34
-pugnable (adj.) —, 24
-pugnable (adj.) impregnable, 34
-tensible (adj.) —, 34
-tricable (adj.) —, 34
infer (v.) *inférer;* see *follow*, 337
inférieur, 80
infériorité (f.); see *comparatif*, 92
infinitif (m.), 59
inflect *varier; fléchir* (bend), *moduler;* (gr.) *décliner* (noun); *conjuguer*

in-folio, 20
ingrat (n.), 11, ingrate; *-itude* (f.) —
inhumain (adj.) inhuman, 20
initial (adj.) —, 33
initier (v.) to initiate, 33
innocence (f.) innocence, 22
innocent (n., adj.) innocent, 20
innombrable numberless, 20
innommé unnamed, 27
innover (v.) to innovate, 20
innovation (f.) —, 20
inquiet, 80; *-étude* (f.) unrest, 29
Inquisition (f.), 25
insatiable (adj.), 33, —
insensibilité (f.), 22, unconsciousness
insister (v.) to insist; to lay stress, 46
instance (for) *par exemple* (m.)
instant (10th): (letter) *du* 10 *ct.* (*: courant*)
instar (*à l'*) *de* by imitating the (poets)
instinct (m.) instinct
institute (n.) *institut* (m.); 395
instituteur, 66
instruction (f.), 53, —; (v. *instruire*, 349)
instru-it (v. *instruire*, 349), -cted
instrument (m.) —, 22
intelli-gent (adj.), 36; *-gence* (f.) —, 60
inten-d *-tion;* see *expect, design;* count upon (contemplate)
intenter (see *follow*)
intéressant, 35
intérêt (m.) interest, 20
intérim (m.) —, 20
intermission (theat.) *entr'acte;* (m.); *intermède; interruption* (f.); no performance *relâche* (m.)
interrogat-if, 59; 119 (*-ive* f.)
interrogation, 4
interroger (v.) to question (quiz), 29
interruption, see *rompre*, 275
intervalle, 64
into *dans;* — one *en un seul*
intransitif, 59; 293 (*ou neutre*) (adj.)
introduce, 337, *introduire;* — (show in) —
introduction *introduction* (f.)
introduire (see *conduire*), 337
inutile (adj.) useless, 22
invaria-ble (adj.), 55; -bly *invariablement, toujours*
invent (v.) *inventer;* -ion — (f.); -or *inventeur;* see *extinguish*
ionique (adj.) Ionic order
irai (v. *aller*), 309, will (shall) go
irez (fut. of *aller*) will go; *ça ira*, 46, it will go (do)
irréguli-er (adj.) irregular, 307, 79; *-èrement* irregularly, 29
irriter (v.) to irritate, 29
isthm-e (m.) -us, 24
it, 133, *il; elle* (f.); *le* (m.); *la* (f.); *lui* (m., f.); *en; ce; cela* (*ça*); (pers. pron.) -self *lui-même; elle-même;* (*eux* or *elles*)*-mêmes;* — *la bonté même* kindness itself; cf. to go smoothly (all by itself) *aller tout seul;* its use was far from being general *l'usage était loin d'en être général*
Italian, 55, *Italien* (m.), (*-ne*, f.); — language *l'italien*
Italie, 192; *-n*, 55
Italy *l'Italie*, 192
item (m.), 19
itinér-aire (m.); -ary, 33

J

Jacques, 9, James
jadis (adv.) formerly (yore), 25
jalap (m.) —, 28
Jamaïque (f.) Jamaica, 12
jamais! never, 119
janvier (m.), 180, January
jardin (n.) garden; *-ier* -er
jars, 67
je I, 117
Jean John; *-ne* Jane, 18
je n'en sais rien, 10, I know nothing of it (about it); see *savoir*
jest *plaisanterie* (f.); see *rire*, 358
(*à*) *jeun* on an empty stomach
jeune (adj.), 15, young; *-sse* (f.) youth

jeûne (m.) fasting; *-r* to fast, 15
je vais mettre une lettre à la poste I am going to mail a letter (post-office); see *aller*
joindre (v.) to join, 349; to connect
joint added to, 56; *se joint à*, 46, 349
joke *plaisanterie* (f.); see *rire*, 358
joli, 77, pretty
jonc (m.) rush, 20
jonqu-ille (f.) -il, 26
jouer (v.) to play, 19
jouerai (fut. of *jouer*), 10, I will play, 175
joug (m.) yoke, 37
joui (p. p. *jouir*) *d'une bonne santé* enjoys good health
jouir (v.) enjoy (*de*), 17
jouissance (f.) enjoyment, 17
jour (m.) day, 3
journée, 64
joyeusement, 80, joyfully
joyeux joyful
juger (v.) to judg-e, 67; -ment *jugement* (m.)
jui-f (*-ve*, f.) Jew (-ess), 16
julep (m.), 28
July, 180, *juillet* (m.)
jument (f.) mare
junction *jonction* (f.)
June, 180, *juin* (m.)
jungle (f.), 21
jupe (f.) skirt, 13
jus (m.), 346
jusque, 187
just (fair) *juste*, 13; impartial; after adding: right! *après l'addition: c'est juste!*
justice (n.) *justice* (f.); *avec équité* (f.) with fairness, 47; *il a la justice de son côté* justice is on his side, justice favors him; *faire — à* to redress the wrong to; *faire — de*, 99, to treat him as he deserves; *il faut réparer le tort fait à* one must repair a wrong done to; *y remédier* to remedy it.
justify, 54, (v.) *justifier; il — sa conduite* he proves his innocence; cf. *démontrer; prouver; légitimer; rendre juste; se j—*, (Refl.); *la fin justifie les moyens* (the evening crowns the day); *rien ne motive cette opinion* nothing justifies that opinion; show cause *faites valoir vos motifs; vos motifs sont bons* well grounded

K

kermesse (f.); kermis (-mess), 25 (*Danemark*, etc.), festival and fair
kilo (m.) (= 2 lbs.) 25
kilogramme (m.) kilogram, 25
kind *genre* (m.); *espèce* (f.)
king (n.) *roi* (m.); -dom *royaume* (m.)
kiosque (m.) kiosk, 25
kirsch (m.) —, 25

L

la, 63, the; it, her, 120, 155; 9
là there, 130; see *voilà*, 118; cf. *monsieur n'est point là* (the gentleman is not here?)
lac (m.) lake, 11
lâche, 9, coward; *-té* (f.) -ice
lâcher (v.) to let go
La Haye (f.) the Hague, 192
laie, 67
laisser (*par ne rien —*) (v.), 5, to leave (nothing); *s'être laissé prendre*, 59, to allow one's self to be deprived (of)
lait (m.) milk, 14
lame (f.), 9, blade; see *cut;* (*vague*) wave
lance (f.) lance, 8; *-r* (v.) to launch; 309; to issue (send out); *-ment* -ing, 340
langage (m.), 58
langouste (f.) (spiny) lobster, 16
langue (f.), 220
lapis (m.), 30
laquelle (*d'après*), 58 (according to), following which, 135
larynx (m.), 34, —
las (*-se*) (adj.) tired, 47; (v.) *lasser*
last (adj.) *dernier; —* night *hier soir*

late *tard; -r plus tard;* to be — *être en retard;* see p. 100; it was only later *ce n'est que plus tard que*

laugh (n.) *rire* (m.); (v.) *rire,* 358; *tel chante qui ne rit pas* a heart may be sad though the face be gay; to burst out -ing *partir* (*éclater*) *de rire; on dit souvent la vérité en riant* many a true word is spoken in jest; *il tourne tout en raillerie* he makes a jest of everything; *il entend raillerie* he takes a jest; *il entend la raillerie* he jokes well; *r— aux éclats* to — loud; *pouffer de r—* to burst out l—; *étouffer* — — to choke with l—; *pour rire* (*plaisanter*) for fun; colloq.: *lui faire un pied de nez* (*se moquer de lui*) to l— at him; *il se moque, sans doute* he is jesting, no doubt; *r— à gorge déployée* to roar with l—; *être le jouet de la fortune* to be the sport of fortune; *il veut rire* he is jesting; *r— à ses dépens* (expense) to ridicule him; *toujours le mot pour r—* ready wit; *se tenir les côtes de r—* to shake sides with l—; *en faire des gorges chaudes* to chuckle over it or : *se tordre de r—; rire de ses menaces* not to mind threat; *en rire* to jeer at him (etc.); do not laugh at that : (nothing to l— at in that) *il n'y a pas là de quoi rire; rire comme un bossu* (hunchback) to split one's sides with l—; radiate with joy *rayonner de joie* (f.); *r— sous cape* l— in his sleeve; *r— dans sa barbe; et tout le monde d'en rire* and everybody began to laugh; *il n'y a pas de quoi rire* this is a serious matter; *r— jaune* (*d'une manière contrainte*) his (her) smile is forced; *se mettre* (*se prendre*) *à rire* to begin (start) to l—; *exciter la risée* to move to l—; *faire r— aux éclats* (*pâmer de r—*) that set us in a roar; *ne pouvoir garder son sérieux* impossible not to l— (keep his countenance); *il prend son serieux* he grows serious; *cela passe le jeu* that's beyond a joke; *c'est à mourir de rire* to die with l—; *r— aux larmes* (*éclats*) to roar with l—; *r— du bout des dents* forced smile; *crever de r—* to die laughing; *on n'y trouve pas le moindre mot pour r—* there is nothing amusing in that or here; *il me fait r—* he makes me l—; *rira bien qui rira le dernier* he who laughs last laughs best; *il nous prêtait à r—* he was a subject for l— to us; *apprêter à rire* to make oneself laughable; *se moque-t-il de nous?* Is he joking? *on le tourna en ridicule* they made a fool of him; *il en riait* he l—ed at it; *r— du bout des dents* to l— on the other side of the mouth; *de bon cœur* heartily; *anecdote* (f.) *pour rire* laughable —; *tel qui rit vendredi, dimanche pleurera* laughter is akin to tears; *il a le r— facile* he l—s easily; *un fou rire* uncontrollable laugh; — *ris moqueur* it was a mocking laugh; *la risée* the laughing-stock; *de grands éclats de rire* great shouts of l—ter; *plus on est de fous, plus on rit* the more the merrier

law *loi* (f.); see *follow*

l' (=*le, la*) it, him; her, 120, 155

le (invariable), 120 (*b.*), 254

le (variable), 63, the; it (him), 120, 155

league (n.) *ligue* (*union*) (f.); (v.) *liguer*

learned (p. p.) *appris,* 357; (n.) — (man) *savant; bien-instruit,* 109

leave (v.) *laisser; quitter;* 320

— (to take): p. p. c. = *pour prendre congé*

leçon (f.) lesson, 65
lec-teur (m.) (*-trice*) reader
lecture (f.) reading (349, v. *lire*)
left (on the) *à gauche;* (p. p. *laissé*); cf. *laisser*, 175
léger, 80; *légèrement* lightly, thoughtlessly, slightly
legs (m.) legacy, 24
lemm-e (m.) (geom.) -a, 24
lengthen (v.) *allonger; croître* (*jours*), 342
Lent *carême* (m.)
lèpre (f.), 11, leprosy
lépreux (m.) lepers
les the, 63, 120; them
less, 253, *moins;* (the) — *le* —; least — *moindre;* — than *moins que;* — *moins de*
lesson *leçon* (f.)
letter, 10, *lettre* (f.); — paper *papier à* —; capital — *majuscule* (f.); small — *minuscule* (f.)
leur (poss. adj.) their, 118
leurre (m.) lure; *-r* (v.) to —, 29
lèvre (f.) lip, 11
lexicologie (n. f.) scientific, progressive knowledge of words relating to their etymology or meaning and in general of what is essential in being able to write a language correctly
liaison (f.) 34, (linking)
liberty, 4, *liberté* (f.); at — *en* —; *libre;* to take the — *prendre la* — *de;* — — liberties *prendre trop de libertés*, 56
libre free; *-ment* -ly, 40
lichen (m.) —, 24
lier (v.) to bind, 349
lieu (m), 3, place, spot; *au* — *de*, 55, instead of; — (*il y a*) there is reason; — (*donner*), 59, to give rise to
lieue (f.) league (distance), 15
life *vie* (f.); such is — *ainsi va le monde;* — (animation) *entrain* (m.); all your — (long) *toute votre* (*ta*) *vie*
ligue (f.) league; (v.) *liguer* to form a —
like, see 200; *avoir de l'affection, de l'amitié, du goût, un penchant pour;* I should like to go to *je voudrais bien aller à* (*en*); (ant.: *détester, haïr*); to suit his taste *trouver à son goût;* — better (best) *préférer, aimer mieux;* as you — *à votre aise* (*comme vous voudrez: comme il vous plaira*); now he likes it *il commence à s'y faire* (*à y prendre goût*); — music *goûter la musique;* a liking *du goût* (*pour*)
like (conj.) *comme;* cf.: *tel père, tel fils;* — *semblable à* (adj.)
likewise (*il en est*) *de même*, 54
linceul (m.) shroud, 25
line (n.) *ligne* (f.); to the — *à l'alinéa;* to write a line *écrire un mot;* (refl. v.) — (against) *s'aligner;* cf. align, adjust or form to a line *aligner;* (n.) *alignement* (m.)
linguales (*consonnes*) *d, t, l, n, r*, 24
linguiste (m.) linguist, 24
linguistique (f.) linguistics, 24
lion (m.) lion, 17
liquéfier (v.) liquefy, 29
liqueur (f.) liquor, 29
liquide (m.) -d, 29
lis (m.), 30, lily
lisse sleek; *-r* (v.) to comb down
liste, 53 (f.), list
listen (to) *écouter;* see *follow*
litre (m.) litre, 12
little *petit;* a — *un peu* (*de*), 253
live, 361 (v.), *vivre;* to behave like a gentleman *savoir vivre;* to come to life again *revivre;* survive *survivre* (*à*); cf. *demeurer* (reside); *habiter* (to live in, inhabit); *loger* (*habiter habituellement*); *loger en garni* to occupy a room (in an apartment house); *un logement provisoire* temporary lodging; (*: partie de maison plus modeste qu'un appartement* part of a house more modest than an apartment); *garni ou meublé* furnished apt.;

live—*Continued*
qu'on loue avec ameublement (rented with set of furniture); *maison peu logeable: (où l'on ne peut loger commodément)* not a very comfortable house; she lives with her mother *elle vit auprès de sa mère;* in society *dans le monde;* comfortably (*on vit*) *bien; bien vivre* to lead a good life; people die as they — *telle vie, telle fin; faire la vie* to — fast; *on lui sauva ses jours* they saved his (her) life; he who wishes to — long avoids excess *qui veut aller loin ménage sa monture;* long live America! *vive l'Amérique!* long live the free countries! *vivent tous les pays libres!* to — on good terms (*en bonne intelligence*); to — like cats and dogs *comme chien et chat; faire bon ménage* their married life is happy; to — on *vivre de;* when in Rome do as the Romans do *il faut vivre à Rome comme à Rome; apprendre à vivre* to teach how to live, etc.; you will not find a soul *vous ne trouverez âme qui vive; on n'y voit plus âme vivante* no living soul there (any more); to — (high) well *faire bonne chère;* — — only for himself ; *v— dans la pauvreté;* from hand to mouth *au jour le jour;* l— in straightened circumstances *v— à l'étroit;* colloq.: lead a struggling existence *tirer le diable par la queue;* l— on their meagre salary *vivoter de leur maigre salaire; ils n'ont que de quoi vivre* they keep body and soul together; l— by begging *mendier sa vie;* on his savings *de ses économies;* on what does she live? *De quoi vit-elle?* l— in hope *v— d'espoir; il faut manger pour vivre et non pas vivre pour manger* one must eat to live and not live to eat; on their income *de leurs rentes;* at his expense *à ses dépens* (m.); living is expensive in America *il fait cher vivre en Amérique; la cherté des vivres* high cost of food (living); rise in price of commodities *le haussement du prix des denrées;* according to their means *selon leurs moyens;* — free *sans attache* (f.); l— on his wits *vivre d'industrie* (f.): *un chevalier d'industrie; vous le faites v—* you feed him; *un roman vécu* a novel based on fact (or seemingly so); *lui a-t-on coupé les vivres?* did they cut off his income (pension)? *on lui taille (rogne) les morceaux* he is fed on too little or sparingly ; *si Dieu lui prête vie* if he lives long enough; you will have food and lodging *vous aurez le vivre et le couvert; v— sur ses amis* l— on his friends; life-annuity *une rente viagère;* while alive *en son vivant;* the quick and the dead *les vivants et les morts;* while his uncle lived *du vivant de son oncle;* burned alive *brûlé vif;* very life-like *pris sur le vif;* stung to the quick *piqué au vif;* dead or alive *mort ou vif;* while he lived *de son vivant;* provisions are expensive *les vivres sont chères;* to earn a living *gagner sa vie; il a de quoi vivre* he has enough to live on; a keen interest *un vif intérêt; la lettre tue, mais l'esprit vivifie* the letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life; l— amicably *vivre en accord; avoir l'âme chevillée au corps* he has nine lives; *la caisson des vivres* provision wagon; colloq.: *se la couler douce* to take life easy; *compter les morceaux* to give a scanty allowance; *dîner par cœur* to go without dinner; such is life *ainsi va le monde;* live again in his works *se survivre*

live—*Continued*
dans ses ouvrages; revivre dans ses enfants to live again in his children; *à sa guise* as he likes; *le printemps ranime toute la nature* Spring revives all nature; he lives a life of lassitude (inert life) *il traîne une misérable existence; mener grand train* to l— in great style; *mener une vie réglée* to live a regulated life (*une vie heureuse*); *il gagne sa vie* he gets his livelihood; (*: il ne vit que de ses bras*) *:* by the labor of his hands; *habiter un garni* to live in a furnished apt.; *il demeure au no. 19; il habite l'Amérique; chacun doit vivre selon sa condition* everyone should live according to his station; he is not expected to live *le médecin l'a condamné; il donne signe de vie* he is still alive; *une vive réplique* a smart reply; *les danseurs sont animés* dancers are alive; *une avenue vivante* a lively avenue; *le français n'est pas une langue morte, mais bien une langue vivante*
livre, 68
"*local*" (or city) E. V. (= addressed)
loch (m.) —, 24
locution, 55 (f.), expression
loge (f.), 12, box (theat.); lodge; (v.) to lodge *-r*
logic (n.) *logique* (f.); -al *logique;* see *follow*
loi (f.) law, 16
loin (adv.) far; *-tain* distant, 96, 105; (v.) *éloigner* (*s'*)
Londres, 31, London
long, 304, long, 40; — time *longtemps;* — (in length) *de longueur* (or: *long de*); -er *plus long;* —, 24, *longtemps;* no -er *ne — plus;* no — than *pas plus long que* (*de*); -er still *longtemps encore*, 24
loom *métier* (m.); *profession* (f.); see *follow;* his trade *son métier*
lors (*de*) at; *-que* when, 54; the time of
loss *perte* (f.); (v.) *perdre*
louange (f.) praise, 17
louera (fut. of *louer*), 10, will praise (rent)
Louis Lewis, 17
Louise Louisa, 17
loup, 67 (m.)
lu (p. p. *lire*) read, 349
Luc Luke, 23
lueur (f.) glare (light), 17
lui (pron.) he, 78; *à* — his, 27; — *- même* himself
lui (p. p. *luire*), 350, shone
luisants (v. *luire*, 350) (m.), patent leather shoes
lundi (m.) Monday, 125
lutte (f.) struggle (fight), 334
luxe (m.), 13, luxury
Luxembourg — (m.), 19
lyr-e (f.) lyre, 8; -ical *lyrique*

M

ma, ta, sa, 118, my, your, his (her)
M., 4, Mr.
machin-e (f.) —, 8; -ist, 22, *mécanicien*
Madame, 3, Madam (Mrs.), 73
madone (f.) madonna, 12
maigre lean, 36; *-rir* to grow thin
main (adj.) *principal*
main, 65 (f.)
maint (adj.) many a, 257
mais but; — *oui*, 39, why, yes! 30
maison (f.) house, 14; *à la* —, 99
maître (m.) master
majuscule (f.) capital, 5
mal (m.) evil, 111; (adv.) bad; — un; — mis; — ill (with certain adj. in English); *mal*, 64
malade (m., f.) (*le, la*) patient
malade (adj.) ill (sick); *-ie* (f.), 57
mâle male, 9
man *homme;* — of war *vaisseau* (m.) *de guerre* (f.); -ly *virile;* good — (fellow) *bonhomme* (m.)

manage *conduire, régir, diriger; gérer;* (him), (*savoir*) *comment le prendre;* to — (in a way) *faire en sorte que;* -able *docile, traitable;* -r *gérant, directeur;* stage — *régisseur;* house — *ménagère* (f.)
manège, 64
manger (v.), 228, to eat
manière (f.), 168, sort, 29; manner (way), 55
manne (f.) manna, 18
manuscript *manuscrit* (m.); old — *m— ancien*
marc (m.) mark, 23
marc (m.) residuum (skin, pulp, seed), 23
March *mars* (m.), 180
marchandise, 57 (f.), mdse.
mardi (m.) Tuesday, 5; — *gras* Shrove—
mark, 54, *signe* (m.); *marque* (f.); *forme*, 54,—; (v.) *marquer*
marque (f.), 54, mark; *-r* to —, 25
marquis, 65
marraine, 67
marrons (*habits*) maroon dress
Mars 30; — March
marsouin (m.) porpoise, 17
masculin (m.), 9, -e
master *maître* (m.); (v.) *posséder, connaître parfaitement: savoir à fond*
mât (m.) mast, 9
mat dull (dead), 33 (adj.)
matériaux (see *construire*) materials; *matières* (f.) (*qui entrent*) *dans la construction* construction material; *on rassemble des idées etc., pour la composition* ideas are (being) gathered for composition
matériel (implements) (m.); *esprit* — material mind; cf.: material; *étoffe* (f.); see *weave*
mâtin (m.) mastiff (dog), 9
matin (m.) morning; *-ée* (f.) forenoon
maxime (f.), 12, -m
may (can); see *pouvoir*, 329
May, 180, *mai* (m.)
Mayence Mainz
mean (adj.) *sordide, mesquin;* -ness *mesquinerie* (f.)
mean (v.) *signifier, vouloir dire*, 331; -ing *sens* (m.); *signification* (f.); -less *dépourvu de sens*
means (money) *les moyens* (m.); by — of *au moyen de;* through the influence of — *par* (*l'entremise*) *le m— de*, 99; according to his — *selon ses moyens;* having recourse to *en faisant usage de; par le* (*au*) *moyen de*
médecin (m.) doctor
meditate (v.) *méditer; soumettre à des réflexions* (*à un examen intérieur*); *réfléchir à* (consider) to think seriously (the matter over); *se creuser la tête* to rack (his) brain; (plan) *projeter; combiner* (to scheme; to contrive); *comploter* to plot; *se recueillir* to collect one's thoughts; *prier* to pray; *plongé dans* all-absorbed in (*tout à son travail*) his work
meet (v.) *rencontrer; aller à la rencontre de* to go and meet (part way); see *to connect;* to come across —; *cela ne se rencontre guère* that is met rarely; -ing (n.) *rencontre; assemblée* (f.); *réunion* (f.); *il a toujours bien rencontré* circumstances always favored him
meilleur better, 92
même (adj.), 3, same; (conj.) *quand* — even if (+ Cond.); *aujourd'hui* — this very day; *venez quand même* come just the same; *il en est de* — *de* (so with) likewise, 54; *même lorsque* even when, 56
ménager (v.) to husband, to save, 58
mener (v.), 229, to lead (by the hand), 337
menu (m.) —, 13
mépris, 32; *-er* to scorn
mer, 65, sea; in the open — (*au large*) *en pleine mer*
merchandise (mdse.) *marchandise* (f.); see *bargain*

mère mother, 6
merit *mérite* (m.); demerit *démérite* (m.); *considéré comme si* (as if); *au point de vue du m—; ou du d—;* see *voir*
mes (poss. adj.), 118, my
met (v. *mettre*)
mètre (m.) meter (39 inches), 11
mettre (v.) to put (on), 351
meuble (m.); *-é*, 56, furnished
Mexique, 64
Michel-Ange Michael Angelo, 24
midi (m.), 187; 304
miel, 64
mien (*le*), 39, mine, 129
mienne (*la*), 129
mieux, 95
mil (m.) millet, 25
mil 1000; *mille* 1000; 304
mill *moulin* (m.); saw— *scierie* (f.); wind— *moulin à vent*
mille (m.) mile; *millésime*, 56, date on coins
million (m.) million, 304
minime very small (slight), 12
ministère (m.) department
ministre, 53
minuit, 305, 139
minuscule small, 5
minute (f.), 32
minutie, 32 (f.), minuteness
misfortune *malheur* (m.)
mistake (n.) *faute*, p. 5; to — *se tromper (de); se méprendre*, 356; see *misunderstand* and *blunder; une méprise* mistaking a person, etc., for another; *c'était à ne pas s'y méprendre* there was no -ing it; *c'est à ne pas s'y m—* there is no — it; *par méprise* by m—; *sans faire de fautes* without (making any) mistake
misunderstand (see 356, *prendre*) (v.) *il entend mal* he -s; *ne pas comprendre; il prend la chose au mal* he takes offense at it; *c'est à ne pas s'y méprendre* there was no mistaking it; *se tromper* to be mistaken; *se tromper de* to take the wrong [way]; *elle s'abuse* she deceives herself; *il se méprend* he mistakes; *elle se méprend* she forgets herself; *v. v. adressez mal* you mistake your men; *prendre tout en mauvaise part* to take things amiss; *p— mal ses conseils* not to take kindly to his advice; *les tourner en mal* to misinterpret them: *il ne veut rien entendre* he won't listen; *donner à entendre que* to intimate that; *il n'y entend rien* he can't make it out
mixtion (f.) —, 33
Mlle. Miss, 73
Mme. Mrs., Madam, 4
mode, 68 (m., f.)
modern, 78, *moderne, nouveau*, 55
modest-e, 32 (adj.); *-ie* (f.) -y
modulation, 46 (f.)
moelle (f.) marrow, 16
mœurs (f.) customs, 30
moi, 3, I (disjunctive pron.); I; *à* —! help; *être à* — to be mine (my own), 99, 5; 78
moi-même, 7 (intensive pron.), myself, 57
moins (*au*), 5, at least; less, 39; *à — que* unless, 60; *de — en* —, 39; — (*le*): as neuter, 254
mois (m.) month, 180
Moïse, 12, Moses
moitié (f.) half, 304
mol, 79
mollesse (f.), 47, indolence
moment, 179
momentané (adj.), 22, momentary
mon my, 118
mondé, 69, hulled (husked)
monde (m.), 9, world (universe); 211; *tout le* — everybody (all)
monde (m.) world, 405, society; *du* — company
monnaie (f.) coin, mint, change, 37, 306
monosyllabe, 30
monosyllab-le *-e* (f.); -ic *-ique*
monsieur Mr., Sir, 4; *le* — the gentleman, 73
mont (m.) peak
montagne (f.) mountain, 58
month *mois* (m.); -ly *mensuel; tous les mois*, 180

mood (gr.), 144, *mode* (m.); (temper) *humeur* (f.)
more *plus; davantage;* the —, 39; —over *de plus;* — (besides) *d'ailleurs*
morgue (f.), 12, morgue; *arrogance* (scornful look)
morrow *le lendemain;* see *follow*
mort (m.) (*-e*) the dead person; 3, dead (died), 319
mort (f.) death, 40, 65
morue (f.) codfish, 13
most (men) *la plupart des hommes;* -ly *surtout; principalement;* at — *au plus*
mot (m.) word, 5; — *à* — word for —
mother *mère* (f.); grand— *grand' mère* (f.); (— -in-law) step— *belle-mère* (f.); — tongue *langue maternelle* (f.)
motte (f.), 9, clod; — *de terre* lump of earth
mou, 79, soft (*molle*, f.)
moulin mill, 5; 352
mourir (irreg.), 318, 29
mousse (m.) cabin-boy, 68
mousse (f.) moss, 68
moyen (*cours*) intermediate (course): see *means; moyen âge*, 38, Middle Ages
mu (m.) (12th letter of the Greek alphabet) name, 13
muet, 78, mute, deaf
mulet, 67
multi-plier, 56 (v.), to -ply
mûr (adj.) ripe; *-ir* to ripen
mûre (f.) mulberry, 13
Muse (f.) —, 26
musical, 46
musicien musician, 46
musique (f.) music), 46
must (one) *faut-il*, 5; 266
must I *faut-il?* — (see *devoir*) or (list: irreg. verbs)
mute muet (see adj.)
myope (m.) short-sighted, 14
myosotis (m.) forget-me-not, 14
myself *moi-même;* intensive pronoun
myriade (f.) myriad, 14
mystère, 64

N

nacre, 65
name (n.) *nom* (m.); — (v.) *nommer; porter le nom de* to bear the —; first — *prénom* (m.)
narcotique, 37
nasal (adj.) —, 17
nation (f.) —
national, 54, (adj.)
ne...pas, etc., 3, not, 119
né (*e*), (v. *naître*) born, 194, 352
necessary (it is) *il est nécessaire;* see *Subj.*
nectar (m.) —, 11
needle (n.) *aiguille* (f.)
nef, 65
négation (f.), 57; *négatif* (*-ve*, 119)
négliger, 188
-ent (adj.), 188
nègre, 66
nenni (obsolete) no, 18 (Fables)
nerf (m.), 31, 80, 36, nerve, sinews, 36
neuf (adj.), 79, 23
neuf nine, 303
neutre neuter, 55
never *ne ... jamais*, etc.; —! *jamais!* — more *jamais, jamais*, 119
neveu nephew (m.), 35
next *suivant* (n. or adj.); — to *près de;* — line *à la ligne suivante;* see *follow*
nez (m.) nose, 9; — *à* —, 41, face to face; 224
ni ... ni neither ... nor, 119; *ni* or, 5
niais, 78
nid (m.) nest, 36
nièce (f.), 12, niece
nier (v.), 59, to deny
noble (adj.) noble, 12
Noël (m.) Christmas, 7; *la* (*fête de*) *Noël*, 68
nœud (m.) knot, bow; (see *nouer*), 16
noir, 91, black; dark; *-cir* to blacken, 241
noir (m.) negro
noix, 65

nom (m.) name, 4, 231
nombre, 53, 303; cf. No. = *numéro*
nombreux, 80, numerous, 35
nombril (m.) navel, 25
nominatif; subject; (*ce*) *qui* or: what
nommer (v.) to name, 47
non, 8, not; — *que*, 163, not that; *et* — but not; *je pense que* — I think not
(*ne*) ... *non plus* either, 57
non compris not including, 56, 192
nord, 64
not (neg.) *pas;* — (a book) but *non* (*un livre*) *mais*, 57
note (v.) *marquer*, *remarquer*, *prendre note de*
note (n.) 14; *billet* (m.) *note* (f.); bill
nothing, 119, *rien;* not anything *rien;* -ness *chaos* (m.)
notice (v.) *noter*, *remarquer* (take —) *observer*, *s'apercevoir;* cf.: bear well this in mind *notez bien que:* (*n'oubliez point que; retenez bien ceci*); to give — *donner avis* (*connaissance*); *avertir* (warn); to tell beforehand *prévenir;* without a moment's — *sans avis préalable;* to bring to your knowledge *porter à votre connaissance;* until further — *jusqu'à nouvel ordre* (*avis contraire*); within short — *à court délai;* public —! *avis* (m.) *au public*; look out! *attention* (*faites —*)! foreword *avis au lecteur;* two heads are better than one *deux avis valent mieux qu'un*
notion (f.) —, 33
notions (v.) *noter*, 32
notre our, 118
nôtre (*le*) ours, 129
noueux knotty, 17
nous we, us, 81, 156
nouveau, 79
nouveau-né new-born, 56
November, 180, *novembre*
nu, 88, naked
nuance (f.) shade, 56
nuit, 65 (f.), night, 348
nul, 113, 78
number, 303, *no.* (*numéro*); *nombre* (m.); — *compter* (*parmi*); *être au nombre de;* see *follow*
numéral, 56, 303
numéro (m.) no. (: number); 27

O

o, 4
oasis (f.), 30
object, 55, *objet* (m.); (direct) — *régime* (m.); *-s de première nécessité* most necessary articles; — (aim, goal); (gram.) *synonyme de: complément;* cf.: *avoir pour* — to have in view; -ion (n.) — (f.); *faire des -s* to object
-tif (the opposite: *le contraire de*) *subjectif*
obole, 64
obscur -e; *-ité*, 54
observe (v.) *remarquer; faire une observation à* call attention to (remind him, etc.); *faire remarquer* to bring to (his) notice
obus (m.), 31, shell
occuper (*s'en*), 54, to take it up; to consider it
occur (v.) *se trouver*, *arriver*, 194; -rence *incident* (m.); daily — *ce qui arrive fréquemment* (*tous les jours*); — *ce qui se rencontre*
Océanie, 192
o'clock *heure* (f.); in the evening *du soir;* 305
October, 180, *octobre* (m.)
ode (f.) ode, 12
odieux infamous, 40
Œdip-e (m.) -us, 16
œil (*yeux*) (m.) eye (s), 47
œillet (m.) pink
œuf (m.) egg, 31, 15
œuvre (f.) work (art); deed, 69
offend (v.) *offenser; blesser; froisser;* —, p. 5 (to do injustice to)
offense (n.) *offense* (f.)
offenser (v.), 5
offi-cier (m.) -cer, 58

oh! oh! 4, *ah!* — *la, la!* oh my!
oie, 67
oignon (m.) onion, 16
oindre (irreg. v.), 354; see *frotter*
old (adj.) *vieux* — age; (*vieux*) *ancien français* old French; one year — *un an; âgé d'un an*
omission *suppression* (f.); — (f.); omission of the article *suppression de l'*—, 76
omit (v.) *supprimer*, 351; *omettre, manquer à faire* (*dire*)*; négliger;* cf.: leave out, fail to do (say)
omnibus, 70 (m.)
on, 81, pronoun, 135
on (upon) *sur;* — foot *à pied;* — Monday (s) *le*(*s*) *lundi*(*s*)*;* — fire *en flammes;* — my way *chemin faisant;* and so — *ainsi de suite*
once, 64
once *une fois* (*que*)*;* twice *deux fois;* see *follow*
oncle, 67
one *un* (*e*)*;* only — *un seul; ne* — *que ;* in (into) one *en un seul* (*seulement un*)*;* — by — *un à un;* he is the — *c'est lui!*
one (pron.) *on;* (*l'*) *on; celui* (*celle*)*; on écrira donc* one may then write; any — *quelqu'un;* every— *tous* (*toutes*)*;* — another *l'un, l'autre,* etc.; —self *soi-même; si l'on veut* (cf.: *si on le veut*)
— armed *manchot;* — eyed *borgne*
only (*seulement*) *ne* — *que* (but)
ont (v. *avoir*) have, 81
onze eleven, 38; 303
onzième, 304
open (adj.) *ouvert* (*e*)*;* mouth — *bouche ouverte;* in — air *en plein air;* with — arms *à bras -s;* — house (*tenir*)*:* to keep *tenir table ouverte;* (Ant.: closed *fermé*)
open (v.), 320, *ouvrir;* — the eyes — *les yeux;* (confide) — *son cœur à;* — an account (bank) — *un crédit à;* to start — — (store) — *un compte à;* not -ed Sundays *qui n'ouvre point le dimanche;* easily -ed *qui s'ouvre facilement;* the curtain rises *la scène s'ouvre;* (flowers): — (*s'épanouir*)*;* — itself *s'ouvrir;* wide — *tout grand ouvert;* to be — to conviction *être prêt à accepter le pour ou le contre*
open: see *ouvrir*
opening *ouverture; entrée* (f.)
openly *franchement, ouvertement*
openness *franchise* (f.); *candeur d'âme* (f.)
opéra (m.) opera, 8
opinion (n.) — (f.); see *follow*
opium (m.), 26
opportune *opportun*
opportunity *occasion* (f.); cf.: *opportunité* (f.) seasonableness; seasonableness gives everything its price *l'à-propos fait le mérite* or: *donne du prix à tout; à propos* opportunely
oppressé, 47, oppressed
option *choix* (m.)*;* -al *facultatif*
optique, 12, optical
or (conj.) now
or (m.) gold
oracle, 64
orbite, 65
ordinaire, 3, usual
ordre (m.) order; *commande* (f.), 259
oreille (f.) ear; *-r* (m.) pillow
orfèvre (m.) gold (silver)smith, 11
organe (m.) organ, medium
orge, 54
orgue, 68
origin (n.) *origine* (f.); -ally, 45, *à l'origine*
orme (m.) elm, 12
orphelin, 66
orthography, 53, *orthographe* (f.); spelling *épellation* (f.); (v.) *orthographier* to write words with the proper letters
os (m.), 30, bone
osciller (v.) to oscillate, 25
oser (v.) to dare, 175
ossature (f.) (bony) frame, 31
osseux bony, 87
ôter, 53 (v.), to remove: 56, *-é*

other *autre;* to -s *à d'autres;* —wise *autrement; par contre;* see *follow*
ou or, 38
où (adv.) where (—in, —to); *d'*— (whence), 136, from —?
ouate (f.) cotton (absorbent); padding, 24
oubli (m.) forgetfulness, 16
oublierai (fut. of *oublier*) I will forget
ouest, 64
ouf! oh! (now), 16
oui, 5, yes; *mais oui,* 24, why —; *si,* yes! 70, *je pense que oui* I think so
ouï-dire (m.) (hearsay) reports, 38
ouïr (*dire*) (v.) hearsay; *ouïe* (f.) hearing, 38, 72; 324
ours (m.), 30
ourselves *nous-mêmes*
out of *hors de;* — — place *déplacé;* see *season*
outil (m.) tool, 25
outre (f.), 16, goat-skin bag
outre-(mer) d'— oversea; *en* — besides, moreover
ouvert (p. part. of *ouvrir*), 320
ouvrez open, 5
ouvrir, 320, to open; spread, 48
over *sur; au-dessus de*
overcome, 360, (v.) *accabler* (*de*); see *vanquish;* (faint) *s'évanouir; perdre connaissance* to lose consciousness; *se trouver mal* (swoon); *le malade ne se connaît plus* the patient is (out of his senses) unconscious; *sentir un malaise* to feel discomfort
oversight (see *blunder*)
oversupply see *superfluous*
own (v.) *avoir; posséder;* -er *patron; propriétaire* (m.); — (adj.) *propre*
oxygène (m.) -en, 14

P

pacte (m.), 9, pact (treaty); see 336, *conclure* and *conclue; traiter de la paix* to discourse upon peace; *enfin il conclut de voyager* he finally decided to travel; *donc* (*ainsi*) thus; *partant* for that reason; *lui donner gain de cause* to decide in his favor; *lui donner tort* to — against him (her); *conclure à* to lead to; cf.: *on a conclu à la mort* their decision was for death; *voilà ce qu'il faut conclure* that is what will come at last; *ils n'ont encore rien conclu* they have not yet arrived at anything; *ils concluront de là que ce n'est rien* (of no consequence) they will conclude therefrom that it is nothing; *la paix se conclut* peace is made (decided upon); *la paix est conclue* peace is concluded; *ils ont fait la paix* peace has been made between them; *pour conclure, sa démonstration n'est pas juste* to conclude, his demonstration is wrong; *de telles raisons n'aboutissent à rien* such reasons prove nothing; *c'est un raisonnement qui cloche* lame argument; *la conclusion tirée de ce livre* conclusion drawn from this book; *voilà la conclusion* (the outcome) such the case will be
page (n.), 68; at — *à la page;* (v.) — *paginer; verso:* turn page; *recto:* present page
paill-e (f.), 9, straw; *-asson* (m.) (foot) rug or *natte de paille* (*jonc*)
pain (m.), 8, bread, loaf, 19; cake (soap) ; *petits-pains* (m.) rolls
paint (v.) *peindre,* 354; -ing *peinture* (f.); *tableau* (m.)
painter *peintre* (m.); — *en bâtiments* house —, 354
paire (f.) pair, 304
paix, 65
pal, 71 (m.)
palais (m.), 30, palace; palate, 14
palm-iste (m.) -ist, 12

panier (m.) basket, 5; waste-basket *corbeille à papier*
paon (m.) peacock, 14
papa, 8, — (daddy)
pâque (f.), 69
Pâques, 69
par, 11, by, through, per; 64, — *ici* this way; — *là* that way
paradis (m.), 30
parasol (m.), 30
parc (m.) park, 11
parce que, 46, because
pardon (m.), 332, — (forgiveness); *demander* — to beg pardon; *il vous demande* — he begs your pardon
parent (m.) relative, 27; also — (v. *parer*)
parenthèse (f.), 4
parer (v.) to ward off
paresse (f.), 31, laziness
paresseux, 80, lazy
parfait (adj.) perfect, 14
parfum (m.) perfume, 8; *-er* (v.) to —; 13, *-erie* (f.) -ry; *-eur* -e maker or dealer, 21
parla, 213, spoke (past def. or absolute)
parler, 209
parmi (prep.) among (st), 56
parole (f.), 226, parole; *mot* (m.)
paroi (m.), 65
paronymes (m.) -ym, 14
parrain, 68
part (*-ent*) (v. *partir*), 320
part (rôle) (n.) *rôle* (m.); — (1st) 1e *partie;* for my — *quant à moi* (*pour ma part*); he comes from Mr. B. *il vient de la part de M. X.;* good-naturedly *en bonne part;* for the most part *pour la plupart;* on his part (side) *de sa part;* to form (be) a part of *faire partie de;*
— (with) (v.) *se défaire de; se séparer de* (*se quitter*)
partage, 64
partake (share) *partager;* — (in) *participer à*, 64 (*avoir part à*); to take part in *prendre part à;* — (taste) *goûter à*
part-i (m.) -y; match, 32
partial (adj.) —, 33
particip-e, 56, (m.) -le
parti-cule (f.), 57 -cle
particulier, 88; *-èrement* particularly, 54
partie (f.) part, game, 32
— *de* (*faire*) to form a part of, 55
partir (v.), 33, 320
partitif, 124 (*sens*), (adj.), 55
parure (f.), 64, ornament
parvenu (m.), 13; (p. p.), 295, 323
pas (m.) pace (step), 39; *ne... pas*, 119, not
pass (v.) *passer;* — by (via) — *par;* (go to) — *au tableau* (blackboard); (vanish) *disparaître;* — away *mourir ou passer;* (to be promoted a) *passer capitaine;* (call on) — *chez;* (to be looked upon as) — *pour; être réputé pour;* let it — (over) — *outre;* (go to extremes) — *du blanc au noir;* overlook it *n'en point tenir compte;* it will pass *cela peut passer; assez bien; cela est supportable* (*sera accepté*); cf.: *cela se passera* it will not last long; (*durer*); *passez-lui* pass him; *un passe-temps* a pastime; just the time to slip it on *le temps de le passer* (*mettre*); (conclude) — *un contrat* or: make *faire;* (*subir*) — *un exam-en* (-ination); (forgive) — (*pardonner*) *une faute;* that's beyond me *cela me passe;* cf.: *c'est trop fort* it's going too far; he was shot *il fut fusillé* (*passé par les armes*); beyond my comprehension *cela me passe;* going through *en passant par;* time passes by (*fuir*) *le temps passe; s'écouler* to elapse; *s'enfuir* to fly (away); — *le temps* to kill time; *se passer* to take place; occur; — — *de* to dispense; *en passer par là* to undergo; to go through
passage — (m.); a defective (incomplete) — *passage défectueux;* (crossing the Alps): *le passage des Alpes;* cf.: *fran-*

passage—*Continued*
chir to cross; — (*traversée*, f.) crossing (nav.); right of way *droit de passer;* rail. crossing *passage à niveau* (m.); birds of — *oiseaux de —*
passé past; 56, — after
passenger (n.) *passager; voyageur* (*m.*); cf.: *passager* transient (adj.)
passer-by *passant* (m.)
past *passé* (n.) (adj.) last; over, gone by; past 10 *10 hrs. passées*
pât-e (f.), 9, pas-te, dough; *-issier* -try cook; *-isserie* (f.), 9, pastry shop
pâté (m.) blot
patience (f.) —, 81
patient (n.) *le* (*la*) *malade;* to be —, 18, *avoir de la patience; le m— décline* (*s'éteint*) the — is failing
-er (v.) to have patience, 18
pâtre (m.), 11, herdsman; (v.) *paître*, 354
patriarche (m.), 12
patrie (f.), 3, fatherland
patriote, 65
patroness *patronne; protectrice*
patte, 8, leg; (man's) — *jambe* (f.)
paupière (f.), eyelid, 15
pause (rest) *pause* (f.); *repos* (m.); *silence* (m.)
payement (m.) payment
payer (v.) to pay, 230
pays (m.) country; (see *campagne*), 14 — (m.) country (whole), 57; see *nation, patrie*
paysage (m.) landscape, 14
paysan (m.) farmer
paysan (*-ne*, f.) countryman, 30
peau (f.) skin, hide, 13
pêche (f.), 11, peach
pêcheur, 66
peigne (m.) comb, 15; (v.) *se -r* to —
peintre, 67, 354, painter
pelle (f.) shovel, 9
pelote (f.) pincushion; ball; *jouer à la* — to play handball
pencil (n.) (see *to cut*), 352
peninsula *presqu'île* (f.)
pensée (f.) thought
penser (*à*), 209
pensum (m.) —, 21
Pensylvanie (f.) Pennsylvania
pentagone (m.) -n, 18
Pentat-euque (f.), 18, -euch
penultimate *pénultième* (f.); *l'avant-dernière* (*syllabe*)
percussion, 37
perd (ind. of *perdre*)
perdre to lose; (p. p. *perdu*, 13)
perdrix (f.) partridge, 34
perdu (p. p. of *perdre*) lost
père (m.), 4, father
péril (m.) peril
péripétie (f.), 32, incident
perle (f.) pearl; 69, *-é* — barley
per-mettre (v.) (mettre), 53, 351, to -mit
persan, 66
persil (m.) parsley, 25
persist (v.) *insister; continuer*
person *personne* (f.), 55; -al *personnel;* -ally *personnellement; en personne*
personify (v.) *personnifier*
perspi-re (v.) *transpirer;* -ration — (f.); to be -ring *être en transpiration;* all — *être en nage* (f.); cf. it transpired *cela commença à être connu* (to begin to be known)
persuader (v.) to persuade (see 360, vanquish); (induce him to believe or do) *le porter à croire* or *le décider à faire;* (see *to resolve*); *n'influencez point* do not try to influence; *exercer une influence sur* (to urge); cf. *contraindre; le pousser à; se faire prier* to like to be urged; see (*pré*)*valoir;* win (over); *séduire; conseiller de* advise
perte (f.) loss
peser, 11, to weigh; *soupeser*, 229
petit, 92
pétition (f.), 64
peu (*un*), 253, a little (few); rather
peuple (m.) people, 28

peur (f.) fear, 59; *de peur que*
peut, peuvent (*pouvoir*); *n'y — rien* is (are) of no avail, 58, 329
phare (m.) beacon-light, 28
pharynx (m.) —, 34
phénix (m.) —, 34
philosophe, 12, -r
philosoph-y *philosophie* (f.), 25; to be in — *faire sa* —; -ical *-ique*, 25
phonétique (f.) phonetics, 45
phrase (f.), 9, sentence (clause)
phtisie (f.) consumption, 25
physiognomie (f.) -y, 24
physique (f.), 14, physics; (m.) —; — (adj.) physical
piano (m.) —, 17
pièce (f.) piece; room; paper, 56
pied foot, 17; *de — en cap* head to —, 36; — *à terre* (m.) (transient) lodging
piège (m.) trap (see *trappe*)
piéton pedestrian
pilule (f.), 64, pill
pin (m.), 64, pine-tree
pinch (v.) *pincer;* see *gêne*
pipe, 65
piquer (v.) to sting (prick), 356
piqûre (f.) sting, 13
pis, 95, worse
piste (f.) trail; footprints, 346; see *empreindre*
pitié (f.), 64, pity
place *place; lieu; endroit* (m.); *localité* (f.); *emplacement* (m.) — (v.) *placer, mettre, déposer;* to be (put) placed *se placer sur;* see *season*
place (f.), 64; — *forte* fortified city, 37;
placer, 56 (v.), to put
plaie (f.) wound, 14
plaindre, 58, 355, to pity; to be pitied; to complain
plainte (f.) complaint
plaît (Indicative) of *plaire*, 355; 38, likes
plan (m.) plan, 18
plat (m.) dish
plat (adj.) flat, 11
platane (f.) plane-tree, 18
plausible —; see *follow*
play (v.) *jouer;* (n.) *le jeu;* at — *au jeu;* -er (n.) *joueur*
please (v.) *plaire (à);* if you — *s'il vous plaît* (: s. v. p.)
plein full; *en — air* in the open, 38
pléonasme, 64
pli (m.) fold; *-er* to fold, 272
plomb (m.) lead; *à* — perpendicular
plume, 63
plupart, 40, most (of them)
pluriel (m.), 53
plus, 92, 31–9; *en* — in addition, 96; — *d'un*, 58
plus (le): neutre (neuter), 254
plus-que-parfait (m.) pluperfect, 31
ne ... plus jamais, 45, no longer
plusieurs (adj.) several, 253
poêle, 68 (m., f.)
poet *poète* (m.)
poète, 5
poetry *poésie* (f.)
poids (m.), 30, weight
poignard (m.) poniard, 16; *-er* (v.) to stab
poignée (f.) (hand) grasp (colloq.), 16
poindre (v.) to dawn, 356
point (m.), 4, —; *deux -s* colon, 4; — *virgule*, 4; (v. *poindre*, 356); 119
pointure (f.) size (glove)
poire (f.) pear, 16
pois (m.) pea, 16
poivre (m.) pepper, 16
pôle nord (m.) North Pole, 12
police (f.) — (Dept.) force; *la Sûreté* detectives; *à ses trousses* after him; *-r* (v.) to enforce rules for public welfare
polygone (m.) -on, 14
polysyllab-e (f.) -le, 30
pomme (f.) apple, 12
— *de terre* potato, 55
pommier (m.) apple-tree, 29
pompe (f.) pump, 8; *pomper* (v.) to pump
pompier (m.) fireman
popular (adj.) *populaire*
porc (m.), 12, pork, 23
port (m.), 63

porte, 65
porter (v.) to take (carry, bear), 156
portion (f.), 33, —
portrait, 33; 354, (m.)
Portugal, 64
poser (v.) to put; lay in position, 13; see *request, ask*
positif, 95 *comparatif*, 95
bien *mieux*
beaucoup *plus*
mal *pis*
peu *moins*
position (f.) place (adjectives, 82)
position (situation) *position* (f.); *occupation* (f.); *emploi* (m.); *poste; place* (f.); (see adj., 82)
posséder, 55, (v.) to own, to possess, 55
possessif (m.) -ve
possum (m.), 21
poste (f.), 10, post (office); 13, position
posterity, 13, *postérité* (f.)
postiche (adj.) false (hair), 13
pot (m.), 12, pitcher; *au feu* on the fire
pot-au-feu (boiled) meat stew with carrots, etc., 312
pouce (m.), 16, thumb; inch, 304
poule, 67
pouls (m.), 25, pulse; *tâter le* — to feel the —
pourra (*on*), 59, may (one), 329
pourront, (*pouvoir*) may be, 55, 329
powder *poudre* (f.); see *extinguish*
pré (m.) meadow, 11, 354
precede (v.) *précéder* (*de*), 54
précipice (m.), 58
précis, 99; (v.) *préciser; la forme se -e* the form becomes more in evidence
préfix (adj.), 34, set in advance; *-er* (v.) —
préfixe (m.) -x, 34
premier, 79, 304
prend (v. *prendre*), 356, takes
prends-y gardel beware! 5, 172
prennent (v. *prendre*, 356), take
prénom (m.) (Christian) name, 55
préposition (f.) preposition, 56
près (*de*) near
préséance (f.) precedence, 30
presence, 64, *pré*—; in — of *en — de*
present, 4, *présent; actuel;* in the — tense *au présent;* at the — time *à présent* (*actuellement*); *à l'heure qu'il est* (just now); to be — at *être — à* (*assister à*); to be (there) *être présent;* — (gift) —, *don; cadeau, présent* (*m*); to make a — *faire cadeau de;* -ly *pour le moment;* — (v.) *présenter; introduire:* to show in (announce);—(offer) *offrir à;* cf.: *je le lui présente* I offer it to him (her); *je le présente à lui* (*elle*) I present him to him (her)
président (m.), 188
présider, 188
prés-omption (f.) -umption, 28
-tif, 28, apparent (heir)
présupposer, 30, to -e
prêt (*à*) ready, 40
prêtérit (m.), 33, —
prêtre (m.) priest, 53
preuve (f.), 98
prevent, 164, *empêcher* (*de*) or *que* (w. Subj.); *l'élision évite* (*l'hiatus*)
prévôt (m.), 12, provost; marshal
price, 65, *prix* (m.); *avoir le* — to win (gain) the prize, 65; see *bargain*
prie, -es, -ent, 209, pray, etc.
prierai (fut. of *prier*), 10, I shall pray (request)
prière (f.) prayer, request, 17
prima-tie (f.), 32, -cy
prince, 66
print (v.), 346, *imprimer;* -er *imprimeur* (m.); -ing *imprimerie* (f.); out of — *édition épuisée;* (foot) -s *traces, empreinte* (*des pieds*) (f.)
printemps, 64
proceed (v.) *poursuivre*, 358; see *follow*
procès (m.) lawsuit; (*intenter un*) to prosecute at law, 358
prochain, 54, next (adj.) (coming)

produce (v.), 357, *produire* (yield; to exhibit); *reproduire* to — again; to republish; *cet arbre produit* (*porte*) *des fruits* that tree bears fruit; *sa charge — (rapporte) tant par mois* his post (office) yields so much a (per) month; *la guerre produit* (*occasionne*) *de grands maux* war is productive (: gives rise to) of many evils; cf.: *qu'il fasse connaître son avis* (*opinion*) let him give his advice (—); *cela produisit un mauvais effet* (: *fit un, etc.*) it created a bad impression; *qu'il prouve ses titres* let him show (*montre:* exhibit) his title-deeds; *la vigne n'a pas produit cette année* (or: *a manqué*) the vine was a failure (did not yield); *a-t-on produit des témoins?* have witnesses been brought forward? *elle* (*introduira*) *produira sa fille dans le monde* (society); *l'Amérique produit de grands écrivains, de — généraux* (: gives birth to great writers, etc.); cf.: *— a donné le jour à de grands hommes* (produced famous men); *le produit* a product (result); *donner lieu à* (*fournir l'occasion à*) to give rise to (see *misunderstand*); *il a donné lieu à* he was the occasion of; *— production* (f.); cf.: *denrées* (f.) produce (: provisions); *reproduire ces articles* to publish those articles again; *reproduire fidèlement la nature* to imitate (copy) nature faithfully; *droits de reproduction* rights of printing

professeur, 67

profession — (f.); — (*métier* (m.) trade); see *follow*

profil (m.) -e, 25

progress (n.) *progrès* (m.); see *follow*

project (n.) *projet* (m.); (see *follow*), 57

projet, 57; *faire un* — to form, etc.

prolong (v.) *prolonger;* (adj.) *long* (*-ue*); see *follow*

prompt (adj.) quick (*comme* as), 32

prône (m.) short sermon, 12; (instruction); *-r* to boom

pronom sujet, 57, nominative

pronominal (*adverbe*): *y*, 156–7 — (*verbe*), 203

pronoun *pronom* (n.), 26

pronounce (v.) *prononcer*

pronunciation *prononciation* (f.), 43

proper names *noms propres*

proph-ète (m.), 66; *-étie* (f.) -ecy, 32

proposition — (f.); structure of sentence

proposition (f.) proposition (suggested for deliberation); proposal (*demande en mariage*); also: of peace *de paix;* (rhet.) *exposition* (f.); (math.) *théorème* (m.); (gram.), 56, complete sentence: *le sujet, le verbe et l'attribut. Toute proposition se compose de trois termes* any proposition consists of three words. N. B.— In a *phrase* there are as many propositions as there are verbs (conjugated as per: *modes personnels*, p. 144) whether expressed or understood and grouped as: *indépendantes, absolues, principales, ou complétives; directes ou indirectes, circonstancielles, déterminatives* (*noms ou pronoms*), *ou explicatives, coordonnées*, 58, *subordonnées, incidentes*, p. 142. See also: Lesson XII; pp. 282–4; main clause (*que*) subordinate clause: 1. *Indicatif;* 2. *Conditionnel;* 3. *Impératif:* with *que* and subordinate clause: see Subj. or Indicative

propositions complétives subordonnées: generally after *quand, si, que, quel, où*, 58

— *complétives incidentes:* with *qui, que, dont* (in relative clauses)

propositions cir.: les goûts changent quand on vieillit; il est joyeux quand il sort
— *sub.: ils regrettent la vie quand elle leur échappe*
— *incidente: le fer, qui est un métal précieux*
— *explicative: le fer qui est un métal précieux, est tiré du sol de la terre*
— *absolue: (celle qui par elle-même énonce un sens complet)*
— *principale: régit les autres propositions, et dans la construction régulière occupe toujours le premier rang: l'ennui est une maladie, dont le travail est le remède*
— *complétive: sert de complément*
— — *directe (remplit le rôle de complément direct); les anciens croyaient que la terre tourne*
— — *indir.: chaque jour nous avertit que la mort approche*
— — *déterminative (rôle de complément déterminatif): les fables que La Fontaine a composées sont des chefs-d'œuvre*
propre, 12, own; clean; 54, proper
propriété (f.), 37, property
prose (f.), 13
prosecute (v.), 358, (see *follow*) *poursuivre*
prospectus (m.), 30, —
protec-teur, 66, (*-trice*, f.), 3, patroness
Protestant, 6, *protestant;* -ism *-isme* (m.), 64
protestantisme, 6, Protestantism
prouver (v.) to prove, 60
proxy, 66
prudemment (adv.) prudently, 19
prudent (adj.) —, 26
Prussia, 192, *la Prusse;* -n *prussien*
psaume (m.) psalm, 28
pseudonyme (m.) (pen) name, 28
pst! (psitt or ps't) [: simply to call attention while hissing]
psyché (f.) standard mirror, 14
publ-ic (*-ique*) (adj.), 53
publication *publication* (f.); *ouvrage* (m.)
publisher (n.) *éditeur* (m.)
puis then, 304
puisque, 167
pull (v.) *tirer;* — out *retirer;* — through *se tirer d'affaire* (*: savoir conduire sa barque* to paddle his own canoe); see 359, *extract* or *traire; il tira la langue* he put out his tongue; *se tirer de* (*se dégager*) to get out of; *d'un mauvais pas* from a bad predicament
pulpe (f.) pʊlp, 13
punch (m.) —, 21
punctua-te (v.) *ponctuer* (*une phrase*); -tion *ponctuation* (f.)
pupil *élève* (m., f.); *-le;* orphan; *protégé*
pupille (f.) apple of the eye, 25
pure, 4, *pur;* — style *style pur;* — loss *en pure perte;* (Ant.: impure *impur;* foul air *air vicié*)
purpose (n.) *objet, dessein* (m.); see *goal, expect;* reach a goal *atteindre un but; il vise* (*tire juste*) *bien* he aims right (— a good shot); *il vise au but* he aims at the mark; *il y arrive le premier* he reaches the goal first; *avoir pour objet* to have in view (to be the aim); *le coucher en joue* to take aim at him
pursue (v.) *poursuivre;* see *follow*, 358
put (on), 35, *mettre;* — out (fire) *éteindre;* — a question *poser une q—;* cf.: to ask a question *faire une q—;* to ask a favor *demander une faveur;* — (down) *déposer;* — (in position) *poser;* (place) *placer*
Pyrénées (f.), 14, —
Pythagor-as, 6, *Pythagore;* -ean *-icien* (m.), 78

Q

quadragé-naire, 28, of 40 yrs. of age
-simal, 28, —
-sime (f.), 28, -a

quadra-ngul-aire (adj.), 28, -ar
-tri-ce (f.), 28, -x
-ture (f.) —
quadri-fi-de (adj.), 28, -d
-latéral (adj.), 28, —
-lle (m.) —, 25
-syllab-e (m.), 28, -le
quadru-mane (m.), 28, —
-pède (m.), 28 -ed
-ple, 305; *-r* (v.) to —
quai, 93
quaker, 24
qualifier (v.) to qualify, 55
quality *qualité* (f.); *mérite* (m.), 25
quand when, 168
quant (à) as for, 28
quantième, 304
quantit-é, 55, -y
— (*adverbes de*), 253
quarantaine (f.) (about 40), 303
quarante (m.), forty, 303
quart (m.), 304
quartier (Latin) Latin Quarter, 28
quartz (m.), 24
quasi, 25; *la -modo*, 28
quatorz-e (14), 303; *-ième* (14th)
quatr-e four; *-ième* fourth; *-ième-ment* -ly, 303
quatuor (m.) quartet (-te), 24
que, 131; 253, — *de;* than, 92
que, 47, why (+ *ne*)
quel, 135; *quelle*, etc., 32; what (sort of); who
— *que soit* whatever may be, 56, 163
quelque, 113, 163
quelquefois sometime (s), 55
quelqu'un, 30, some (any) one
querelle (f.) quarrel; *-r* (v.) to —, 29
qu'est-ce que c'est que ça? what is that? 10
question, 4, *question* (f.); what a — *belle demande!* 33, unfair — (— *indiscrète*), *interrogation;* out of the — *il ne faudrait point y songer!* to — *interroger; questionner* (quiz); — (ask a) *faire une* —, 25; to put a —, 58, *poser une* —; to ask a favor *demander une faveur; interpeller* (Parl.) to interrupt; without — (undoubtedly) *hors de doute;* it is a — of *il s'agit de;* see *follow*
questionnaire grammatical g— drill, 25
qui (rel.) who, that, which, 131
quiconque, 135
quidam (m.), 19, a man (by the name of?)
quiet (v.) *calmer; pacifier*
quille (f.) ninepins, 26
quincaille (*-rie*) (f.), 29, hardware (store)
quin-conce (m.) -cunx, 29
quinine (f.) —, 28
quinquagésime (f.), -a, 29
(*Charles*)*-Quint*, 20, Charles the Fifth
quintal (m.) — (100 wt.)
quinte (f.) (⅕) mus.
quintessence (f.) —, 29
quinteux (adj.), 29, subject to a fit (of cough)
quintuple (m.), 305
quinzaine (f.), 251, fortnight (-ly)
quinze (15), 303
quinzième, 303
quite (adv.) *tout à fait; un peu; tout aussi bien* — as much (colloq.)
quittance (f.), 267; *quitte*, 267
quitter (v.) to leave; (see *partir*)
qui-vive, 170
quoique, 163
quotation *citation* (f.); *guillemet* (« »)
quote (v.) *citer*

R

race (f.), 9, race; *de bonne* — of good breed (stock); -r *trotteur* (m.)
racing *courses*
radis (m.) radish, 30
rage (f.), 9, rage; fury; it is the rage *cela fait fureur;* or: *cela jouit d'une grande vogue;* cf.: rabies; see *enrager* (: *rager, pester*)
raide (adj.) stiff (rigid), 16
raideur (f.) stiffness, 16

raidir (v.) to stiffen
raie (f.) parting (hair), 15
rail (m.) rail, 25
raison (f.) reason; *-ner* (v.) to reason
râle (m.), 11, rattling (in the throat); *-r* to be gasping for breath
ramas (m.) (cheap) lot; *-ser*, 313, to pick (up)
rame (f.) oar, 8; *-ur*, 66, rower (oarsman); *-r* (v.) to row
random (at) *à tort et à travers*
rang (m.) rank, 18; *-er* (v.) to arrange
rangée (f.) row, 24
rapide (n.) express-train, 12
rapid-e, (adj.), 12, swift; *-ité* (f.) -ity
rapporter (*se*), 55, to refer (to be related), 53
rapsodie (f.), 28, rhapsody
rare (adj.), 47
ras (adj.) close (shave), 11; *-er* (v.) to raze, 352
rastaquouère (m.), 17, prodigal foreigner
rat (m.) —, 67; *-ière* (f.) rat-trap
ravoir to have again (Inf. only)
rayon (m.) ray (of light); — (dept. store), 14
read (v.), 349, *lire;* to be — *à lire;* -er *livre de lecture* (f.); *lecteur* (*lectrice*); — his mail (letters) — *son courrier;* with a magnifying-glass *à la loupe;* he longs to hear from you *il lui tarde de vous lire : (de recevoir de vos nouvelles);* — — (cursorily) to glance *parcourir;* — *interpréter;* — backward *à rebours;* aloud *à haute voix;* correct proofs *lire des épreuves; ainsi conçu* reads thus (worded); *ses propres termes* his own words; the purport of the letter *la teneur de la lettre;* his turn to — *c'est à lui à lire;* at sight *à livre ouvert; à première vue;* decipher *déchiffrer* or: to read; — his thought *l— dans sa pensée;* see *to call*
real *réel; ce qui est* — what is real; -ly *en réalité* (f.); *réellement;* a trunk too heavy — *une malle réellement trop lourde*
réali-sable, (*projet*) -zable
reality, 54, *réalité* (f.); *en réalité*
realize *constater mon erreur: se rendre compte de* (as a matter of fact); *réaliser:* (to make real) or *accomplir; s'en faire une idée juste*
realization (n.) *accomplissement* (m.)
reason, *raison* (f.); see *follow*
receipt (n.) *reçu;* full — *quittance* (f.)
receive (v.) *recevoir*, 249
récemment recently, 19
récent (adj.) recent
recherché, 54, sought af*er, refined
récognition (f.) —, 24
reçoive (v. *recevoir*), 248, 16
recommandée (*lettre*) or *chargée* registered
reçu (*recevoir*), 248, received; a receipt
recueil (m.) collection; *-lir* (irreg.); see *cueillir*, 313
rédempteur Redeemer, 28
rédemption (f.) Redemption
rédiger to write (word), 53; to edit
reduce, 357, (abate; to curtail); *rendre moindre* (to —, to lessen the number); cf.: *transformer; du blé* wheat; *en farine* into flour; *on le réduit à l'obéissance* he was made to obey; see *taire; on subjugua l'Europe; réduis tes dépenses* curtail your expenses; *la réduction d'une fraction* a fraction reduced; *l'affaire est réduite à ce point* the matter has come up to this stage; *quel réduit* (*logement misérable*) what a lodging (hovel)! *réduire en poussière* (dust) to pulverize; see *bargain;* cf.: *on le mettra à la raison* he will be brought to his senses; *réduit au silence* silenced; *voilà où il en est*

reduce—*Continued*
réduit! see what a desperate situation he is in! cf.: *il est aux abois* (hard up); at his wits' end; *il est dans de beaux draps* or (: *dans une situation fâcheuse*) he is in a predicament (pretty pickle)
réel (adj.), 58, real
refer (v.) *se rapporter à; s'agir de; avoir trait à; renvoyer;* -ence *référence* (f.); *renvoi* (m.), 5; in — to (*par rapport à*) *touchant;* see *traire; lettre de recommandation* (f.) letter of reference
reflux (m.), 114
refus (m.), 30, -al; (v.) *-er* to decline
regards to all *meilleures amitiés à . . .* or: *rappelez-moi* (*nous*) *au bon souvenir de . . .;* see *remembrance* (*s*)
règle (f.), 54, rule; ruler; *-ment* (m.); rules and regulations; *— générale* in most cases
réglementaire as per regulations (mil.): in compliance with the rules
régler (v.) to rule; to plan; to settle (*solder un compte*)
réglisse, 65
règne (m.) reign, 24
régner (v.) to reign; 54, to prevail, 24
régulier, 58, 207, regular
Reims, 20
reine (f.) queen, 15
réjouir (*de*) to rejoice, 164, (at), 17
réjouissance (f.) rejoicing
relaps (n., adj.) -ing, 28
relatif à, 53, bearing on
— (*pronom ou conjonctif*), 131
relativement, 58, regarding
relax (v.); *la promenade distrait* (*distraire*), 359, a walk affords relaxation; *détendre l'esprit* to — the mind; *elle se distrait* she -es her mind; *se divertir* to enjoy oneself; *s'en donner à cœur joie* to enjoy oneself thoroughly; *il se récrée* he is taking recreation; *la récréation* recess (-time); *relâche* (*à l'Opéra*) no performance
religieux (adj.), 54
religion *religion* (f.), 54; *profession* (f.)
remembrance (to all) *un bon souvenir à tous* (*: à la famille*, etc.)
remet, 10, (*remettre*), 351; to put back, 57
remettre (v.) replace; (see *mettre*); 57, 351
remmener (v.), 18, 229, to take (lead) back
remords (m.) remorse, 19
remorse (n.) *remords* (m.); see *follow*
remuer (v.), 13, to stir (move); to till (soil)
rencontrer (v.) to meet; *se* — to meet; to be met, 54
rendre (v.) to return (give back); to render; *se* — to go (repair) to
rendu (p. p. *rendre*), 47
rêne (f.) rein (check), 68
renvoi (m.), 5, reference; 310
renvoyer, 310
repas (m.) meal (*prendre ses*), 30
repeat (v.) *répéter; dire; prononcer de nouveau*
répéter (v.) to repeat, 228
repetition *répétition* (f.); — *générale* general rehearsal
replace (v.) *remplacer;* to take the place of
reply (in) *en réponse à*
répondre (*à*), 36, 148, 92
réponse (f.) answer
repos (m.), 12, rest; *se reposer* to —, 267
represent (v.) *représenter*
reptile (m.) —, 28
reputed (to be) *réputé pour;* (see *estimer, valoir*): *tenir pour* or *considérer*
require, 310, (v.) *exiger; demander;* see *follow;* (*falloir*) to be necessary or must; *tout ce qui est nécessaire, c'est de* all that is required is to; or *tout ce*

require—*Continued*
qu'il faut, c'est de; cf.: *que voulez-vous de lui?* what do you want of him? *il exige cela de tous* he requires that of all; *elle est exigeante* she is over-particular; *le voleur demande la bourse ou la vie* a thief says: your money or — life! cf.: *requérir* (*de*) to request; *allez requérir les agents de paix* go and request the police officers to come; *un requérant* a plaintiff; *cette nouvelle mérite confirmation* that news requires confirmation; cf.: *il se fait tirer l'oreille* (pull the ear) he requires much pressing; *on le prie de venir* (is requested to come); *aux grands maux les grands remèdes* (m.) desperate diseases require desperate remedies; *faites votre demande par écrit* present your request in writing; *il appuie sa demande* he seconds her request; *que demande-t-il?* what does he want? *je ne demande pas mieux* I am only too glad; *demandez-lui de* ask (of) him to . . .; *demandez à monsieur de venir* ask Mr. to come; *on vous demande au téléphone* you are wanted on the 'phone; *elle ne demande pas mieux* nothing would please her better
residence *résidence* (f.), 27
résident (n.) —, 188
résider (v.), 188
resolute *résoudre*; (see *advisedly*)
respect (m.), 33; *-er*
respectfully yours (see *expression*)
respect humain (m.) self-respect
responsabili-té (f.) -ty, 22
ressenti (*e*) keenly felt, 46
ressentir (*sentir*), 320, to feel (inwardly); (discomfort, *malaise*)
rest *repos* (m.); to — *reposer;* -ing *en se reposant*
rester (v.), 56, to remain (stay)
restrict (v.), 341, *restreindre;* (see *éteindre;* (check) : *mettre un frein* (*à*); see *brake*
résultat (m.), 59, result
résumer, 58, to sum up
retard (m.) delay, 36; (v.) *-er* to delay
rétréci, 12 (see *rétrécir*), shortened
rétrécir (v.) to shorten (narrow); to shrink
return (v.) *retourner* (*de*); or: *aller de nouveau* (*dans*); *être de retour* to be back; — it *rendez-le;* — (to come back) *revenir;* — *renvoyer; rentrer tard* to come home late; — to the point in question *revenez au fait* (*sujet*); — (yield) *rapporter;* — the compliment *rendre la pareille;* I — thanks *je vous en remercie;* — to work *retournez* (*remettez-vous*) *au travail;* — — (go) — *s'en retourner; être revenu* to have — (to be back)
— (n.) *retour* (m.); in — for *en retour* (*récompense*) *de;* by — post *par le retour du courrier;* — ticket *billet d'aller et retour;* single — — *d'aller* (*de retour*)
réunion (f.) meeting, 3, 56
réunir (v.) to gather; to combine, 56, 3
rêve (m.), 11, dream; (v.) *-r* (*à*) to —
revient (v. *venir*, 322) returns, 29
rez-de-chaussée, 35, ground floor
rhéteur (m.) rhetorician, 30
rhétor-ique (f.) -ic, 30
rheumatism (n.) *rhumatisme* (m.), 4; (*le fait souffrir* makes him suffer, 320) or: he suffers from —
rhum (m.) rum, 21
rhume (m.), 24, cold (*de cerveau*) in the head
rich (adj.) *riche*, 12; to (grow) become — *s'enrichir; devenir* —; -ness *richesse* (f.); riches *richesse*
ride (f.), 12, wrinkle; *-r* (v.) to —
ridicule, 32 (adj.), ridiculous
rien du tout, 5, nothing (at all); *rien*, 119, nothing; *pour un rien* for — at all (: the least thing), 19

rig (outfit) *accoutrement* (m.); (colloq.) *nippes* (f.) or: *vieux vêtements* old (worn-out) clothes; *linge usé* old linen; to — (nav.) *gréer*
rime (f.) rhyme, 10
ripe (adj) *mûr;* -n (v.) *mûrir*
riposte (f.) retort, 13; (v.) *-r* to — *rire* to laugh, 357
rive (f.), 12, shore (bank)
rivière (f.), 65
roar *rugir, gronder, se faire entendre; le bruit du canon* (*tonnerre*) the roaring of the cannon (thunder); *de colère* anger; -ing *grondement, rugissement* (*s*) (*de la tempête* of a storm); *le lion rugit* a lion roars: *le cri* the cry; [*pousser des rugissements*] *semblable à celui de* like that of; *bruit comparé à* noise compared to; see (*tonner*) *to thunder; = le tonnerre ne tombe pas toutes les fois qu'il tonne* = threats are not always carried out
robe (f.) gown; coat (horse)
roc (m.) rock, 47, 12
roche (f.) stone
rocher (m.) rock, 29; (*: escarpé et élevé* steep and high)
rôder (v.) to roam (prowl)
roi (m.), 4, king
rôle (m.) — (part); *jouer un* — to play a —, 12
romain, 66 (n. and adj.), 53
romanes (*langues*) Romance Languages
romsteck (m.) rump steak, 21
root *racine* (f.); see *traire*, 359; square — *la racine carrée;* -ed (deeply) *avoir de profondes racines;* to take — *prendre racine; s'implanter quelque part;* to settle somewhere; root (of a word) *le mot primitif; la 4e puissance* the 4th power; *il y demeura longtemps* (see *to live*)
rosbif (m.) roast beef, 13
rose, 64, —; pink — cf.: *le rose* pink (color)
rose *rose* (f.); -- tree *rosier* (m.); — color *teint de rose;* — water *eau de rose* (f.); *couleur vermeille des joues* (cheeks) *et des lèvres* (lips)); rosy complexion *teint rosé; voir tout couleur de rose* to see everything roseate (: *voir tout en beau*) to be an optimist; *il n'y a point de roses sans épines* no rose without its thorn; no pleasure without alloy *point de plaisir sans peine*
rosée (f.) dew, 64
rôti (m.) roast, 36; *-e* (f.) toast (-ed bread); *-r* (v.) to —, 343
roué (m.) debauchee (rake), 17
rouge, 16, red; *-âtre* reddish (sandy)
rougeole (f.) measles, 15
rougir (v.) to blush
rouille (f.) rust; (v.) *-r* to —, 17
rouler, 297, to roll
roulis, 279, rolling
rue, 64 (f.), 3
run (v.) *courir*, 312; see *follow*
rusé (adj.), 13, artful, cunning
"rush" *d'urgence* (*urgent, pressé*)
Russe (m.) Russian; *Russie* (f.) Russia

S

sac (m.), 11, bag (satchel); — *de voyage* traveling-case
sacre (m.), 9, coronation; see *ceindre; ceignez votre tête du bandeau royal* crown your head with the diadem; (v.) *sacrer* to crown
sacré sacred; (v.) *consacrer* consecrate; *pain bénit* consecrated bread
sage wise (good), 35
sain (adj.), sound
saint (n.) *saint*, 10
sais know (*savoir*), 329
salade (f.) salad, 11
salle (f.) (*de classe*), 9, classroom; — *des conférences*, 349, Lecture Hall; — *à manger*, 74, dining-room; — *de récréation* recess —, 359; (*distraire*)

salve *onguent* (m.); see (v.) *frotter*
same *même;* just the — *tout de même*
samedi Saturday, 125; *le* —, 6, on —
sang (m.) blood, 18; *suer* — *et eau* to toil hard, 37
sanglant bloody
sanglier, 67
sanhédrin (m.) —
sanitary *sanitaire* (adj.); cf.: *empêcher la propagation des maladies contagieuses* to check the spread of contagious diseases
sans without, 55, 181
santé, 58, health
satiété (f.), 33, satiety
satisfaisant (*satisfaire*, 347) satisfactory
Saturday(s) *samedi; le* — (on) —
sauf (adj.) safe; except, 53; — *conduit*, 36; — *erreur*, 192
Saül, 7
saurait (*savoir*), 329, could not (cannot)
saut (m.), 13, leap; *-er* (v.) to leap
sauvage, 59, savage; wild
sauve, 170; (v. *-r*)
savant learned, 5; (see *savoir*, 329)
save (see 89) (v.) *sauver;* see *devoir*
savoir (m.) knowledge; — (v.) to know, 329
say (tell) *dire* (v.), 344; that is to — *c'est-à-dire*
scandale, 30, scandal
sceau (m.) seal; *sceller* to seal, 30
scène, 65, scene; *se passer* to take place
scepti-ique -ical, 28
sceptre, 31
schéma schema, 24
schisme (m.) schism, 24
school *école* (f.); at (to, in) — *à l'école;* boarding — *pension, institution* (f.); *pensionnat;* — day *jour de classe;* —boy *écolier;* day — *externat* (m.); —master *maître d'école;* — year *l'année scolaire* (f.); Law — *Faculté de Droit;* Medical — *Faculté de Médecine* (f.)
scholastical *scholastique*
science (f.) —, 18
scintill-er (v.) to -ate, 25; (see *luire*)
scold (v.) *gronder;* -ing *réprimande* (f.); to give a — *gronder; réprimander; reprendre;* cf.: a lecture *une semonce*
scorbut (m.) scurvy, 30
scorpion (m.), 30
sculp-ter (v.) to -ture (chisel), 28
sculpteur sculptor, 28
sculpture (f.) —, 28
sea *mer* (f.); over — *d'outre-mer*
séance (f.), 3, sitting (meeting)
search (v.) *chercher avec soin; faire des recherches* (f.); in — of *en quête de; se mettre en quête de* to —; (n.) *perquisition* (f.); investigation (probe); *visiter* or *faire la visite* to go in —
season *saison* (f.); see *opportunity;* dull — *morte-saison* (f.); timely (*être*) *de saison* or *à propos; en temps et lieu convenables* in suitable time and place; *hors de saison* out of season
seasons, 64
sec dry, 79, 23; *sécher* (v.), 226
second, 55, *second*, 303, *-e* (f.); *-er* (v.) to second, 23
secondaire secondary, 23
secourir, 312; *secours*, 32
secrétaire secretary
secundo, 21
see, -ing (saw, seen), 331, *voir, voyant* (*vis, vu*)
seed *graine* (f.); -y (feel) *mal à l'aise* (discomfort); *grenu* (*beaucoup de graines*) abounding with -s (bearing —); *blé grenu* wheat gone to seed; shabby clothes *habits râpés; usé jusqu'à la corde* worn-out, threadbare
seem (v.) *sembler* (*paraître*); see *Subj.* or *follow*, 354
seigle (m.) rye, 15
sein (m.) breast

seing (*privé*) (m.) private seal, 19, 24
seiz-e (16), 303; *-ième* (16th)
selon, 38, according to (*: suivant; au dire de*)
semblable, 57, similar, such
semer (v.) to sow, 229
sempiternel (adj.) everlasting, 19
sens (m.), 30 ; — *devant derrière* wrong side first; — *dessus dessous*, 31, topsy-turvy
sens, 53, meaning (sense), 59
— *partitif*, 75
sensorium (m.) —, 28
sent feels, 47 (v. *sentir*)
sentence (gram.) *phrase* (f.); — (law) *sentence* (f.)
sentiment (m.) —
sentir (irreg.) to feel; to smell, 320
sentry, 67
separate (v.) *séparer;* (adv.) -ly *séparément;* separation — (f.); (to part) *se quitter*
séparer (v.), 55, to separate; *se* — to part
sept (7), 303; [*-ante*] for 70; 303
septembre (m.), 180
septentrion (m.) north (-ern), 82
sera will be, 292
serein (adj.) serene, 19
— (n.) night-dew, 19
serf (n.), 31
sérieux (adj.) serious, 41
seront will be, 292
serpent (n.) snake, 49; (v.) *-er* to meander
serre (f.), 11, green-house; talon — *-frein* (m.) brake
servant (m.) (*-e*, f.) *domestique; serviteur* (m.); *servante* (f.)
servante, 66
serve (v.), 321, *servir;* to be useful to (— *à*); — at (wait on) tables — *à table*
servir (v.), 321, to serve; — *à* to be useful to; — *de* to serve as; *se* — *de* to use (make use of)
serviteur, 66
ses (poss. adj.), 118
seul alone; 56, single
seulement, 5, only; cf.: *ne* — *que* only, 119, (but)
sève (f.) sap, 11
several (adj.) *plusieurs*, 253
severe (adj.) *doux; climat rigoureux* severe climate; *lois sévères* rigid laws; stern look *regard sévère;* austere customs (life) *mœurs -s;* austere style of architecture (: plain, etc.) *architecture sévère* (f.); -ly *sévèrement; avec sévérité; sans indulgence* (f.); heavy cold *gros* (violent) *rhume* (m.)
shafts *traits* (m.); see *traire*
shake (v.) *secouer;* (hands) *serrer la main;* (grasp); (clasp) *enlacer;* (or: *étreindre*) *un adversaire* adversary
shampooing (see *frotter*)
shape *forme;* in the — of *en forme de;* (v.) *façonner, donner la forme de*
sharpen (v.), 352; (see *to cut*) tools *faire l'émoulage des outils* (m.)
shine (v.), 350, *luire* (glitter) *paraître;* (glisten) *reluire;* see *appear*
shoot (v.) *tirer;* — (fire) *faire feu* (m.); — (aim at) *viser* or — *très juste; partir* (gun, *fusil*) to go off
short *court, bref;* in — *en résumé, bref;* -ly *sous peu*
show (v.) *marquer, indiquer, montrer, faire voir; prouver;* — (n.) *spectacle* (m.)
shut (close) *fermer;* (lock) *fermer à clé* (*clef*); to bolt — *au verrou* (*verrouiller*)
si, 3, if, 146, whether; so, as (since); however (+ adj. and Subj.); suppose (+ imperf.)
si (*tellement*), 4, so (to such an extent)
sick (ill) *malade;* -ness *maladie;* -ly (person) *maladif*
sied (*asseoir*), 324, fits on (becoming), 23
sien (*le*), 129, 19
sienne (*la*), 129
sifflet (m.) whistle

siffler (v.) to whistle, 47
sign, 8, *signe;* — of rain, 328, — *de pluie; indice* (m.); *marque* (f.); to make the — of the Cross *faire le signe de la croix;* — (v.), 24, *signer;* — your name *signez (: apposez votre signature)*
signifier, 59, (v.) to mean
s'il (si elle) if it (he); if she (it), 117
silence, 64, (v.) *taire*, 359; *se taire* to keep silent; *faites-le taire* silence him (gag); *taire un secret* not to reveal a secret; *gardez silence!* be silent; *rompre le silence:* see *rompre; imposez-lui le silence* silence him; *réduire au s—* to silence; *observer (garder) le s—* to keep silent; *passer sous silence* not to mention; cf.: *rentrer dans sa coquille* (shell) (to draw in his horns) to keep s—; *se tenir coi (: ne dire mot; souffler mot)* not to say a word; *il n'a pas dit un traître mot* he didn't utter a (single) word; *ne pas desserrer les dents (se t— obstinément)* not to open — lips; *il a la langue trop longue* he can't hold his tongue; *on ne peut lui arracher une parole* you cannot get a word out of him; *ils lui ont rivé son clou* they gave him a clincher; cf.: *tirer les vers du nez* (pump) to draw him out; *il se tut* he kept silent; *qui se tait (qui ne dit mot) consent* silence gives consent; *ces choses ne doivent pas se taire* those things must not be kept secret; cf.: *on entendrait voler une mouche* you could hear a pin drop; *on étouffa l'affaire* the affair was hushed up
silex (m.) flint, 34
simple (adj.), 46, plain, 20
simplification (f.), 53
simpli-fier (v.) to -fy
sing (v.) *chanter; à ravir* admirably; *le faire* — to have him sing; *lui faire — une chanson* to have him — a song; *la lui faire chanter* to have him sing it
singe, 67
singulier (m.), 53
sink (down) *enfoncer;* -ing (drive a nail) *enfoncer un clou; enfoncement* (m.); — fund *fonds d'amortissement* (m.); *enfoncer une porte ouverte* much trouble over a trifle; (to force an open door)
Sir *monsieur;* -s *messieurs;* (letter: Dear Sir)
sirop (m.) sirup, 28
sitting *séance* (f.); *service* (m.)
six (6), 303; *-ième* (6th)
sizain (m.) 6 lines (stanza)
sky (n.) *ciel* (m.), 71; *firmament; les cieux* (pl.); *azur* (m.); — light *lucarne* (f.); —scrapers *(gratte-ciel) qui touche aux nues* (clouds)
smile, 357, *sourire* (m.); see (v.) *sourire; jeunesse* (f.) *au front riant* youth with its smiling face; *la fortune vous a souri* fortune smiled upon you; see *rire; ébaucher (indiquer légèrement) un* — to sketch a s—
so *si (tellement:* to such an extent; point); and so forth; see *follow;* so much (many) *tant (de);* so, so *(passable) comme ci, comme ça*
sobr-e, 8, sober; — *de (modéré, retenu)* chary; *-été* soberness
sœur (f.), 8, sister
sofa (m.) sofa, 9
soft *doux;* -ly *doucement*
soi (pron.) self (one), itself, 16; — *-même* oneself; — *-disant* self-called
soie (f.), 64; *soierie* (f.) silks
soif, 65
soigneusement carefully
soin (m.), 59
soir (m.) evening; *-ée* (f.) (entire) —, 16
soit ... soit (v. *être*) either, or, 59
soixante (60), 303
sol (m.) soil, 25

solde (f.) see *bargain;* soldier's pay, 12
solder (v.) to pay (settle)
soldier (m.) *soldat*
soleil (m.) sun, 37
solennel (adj.) solemn, 18
sombre (adj.) gloomy (sombre), 20, 348
some (any) *du, de l', de la, des; quelque(s)* or *quelqu'un* or (*certain*) *quelques-uns; les uns; les autres* some; others; — more *encore d'autres*
somme, 68
som-met (m.) summit; *-mité* (f.) the very top, 26
somptueux, 28, sumptuous
son his, her, its, 118
son (m.) sound
song *chanson* (f.); *ne savez-vous qu'une ch—?* are you singing the same song over and over again?
songe (n.), 10, dream; *-r* (*à*) to think (dream) of, 14
sonner to ring (peal); to herald, 48; to ring for
sonore, 46
sont (v.) *être*, 291
sorbet (m.) sherbet, 13
sort (v. *sortir*, 321); comes out, 29
sorte, 168; 57, kind
(*de*) *sorte que* so that, 29
(*est*) *sorti*, 194, (*sortir*)
sortie (f.), 64, exit
sortir (irreg. v.), 57, 321
sot, 78
sottise (f.) foolishness, 57
sou (m.), 8, penny; *5 centimes*, 304
soubresaut (m.) sudden start, 30, 311
soûl tipsy (full), 25
sound (v.) *se faire entendre; sonner; rendre le son de;* — (n.) *son* (m.)
sound (adj.) *sain* (see *health*), *robuste*
soupçon (m.) suspicion; *-ner* (v.) to suspect, 54
soupçonneux (adj.) suspicious, 54
soupir (m.) sigh; *-er* (v.) to —, 47
source (f.) spring, 16, 358
sourcil (m.) eye-brow, 25
sourd deaf, 36
sourire (v.) to smile, 357; (n.) —, 22
souris (f.), 67
sous (prep.) under
soutient (v. *soutenir*, 322) supports, 27
souvent often
soyez (*être*), 35, 291
speak (see 1er Group) fully illustrated; -er *orateur* (m.)
special (adj.) *spécial, particulier*, 53; -ly *surtout, principalement*
spécimen (m.) —, 19
spirituel (adj.), 78, witty; mental
split (v.) *fendre;* see *to cut*
squelette (m.), 30, skeleton
stagnant (adj.) stagnant
stamp (1 cent) *timbre-poste de 5 centimes;* postage — — (m.)
star (n.) *étoile; astérisque* (f.); -ry (spangled) *étoilé*
start (n.) *commencement* (m.); see *finir; débuter dans une entreprise difficile* to make a — in an arduous task; *partir*
station (n.) *gare* (f.); *station* (f.)
statue (f.), 30
still (yet) *encore;* — waters *eaux dormantes*
stop *pause* (f.); — *arrêt* (m.); to — (v.) *s'arrêter;* see *parler, finir*
street *rue* (f.)
stretch (out one's limbs) *s'étirer* (colloq.); *s'allonger en étendant ses membres; il a le bras endormi* his arm is numb; *se dégourdir les membres* to limber them; *s'étendre dans le fauteuil* to — one's self at full length in an armchair; see *extend;* at a — *d'un trait; tout d'une haleine; l'esprit tendu* his (her) mind alert; *les bras tendus* with outstretched arms; a — of imagination *une exagération* (*un effort exagéré d'esprit*); *l'auditoire était tout yeux, tout oreilles* the audience was all atten-

stretch—*Continued*
tion; *on prête l'oreille* (listen attentively); *la tension des muscles* muscles under severe strain; *t— d'esprit* strain of mind; *être suspendu à ses lèvres* to drink in his words
strict, 33, *sévère;* -ly *proprement, précisément, exactement*
strike (v.) *sonner; battre; frapper à la porte* (knock); — out with a dash (see *traire);* an idea -s me *il me vient à l'esprit*
study (n.) *étude* (f.); *se livrer à l'*— to apply (devote) one's self to —; *maître d'étude* supervisor of studies; — (v.) *étudier;* student *élève* (m., f.); *étudiant* (*-e*)
style (m.), 14, style
su (*savoir*) (p. p.) known; *au vu et au — de tous* right before everyone
suave (adj.) —, 17
subject *sujet* (m.); topic, subject-matter; [*le verbe s'accorde en nombre et en personne avec le sujet*]
subjonctif, 58
subordonné, 58, dependent
substantif (m.), 53
subtil (adj.) subtle, 25; *-ité* (f.), 59, delicate points
subtract, 359, *soustraire;* -ion, *soustraction* (f.); *se —* (*se dérober*) *à* to avoid (by shrewdness or fraud); (to take off) *retrancher;* (*faire échapper*) to make (any) one escape; *le signe —* (*moins*) *indique qu'il faut soustraire*
succinct (adj.) —, 33
succomber (v.) to yield, 47
such (adj.) *tel* (*-le*, f.); — as *tel que;* — a man *un tel homme*
sud (m.) south, 8; *le Midi de la France;* -ern France, 64, 36
suer (v.) to sweat; cf.: *transpirer*, 17
suffer, 320, *souffrir* (*de*); -ing *souffrance, douleur* (f.); -er *personne qui souffre;* — losses *éprouver des pertes* (f.); — (for it) *en porter la peine*
suffice (v.) *suffire* (to be equal to), 358; *souvent peu de chose suffit pour calmer une grande colère;* a little rain lays a great dust; cf.: *petite pluie abat grand vent; à chaque jour suffit sa peine* sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof; *le peu qu'ils ont leur suffira* the little they have will suffice; *un rien suffit pour le froisser* it takes little to hurt his feelings; *il n'en faut pas davantage pour le froisser* that is sufficient to hurt his feelings; *cela suffit* or *me suffit* I had enough *or* no more, please; cf.: *c'est assez* or *en voilà assez* that is enough; *en voilà pour trois mois* that will do for three months; *il suffit qu'il se prononce* his word is enough; *il suffit de parler* you have but to say the word; cf.: *à bon entendeur salut* a word to the wise (suffices); *on ne se le laissera pas dire deux fois* no need to be told twice; *contentement passe richesse* enough is as good as a feast; *il en a par-dessus la tête* or: *il en est rassasié* (sick of it) he had enough of it; *cela suffira à vos dépenses* that will be enough for your expenses; cf.: *suffit* or *cela suffit* (it suffices) enough (: no more); *ils ont suffisance de provisions* they have provisions enough; *ils ont des livres en suffisance* (*à suffisance*) they have books enough (: a plenty); *cinq dollars sont suffisants* five dollars are enough; *c'est un homme fort suffisant* a very conceited person, 59; *suppléer à l'insuffisance* (f.) to supply the deficiency (: to make up the difference)
suffisant (adj.) sufficient (*suffire*, 358)
suggérer (v.) to suggest, 22, 33

suggestion (f.) —, 33
suicide (m.) —, 16; (*se*) *-r* (v.) to commit —, 16
suie (f.) soot, 16
suis am, 3, (v. *être*, 291); —, 358
Suisse (f.), 192, Switzerland
— Swiss, 66
suit (n.) *habit;* (full) — *complet*
suit (v. *suivre*, 358) follows, 55; (v.) *convenir; seoir: il lui sied* (*va*) *bien* it fits him well
suitable *convenable*
suite (f.), 16, continuation; *par* —, 56, owing to
suivant (m.); — *que*, 54; according to
suivent (v. *suivre*) follow
suivi (p. p. *suivre*) *de* followed by
suivre (v.) to follow, 358
sujet, 57, (as) subject (nominative)
summer *été* (m.); in — (time) *en été; pendant l'été;* dressed for — *en été, en toilette d'été*
Sunday (s) *dimanche; le* — (on)
superflu (adj.), 55, -ous
superfluous *superflu* (*: qui est de trop*); useless (*inutile*); *donner le s*— to give surplus (money); see (*croître*) *surcroître; un surcroît de* an oversupply of; *par surcroît* in addition; into the bargain *par-dessus le marché; pour surcroît* (*comble*) *de bonheur* to complete *his* happiness; *pour s*— *de malheur* to add to his misfortune
supérieur, 80
supériorité (f.), 91 (comparatif)
superlatif (m.), 92
— *absolu*, 97, 254
supervisor *inspecteur;* cf. (v.) *surveiller*
supplierai (fut. of *supplier*) to implore, 15
suppos-e (v.) *supposer; admettre par hypothèse; inventer* (*imaginer*) *contre la vérité;* see Subj.; *supposé* (*que*); cf.: *si c'était vrai!* if it were true *or* suppose it to be true! *dans la s*— *que;* -ition — (f.); *faire des -s* to make —(s); *allégation, conjecture* (f.); *une* — *que* let us suppose (he, etc.) or let us admit that as an example *admettons cela comme exemple;* see *prepositions*
supposé que, 56, (v.) *supposer*
supposition (f.), 32, —
suppression, 55, omission
supprimer, 55, to omit
suprémа-tie (f.), 32, -cy
sûr (adj.) sure, 8; — sour; *-eté* security (safety); *en* — safe
sur, 4, on (upon); to
sure *sûr, certain;* -ly *sûrement, assurément;* -ty *sûreté, sécurité* (f.); (stand) for *se porter garant de* (*répondre de*)
sûrement surely, 3, (safely)
surmonter (v.) (see *vanquish*, 360) to rise above (*passer par-dessus*); (to crown) *être placé au-dessus; dominer* (overlook)
surnom (m.) surname, 20
surnommer (v.) to surname, 20
surprise *surprise* (f.); see *wonder; ce qu'il y a d'étonnant, c'est que* the wonder is that: (it is surprising he or she, etc.); *joyeuse surprise causée par quelque chose d'extraordinaire* pleasant (agreeable) — caused by something wonderful; *homme étonnant!* extraordinary man; *commotion brusque* sudden agitation; unexpected *inattendu;* (*saisi*) *frappé de* — struck with —; *confus* dumfounded! *émerveillé de* amazed at; *émerveillé par son talent; il n'en revient pas* he can't recover from his s—
suspect (adj.), 33
suspendre (v.), 184, 191
suspension (f.), 4
swallow (v.) *avaler;* see *traire*, etc.
sweat (v.); *suer;* (n.) *sueur* (f.); see *perspire*
sweep (v.) *balayer; sa robe traîne* her gown -s the ground; clean — (*faire*) *table rase*

sweet, 79; -ness *douceur* (f.); gently *doucement*
swell (v.) *(s')enfler: gonfler* (inflate)
switch *aiguille* (f.); -man *aiguilleur*
syllable, 14, *syllabe* (f.)
symbole (m.) symbol, 20
sympathie (f.), 32
symptôme (m.) symptom, 20
synagogue (f.) —, 20
syndic (m.) magistrate, 20
syntaxe (f.) syntax, 20
synthèse (f.) synthesis, 20
Syrie (f.) Syria, 192

T

ta (your) thy, 118
tabac (m.) tobacco, 23
table (f.) table; *se mettre à* — to sit at —; *quitter la —;* or *se lever de —; sortir de* — to rise or get up from —
table, 63, 15
tache (f.) spot, 9; (v.) *-r* to spot (stain)
tâche (f.) task, 11
tact (m.), 33, —
taille-crayon(s) pencil sharpener
tailleur tailor; see *to cut* or *sharpen*
take, 356, *prendre;* -n *pris;* — (buy) tickets; (drink tea) — *du thé*
— off *ôter* (see *remove*)
tamis (m.) sieve (strainer), 30; *-er* to pass through the —
taon (m.) gadfly, 14
tandis que (whilst) while, 168
tant, 253
tante, 67
tantôt . . . tantôt now, now, 54
tapage (m.) noise (stamping)
taper, 8, to slap; — *trois coups à* to knock three times at; *pomme tapée* dried apple; — *du pied* to tap on the floor with the foot
tapis (m.) carpet, 30
tard, 100, (see *tôt*) late
tardif, 54, tardy
tas (m.), 9, pile, heap; (v.) *entasser*
taureau, 67
taxe (*contribution*), 11, (f.) tax; cf.: *mettre un impôt sur le tabac* to impose a — upon tobacco; *droits de sortie* exportation duties; *droits d'entrée* importation duties
teach (v.) *enseigner, instruire;* -ing *enseignement, instruction* (f.); to make him learn *lui faire apprendre;* to lecture on *professer;* — to behave *faire la leçon à* (to lecture him); *reprendre avec autorité; apprendre à vivre;* cf. to give lessons *donner des leçons;* his terms *ses conditions*, etc.
tear (n.) *accroc* (see *crochet*); (v.) *déchirer;* see *hook* (*hang*)
teins (v.) *teindre*, 359, dye
teint (m.) complexion, 19
teintu-re (f.) tincture; *-rie* (f.) dyeing establishment, 29; *-rier* (*dégraisseur*), 19, dyer (scourer)
tel (*-le*) such as (*que*), 55; 268, — a
tempête, 55, storm (tempest); snow — — *de neige* (f.), 302
temps (m.), 39, time; temperature, 348
—, 58, tense
— *composés* compound tenses, 294
— *simples* simple tenses
tend: tendre (*porter*) *à*; (pursue: see *follow*); *il vaque toujours à ses affaires* (he still attends to his affairs, business)
tenir, 322, (*à*) to care (for); to be anxious to
— (*de*) to take after; to have (information)
— (*s'en*) *à* to abide by, 58
terre (f.) earth, 65
tes (poss. adj.), 118
tête (f.), 7, head; *-u* (adj.) obstinate; *entêté* self-willed; stubborn
text, 55, *texte* (m.); old — *ancien —;* -ual *textuel*, 57

than *que*, 92
that, 129, *ce* (*cet*), *cette* (f.) — (*là*); of —; *de cela;* — is the point (question) *c'est cela* (*voilà la question*)! — (relative) *que, qui;* — of (or: 's) *celui* (*celle de*); — is to say *c'est-à-dire*
thé (m.) tea, 25
théâtre (m.) theatre, 25
thébaïque, 12, relates to opium
their *leur*, 118
thème latin Latin exercise (: 24, from one's own language into Latin)
then (afterward) *puis* (*ensuite*); — (conj.) *donc* (*alors*); let him do it then *qu'il le fasse alors! parlez donc* why not speak!
théocratie (f.), 32
there is (are) *voilà*, 118
Thermopyles (f.) Thermopylæ
thèse (f.), 11, thesis; *soutenir une* — to prepare a — and uphold it publicly
thing, 70, *chose* (f.); -s *affaires* (f.)
this (that); what is this *qu'est ceci?* cf.: *qu'est-ce-ci?* 129
thousand *mil; mille* (B.C.), 303
thus *ainsi, donc, de même;* — one may (will) write *ainsi l'on écrira*
thym (m.) thyme, 20
tien (*le*), 129
tienne (*la*), 129
tienne, tiennent, 18, (v. *tenir*, 322)
tient (*v. tenir*), 322
tient à peu, 59, (it hangs only on) very little obstacle; it rests only with; it lies only in your power to; cf.: *il ne tient pas à* it does not depend on
tiers (m.) (⅓) the third, 305
tiers-état (m.), 305
tigre, 58, (m.) tiger
tilleul (m.) linden-tree, 25
timbre (m.) bell, 20
— *-poste* (m.) postage stamp
time *temps* (m.); *heure; fois* (f.); *moment* (m.); lose (v.) time *retarder;* (at the) present — *le — présent; à l'heure actuelle;* at a — when *à l'heure* (*au moment*) *où* (*que*); once upon a — *il y avait une fois;* next — *la prochaine fois;* — *mesure* (mus.) (f.); -ly (see *season*)
timide (adj.), 11, timid, bashful
tip *bout;* — (drink) *pourboire* (m.)
tirer (v.), 359, to pull
tiret (m.), 5
titre (m.) title, 12
toast (m.) —, 33; (*porter un* — to offer [propose] a —)
to-day *aujourd'hui;* this very day *dès aujourd'hui*
toi (disjunct. pron.), 132
toi-même (intensive pron.) yourself (thyself), 57
tolérance (f.), 53, —
tolerate (v.) *tolérer*, 53
tomber (v.) to fall, 293
tome (m.) tome, 12
ton (m.) tune, tone, 46
ton (poss. adj.) your (thy), 118
ton-ique (adj.) -ic, 46
tonner (v.) to thunder, 12
torment *tourment* (m.); (v. see *follow*); *torturer; tourmenter*
torrent (m.) —, 29
tort (m.), 121, 55; *à* — *et à travers* at random, 33; *à* — wrongly, 55
tortue (f.), 13, tortoise
tôt (adv.) early, 96; *trop* — too —; *venez bientôt* come soon; *tôt ou tard* sooner or later, 40
toujours (ever) always, 3
tour, 68
tourner (v.) to turn (Index)
tournesol (m.) 30, sunflower
tous (pron.) all, 30, 211
tout (adj.), 211, (or *pronom indéfini*)
tout à fait quite; fully, 54
tout aussi bien, 5, quite as much (well)
toutes les fois que, 58, every time
towards *vers* (*dans la direction de*); *à peu près au temps où;* — (to) *envers*, 189
tracas (m.) turmoil, 30

trace — (f.); *en porter la* — to bear the trace of it; — (v.) *tracer*
train — (m.); passenger — *le train des voyageurs;* see *traire*, etc.; (v.) — for *mettre à l'entraînement;* (to drill) *entraîner;* see *rompre*
traire, 35, to milk; *re*— to — again; see (compounds): *abstraire; dis*—; *ex*—; *sous*—.
trait : — *d' union* hyphen, 7, *tiret*, 5, a dash; (arrow); shafts; 359, features; (fling) *lancer (décocher) un* —; episodes (hist.); *effacer d'un* — to strike out with a dash; *avoir trait à* to have reference to; — *de lumière* ray of light; flashes of wit *-s d'esprit; chevaux de* — draught-horses; — flourishes; — *pour* — stroke for stroke.
traité (m.), 48, treatise; (v.) *-er* to treat, 56
tranquil, 3, *tranquille*, 25
transaction (f.), 30
transalp-in (adj.) -ine, 30
transatlant-ique -ic, 30
transe (f.), 31, in dread
transept (m.), 31, —
transférer, 31, to transfer
transiger (v.) to transact; to come to terms
transir to penetrate (cold); to make any one shiver, 324
transit (m.) —, 30; *-aire* subject to —, 30
transitif (adj.) transitive or active (verb)
transition (f.) —, 30
transit-oire -ory, 30
transla-te (v.) *traduire*, 359; -tion *traduction* (f.); *rendre un passage* to — a —; -table *traduisible; difficilement* with difficulty; -tor *traducteur; ce que l'on conçoit bien s'énonce clairement, et les mots pour le dire arrivent aisément* what is clearly thought out is clearly expressed, and words to render it, flow easily
trappe (f.), 11, (Sing Sing gallows) trap; cf.: *tendre un piège* to set a trap; *donner (tomber) dans le panneau* to run headlong into the t—
travail (m.), 71
travailler (v.) to work, 22
travers, 189
tread (trample), *fouler* — upon (heels) *marcher*, etc.; see *follow*, 359
trèfle (m.) clover, 28
treize (13), 303
tréma (m.), — 7
tremblement (m.) shaking; trill, 29
trembler (v.) to tremble
très very, 254
trésor (m.) treasure, 29
-ier (m.) treasurer, 29
tribune (f.) platform (orator's)
tribune (f.) —, 13
trick (m.) (fear), 11; *il a le* — (colloq.) he is scared; on trick, (m.), 11, game (whist) or: *tri*
trictrac (m.) (game) backgammon, 11
triomphe (m.), 48; (v.) *-r*, 360
trip *trajet* (m.); see *traire*, etc.
triumph (v.) *triompher (de);* — *dans* (in arguing); — — (*exceller);* (to glory in) *tirer vanité de;* see *vanquish;* cf.: *remporter un avantage sur* to gain a point over; (n.) *triomphe* (m.); *remporter une grande victoire* (to win); *grand succès* (m.); *un s*— *fou* enormous —; *porter en t*— see *carry; réussir à* succeed in; *parvenir à;* see *to come* or *reach; s*— *brillant;* in t— *en t*—
trois three; *-ième* third, 303
tromper (v.) to deceive, 36
trompeur, 66
trop, 253, too much (many), too, 28
trou (m.) hole
trouble (m.) confusion, 16
trouer (v.) to make a hole, 17
troupe (f.) troop, 16
trouver (*se*) (v.) to find; 46, to be found
truite (f.) trout, 16

tu (thou, 117), you
tu (v. *se taire*, 359)
tua (*tuer*), 8, killed; (n.) *la tuerie* butchery (slaughter), 343
tub *cuve* (f.); *cuvette* (f.); bath — *baignoire* (f.)
Tuesday(s) *mardi; le* — (on) —
tunnel (m.) tunnel
turquoise (f.), 16
tusk (*dent canine*) *croc* (m.); see *crochet;* (*éléphant*) *défense* (f.)
two *deux* (2), 303
typhus (m.), 30

U

un, 303, a, an, one, 8; *l'un l'autre* one another (both); *à l'un* to one, 24; *de l'un ou de l'autre* of either
unanime (adj.) unanimous, 14
unanimité (*à l'*) (f.) unanimously
uncalled for, 54, *que rien ne justifie*
unceasingly *sans cesse*
under (-neath *sous*); *au-dessous de* below; -stood *sous-entendu*
understand (v.) *comprendre;* see *misunderstand;* -ing (n.) *compréhension* (f.); *intelligence;* clear — *connaissance parfaite* (f.); *j'entends un bruit* I hear a noise; *il entend l'anglais* he understands English; see *recevoir; donnez-nous de vos nouvelles* let us hear from you; *elle n'y entendait pas malice* she meant no harm; *ils ne veulent point en entendre parler* they will not hear of it (or: refuse to); grasp *saisir; cela s'entend* (*: va sans dire*) of course; *il n'entend pas de cette oreille-là* he does not see it in that light
unfortunate *malheureux*
unième (adj.), 304, (with 21 to 70; from 80 on)
uninjured *non blessé; qui n'a éprouvé aucun mal;* see p. 89
unir (v.), 55, to join (unite), 349
unit-é (f.) unit, 56; -y
unknown to *inconnu à*
until *jusqu'à; — ce que* (with Subj., 142)
uproot (v.) *déraciner; détruire; extirper*
urge, see (require) *stimuler* (spur) or *éperonner; exciter au combat* urge on; -nt! *d'urgence; on vous prie instamment de* you are earnestly requested to; *je vous en prie* I do beg of you; *implorer, exhorter, supplier avec instance:* implore, exhort, to adjure (beseech); *il est pressé d'argent* in urgent need of money
urn *urne* (f.), 64
us (m.), 30–1, manners (customs)
usage (m.), 53
use (n.) *usage* (*emploi*) (m.); of some — *de quelque utilité* (f.); (own) — *profit* (*avantage*) (m.); personal — *intérêt personnel* (m.); accepted — *usages reçus;* out of use *hors d'usage;* (gram.); 53, make — of it *faites-en usage;* for the — of *à l'usage* (*au profit*) *de;* -ful (of —) *utile;* (used) of great — *d'un fréquent emploi; très utile;* of no — *d'aucune utilité* (*inutile*); (to be) of no use *ne servir à rien;* good for nothing *bon à rien;* in — (*terme*) *usité; en usage* (*employé*); in general — *d'un usage général;* to what good *à quoi bon? à quoi cela sert-il* (*de*)?
use (v.) (treat) *agir* (*envers*); *traiter; user d'égards* to be considerate; to avail oneself of *profiter de* (*saisir à propos*); — (to make use of) *se servir de;* to have no further (more) — *n'en avoir plus besoin;* cf.: *en vain* (*avoir beau*)in vain (of no — for); to abuse *user mal; en user mal avec;* — oil *user* (*consommer*) *de l'huile* (f.); — forbearance *user de ménagements* (*indulgence*) *envers;* to get -d to *s'accoutumer* (*s'habituer à*); clothes previously

use—*Continued*
used *vêtements usagés (: qui ont déjà servi); avoir coutume (l'habitude) de* to have the habit of; see the Imperfect; see 125; cf.: little used *peu usité;* obsolete *inusité; d'un usage restreint* restricted use (usage); worn-out gloves *gants usés;* almost new hat *chapeau presque neuf;* old subject: *sujet usé; édition épuisée* out of print
used (adj.) *usité; employé;* (v.) *user*, 53
usual (adj.) *ordinaire;* as — *comme à l'ordinaire;* — *de coutume (d'habitude);* -ly *ordinairement*
utile useful; 57, *-ment* usefully
utilité (f.), 55; *de peu d'* — of little merit, 55

V

va, 3, goes, 309; *vais*, 309
vacciner (v.) to vaccinate
vache, 67
vaciller (v.) to vacillate, 25
vainc(s) (v. *vaincre*), 360, 20
vaincu (p. p. *vaincre*), 360, conquered
value *valeur* (f.); — (merit) *mérite* (m.); (v.) *valoir*, 330; *coûter;* see *better*
vanill-e (f.) -a, 25
vanquish (v.) *avoir bon marché de lui* to get the better of him easily; *vaincre*, 360, *conquérir* (to triumph over); *surmonter* (surmount); by this sign *par ce signe;* woe to the -ed! *malheur aux vaincus; en demeurer convaincu* be convinced of it; *plus qu'à moitié persuadé* more than half convinced; *se rendre à l'évidence* to be c— (finally); *on le gagnera* he will be won over *franchir les obstacles* to overcome obstacles; *la victoire se décida en faveur des Américains* Americans won
vapeur (f.) vapor, 57; steam
various (adj.) *différent, divers;* in — ways *de diverses manières (façons)*
vary (v.) *varier, diversifier, changer*
vaudeville (m.), 25
vaut (see *valoir*, 330), is worth
veau, 67
Vendéen (m.) (from *Vendée* f.), 20
vendeur, 66
vendre (v.) to sell
venez come! *venir*, 322
vengeur, 66
vénitien (adj.), 33, Venetian
vent (m.) wind, 348
vente (f.) sale, 18
venu (p. p. *venir*, 322), came, 3, 194
Vénus (f.), 30
ver (m.) worm, 40
verb, 57, *verbe* (m.)
verbal (adj.), 58, —
véritable (adj.), 55, —, real
vérité (f.) truth, 9; *dire la* — to speak the —
verre (m.) glass, 74
vers, 187, toward(s)
Versailles, 25
version latine Latin translation (into one's own language)
versions (plusieurs) (various) accounts (interpretations)
vert green, 56
verve (f.), 65
veu-f (m.) widower; *-ve* (f.) widow, 34
veut (veux, veulent), see *vouloir*, 331
viande (f.) meat, 17
vice (m.), 12
victoire (f.), 48, victory
victori-eux (adj.) -ous, 360
vie (f.) life; living
vieil (m.) *vieille* (f.) old, 79; (v.) *vieillir*, 342
vieillard, 67
viendra (venir), 322
viennent (venir), 18, 58; — *de* have just
vient (venir), 18; — *de* has just
vieux (adj.) old, 79

vif (adj.), 79; *au* — to the quick
vigne (f.) vine; *-ron* (m.) wine-grower, 24
vil, vile, low, 25
vilain, ugly
villa (f.) —; *maison de campagne élégante*
village (m.) —; 25
villageois villager; *en villégiature à* (while sojourning in): *séjour* (m.) *à la campagne; il dîne en v*— he is dining out
ville (f.), 65
vin (m.) wine, 8; *vinaigre* (m.) vinegar
vingt (20), 303
vint (*venir*), 322
vînt (*venir*), 58, (imp. subj.)
violent (adj.), 188
violer (v.) violate, break, 188
virgule (f.) comma, 3
viril (adj.) virile, 25
vision (f.), 64
visite (f.), 12, visit; *-er* (v.) to —; *faire une* (*rendre*) *visite* to pay a visit
visiter (v.) to search, to visit
vit (v. *vivre* to live, 361) lives
vitre (f.), 171
vitre (f.), 12, window glass (pane)
vitrier (m.) glazier
vivat! 33
vivent (v. *vivre* to live, 361) live
vizir (m.) vizier, 12
vocabu-laire (m.) -lary
vocal (adj.) —
vogue (f.) —, 12
voilà, 118, there is (are)
voir (v.) to see, 331
voisin, 66, neighbor; *le plus* —, 56, nearest
voiture (f.) carriage, 363
voix (f.), 65, voice
vol (m.), 34, flight; theft; (v.) *-er* to fly; to steal
voleur, 66
volonté (*à*) at will, 58
volte (f.) *face* (to turn) front, 12
Vosges (*les*), 30
vôtre (*le*) yours, 129
votre your, 118
voudrais (condit. of *vouloir*, 331), should like
vous you, 3, 120
voyage (m.), 24, trip; *-r* (v.) to travel
-ur (m.) traveler
voyelle (f.), vowel, 17
vrai (adj.) true; *-ment* truly
vraisemblable likely, 30
vu (p. p.) seen, 331; *-e* (f.) view (sight), *spectacle* (m.) show
vu, 53, regarding
vue (f.) sight; eyesight; view, 13

W

wagon-lit (m.) sleeper, 34
— *-poste* (m.) mail-coach, 34
— *-restaurant* (m.) dining car, 34
walk (n.) *promenade* (f.); *faire une p*— to take a —; (v.) *marcher;* — ahead *prendre les devants;* see *follow*
wander (v.) *errer; s'égarer;* -ing *errant; vagabond* (m.)
want (see *vouloir*); *que voulez-vous?* what do you —? or: what is your will? or what do you desire? (what can I do for you?); what will you have him do? (*que voulez-vous qu'il fasse?*) *il le veut* he -s it; *je ne le veux pas* I will not have it! *tout ce qu'il voulait* (*désirait*) all (anything) he wanted (desired); *elle l'a voulu* it is her fault (: she would have it); *il ne veut pas* he will not; *avez-vous besoin de lui?* do you want (need) him? see *request;* see *falloir; il lui faut un guide* he needs (must have) a guide; *a-t-il envie de sortir?* does he wish to go out? *un ouvrage de longue haleine;* see *breath; cela demande du temps* that requires time; we (want) wish you to know it *nous voulons que vous le sachiez; il le voulait sans faute* he *would* have it without fail; cf.: *l'envie lui en est passée* his longing is over; *qui veut du froid, qui du chaud* some desire cold, others heat; *les fleurs*

want—*Continued*
veulent de grands soins flowers require great care; *il veut $100 (500 frs.) de son cheval* he wants $100 (500 frs.) for his horse; *vous ne savez pas ce que vous voulez* you do not know your own mind; *je veux bien* gladly; *il n'a pas voulu de toi* he would not have you; see *follow; fais ce que tu veux* go your own way; *elle le veut bien* she has no objection; *elle fait des vœux pour votre bonheur* she wishes you happiness; *souhaiter un joyeux Noël, une bonne année* to wish a merry Xmas, happy New Year; *tout comme vous voudrez* just as you please; *sans le vouloir* (unintentionally) without meaning to; *il voulait me faire tirer les marrons du feu* he wanted to make a cat's paw of me (or: to pull the chestnuts out of the fire for him); *il fait d'eux ce qu'il veut* he directs them as he pleases; (: has great influence over them); *on en veut à son argent* they are after his money; *les formalités requises* or *voulues* (or: *en règle* or *dans les règles*) the required formalities; *c'est son vouloir* it is his (her) will; *tout lui vient à souhait* everything succeeds according to his wishes (see *follow); c'est à qui l'achèterait* everyone wishes to buy it; *il a trouvé chaussure à son pied* (: shoe for his foot) he found what he wanted (also his match); *la volonté* will; *quand on a de la bonne volonté, on ne manque pas de moyens* when there is a will, there is a way (see Infinitive); *dernières volontés* testament (last will); *son testament* his —; *mauvais vouloir* bad (ill) feeling; *mauvaise volonté* ill-will; *bonne volonté* readiness; *bon gré, mal gré* willing or not; *de gré (force)* willing, unwilling; *de plein gré* very willingly; *volontiers (: je veux bien)* willingly; gladly; *de bon gré* willingly; *de bon cœur* with pleasure; *de bonne grâce* with a good grace (readily)

waste-box *boîte à ordures* (f.); see *basket*

watch (n.) *montre* (f.); — (v.) *garder* (guard); *veiller* (vigil); *y veiller* to — over it; *en prendre soin (veiller sur quelque chose)* to take good care of a thing; *en faire son affaire* or *s'en charger* to take it upon himself (to see to it: *y avoir l'œil); s'en occuper:* see *attend*

water *eau* (f.); warm — *de l'eau chaude;* hot — *de l'eau bouillante;* cool — — — *fraîche;* spring — — — *de source;* (f.); lukewarm — — — *tiède*

wav-e *vague* (f.); *onde* (poet.) (f.) -r ; (v.) *vaciller ; chanceler ; hésiter;* (flicker) *vaciller (trembloter); — onduler; ondoyer; flotter* (float); *balancer; s'agiter; se mouvoir ; tournoyer ;* -ing *vacillation* (f.) (rolling boat); cf.: *être irrésolu, incertain, indécis, inconstant, non solide* (it shakes: not firm); to — *faire signe (de la main);* (ship) rolling: *le roulis*

wavy *ondoyant; onduleux; ondulé*

way *chemin* (m.); see *follow;* -side (*sur*) *le bord du* — (*de la route);* to make — *se frayer un c—;* see *cut;* to make — for *laisser passer quelqu'un;* to give — to (yield) *se laisser aller à* (to abandon oneself); *se pousser dans* to make one's way into; *il fit son chemin* he made, etc.

weave (*tistre* or *tître*) *tisser;* well-woven material *une étoffe bien tissue; du drap trop serré* close-woven cloth

weaver *tisserand;* silk — *un t— de soie;* (poet.) : *des jours tissus*

weaver—*Continued*
d'or et de soie opulent (halcyon) days; *un tissu de mensonges* a tissue of lies; see *mentir* (to lie)
week *semaine* (f.); -ly *hebdomadaire*, 251
— (days of the), 125
what (?), 135
what (that which), 131
what! *comment! quoi!* about — *de quoi?* — is it *qu'est-ce* (*qu'est-ce que c'est*)*?* — do you do? *que faites-vous?* do — he says *faites ce qu'il dit;* — is . . . *ce qui est; qu'est-ce qui* (— *que*)*?* —ever *quoi que ce soit;* — he speaks of *ce dont il parle* (: that of which); — he is thinking of *ce à quoi il pense* (*songe*)*;* — then *et puis après?* — she needs *ce dont elle a besoin;* for — *pourquoi faire?* how many books *que de livres!*
— (pron., adj.) *quel* (see *adj.*)
—soever *quel . . . que;* see 164
—ever *quoi que ce soit; quelque*
wheat *blé* (m.); *maïs* (m.)
when (conj.), 168, *quand, lorsque;* —ever *quand;* the time — *à l'heure où* (*que*)
where *où* (— to); 136; *d'où* from where?
which *qui, que* (see *relatives*, 131)
whist (m.) —, 34
whistle (n.) *sifflet* (m.); (v.) *siffler;* whistling *sifflement* (m.); -r *siffleur* (m.); *le vent siffle* the wind blows (*souffle*)*;* cf.: *à tout rompre* (see) *souffler* to breathe; *essoufflé* out of breath; *essoufflement* (m.) out of breathing; *reprendre haleine* (f.) to catch one's breath; *forte haleine* strong breath
white *blanc* (*-he*)*;* to get — *blanchir* (washing); (bleach)—
who, etc., 131; whom, whose, 131; to -m *à qui?* whose? *à qui?*
wing *aile* (f.); on the — *au vol; coulisse* (f.) (theat.); under the wing of *sous l'égide* (*protection*) *de;* -ed *ailé*
winter, 64, *hiver* (m.)
with *avec; de; par;* -out *sans*
withdraw (v.) *retirer; s'éloigner*
wonder *surprise* (f.); *étonnement* (m.); *les sept merveilles* the seven wonders; — at *s'étonner de; admirer;* — if *se demander si;* -ful *admirable; nouvelle étonnante* astonishing news! *il ne peut se lasser d'admirer* he can't help but admire; *être étonné de* to be astonished (at); *être surpris* to be surprised; *je* (*doute*) or *suis curieux de savoir* I (doubt) am anxious to know; *ce qui me surprend!* and that or which surprises me! *ce qui n'est point surprenant* and no wonder! he is a wonder (hero) *prodige de valeur! il ne s'étonne de rien* nothing surprises him! *faire des prodiges* to perform great deeds
word (n.) *mot* (m.); — for — *mot à mot;* (uttered) — *parole* (f.); in these -s *en ces termes;* in other — *en d'autres termes;* man of honor (word) *homme de parole; parole d'honneur* upon my word of honor; believe me (take my —) *crois* (*croyez*) *m'en;* send — to *envoyez un mot* or *faites dire à* or *faire savoir à;* by — of mouth *de vive voix;* not to keep one's word *manquer à sa parole;* he speaks a good — for *il dit un mot en faveur de; il recommande M. X. à; je cite ses propres termes* I quote his very words
— (v.) (edit) *rédiger;* thus -ed (expressed) *ainsi conçu* (*: en ces termes*)*;* see *énoncé* or *écrit*
work (n.) *travail* (m.); *peine* (f.); — done *ouvrage fait,*—(*à faire* to be done); hard — (task) *tâche* (f.); *ou labeur pénible* (m.)
worth (to be) (v.) *valoir; valeur* (f.)
worthy *digne* (*de*)

write (v.) *écrire;* — (edit) *rédiger, composer un ouvrage* (book); — (spell) *orthographier;* — (correspond) *correspondre par lettre;* — (printed) *marquer (empreindre) sur ses traits* (engraved) upon his face (features); writing *écriture* (f.); must abide by your writing *ce qui est écrit, est écrit* (you can't go back on your writing); -er *auteur, écrivain; savant;* writing-desk *pupitre, écritoire* (f.); *il tient les écritures (comptes) de* he attends to (the accounts) or correspondence of (business); — out in full *écrire en toutes lettres (: d'un bout à l'autre);* cf.: *copier* to copy; — — up *faire l'éloge de; faire mousser un succès;* to draw a few lines *tracer des lignes;* — it down *en prendre note;* in — *par écrit; caractères de convention* conventional types; *contenir tout ce qu'il faut pour é—* to contain everything needed for writing purposes; *sans goût* no taste; *sans soin* careless; *vite et mal* hastily and poorly; *sans talent* untalented; fertile author *auteur fécond;* cf.: *composer des livres; femme écrivain; écrivain public; son métier de rédiger,* etc., *pour le public; ouvrages de l'esprit* intellectual productions; *il bien* his style is fairly good

Y

y avoir, 116, to be
(*j'*) *y vais* (I) am going (there), 309
yacht (m.), 17, —
yard (m.), 24
yatag (h)an (m.) long knife (Turk), 24
year *an* (m.); *un an* a —; 304, (*une*) *bonne et heureuse année* (see *souhaiter* to wish) happy New Year; *le Jour de l'An* New Year's day; how old is he? *quel âge a-t-il?* -ly *annuel (-le,* f.) (adj.); *annuellement* (adv.) or *tous les ans*
yes, 24, *oui; si (si)* — (indeed)
yeux (m.) eyes, 71 (*œil*)
your *votre; ton;* -s *le (la, les) vôtre (-s);* -self *toi-même, vous-même* (as intensive pronouns)
yours truly *votre bien dévoué* or: *bien (tout) à vous*

Z

zénith (m.), 33
zéphir (m.), 35
zéro (m.), 303, zero, naught
zest, 8; *entre le zist et le* — so and so (or: *ni bien ni mal*) middling; —! *il s'enfuit* why! he ran away! 315
zone (f.) —, 35

INDEX

REGULAR VERBS IN *-ER*

A

abaisser, 224
abandonner, 170–1, 198, 269
abîmer, 274, 298
abonder, 109
abonner (*s'*) to subscribe (to a paper), 345
aborder, 214, 297
aboyer, 230
abréger, 228, 275
abreuver (*s'*), to drink (trough)
absenter, 187
abuser, 433
acharner (*s'*), 105
acheter, 130, 205, 229, 310
achever, 152, 229, 232, 244
accabler, (*de*), 186, 270
accéder (*à*) to comply (with) 228
accélérer, 228
accentuer, 225
accepter, 155, 250
accommoder, 104, 113
accompagner, 150, 168
accorder, 110, 269, 273, 299
accouder(*s'*), 203
accoutumer, 277
accréditer, 160
accrocher, 191
accuser (*de*), 199, 268, 298
acquitter, 260, 270
additionner, 109, 226
adhérer, 100, 188, 249
administrer, 231
admirer, 147, 247
adonner (*s'*), 203
adopter, to adopt
adorer, 95, 131, 209
adosser (*s'*), 205
adresser, 205, 214, 232
aérer, to air (ventilate)
affaisser (*s'*), 297
affamer, 96
affecter, 220, 227
afficher, to post (bills)
affiler, to hone, 352
affirmer, 161, 173
affliger, to sadden
affluer, 188
affubler (*s'*), to rig (up)
agacer, to tease
agenouiller (*s'*), 203
agiter, 169
agréer, 161, 268
agriffer (*s'*), 203
aheurter (*s'*), 203
aider, 116, 183, 247
aiguiller, 189, 200
aiguiser, 209
aimer, 137, 166, 175, 209, 283
ajourner, to adjourn
ajouter, 226, 263
alarmer (*s'*), 199
aligner, to align
alléger, 239
allonger, 244
allouer, 263
amasser, to amass
améliorer, 299
amener, 185, 225, 236
amonceler, 229, 231
amuser, to amuse
ancrer, 231
animer, 97, 223
annoncer, 101, 214, 226, 277
annuler, 278
ânonner, 227
apaiser, 169
appeler, 229, 231
appliquer, 143, 200
apporter, 155
apprécier, 113
appréhender, 140
apprêter, 161, 231
apprivoiser, 273
approcher, 127, 143, 205

approprier, 235
approuver, 128, 161–4
appuyer, 95, 191, 206
armer, 122, 279
arpenter, to stride
arracher, 161
arrêter, 110, 145, 222
arriver, 133, 140, 152, 164, 233, 278
arroger (*s'*), 203
articuler, 225
asphyxier, 115
aspirer, 107
assassiner, 213
assembler, 298–9
assener, to deal a blow
assister (*à*), 116, 170, 213, 235
assommer, to knock on the head
assumer, 202, 252
assurer, 96, 103, 131, 195
astiquer, to polish (soles)
attacher, 101, 140, 230, 236, 270
attaquer, 104, 218, 311
atteler, to harness
attenter, to try to kill
atterrer, 296
attirer, 199, 278, 297
attraper, 263
attribuer, 202, 269
attrouper, 299
augmenter, 165
autoriser, 159, 285
avaler, 255, 334
avancer, 107, 147
aveugler, to blind
aviser, 271
avouer, 142, 166–8, 284, 299

B

babiller, 227
badiner, 225
bâiller, to yawn
bailler (*belle*) to try to impose upon
baiser, 198
baisser, 232, 224, 272, 295
balader, 185
balancer, 97, 273
balayer, 231
balbutier, 225
balloter, 279
banqueter, 229
baptiser, 213
baragouiner, 227
baraquer, 223
barbouiller, to daub
basculer, 297
bavarder, 227
becqueter, 229
bêler, to bleat, 212
bercer, 115
biffer, 213
bifurquer, 189
blâmer, 213, 242, 297
blesser, 97, 133, 190, 202, 259
bloquer, 281
border, 275
borner, to confine to, 235
bosseler, 229
botteler, 229
boucher, 106, 232, 270
bouchonner, to rub down (horse)
boucler, 127
bouger, to budge (stir)
bouler, 285
bouleverser, 238
bourreler, 229
bourrer, 184
boutonner, 223
bousculer, to jostle
branler, to shake (unsteady)
bredouiller, 227
briller (*luire*), 350
briqueter, 229
briser, 204, 216, 272
broder, to embroider
broncher, to stumble
brosser, to brush, 13
brouiller, 248
broyer, 274
bruiner, to drizzle
brûler, 102

C

cabosser, 232
cabrer (*se*), 203, 277
cacher, 212
cacheter, 229, 231, 276
cailler, 226
cailleter, 226
cajoler, 95, 227
calfeutrer, 235
calmer, 187
calomnier, to slander

cambrer, 285
canneler, 229
cantonner, 227
caqueter, 226, 229
caracoler, 206
caresser, 227
carier, 246
carreler, 229
caserner, 223
casser, 163
causer, 223, 226–7, 270
céder, 228, 278
célébrer, 228, 298
cerner, to hem (in)
certifier, 192, 269
cesser, 225
chamailler (*se*), to chop (quarrel)
changer, 165, 183, 215, 228, 258, 327
chanceler, 229
chanter, 91, 107, 128
charger, 166, 214, 237, 269
charmer, 101, 176
chasser, 273
châtier, to punish
chauffer, 285
chausser, to shoe, 214
chercher, 211, 216, 272, 311
choquer, 206
circuler, 160–5
cirer, to wax (polish)
ciseler, 229
citer, 71, 190, 218
civiliser, 101
claquer, 212
classer, 195
clocher, 108
clouer (to nail), 108
coaguler, 226
cogner, 206
coiffer, to dress (head)
colorer, 186
colleter, 229
colliger, to make a collection of books
combler, 220
commander, 138, 219
commencer, 160, 174, 231
commenter, 113
communiquer, 195
comparer, 5
complimenter, 164
comporter, to bear
composer, 379, 216–19
compter, 154, 170, 214, 261
concasser, 273
concéder, 269
confectionner, to make (clothes), 91
conférer, 214
confirmer, 214
congédier, 199, 260
conjuguer, 92, 298
conjurer, to enjoin
consacrer, 217
conseiller, 152
conserver, to preserve
considérer, 168, 209, 268, 278
consigner, to consign
consoler, 95, 153, 185
constater, 270
constituer, 227
consulter, 169, 210, 218
consumer, 200
contenter, 113
conter, to relate (tell)
continuer, 216
contracter, 249, 270–7
contrarier, 93, 105, 205
contribuer, 214
contrôler, 108
converser, 89, 226
copier, 277
coqueter, 95
cordeler, 97, 229
corriger, 185, 381
coucher, 148, 205, 216
couler, 218, 240, 279
couper, 201, 275
courber, 272
couronner, 247
courroyer, 235
coûter, 97, 104, 164, 197
couturer, to seam (face)
couver, to set (hen)
cracher, to expectorate, 158
craqueter, 229
créer, 129, 228
créneler, 229
creuser, 273
crever, 229
cribler, to dot (mistakes)
crier, 165, 213
crisper, 249, 279
critiquer, 142, 157, 170, 189
croiser, 281

croquer, to eat (gobble)
culbuter, 297
cultiver, 101
cuver, to get sober

D

damer, to outwit (game)
danser, to dance
darder, to dart
dater, 116
déballer, to unpack
débander, to unbind
débarbouiller, 206
débarquer, 97
débaucher, 269
débiter, to unstring (tale)
déborder, 222, 295
déboucher, to turn
débuter, 241
décacheter, 276
décamper, to decamp
décéder, 295
déchaîner, to release
décharger, 271
déchiffrer, to decipher
déchiqueter, 230
déchirer, 273–4
décider, 170, 280
déciller (*dessiller*)
décimer, 306
déclarer, 162, 270–3
décliner, to decline
décocher, to fling
décoiffer (*se*) to undress
déconcerter, 112
découper, 273
décourager, 227
décréter, 160, 269
dédaigner, 234
dédier, to dedicate
défier, 160, 203
défiler, 167
défoncer, 274
déformer, 280
dégager, 297
dégeler, 229
dégoûter, 103, 115, 127
dégoutter, 297
dégrader, 226
dégraisser, to scour
dégringoler, 297
déguiser, to disguise
déjeuner, to lunch, 174
délayer, 274
délibérer, to deliberate
délivrer, 160
déloger, to dislodge
demander, 107, 138, 147, 152, 234
démanger, 226
déménager, 327
demeurer, 136, 212, 295
démontrer, 168
dénoncer, 199
dénouer, to untie
denteler, 230
dépasser, to exceed
dépecer, to cut up
dépenser, 124, 154, 276
déplacer, 220
déployer, to unfold
déporter, 235
déposer, 180, 327
dépouiller, 276
déranger, 143, 158, 161
dérober, to steal (away)
dérouter, to rout
désapprouver, 164, 242
désavouer, 197
désespérer, 108
déshonorer, 272
désigner, 214
désirer, 99, 133, 160, 162
désister (*se*), 197, 203
désobliger, 278
désoler, 215, 259
desserrer, to loosen
dessiller, to open (eyes)
dessiner, 195
destiner, 227
détaler, to scamper
détériorer, 226
déterminer, 110, 235
détester, 93, 107, 209
détourner, 278
détraquer, 273
détremper, 274
détrôner, 236
devancer, 97
dévaster, 222, 274
développer, 113, 220
déverser, to pour
dévider, 184
deviner, 123
dévisager, 185

dévorer, 138
dévouer, 252
diffamer, to defame
différer, 188
digérer, 102, 200
diminuer, 165–7, 214
dîner, 147, 158
diriger, to direct
discontinuer, 234, 275
discuter, 89, 216
dispenser, 269, 271–3
disposer, 189, 190, 209
disputer, 206
dissimuler, to feign
dissiper, 151–4
distinguer, 213, 223
diverger, 188
diviser, 226
divulguer, 339
dompter, 273
donner, 137, 158, 160–6
dorer, 260
doter, to endow
douer, 115
douter, 106, 138, 162–6,
douter (se) de, to suspect
dresser, 206, 224, 281–5
durer, 93, 95, 168, 213

E

ébaucher, to sketch, 357
ébranler, 152
ébruiter (s') to spread about (rumor)
écarquiller, to move (eyes)
écarter, to push (away)
écarteler, 229
échanger, 165
échapper, 94, 295
écharper, 279
échauder, to scald
échauffer, to chafe
échouer, 164, 204, 295
éclairer, 200
éclater, 274
éclipser (s'), to eclipse
économiser, 143, 154
écorcher, 212
écouler, 197, 205
écouter, 157, 213
écraser, 274
écrier (s'), 147, 204, 347
écrouler (s'), 204, 274, 297
éduquer, 259
effacer, 213
effectuer, 270, 281
effleurer, 108
efforcer (s'), to try
effrayer, 159
égaler, 96, 173
égrener, 223
élancer (s'), to rush
élever, 164, 218, 224, 273, 277
éloigner (s'), 105, 197
émanciper, 220
emballer, 91
embrasser, 198, cf.: 200
embrouiller, to embroil
emmener, 185, 229
emmitoufler (s') to be wrapped up in furs
émousser, to blunt
empaqueter, 230
emparer (s'), 204
empêcher (de), 140–1, 164
empierrer, to pave (w. stones)
empiéter, to encroach
empirer, 297
empoigner, 153
employer, 200
emporter, 225
empresser (s'), 204
emprisonner, 110
emprunter, 218, 270, 271
enchaîner, 106, 214
enchanter, 166
encourager, 227
endetter (s'), 108, 270
endommager, 226, 274
endosser, to indorse (don)
endurcir, 235
endurer, 140
enfanter, 234
enfariner, to sprinkle (flour)
enfermer, to shut in
enfiler, 200
enflammer, 200
enfoncer, 223, 273
engager, 200, 226, 228, 268–9
engendrer, to breed
enivrer, to intoxicate
enlacer, to grasp (lace)
enlever, 169, 212, 238, 277
ennuyer, 90, 108
enquêter (s'), 204

enrager, to enrage
enrhumer (*s'*), 92, 204
enrôler (*s'*), to enlist
enrouer (*s'*), 94
enseigner, 115, 223
ensemencer, 229
ensorceler, 230
entacher, to spot (blacken)
entamer, 183, 226
entasser, 231
enterrer, to bury
enticher (*de*), 107
entourer (*de*), 219
entr' aider (*s'*) to help mutually
entraîner, 276
entrer, 143, 161, 212, 278
envelopper, 200
environner, 285
envisager, 185
envoler (*s'*), to fly away
épargner, 164
épeler, 88
épier, 109
éprouver, 98, 99, 141, 223, 320
éreinter, to tire (out), 276
errer, 185, 296,
espérer, 140, 161, 228
esquiver (*s'*), to steal away
essayer, 231, 241
essouffler, 232
essuyer, 230
estimer, 95, 148, 151, 290
estropier, to murder (lines)
étaler, 171
étancher, to make water-tight
étinceler, 230
étonner, 94, 133, 153, 270, 284
étouffer, to choke (stifle)
étrenner, 257–8
étriller, 279
étudier, 209, 232
évacuer, 186
évader (*s'*), 204
éveiller, to wake
éventer, to fan
évertuer (*s'*), 204
éviter, 164
examiner, 278
excéder, 188
exceller, 115, 188
excepter, 101, 113
exécuter, 100, 148, 168, 236, 247
exercer, 189, 200
exclamer (*s'*), to exclaim
exciter, 227
excuser, 220, 298
exhiber, 171
exiger, 161
exiler, 109
exister, 210, 220, 224
expédier, 188
expirer, 136, 262
expliquer, 235, 275
exploiter, to work (mines)
exposer, 170
exprimer, 219, 223
exiasier (*s'*), 204
exténuer, 240
extorquer, 268
extravaguer, 188

F

fabriquer, 102, 188, 218
fâcher (*se*), 102, 154, 161, 204
façonner, 91, 249
familiariser, 232
faner, to wither
farder, to color (make up)
fatiguer, 188, 272
favoriser, 227
fêler, to crack (bell)
féliciter, 164, 224
fermenter, 104
fermer, 99, 104, 210, 336
feuilleter, 230
ficeler, 230
ficher, to drive (in)
fier (*se*), 142, 205
figer, 226
figurer, 262
filer, to spin
fixer, to fix.
flairer, to scent
flâner, 185, 285
flatter, 203, 227, 298
flotter, 166
fonctionner, 185
fonder, 235
forcer, 261, 274
forger, 184
former, 269
fouetter, to whip
fouiller, 218
fouler, 227, 274–7
fourcher, 224
fourrer, to (thrust) poke

fracturer, 277
frapper, 102, 203
frayer, to cut (way)
frelater, to adulterate
fréquenter, 277
frétiller, 226
frictionner, to rub (skin)
frigorifier, 263
friser, 127, 168, 237
frissonner, 90, 93
froisser, 133
frôler, to touch (lightly)
froncer, to frown
frotter, 274
fructifier, 284
fumer, 97, 133, 184, 226
fureter, 230

G

gagner, 150–4, 161, 214
galoper, 189
garder, 139, 169, 172
gargariser (*se*), 204
gaspiller, 154
gâter, 226
geler, 229
gendarmer (*se*), 204
gêner, 101, 113, 212, 225
glisser, 279, 348
glorifier, 164
gonfler, 169
goûter, 97, 106, 153
grasseyer, 227
gratter, to scratch
graver, 190
grésiller, to sleet
grimer, to make up
grincer, 228
grommeler, 230
gronder, 200, 213–4
grouper, 246
guetter, 109
guider, 337

H

habiller (*s'*), 115, 153, 159, 189
habiter, 361
habituer, 93, 106, 277
haleter, 230
hanter, to haunt
harceler, 229
hasarder, 170
hâter, 201, 206, 226
hausser, 232
hésiter, 165, 224
heurter, 205
honorer, 164, 249, 269
humilier, 110, 272
hurler, to howl

I

ignorer, 165, 172, 243
imaginer, 153, 160–1, 162
imbiber, 334
imiter, 196, 221
immatriculer (*se faire*), to have name registered (univ.)
implorer, 158
importer, 176
imposer, 160, 268
imprimer, 141, 240, 278, 346
incarcérer, 110
incendier, 89
incliner, 272
incomber, 268
incommoder, 143
inculper, to accuse (law)
inculquer, to inculcate
indiquer, 171, 214, 235, 285
inférer, 336
influer, 95, 188
informer, to inform
ingénier (*s'*), 204
ingérer (*s'*), 204
injurier, 197
inquiéter, to worry
insérer, to insert
insinuer, to insinuate
insister, 165
inspirer, 225, 247
installer, to install
insulter, to insult
intenter (*procès*) to bring a law-suit
intéresser, 171, 245, 268
interpeller, 275
interpréter, 113
interroger, 228
intriguer, 188
inventer, 214
inviter, 158, 188
invoquer, 218
isoler, 227

J

jacasser, 227
japper, 231
jaser, 227
javeler, 230
jeter, 229, 296
jouer, 175, 213, 236
juger, 164, 224
jurer, 141, 351
justifier, 247

L

lacérer, 274
lâcher, to let go
laisser, 144, 193
lancer, 228
lasser, to tire (out)
laver, 76, 101, 205
lécher, 227
légaliser, 269
lever, 146, 153–6, 229
libérer, 269
lier, 87, 214
limer, to file (saw)
limiter, 235
livrer, 200, 334
loger, 108, 249
louer, 219, 299
lutter, 334

M

mâcher, 219
majorer, 270
maltraiter, 184
to manage, 168
mander (official), to send
manger, 153, 224–8
manifester, 211
manquer, 123–5; 164–5; 196, 236, 270–3; 314
marchander, to haggle, 96
marcher, 127, 227
marier, 90
marquer, to mark
marqueter, 230
marteler, 229
mécontenter, 223
méditer, 275
méfier (*se*) *de*, 204
mêler, to mix
menacer, 145
ménager, 226, 238
mendier, to beg
mener, 229, 246
mentionner, 227
mépriser, 277
mériter, 150, 160, 258
mesurer, 94, 96, 121, 214
mirer, to aim; to candle (eggs)
modeler, 229, 232
modérer, to control (self)
monter, 150, 270, 295
montrer (*faire voir*), to show
moquer (*se*) *de*, 107, 154, 204
morceler, 230
morigéner, 214
motiver, to assign (motives)
moucher, to blow (the nose)
moucheter, 230
mouiller, to cast anchor
mousser, 102
mouvementer, to enliven
muer, 273
multiplier, 226
murmurer, 152
museler, 230
muser, 215

N

nager, 262
naturaliser, 258
navrer (*de*), 273
négliger, 188, 269
négocier, 115
neiger, 110, 302
nettoyer, 231
nier, 165, 243
niveler, 169, 230
nommer, 214, 231, 252
noter, to note (jot down)
notifier, 263
numéroter, 200

O

objecter, to oppose
obliger, 95, 102, 135, 340
observer, 214, 256
obstiner, 98
occasionner, 185

occuper, 102, 112, 197, 217, 269
offenser, 165, 238
opérer, 195
opiniâtrer (*s'*), 204
opposer, 161, 282
oppresser, 232
organiser, 114, 227
orner, 219, 226
oser, 113, 135, 153
oublier, 216, 243
ordonner, 160, 232, 283
ôter, 212

P

pâmer (*de rire*), to roar
panser, to dress (wound)
paralyser, 165
pardonner (*à*), 197
parer, to bedeck
parer, to ward off
parjurer (*se*), 204
parler, 209
parsemer, to strew
partager, 94, 153, 262, 273, 200
participer, to participate
passer, 135–7; 153, 167, 170–4; 183, 255
patiner, to skate
patronner, 198
paver, 107
payer, 125, 159, 230
pêcher, 213
pêcher, 213
peiner, 143
peler, 229
pencher, 232, 296
pénétrer, 95, 101
penser, 95, 151, 162, 173, 209
percer, 108, 228, 285
persévérer, 186
persister, 154
persuader, 239
peser, 195, 219, 229, 270
pétiller, to sparkle
piailler, 227
pincer, 234
pincer, 236
piquer, 356
placer, 108, 228, 299
plaisanter, 95, 248
planter, to plant
pleurer, 94, 149, 176
plier, 272
plonger, 107, 213
ployer, 230, 272
pocher, to poach (bruise)
porter, 156, 212, 214, 276
porter (*se*), to fare (be)
poser, 196
posséder, 74, 168
poudrer, 107, 214
pouffer (*de rire*), to roar
pousser, 183, 211, 227, 342
pratiquer, 228, 299
précautionner, 89
précéder, 188
prêcher, 211
précipiter, 145, 297
préciser, 99
préférer, 133, 160, 254
préoccuper, 231
préparer, 213, 231
présager, 167
présenter, 133, 143, 164–7; 232
présider, 188
presser, 94, 206, 277
prêter, 271
prier, 158, 230
primer, 226
priver, 201
proclamer, 110, 263
procurer, 145, 214
prodiguer, 247
proférer, 185
professer, 214, 247
profiter, 154, 237
prohiber, 101–3, 284
prolonger, 106
promener, 127, 184, 185
prononcer, 88, 214, 224–7
proposer, 145, 237
protéger, 94, 139, 234
protester, 204, 224
prouver, 98, 113
provoquer, 224, 238
publier, 110, 114
puiser (*à*), 218
pulvériser, 273, 274

Q

questionner, 149
quitter, 160, 269

R

rabaisser, to lower
raccommoder, to mend
raconter, 167
raffoler (de), to be mad (love)
raisonner, 224
ramasser, 184
ramener, 229
ranger, to arrange
ranimer, to inflame
rappeler, 162, 222
rapporter, 224
rapprocher, 299
rassasier, 92
rassembler, 99
rasséréner, to clear up, 348
ratatiner, 204
râper, to be worn (shabby)
râteler, 230
rater, to miss (fire)
rattacher, to connect
rattraper, to catch up
raturer, 213
raviser (se), 204
rayer, 213
rayonner, to radiate
rebeller (se), 204
rebrousser, 183
réchapper, 295
réchauffer, to warm up
rechercher, 195, 232
récidiver, 114, 296
réclamer, 147, 202
récolter, to harvest
recommander, 171, 262 278
recommencer, 219, 234
récompenser, 190, 214
recouvrer, 197, 320
récréer (se), to divert
récrier (se), 204
recruter, 249
reculer, 139
rédiger, 113
redouter, 140, 217
reformer, réformer, 114, 269
refuser, 168, 215, 250
réfugier (se), 204
regagner, to reach again
régaler, 106
regarder, 211–15; 191
regarder (à), 215
régner, 197, 231
régler, 114, 121, 139, 215, 260
regretter, to regret
réhabiliter, 237
rejeter, to reject
relâcher, to release
relancer, to throw again
reléguer (se), to retire to
relever, 229
relier, 349
remarquer, 213, 271
rembourrer, 107
rembourser, 268, 270
remédier (à), 90
remercier, 69, 109
remonter, 140, 226
remontrer, to teach (?)
remplacer, 165, 251
remporter, 215
remuer, to stir (up)
rencontrer, 145, 160, 215
renfermer, to shut in
rengorger (se), 204
renoncer, 197
renouer, to renew
renouveler, 230, 269
renseigner, to inform
rentrer, 155, 295, 269
rentrer, 102, 238
renverser, 229, 296, 297
reparler, 226
réparer, 140
repasser, 185, 267
répéter, 109, 114, 218, 219
replier, 280
reporter, 166
reposer (se), 147, 152, 267
repousser, to repel
représenter, to represent
réprimander, 215
reprocher, 227, 268, 277
répudier, 197
répugner, to feel reluctant
résider, 188, 360
résister (à), 141, 273
respecter, to respect
respirer, 165
ressembler (à), 222, 298
ressemeler, 230
resserrer, to bring closer
ressusciter, 295
restaurer, 198
rester, 143, 159, 213, 244, 280
résulter, 93, 109, 162

résumer, 215
retarder, 100, 143
retirer, 197, 205, 226
retomber, 221, 296
retourner, 246, 267, 278
retracer, 278
rétracter, 197
retrancher, 226, 239
retrouver (*re* + *trouver*)
réveiller, to wake up
revendiquer, 202
rêver (*à*), to dream
révolter, 112
rimer, to rhyme
rincer, 183
risquer, 93, 159, 170, 215
rissoler (to brown)
river, to rivet
rogner, to (clip) cut sparingly
ronger, to gnaw
rouer, 184
rouler, 168, 226, 275, 297
ruer, to rush (*se*), kick
ruisseler, 230

S

sabler, 334
saler, 227
saluer, 95, 172, 184
scandaliser (*se*), to take offense
sauter, 198
sautiller, 206
sauver, 170
savonner, 232
savourer, to relish
scier, 220
sécher, 226
secouer, 275
séjourner, 114
sembler, 162, 176
semer, 151, 229, 299
serrer, 158
siéger, 228
signaler, 199
signer, 281
signifier, 88
silhouetter, 186
simuler, to sham
situer, 231
solder, 260
solliciter, 108, 160
sombrer, 281
sommeiller, to slumber
sommer, 269
sonder, 157
songer (*à*), 90, 133, 136
sonner, 128, 133, 220, 295
soucier (*s'en*) 97, 121
souder, 235
souffler, 273
souffleter, 230
souhaiter, 149, 160–2
souiller, 108
soulever, 198, 228
souper, to dine, 174
soupeser, 229
soupirer, to sigh
sourciller, to frown
subsister, 163, 185
substituer, 251
succéder (*à*), 231
suer, 262
suggérer, 145
suicider (*se*), to commit suicide
supporter, 93, 268, 277
supposer, 97, 143, 200, 259
surmener, 229
surmonter, 202, 278
surpasser, to surpass
sursauter, to startle

T

tâcher (*de*), 169, 204, 270
tacher, 89, 98, 270
tacheter, 230
tailler, 213
tancer, 214
tamponner (*se*), 206
tanguer, 279
tanner, 105
taquiner, to tease
tarder, to long (for)
tâter, to feel (pulse)
témoigner, 71
tenter, 198
terminer, 149, 150, 232–6; 248
tirailler, 249
tirer, 153, 201, 211, 232, 359, 214
tomber, 224–5; 293
tonner, to thunder
tortiller, 191, 223
torturer, 275
toucher, 167, 193, 236–8; 250

tourmenter, 170, 232
tourner, 200, 298
tousser, 94,
traîner, 195, 225
traiter, 167, 214, 250, 277
trancher, 273
transformer, 247
transpercer, 139
transpirer, 262 (perspire)
transporter, 195, 221
travailler, 86, 175, 237
traverser, 189, 213, 186
trébucher, to stumble
trembler, 140, 222
trémousser, to be impatient
tremper, to dip (soak)
trépigner, to stamp one's feet
*tressaute*r, to startle
tricher, 222
trimbaler (*se*), to go about
tringuer, to click (glasses)
triturer, 274
tromper, 137, 151–2; 224, 243
trotter, to trot
trouver, 127, 136, 209
tuer, 127, 260
tutoyer, 227

U

user (*de*), to use; to wear out
usiter, 195

V

vanter, to boast
vaquer, 188
varier, 186, 236, 252
veiller, 101
venger, 159, 165
vérifier, 261
verser, 199
vider, 169, 231
violer, 188, 273
viser, 195
visiter, 201, 267
vitrer, 171
vivifier, to fortify
vivoter, to live (poorly)
voguer, to sail
voler, 151, 213, 274
voleter, 230
vouer, to vow
voûter (*se*), to become round-shouldered
voyager, 160, 175, 184

REGULAR VERBS IN *-IR*

A

abolir, to abolish
aboutir (*à*), 236, 246
abrutir, 234, 248
accomplir, 238, 268
accroupir (*s'*), 203
adoucir, to soften
affaiblir, 297
affermir, 234
affranchir, 141
agir, 150, 236
agrandir, 343
allégir, 239
alourdir, 238
amincir, 235
amortir, 319
anéantir, 240, 108
aplanir, 248
aplatir, 238
appauvrir, 238
appesantir, 238
applaudir, 239, 224
approfondir, 240
arrondir, 241
asservir, 321
assortir, 321
assoupir, to doze
assouplir, 279
assourdir, 278
assouvir, to quench
assujettir, 280
attendrir, 234, 247
atterrir, 296
attiédir, 234
avertir, 152

B

bâtir, 104, 240
blanchir, 99, 236
blêmir, 236
blottir (*se*), 203
bondir (*de*), 234

C

chérir, 105
choisir, 220, 232
convertir, 89, 248, 269

D

dégarnir, 169
démolir, 239
désobéir (*à*), 244
divertir, to divert
durcir, 280

E

ébahir (*s'*), 203
éblouir, to dazzle
éclaircir, 234
élargir, 245
embellir, to embellish
endurcir, to harden
enfouir, to bury (under), 152
engourdir, 247
enrichir (*s'*), 268
envahir, 215, 222
épaissir, 235
établir, 234, 248, 261, 281
étourdir, to feel giddy
évanouir (*s'*), 202–4

F

finir, 230, 248
flétrir, 343
fournir, to provide
franchir, 248
frémir, 246

G

garantir, 234, 246, 269
garnir, 184, 235
gémir, 198
grandir, 149
grossir, 342
guérir, 236, 269

I

investir, to be invested

J

jaillir, 240
jaunir, 242
jouir (*de*), 108

L

languir, 198

M

maigrir, 342
meurtrir, 318
munir (*de*), 234, 248
mûrir, 240, 242

N

noircir, 241

O

obéir (*à*), 133, 244, 266
obscurcir (*s'*), 348
ourdir, to hem

P

pâlir, 95, 236, 246
périr, 267
polir, 244
pourrir, 235, 246
punir, 135, 160, 234

R

raccourcir, to shorten
rafraîchir, 91
raidir, 106, 245
rajeunir, 342
ravir, 238, 254
réfléchir, 138, 154, 160, 247
refroidir, 234
réjouir, 161, 164, 176
rembrunir, 348
remplir, 107, 217, 234, 249, 268
renchérir, to outbid; to be dearer
répartir, 320
reserve (to), 203
ressortir, 321
rétablir (*se*), 151, 234, 298
réunir, 97, 245, 299

réussir (*à*), 95, 99, 143, 160, 234, 295
reverdir, 239
rougir, 107, 237
roussir, to scorch
rugir, 137, 274

S

saillir, 94
saisir, 238, 235, 244
salir, 98, 110, 240, 244
sévir, 248
subir, 196, 234, 249
surgir, to surge (rise)

T

tarir, 296
trahir, 152

U

unir (*à*), 244

V

vernir, to varnish
vieillir, 342
vomir, to vomit

VERBS ENDING IN *-OIR*

Page 248

special
- *apercevoir*, 152, 161, 271
- *concevoir*, 88, 268, 271
- *décevoir*, *264*
- *devoir*, *264*, 174, 175 (conjugated)

special
- (*échoir*) *échéant*, *échu*, 225, 267, 270, 326
- *percevoir*, *264*
- *recevoir*, *249* (conjugated)
- *redevoir*, 264

REG. CONJUG. ENDING IN *-RE*

attendre, 143, 158, 160, 192, 252
attendre (*s'*) *à*, to expect to
confondre, 108
correspondre, 188
corrompre, 246
défendre, 142, 152, 160
démordre (*n'en pas*), to stick to it
dépendre (*de*), 143, 245
de cendre, 295
détendre, to distend
entendre, 90, 92, 132, 159, 189, 239
étendre, 167
fendre, 273, 280
fondre, 153, 188
interrompre, 262, 275
mordre, to bite
perdre, 131, 153, 214
prétendre, 163, 183
rendre, 98, 107, 166, 170, 180, 193, 199, 268, 330
répondre (*à*), 92, 148, 256
répandre, 198
retordre, 281
rompre, 271
suspendre, 184, 191
tendre, 122
tondre, to shear
tordre, 229, 280
vendre, 140, 271, 290, 298

LIST OF FRENCH IRREGULAR VERBS

A

to abate, *abattre*, 169, 191, 298, 334. 357
absolve, *absoudre*, 332
abstain, *s'abstenir*, 164, 176, 322
abstract, *abstraire*, 359
acquire, *acquérir*, 310
adjoin, *adjoindre*, 193, 349

to aid, *subvenir* (*à*), 323
admit, *admettre*, 160, 351
annoy, 353
anoint, *oindre*, 349, 354
appear, *paraître*, 133, 354
assess, *répartir*, 320
assume, 201
attack, *assaillir*, 106, 218, 311
attain, 333
audit, *ouïr* (*les comptes*), 324
avail, 228

B

to bake, 343
be *être*, 116, 291
— able, 132, 134, 329
— ashamed, 176
— at leisure, 97
— aware, 329
— better, 162, 330
— becoming (*seoir*), 324
— busy, 102, 217
— enamored, 357
— equivalent, 330
— issued, 317
— in need, 176
— necessary, 140, 326
— silent, 175, 359
— waited on, 217
— willing, 331
— worrying, 92, 102, 268
bear, 212, 331
beat, *battre*, 237, 333
become, *seoir* (*il sied*), 324
become, *devenir*, 323, 149
begin, *se mettre à*, 351, 123, 356
believe, *croire*, 137, 341
belong, *appartenir*, 93, 322
bind, 137, 349
bless, *bénir*, 312
blossom, 102, 315
boil, *bouillir*, 312, 343
born (to be), *naître*, 317, 352
bray, *braire*, 334
bring out, *faire ressortir*, 321
broil, 343

C

to be able (or can), 132, 142, 329
care, 134, 112
" 277
circumvent, 323
cloister, *reclure*, 336
close, *clore*, 336
clothe, *vêtir* (*de*), 323
coat, *enduire*, 337, 347, 140–1
combat, *combattre*, 334, 94
come (back), *revenir*, 314
come, 322, 132, 145, 152
commit, *commettre*, 351
compel, 340
complain, *se plaindre* (*de*), 355
complete, 347
comprehend, 324, 171
compromise, 351
conclude, *conclure*, 336, 152
concur, *concourir* (*à*), 312; or: to compete
conduct, *conduire*, 337, 157
conjoin, 349
conquer, 360, 310
consent, *consentir*, 320, 159, 164
construct, 337
contain, *contenir*, 322, 222
contradict, 344, 340
convince, 360
cook, *cuire*, 343
(could), 241, 329, 135, 151
counterfeit, 347, 97
curse, 344, 350
curtail, 357

D

to dawn, 356, 349
deal, 225, 92
debate, 334, 206
decline, 325
decrease, 342
deduct, 343, 334–7
delight, 355
demand, 200
deny, 323
depict, 354
describe, 345
destroy, 343, 190, 337
detain, 322, 140
deviate, 320
discomfit, 338
die, 318, 152

to disappear, 354
discharge, 269
discourse, 312, 214–19
discover, 320, 271, 193
disguise, 347, 199
disjoin, 349
dislocate, 351
disown, 351
displease, 355
dissolve, 345, 357
distract, 359
distribute, 320, 111
divest, 323
do (make), 347
draw, 359, 218, 170
dread, 341
dress, *vêtir*, 199, 323, 102
drink, 334, 176
drive, 223, 337
dye, 359, 343

E

to elect, 349, 193, 152
(re—), 349
embrace, 347
emit, 351
enamel, 354
enclose, 335
enjoin, 349
entertain, 322, 211
escape, 315, 165
exclude, 336
experience, 320
expire (rent), *échoir*, 326
extinguish, 346, 152, 269
extract, 359, 280

F

to fade, 343
fail, 314, 164, 204, 224, 298
fall (*choir*), 325, 334, 224–5
fear, 341, 140, 172
feel, 320; 176
feign, 348, 341, 227
fence (in), 336
fight, 333, 203
flee, 315; 145, 165
flower, 315, 102, 114
follow, 358, 152, 162
forebode, 320, 348
foreclose, 336
foresee, 331, 237
forfeit, 347
fry, *frire* (*faire frire*), p. p. *frit* (*e*)

G

to gambol, 334
gather, 313, 155, 89
get a glance, 331
— rid of, 347
gird (on), 335
glance, 312 (look over)
glitter, 350
go after, 309, 146, 358
— away (*s'en aller*), 204
— down, *descendre*, 295
— out, 321
— shopping, 310
— up, *monter*, 150
graze, 354
grill, 343
grind, 213, 352, 274
groan, 348
grow (up), 342

H

to happen (*avenir*, *advenir*), 123, 322, 195
harm, 347, 353, 206
hasten, 312, 204
hatch, 345
hate, 316, 165
have (own), 81
— recourse, 312
hear (*ouir*), 324, 344, 299
hold, 322, 171
hone, 352
hunt, *aller à la chasse*, 309
hurt, 95, 353, 115, 142, 122

I

to ill-become (*messeoir*), 324
imbibe, 334, 101
impose, 341
imprint, 346
inclose, 336
increase, 342, 343
incur, 198, 312
induce, 337, 343

to injure, 205
infer, 331
infringe, 346
inquire, 310, 147, 205
inscribe, 345, 168
instruct, 349, 205, 167, 93
interdict, 344–9, 340
interpose, 351
intervene, 323
introduce, 337
issue, 354, 160

J

to join, 349, 165–9

K

to keep, 322
know, 329, 339, 133–7, 151

L

to lament, 355, 166
laugh, 357
lay, 356
lead, 337
learn, 357
leave, 320, 127
let off, 270
lie, 316, 152
— 317, 130
like, 134, 151
live, 360, 125, 139, 154
look, 97
loosen, 357

M

to maintain, 322, 279, 103
make, 347, 176
(may), 329, 115
mean, 331, 344
mention, 100, 344
milk, 359
miss, 314
mistake, 357, 151, 137, 204
moan, 355
move, 327, 355
(must), 266

N

to need, 326, 165, 136

O

to oblige, 332
obtain, 322, 160
occur, 323
offer, 319, 155, 167
officiate (in), 321, 186
omit, 351
open, 320, 224, 190
originate, 352
overcharge, 270
overcome, 360, 347
— grow, 342
overlook, 216, 271
overreach, 357
overtake, 333, 349, 168
owe, 266 (conjugated)
own, 94

P

to paint, 354, 93, 103
pasture, 354
penetrate (cold), 324
permit, 351, 161
pickle, 338
please, 355, 131, 205, 298, 92
portray, 354
predict, 340, 344, 200
prescribe, 345, 237
preserve, 338
prevail, 330
proceed, 358
produce, 337, 357, 171
project, 321
promise, 351
promote, 327, 263
proscribe, 345
provide, 328, 323, 279
pull (down), 334
pursue, 358
put (on), 351, 323
put out, 346

R

to raid, 222
rain, 328, 106
rattle, 335

to reach, 323, 333, 158
read, 349, 149
reap, 313, 151
recant, 344, 203
recognize, 339, 153
recollect, 323, 205
reconstruct, 340
recover, 234
reduce, 337, 357, 165, 273
rejoin, 349
remember, 323, 162, 204
remit, 351
remove, 321–7; 169
repent (conjugated), 299, 97; 320, 204
reproduce, 337
request, 310, 158
resolve, 357
restrict, 235
result, 324 (law)
resume, 269
retain, 322, 130
retake, 357
retort, 320
ride, 126
rip, 340
rise (spring), 358, 352–8, 206
roast, 343
run, 312, 315

S

to satisfy, 347
say (tell), 344, 158, 165
seat, 324, 150
seduce, 337
see, 331, 158, 166
seized (be), 333, 346
send, 309, 311, 171–6
serve, 321, 152
set, 139; about, 356
— off, 330
— out, 320, 351
— sail, 320
sew 340
sharpen, 352
shine, 350
(should), 134, 151, 267
show, 331; — out, 337
— in, 337
side, 193
silence, 359
sit (down), 324, 354, 150–6; 98
sketch, 354
slander, 340–4; 224
sleep; fall asleep, 314
smell, 320
solve, 357
smile, 357
sport, 334
spring (derive), 323, 136
squeeze, 346, 123
stamp, 346
stand, 160, 322, 271
start, 311 (depart), 326
starve, 318
stitch, 340
strike (a blow), 315, 165
— (knock), *frapper*
— (ring), *sonner*
struggle, 334, 262
submit, 351
subscribe, 345
subtract, 359
succor, 312
suffer, 320, 140, 161, 197
suffice, 358, 131, 140, 201
suit, 323, 140
summon, 354
supply, 328
surprise, 357
survive, 360
suspend (*surseoir*) law, 324
sustain, 322
swear, 351
swerve, 268

T

to take, 356, 170
— (drink, buy), 356
— care, 172, 94, 97, 104
— off, 323
— out, *sortir*
— in, *entrer*
— a part in, 337
— place (*avoir lieu*), 171
— (conduct or accompany), 150; see *conduire*, 337
— teach, 349
— tell (say), 344, 147
tie down, 332
thrash, 333 (thresh)
transcribe, 345

to transgress, 346
translate, 337, 359
transmit, 351

U

to understand, 357
undertake, 357
undo, 347
unlearn, 357
use, 321, 137

V

to vanquish, 360, 166
value (to be worth), 330, 140, 162, 169, 171, 261
vanish, 354
violate (*enfreindre, contrevenir*), 323, 346
visit, 331
vouch, 271

W

to wage (war), 334
wait (on), 321
walk, 127
want (wish), 160
warn, 323
watch, 270
weave, 360
welcome, 313, 224, 250
whet, 352
whine, 348, 355
(will), 150, 169, 94
wither, 343
wish (will, want), 331, 130, 132
worsted (to be), 130
worth (to be), 330, 151, 227
(would), 134, 151, 241
to wound, 353, 205
wrestle, 334
wrong (to be), 173

Modern French Composition

For Secondary Schools and Colleges

By

Philippe de La Rochelle
Romance Department, Columbia University

This Composition may be used in connection with "A Modern French Grammar," by the same author, or independently of the Grammar, as desired. The Composition covers the first year's work in French.

G. P. Putnam's Sons
New York London

L'Etat de Guerre

and

Le Projet de Paix Perpétuelle

By

Jean Jacques Rousseau

While we are discussing proposals for a League of Nations, for *the* League of Nations, and for a possible World Court, it is interesting to note analogous suggestions made a century and a half ago by Jean Jacques Rousseau. The essays here reprinted are remarkable for their modernity, for their suggestiveness to students of present-day problems, and for the clear brilliance which is to be expected from the erratic philosopher who penned them.

G. P. Putnam's Sons

New York London

A
Short History of Rome

From the Foundation of the City to the Fall of the Empire of the West

By Guglielmo Ferrero
Assisted by Corrado Barbagallo

Two Volumes. 8°

Volume I. The Monarchy and the Republic, from the Foundation of the City to the Death of Julius Caesar, 754 B.C.–44 B.C. Volume II. The Empire

The leading ideas of the work are those which Ferrero has developed in his *Greatness and Decline of Rome;* and the method of setting forth his facts is the same too. Only the sketches are necessarily shorter, the narrative more concise and swifter, as is proper in a book intended for the use of classes.

The most novel feature in the author's method of exposition is, that instead of that method being, as is the case in almost all textbooks, diffuse, it is organic. This work does not contain a piecemeal account of wars, reforms, political crises, the progress of civilization and of culture and economic developments as isolated facts. On the contrary, the facts are brought into relationship, with the result that a well-rounded and organic impression is conveyed. It is the method which Sig. Ferrero pursued in his large work and to which in part that work owes its success.

G. P. Putnam's Sons

New York **London**